

Copyrighted Material  
JOINT ASSOCIATION OF CLASSICAL TEACHERS

GREEK COURSE

# Reading Greek

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES



Copyrighted Material

*Γράμματα μαθεῖν δεῖ καὶ μαθόντα νοῦν ἔχειν*

*Menander*

THE JOINT ASSOCIATION OF  
CLASSICAL TEACHERS' GREEK COURSE

*Reading Greek*

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY  
AND EXERCISES



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK <http://www.cup.cam.ac.uk>  
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA <http://www.cup.org>  
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia

© The Joint Association of Classical Teachers' Greek Course 1978

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and  
to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without  
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1978

Reprinted with corrections 1979, 1980

Reprinted 1982, 1983, 1986 (twice), 1987, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1991,  
1993 (twice), 1994, 1995, 1996 (twice), 1997 (twice), 1999

Printed in the United States of America

Typeset in Bembo

*A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library*

*Library of Congress Cataloguing-in-Publication Data is available*

ISBN 0-521-21977-9 paperback



# CONTENTS

Preface ix	Abbreviations x
<b>A Grammar, Vocabularies and Exercises for Sections One–Nineteen</b>	
<i>Alphabet and pronunciation</i>	1
Part One	
<i>Section One</i>	5
<i>Section Two</i>	25
<i>Section Three</i>	34
Part Two	
<i>Section Four</i>	44
<i>Section Five</i>	58
<i>Section Six</i>	80
Part Three	
<i>Section Seven</i>	97
<i>Section Eight</i>	108
<i>Section Nine</i>	130
<i>Section Ten</i>	144
Part Four	
<i>Section Eleven</i>	152
<i>Section Twelve</i>	174
<i>Section Thirteen</i>	193
<i>Section Fourteen</i>	201

Part Five	
Section Fifteen	207
Section Sixteen	221
Section Seventeen	236
Part Six	
Section Eighteen	241
Part Seven	
Section Nineteen	248
<b>B Reference Grammar</b>	259
A.1 Preliminaries	259
A.2 The Greek alphabet	260
A.3 Accentuation	264
A.4 Homeric dialect – the main features	267
B. Nouns	270
C.1 Adjectives/pronouns	271
C.2 Comparison of adjectives	273
C.3 Noun/adjective endings – a summary	274
D. Adverbs	275
E.1 The verb – synopsis	275
E.2 Verb summary chart (uncontracted, weak aorist)	278
E.3 Irregular verbs	281
E.4 Important principal parts	284
F. Prepositions	290
G. Particles	292
H. ὡς (ὥς)	297
I. Participles	298
J. Infinitives	299
K. Indirect speech	301
L. Temporal clauses	303
M. Purpose clauses and verbs of fearing	304
N. Polite (potential) ἄν	305
O. Conditionals	305
P. Wishes	306
Q. Commands (orders)	306
R. Deliberatives	307

<b>C Language Surveys</b>	308
(1) <i>History of the Greek language</i>	308
(2) <i>Active, middle and passive</i>	310
(3) <i>Aspect</i>	310
(4) <i>Optative</i>	312
(5) <i>Subjunctive and optative usages</i>	314
(6) <i>The uses of ἄν</i>	315
(7) <i>Verbs in -μι</i>	316
(8) <i>Verbs with perfect force</i>	318
(9) <i>The negatives οὐ and μή</i>	319
(10) <i>Morphology of the cases</i>	320
(11) <i>Use of the cases</i>	322
(12) <i>Use of the definite article</i>	326
(13) <i>Vocabulary building</i>	327
<b>D Total Vocabulary of all words to be learnt</b>	335
<i>Finding the lexicon form of a verb</i>	335
Total Vocabulary	337
List of proper names	353
<b>E English – Greek Vocabulary</b>	356
Notes	356
English – Greek Vocabulary	356
<b>F Grammar Index</b>	363
<i>Index of grammar</i>	363
Index of grammar – Greek	365

*Cover picture: Athene with stylus and writing tablet. (Photograph reproduced by permission of the Staatliche Antikensammlungen and Glyptothek, Munich.)*

## PREFACE

This book is written to be used in step with *Reading Greek (Text)* of the Joint Association of Classical Teachers' Greek Course. In it will be found:

(A) Running vocabularies (in alphabetical lists) and learning vocabularies for each sub-section of the text; and at various points, grammatical explanations and exercises, which state clearly and reinforce the grammar which will have been met in reading the Text (pp. 1-258).

*It is essential to note here that the grammar and exercises have been written on the assumption that the text with which they go has already been read. Consequently, the grammar and exercises should not be turned to until that point is reached in the reading.*

(B) A Reference Grammar, which summarises and expands upon the essential features of the grammar met in the Course (pp. 259-307).

(C) A number of Language Surveys which look in detail at some of the more important features of the language (pp. 308-34).

(D) A total vocabulary of all words that should have been learnt, followed by a list of proper names (pp. 335-55).

(E) A vocabulary for the English-Greek exercises (pp. 356-62).

(F) An index to the grammar (pp. 363-7).

It would be impracticable to produce an exhaustive grammar of the whole Greek language. Students and teachers should bear in mind that the first aim of this grammar is to help students to translate from Greek into English, and that we have therefore concentrated attention on the most common features of the language.

Acknowledgements of the debt we owe to the Steering Committee and Advisory Panel are to be found in *Reading Greek (Text)*, p. xii.

J.A.C.T. Greek Course  
Hughes Hall  
Cambridge CB1 2EW, England

Peter V. Jones (Director)  
Keith C. Sidwell (Second Writer)  
Frances E. Corrie (Research Assistant)  
November 1977

# ABBREVIATIONS

abs.(olute)  
acc.(usative)  
act.(ive)  
adj.(ective)  
adv.(erb)  
aor.(ist)  
art.(icle)  
aug.(ment)  
cf. (= confer) (Latin: 'compare')  
comp.(arative)  
cond.(itional)  
conj.(ugated, ugation)  
contr.(acted, action)  
dat.(ive)  
decl.(ension)  
def.(inite)  
del.(iberative)  
dir.(ect)  
f.(eminine)  
fut.(ure)  
gen.(itive)  
imper.(ative)  
impf. (= imperfect)  
inc.(luding)  
ind.(icative)  
indec.(linable)  
indef.(inite)  
indir.(ect)  
inf.(initive)  
irr.(egular)  
lit.(erally)  
m.(asculine)  
mid.(dle)  
n.(euter)  
nom.(inative)

opt.(ative)  
part.(iciple)  
pass.(ive)  
perf.(ect)  
pl.(ural)  
plup.(erfect)  
prep.(osition)  
pres.(ent)  
prim.(ary)  
pron.(oun)  
q.(uestion)  
redupl.(icated, ication)  
rel.(ative)  
s.(ingular)  
sc.(ilicet) (Latin: 'presumably')  
sec.(ondary)  
seq.(uence)  
sp.(eech)  
str.(ong)  
subj.(unctive)  
sup.(erlative)  
tr.(anslate)  
uncontr.(acted)  
unfulf.(illed)  
vb. (= verb)  
voc.(ative)  
wk. (= weak)  
1st, 2nd, 3rd refer to persons of the verb, i.e.  
1st s. = 'I'  
2nd s. = 'you'  
3rd s. = 'he, she, it'  
1st pl. = 'we'  
2nd pl. = 'you'  
3rd pl. = 'they'

# A Grammar, Vocabularies and Exercises for Sections One–Nineteen

---

## Simplified alphabet and pronunciation

---

- A* α (alpha) pronounced 'cup' or 'calm'  
*B* β (beta) pronounced 'b' as in English  
*Γ* γ (gamma) a hard 'g', like 'got'  
*Δ* δ (delta) a clean 'd', like 'dot'  
*E* ε (epsilon) short 'e' like 'pet'  
*Z* ζ (zeta) like 'wisdom'  
*H* η (eta) pronounced as in 'hair'  
Θ θ (theta) – blow a hard 't' ('tare')  
*I* ι (iota) like 'bead' or like 'bin'  
*K* κ (kappa) a clean 'k' like 'skin'  
*Λ* λ (lambda) like 'lock'  
*M* μ (mu) like 'mock'  
*N* ν (nu) like 'net'  
Ξ ξ (xi) like 'box'  
*O* ο (omicron) a short 'o', like 'pot'  
*Π* π (pi) a clean 'p', like 'spot'  
*P* ρ (rho) a rolled 'r', like 'rrat'  
*Σ* σ ς (sigma) a soft 's', like 'sing'  
*T* τ (tau) a clean 't', like 'ting'  
*Υ* υ (upsilon) French 'lune' or German 'Müller'  
Φ φ (phi) – blow a hard 'p', like 'pool'  
*X* χ (khi) – blow a hard 'c', like 'cool'  
*Ψ* ψ (psi) as in 'lapse'  
*Ω* ω (omega) like 'saw'

Note 'clean' indicates no 'h' sound; 'blow hard' indicates plenty of 'h' aspiration (e.g. φ as in 'top-hole').

**The most common diphthongs and double-consonants**

αι as in 'high'

αυ as in 'how'

ει as in 'fi<sup>an</sup>cé<sup>e</sup>'ευ (pronounce both elements *separately*)

οι as in 'boy'

ου as in 'too'

γγ as in 'finger'

Dwell on all double consonants, e.g. ρρ as 'rat-trap', λλ as 'wholly' etc.

**Sigma and iota subscript**

Observe that ς is used as the *end* of words, while σ is used elsewhere (see next example). Sometimes ι is printed *underneath* a preceding α (α̣), η (η̣) and ω (ω̣).

**Breathings**

ˊ above a vowel indicates the presence of an 'h' sound: ˋ above a vowel indicates the absence of 'h' sound, e.g.

ὄσος = 'hosos'

οἶος = 'oios'

*Note*

(i) This is a purposely simplified pronunciation chart. Fuller and more accurate information is given in the Reference Grammar A.2 on p. 260.

(ii) The mark which indicates where a doubtful vowel (α, ι, υ) is pronounced long (ā, ī, ū) is only used on the endings in the Reference Grammar.

(iii) Greek uses ⋮ for a colon and ; for a question-mark.

**The alphabet – exercises**

1. Write the following Greek words in their English form. Some will just require transliteration, others will need a few moments' thought.

Key:

ζ = sd or z

κ = c or k

χ = ch or kh

η = e

-ον = -um

ψ = ps

θ = th

υ = y or u

<i>Βυζάντιον</i>	<i>Παρθενών</i>
<i>Δικαιοπόλις</i>	<i>Χίος</i>
<i>Εύβοια</i>	<i>ἀκρόπολις</i>
<i>Ζηνόθεμις</i>	<i>ἐμπόριον</i>
<i>Ἡγέστρατος</i>	

2. Write the following English words in their Greek form:

(ē = η; -us = -ος; -um = -ον)

drama, panthēr, crocus, geranium, hippopotamus, ibis, asbestos,  
charactēr



# PART ONE

## Section One

---

### Running vocabularies and learning vocabularies

---

#### **Running vocabularies**

The vocabulary of each sub-section is given in alphabetical order. Note carefully that *phrases joined in the text by a linking device (ˉ or ˆ)* will be found under the first word of the phrase.

#### **Learning vocabularies**

At the end of each running vocabulary and after the Grammar of One A–G, Two, Three and Four A–B, you will find a list of words to be learnt. *These will not appear again in the running vocabularies.*

#### *Notes*

(i) *If you find that the running vocabulary does not contain a word you need, look it up in the Total Vocabulary (pp. 335–55), which contains all words that should have been learnt, including place names and personal names.*

(ii) *If you are in doubt about the name of a person, turn to the list of proper names (p. 353–5).*

(iii) *In running vocabularies, the accentuation of words is as in the text, except where words are given in their lexicon form. In learning vocabularies, words are accented in lexicon form.*

(iv) *In running vocabularies One to Ten, hyphens are freely used to split words up into their constituent parts (prefixes, stems, endings, etc.). The learning vocabularies present the unhyphenated form.*

---

## Vocabulary for Section One A

---

ἀκού-ουσι(ν) (they) hear  
 βαίν-ει (he) goes  
 βλέπ-ει (he) looks  
 βλέπ-ουσι(ν) (they) look  
 δέ and; but  
 εἰς to, into  
 εἰς Εὐβοίαν to Euboea  
 εἰς τὸ πλοῖ-ον onto the ship  
 εἰς Χί-ον to Chios  
 εἰς-βαίν-ει (he) embarks  
 εἰς-βαίν-ουσι(ν) (they)  
 embark  
 ἐν in, on  
 ἐν Βυζαντίῳ in Byzantium  
 ἐν Εὐβοίᾳ in Euboea  
 ἐν Χίῳ in Chios  
 ἐξαίφνης suddenly  
 ἔπειτα then, next

ἐστι(ν) (it/there) is  
 καὶ and  
 καὶ . . . καὶ both . . . and  
 μὲν . . . δὲ on the one  
 hand . . . on the other  
 ὁ the  
 ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Dikaiopolis  
 ὁ Ζηνόθεμις Sdenothemis  
 ὁ Ἡγέστρατ-ος Hegestratos  
 ὁ κυβερνήτης the captain  
 ὁ ῥαψῳδ-ός the rhapsode  
 οἱ the  
 οἱ ναῦται the sailors, crew  
 ὁρ-ᾶ (he) sees  
 ὁρ-ῶσι(ν) (they) see  
 οὖν so, therefore  
 πλ-εῖ (it) sails  
 πρὸς towards

πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας towards  
 Athens  
 πρὸς τὴν γῆν towards the  
 land  
 πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ towards  
 the Piraeus  
 τε . . . καὶ both . . . and  
 τέλος finally  
 τὴν the  
 τὴν ἀκρόπολιν the Acropolis  
 τί; what?  
 τὸν the  
 τὸν Παρθενῶνα the  
 Parthenon  
 τὸ the  
 τὸ πλοῖ-ον the ship vessel  
 ψόφ-ον a noise

### Vocabulary to be learnt

δέ and; but

ἔπειτα then, next

καὶ and

τε . . . καὶ A and B, both A  
 and B

---

## Vocabulary for Section One B

---

ἀκού-ω I hear  
 ἀκού-εις you (s.) hear  
 ἀκού-ομεν we hear  
 ἀκου-ε listen! (s.)  
 ἀληθῆ the truth  
 ἀλλὰ but  
 ἄρα ?  
 ἀθίς again  
 βλέπ-ε look! (s.)  
 γὰρ for  
 δεῦρο here, over here  
 Δικαιοπόλις Dikaiopolis  
 ἐγὼ I  
 ἔγωγε I at least  
 ἔλθ-έ come! (s.)

ἐστι(ν) (it) is  
 Ζεῦ Zeus  
 Ζηνόθεμι Sdenothemis  
 ἡ the  
 ἡ ἀκρόπολις the Acropolis  
 ἡμεῖς we  
 ἰδοῦ here! hey! look! (s.)  
 καὶ also  
 καλ-ός beautiful  
 καλ-ῆ beautiful  
 καλ-όν beautiful  
 κυβερνήτα captain  
 κυβερνήτης captain  
 λέγ-εις you (s.) are speaking  
 μὰ Δία by Zeus

μὴ don't  
 ναί yes  
 νῦν now  
 ὁ Παρθενῶν the Parthenon  
 ὁ Πειραιεύς the Piraeus  
 ὁρ-ῶ I see  
 ὁρ-ᾶς you (s.) see  
 οὐ no  
 οὐδέν nothing  
 οὖν so, therefore  
 οὐχ not  
 ὁ ψόφ-ος the noise  
 ποῦ; where?  
 σαφ-ῶς clearly  
 σὺ you (s.)

## Section One A-C

τὴν ἀκρόπολιν the Acropolis	τὸν Πειραιᾶ the Piraeus	ψόφ-ος a noise
τίς; what?	τὸν ψόφ-ον the noise	ὦ ()
τὸν νεώρι-ον the naval dockyard	φρόντιζ-ε worry! (s.) (sc. 'about it')	ὡς how!
τὸν Παρθενῶνα the Parthenon		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄρα ?	σύ you (s.)
δεῦρο here, over here	τίς; what? who?
ἐγὼ I	ὦ () (addressing someone)
καί also	

## Vocabulary for Section One C

αἱ the	ἐστί(ν) (they) are	ποιί; where to?
αἱ ὀλκάδες the merchant ships	Ζηνόθεμι Sdenothemis	Πόσειδον Poseidon (god of the sea)
ἀκού-ω I hear	ἡμεῖς we	σαφ-ῶς clearly
ἀκού-ομεν we hear	καλ-αἱ beautiful, fine	τὰ the
ἄκου-ε listen! (s.)	καλ-ά beautiful, fine	τὰ ἐμπόρι-α the markets
ἀλλὰ but	κατα-βαίν-ομεν we go down	τὰς the
βαίν-ετε you (pl.) are going	κάτωθεν from below	τὰς ὀλκάδας the merchant ships
βλέπ-ετε look! (pl.)	λέγ-ε say! (s.)	τί μῆν; so what?; of course
γάρ for	μέν-ετε you (pl.) stay	τὸν ψόφ-ον the noise
διὰ τί; why?	μῆ don't	ὑμεῖς you (pl.)
Δικαιοπόλι Dikaiopolis	ὀρ-ῶ I see	φίλ-οι friends
ἐγὼγε I; I for my part	ὀρ-ῶμεν (we) see	φροντίζ-ετε worry! (pl.) (sc. 'about it')
εἰσι(ν) (they) are	ὀρ-άτε you (pl.) see	ὡς how!
ἔλθ-έ come! (s.)	οὐκ not	
ἔλθ-ετε come! (pl.)	ὀψόφ-ος the noise	
	πόθεν; from where?	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀλλὰ but	μῆ don't
γάρ for	οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ no; not
ἡμεῖς we	ὡς how!

## Vocabulary for Section One D

ἀκού-ω I hear	διὰ τί; why?	ἐγὼγε I, I at least
ἀληθῆ the truth	Δικαιοπόλι Dikaiopolis	ἐκ out of, from
βλέπ-ε look! (s.)	διώκ-ετε give chase! (pl.)	ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου from the ship
βοηθ-εῖτε help! (pl.)	δύ-ει (he) is sinking	ἔλθί come! (s.)

ἑμαυτ-ὸν myself  
 ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ in (his/your) right  
 hand  
 ἔχ-ω (I) have/am holding  
 ἔχ-εις you (s.) have/are  
 holding  
 ἔχ-ει (he) has/is holding  
 Ζεῦ Zeus  
 Ἡγέστρατ-ε Hegestratos  
 κατα-βαίν-ει (he) goes down  
 κατα-βαίν-ομεν we go down  
 κατα-βαίν-ουσι(ν) (they) go  
 down  
 κατα-δύ-ει (he) is sinking  
 κάτω below  
 κάτωθεν from below  
 κυβερνήτα captain  
 λαμβάν-ετε you (pl.)  
 catch/seize  
 λέγ-εις you (s.) are saying

λέγ-ει (he) is telling  
 μὲν . . . δὲ on one  
 hand . . . on the other  
 ναῦται sailors  
 ὁ ἄνθρωπ-ος the fellow  
 ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Dikaiopolis  
 ὁ Ἡγέστρατ-ος Hegestratos  
 οἶμοι oh dear!  
 οἱ ναῦται the sailors, crew  
 ὁ κυβερνήτης the captain  
 ὄρ-ατε you (pl.) see  
 ὄρ-ῶσι(ν) (they) see  
 οὐδὲ and . . . not  
 οὐδὲν nothing  
 οὖν so, then, therefore  
 οὗτος hey, you!  
 ὁ ψόφ-ος the noise  
 πέλεκυς } an axe  
 πέλεκυν }  
 ποι-ῶ (I) am doing

ποι-εῖς you (s.) are doing  
 ποι-εῖ (he) is making  
 ρίπτ-ω I am throwing (going  
 to throw)  
 τῶν my dear chap  
 (condescendingly)  
 τί; what?  
 τι something  
 τὸν ἄνθρωπ-ον the fellow  
 τὸν Ἡγέστρατ-ον  
 Hegestratos  
 τὸν ψόφ-ον the noise  
 τὸ πλοῖ-ον the ship  
 ὑμεῖς you (pl.)  
 φεύγ-ω (I) am off  
 φίλ-ε friend  
 φρόντιζ-ε worry! (sc. 'about  
 it')  
 ψόφ-ον οὐδένα any noise

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀληθῆ the truth  
 ἔγωγε I; I at least (for my part)  
 οὐδὲν nothing  
 οὖν so, then, therefore  
 τί; what?  
 ὑμεῖς you (pl.)

## Vocabulary for Section One E

ἄγε come on! (s.)  
 ἀνα-βαίν-ουσι (they) are  
 coming up  
 ἄνω above  
 βλέπ-ει (he) looks  
 βοηθ-οῦσι (they) help  
 δῆ then; now  
 διώκ-ουσι(ν) (they)  
 pursue/(give) chase  
 εἰς τὴν θάλατταν into the sea  
 ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου out of the ship  
 ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ on the sea  
 ἐστί(ν) (it) is  
 Ζηνόθεμι Sdenothemis  
 ἤδη now; already  
 ἤδηγε yes, already  
 ἰδοῦ look! (s.)

κάτωθεν from below  
 με me  
 μὲν . . . δὲ on the one  
 hand . . . on the other  
 μὲν-ει (he) stays/is waiting  
 μὲν-ε stay! (s.)  
 ὁ Ζηνόθεμις Sdenothemis  
 ὁ Ἡγέστρατ-ος Hegestratos  
 οἱ ἄνδρες the men  
 οἶμοι oh dear!  
 οἱ ναῦται the sailors/crew  
 ὁ λέμβ-ος the life-boat  
 ὄρ-ῶ I see  
 ποῖ; where . . . to?  
 ποι-εῖς you (s.) are doing  
 πρὸς τὸν Ζηνόθεμιν towards  
 Sdenothemis

πρὸς τοὺς ναύτας towards the  
 sailors  
 ρίπτ-ε throw! (s.)  
 σεαυτ-ὸν yourself (s.)  
 σώζ-ε save! (s.)  
 τῇ θαλάττῃ the sea  
 τὸν Ἡγέστρατ-ον  
 Hegestratos  
 τοὺς the  
 τοὺς ναύτας the sailors/crew  
 φεύγ-ω (I) am off  
 φεύγ-εις you (s.) are  
 off/running away  
 φεύγ-ει (he) runs off  
 φεύγ-ε run away! be off! (s.)

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

μέν . . . δέ *on the one  
hand . . . on the other*  
ποι; *where to?*  
σεαυτόν *yourself(s.)*

**Vocabulary for Section One F**

ἀπό <i>from</i>	ἔστι(ν) <i>it is</i>	ὁ κυβερνήτης <i>the captain</i>
ἀπὸ τοῦ πλοίου <i>from the ship</i>	Ζηνόθεμι <i>Sdenothemis</i>	ὁ λέμβ-ος <i>the life-boat</i>
ἀπο-θνήσκ-ω <i>I am dying</i>	ζητ-οῦσι(ν) <i>they look for</i>	ὀρ-ῶ <i>I see</i>
ἀπο-θνήσκ-ομεν <i>we are dying</i>	Ἡγέστρατ-ε <i>Hegestratos</i>	ὀρ-ᾶς <i>you(s.) see</i>
ἀπο-θνήσκ-ουσι(ν) <i>(they) are dying</i>	κακ-οί <i>bad</i>	ὀρ-ῶσι(ν) <i>(they) see</i>
ἀπο-λύ-ει <i>(he) lets go/releases</i>	κακ-ῶς <i>badly (tr. 'a bad death')</i>	πού; <i>where?</i>
ἀπο-χωρ-εῖ <i>(it) goes away</i>	κυβερνήτα <i>captain</i>	ρίπτ-ουσι(ν) <i>(they) throw</i>
βοηθ-εῖτε <i>help! (pl.)</i>	μέν-ουσι(ν) <i>(they) wait</i>	τὴν φύγην <i>their flight</i>
Δικαιοπόλι <i>Dikaiopolis</i>	ναῦται <i>sailors</i>	τὸν λέμβ-ον <i>the life-boat</i>
ἑαυτ-οὺς <i>themselves</i>	ὁ Ἡγέστρατος <i>Hegestratos</i>	τοὺς ἀνθρώπ-ους <i>the fellows</i>
εἰς τὴν θάλατταν <i>into the sea</i>	οἱ ἀνθρώπ-οι <i>the fellows</i>	φεύγ-ουσι(ν) <i>they run away</i>
εἰσι(ν) <i>(they) are</i>	οἶμοι <i>alas! oh dear!</i>	φρόντιζ-ε <i>worry! (s.) (sc. 'about it')</i>

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

οἶμοι *alas! oh dear!*  
πού; *where?*

**Vocabulary for Section One G**

ἀεὶ <i>always</i>	ἐμ-όν <i>mine</i>	κατα-βαίν-ει <i>(he) goes down</i>
ἀκριβ-ῶς <i>closely; in detail</i>	ἐν ἐμοῖ <i>in my hands (lit. 'in me')</i>	κατα-δύν-ει <i>(it) is sinking</i>
ἀνα-βαίν-ει <i>(he) comes up (on deck)</i>	ἐν κινδύνῳ <i>in danger</i>	μέν-ει <i>(he) remains</i>
ἄνω <i>above (on deck)</i>	ἐσμέν <i>we are</i>	νῦν <i>now</i>
ἀπο-θνήσκ-ομεν <i>we are dying</i>	ἔστι(ν) <i>(it) is</i>	ὁ Δικαιοπόλις <i>Dikaiopolis</i>
ἀπο-χωρ-εῖ <i>(it) goes away</i>	ἡ σωτηρία <i>safety</i>	ὁ κυβερνήτης <i>the captain</i>
βεβαία <i>assured</i>	ἡμᾶς <i>us</i>	ὁ λέμβ-ος <i>the life-boat</i>
διὰ τί; <i>why?</i>	θύ-ομεν <i>we sacrifice</i>	ὁ λιμὴν <i>the harbour</i>
Δικαιοπόλι <i>Dikaiopolis</i>	θυσίας <i>sacrifices</i>	περι-σκοπ-ῶ <i>(I) look around</i>
ἐγγύς <i>nearby</i>	καὶ δὴ καὶ <i>and moreover</i>	Πόσειδον <i>Poseidon (god of the sea)</i>
εἰς τὴν θάλατταν <i>into the sea</i>	κακ-ῶς <i>badly (tr. 'a bad death')</i>	σιῶπα <i>be quiet! (s.)</i>
εἰς τὸν λιμένα <i>to the harbour</i>	κατα-βαίν-ω <i>(I) go down</i>	σκοπ-εῖ <i>(he) makes an examination, looks</i>
ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης <i>out of the sea</i>		

σοι to you (s.)  
 σώζ-ε save! (s.)  
 σώζ-εις you (s.) save

σῶ-αι safe  
 σῶ-ον safe  
 τὸ ἔργ-ον the task

τὸ πλοῖ-ον the ship  
 τοὺς ἀνθρώπ-ους men

### Vocabulary to be learnt

διὰ τί; why?

νῦν now

## ○ Running grammar – preliminaries

### Preliminaries

1 The aim of this running grammar is to describe, in terms as simple and practical as possible, the Greek language, so that students can understand the text and translate from Greek into English with the minimum difficulty. The Reference Grammar, at the end of this book (pp. 259–307), contains a slightly fuller picture of the language and presents morphology and syntax in summary form. The Language Surveys (pp. 308–34) examine in detail certain important features of the Greek language.

*Warning:* this running grammar is written to help students understand Greek and translate *from Greek into English*. Students will need more information from their teachers to translate English into Greek successfully, though help for the Greek–English exercises has been given very fully in the Greek–English vocabulary.

2 The early chapters will stress one essential difference between Greek and English – that is, that while in English the *order* in which the words occur is very important for determining the meaning of the sentence, in Greek the same function is expressed by the *shape* the words take. Consequently, words in a Greek sentence can come in a far greater variety of order than in English, according to what is being emphasised in the context.

3 Greek abounds in particles like *δέ, δή, οὖν, γάρ, ἀλλά*, etc. We have tried to give an English equivalent for each of these, but the resulting translation will often seem strained. This is because particles often indicate gesture, intonation, facial expression or attitude, which cannot necessarily be reproduced by a word-for-word translation. To get the particles right, you will often have to change your translation after the first effort (cf. Reference Grammar G).

### Note

The hyphen which is used to split words up into their constituent parts (usually not more than two, though in theory one could use as many as five or six for certain words) is simply a device to indicate what part of the word stays fixed (we call

this part the 'stem') and what part changes (we call this part the 'ending'). You will find one or two slight inconsistencies in this terminology.

It should be stressed here that the positioning of the hyphen should not be taken to imply anything about the historical development of the language.

## ○ Grammar for Section One A-G

### Summary:

Pres. ind. act. -ω, -άω, -έω

Pres. imper. act. -ω, -άω, -έω

Def. art. ὁ ἡ τό (nom., acc.)

καλ-ός -ή -όν (ἡμέτερος) (nom., acc.)

ἄνθρωπος, ἔργον (nom., acc.)

Some preps.

μέν . . . δέ

### Verbs

Present indicative active, βαίν-ω 'I go'

4 The forms of the pres. ind. act. are as follows:

Stem	Ending	Meaning	Description
βαίν-	-ω	'I go/I am going'	1st person singular (1st s.)
βαίν-	-εις	'you go/you are going'	2nd person singular (2nd s.)
βαίν-	-ει	'he/she/it goes' (etc.)	3rd person singular (3rd s.)
βαίν-	-ομεν	'we go'	1st person plural (1st pl.)
βαίν-	-ετε	'you go'	2nd person plural (2nd pl.)
βαίν-	-ουσι(ν)	'they go'	3rd person plural (3rd pl.)

All uncontracted verbs ending in -ω follow this pattern. You have met ἀκούω, βλέπω, μένω, φεύγω, διώκω.

### Note

This way of laying out a verb is called a 'conjugation'.

Present indicative active ('contracted'), ὁρά-ω 'I see', ποιέ-ω 'I do, make'

5 'Contracted' verbs are verbs of which the stem ends in a vowel (-α-, -ε- and, as we shall soon see, -ο-), e.g. ὁρά-ω, ποιέ-ω, δηλό-ω. The vowel coalesces with the vowel of the endings, with the result that the conjugation of contracted

verbs looks different from that of uncontracted verbs; but the pattern on which they are originally based is identical.

Here are the contracted forms of *ὄράω* and *ποιέω*, with their earlier forms in parentheses after them, so that you can see the similarities:

1st s.	ὄρ-ῶ	(ὄρά-ω)	'I see'
2nd s.	ὄρ-ᾶς	(ὄρά-εις)	'you see'
3rd s.	ὄρ-ᾷ	(ὄρά-ει)	'he/she/it sees'
1st pl.	ὄρ-ῶμεν	(ὄρά-ομεν)	'we see'
2nd pl.	ὄρ-ᾶτε	(ὄρά-ετε)	'you see'
3rd pl.	ὄρ-ῶσι(ν)	(ὄρά-ουσι(ν))	'they see'
1st s.	ποι-ῶ	(ποιέ-ω)	'I do, make'
2nd s.	ποι-εῖς	(ποιέ-εις)	'you do'
3rd s.	ποι-εῖ	(ποιέ-ει)	'he/she/it does'
1st pl.	ποι-οῦμεν	(ποιέ-ομεν)	'we do'
2nd pl.	ποι-εῖτε	(ποιέ-ετε)	'you do'
3rd pl.	ποι-οῦσι(ν)	(ποιέ-ουσι(ν))	'they do'

Of these types of verbs you have met *ὄράω*, *ποιέω*, *σκοπέω*, *βοηθέω*.

#### Notes

(i) English may use a pronoun to show who is doing the action (e.g. 'I', 'you', 'we', etc.). In Greek this is shown by the ending of the verb, e.g.

βαίν-ω 'I go'

βαίν-ομεν 'we go'

(ii) If the 3rd s. appears on its own with no stated subject, it means 'he, she, it - s', according to context. The same form is used when the subject is stated, e.g.

βαίνει 'he, she, it goes'

ὁ ἄνθρωπος βαίνει 'the man goes'

(iii) Note that Greek distinguishes between the s. and pl. forms of 'you'. Thus

βαίνεις means 'you go' where one person is addressed

βαίνετε means 'you go' where more than one person is addressed

#### Imperatives

6 The following forms, called imperatives, are used to express orders:

βαίν-ε 'go!' (s., addressed to one person)

βαίν-ετε 'go!' (pl., addressed to more than one person)

Contract forms are slightly different:

ὄρ-α	(ὄρα-ε)	'see!' (s.)	ποί-ει	(ποιέ-ε)	'do!, make!' (s.)
ὄρ-ᾶτε	(ὄρά-ετε)	'see!' (pl.)	ποι-εῖτε	(ποιέ-ετε)	'do!, make!' (pl.)



Notes

(i) You will notice that the plural order form is identical to that of the 2nd pl. of the indicative, i.e. βαίνετε could mean 'go!' or 'you are going'. The context will tell you which is right.

(ii) μή + imperative means 'don't' e.g. μὴ βαίνε 'don't go!'

(iii) Note the accent difference between ποίει 'do, act!', and ποιεῖ 'he does, he acts'.

Case

7 The technical term for the form which a noun takes when it is the subject of the sentence is the NOMINATIVE CASE; when it is the object of the sentence, the ACCUSATIVE CASE.

8 Consider the following sentence:

ὁ 'Ηγέστρατος ὄρᾳ τὸν ἄνθρωπον 'Hegestratos sees the man'

As long as the words are in that form, it would make no odds what order the words occurred in; the sentence (apart from a slight difference of emphasis) would mean precisely the same – for 'Ηγέστρατος is in the nominative case, indicating that he is subject of the sentence, and ἄνθρωπον is in the accusative case, indicating that it is object. And the definite articles also 'agree' with their nouns – ὁ (going with Hegestratos) is in the nominative, and τὸν (ἄνθρωπον) is in the accusative. If you wanted the sentence to mean 'the man sees Hegestratos', you would not need to alter the order of the words; but you would alter their case-forms, and make 'man' the subject (ὁ ἄνθρωπος) and 'Hegestratos' the object (τὸν 'Ηγέστρατον):

τὸν 'Ηγέστρατον ὄρᾳ ὁ ἄνθρωπος 'the man sees Hegestratos'

Note now the following sentence:

οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὄρῶσι τὸν 'Ηγέστρατον 'the men see Hegestratos'

The verb here has changed its shape, because the subject of the sentence is no longer singular (ὁ ἄνθρωπος 'man'), but plural (οἱ ἄνθρωποι 'men') – so the verb must be plural too.

Finally, observe that, while word-order plays a very important role indeed for determining meaning in English, English words do also change their form to indicate different functions, e.g.

book (s.), books (pl.)

I walk, he walks

he/him; she/her; I/me.

'the cat lies down', 'where is the cat's bowl?'

Note

There are in fact five cases for each Greek noun or adjective, and each case has a singular form and a plural form. (For the dual, see p. 239.) The cases are:



NOMINATIVE (nom.)

ACCUSATIVE (acc.)

GENITIVE (gen.)

DATIVE (dat.)

VOCATIVE (voc.) (We shall comment only occasionally on this case.)

We shall list all cases of nouns and adjectives, but for the moment you must concentrate on nom. and acc. only and ensure that you know those forms.

### The definite article and adjectives

9 The forms of the def. art., which corresponds roughly to English 'the', are as follows:

ὁ ἡ τό 'the'

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ὁ	τόν	τοῦ	τῷ	οἱ	τούς	τῶν	τοῖς
masculine (used with masculine nouns)							
ἡ	τήν	τῆς	τῇ	αἱ	τάς	τῶν	ταῖς
feminine (used with feminine nouns)							
τό	τό	τοῦ	τῷ	τά	τά	τῶν	ταῖς
neuter (used with neuter nouns)							

There are three types of form, masculine (m.) forms, feminine (f.) forms and neuter (n.) forms, since Greek distinguishes three types of noun, m., f., and n. The distinction of m., f., and n. is one of 'gender'. The m., f. and n. genders do not simply correspond to 'male', 'female' and 'inanimate', e.g.

τὸ μεράκιον (n.) 'the boy'

ὁ ψόφος (m.) 'the noise'

ἡ θάλασσα (f.) 'the sea'

10 For the beginner, the definite article is very useful. For it marks the case, and therefore the function of the noun for you. When you find ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, αἱ, linked to a noun, you know it must be the subject; τόν, τήν, τούς, τάς linked to a noun indicate that it is the object (unless preceded by a preposition). You will already have observed the use of linking devices in the text to help you in this respect.

Thus you can define the function of the following nouns without knowing how they decline, simply because you know the function of the definite article:

τὴν πόλιν, τὸν βασιλέα, οἱ γέροντες, τὰς τριήρεις.

*Note*

*In the early chapters, the def. art. will almost always come before its noun.*

**11** This rule of agreement applies to the relationship between all nouns and adjectives, and is very important. Masculine nouns will force the adjective to take its masculine form; feminine nouns will force it to adopt its feminine form; and neuter nouns, its neuter form.

**12** You have already met the adjective *καλός* 'fine, beautiful'. Here it is in all its forms:

*καλ-ός -ή -όν* 'fine, beautiful'

s.				pl.					
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.		nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	καλ-ός	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῶ		καλ-οί	καλ-ούς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
f.	καλ-ή	καλ-ήν	καλ-ῆς	καλ-ῇ		καλ-αί	καλ-άς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-αῖς
n.	καλ-όν	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῶ		καλ-ά	καλ-ά	καλ-ῶν	καλ-αῖς

*Note*

(i) Compare together the forms of the definite article and adjectives of the *καλός* type. You will see pleasing similarities between all their forms which means that learning one type lets you into the secret of a great many other types.

(ii) Adjectives of which the stem ends in *ρ, ε, ι* (e.g. *ἡμέτερος* 'our(s)') decline like *καλός*, except that the feminine singular retains *-α* instead of *-η* all the way through, i.e.

f. *ἡμέτερ-α ἡμέτερ-αν ἡμέτερ-ας ἡμέτερ-α*

(iii) Some adjectives of the *καλός* type keep the masculine endings even when describing feminine nouns. Such adjectives are dealt with at **141**.

**Adverbs**

**13** These are undeclined forms, usually based on adjectives, nearly always formed by adding *-ῶς* or *-έως* to the adjective stem: e.g.

*καλός* 'fine'                      *καλῶς* 'finely'  
*σαφής* 'clear'                    *σαφῶς* 'clearly'  
*ἀκριβής* 'accurate'            *ἀκριβῶς* 'accurately'  
*βαθύς* 'deep'                    *βαθέως* 'deeply'

Cf. Language Survey (13) (iii), p. 329.

**Nouns**

**14** Here is the full 'declension', as it is called, of all nouns like *ἄνθρωπος*, which is classified as **TYPE 2A**: almost all 2a nouns are **MASCULINE**.



ἄνθρωπ-ος, ὁ 'man, fellow' (2a)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἄνθρωπ-ος	ἄνθρωπ-ον	ἄνθρώπ-ου	ἄνθρώπ-ῳ

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἄνθρωπ-οι	ἄνθρώπ-ους	ἄνθρώπ-ων	ἄνθρώπ-οις

15 Here is the full declension of all nouns like ἔργον, classified as TYPE 2B and NEUTER

ἔργον, τό 'task, duty, job' (2b)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἔργ-ον	ἔργ-ον	ἔργ-ου	ἔργ-ῳ

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἔργ-α	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-ων	ἔργ-οις

Other 2b nouns you have met are νεώρι-ον, ἐμπόρι-ον.

### Notes

(i) Nom. and acc. are the same in s. and pl. of all neuter nouns. Only the context will tell you whether the word is to be taken as subject or object.

(ii) Neuter nouns normally take a SINGULAR VERB, even when they are in the plural, e.g.

τὰ ἐμπόριά ἐστι καλά 'the markets are fine'

(iii) Compare the declension of these two nouns with the m. and n. forms of the adjectives like καλός and the def. art., and note the similarities.

(iv) The vocative case is used when addressing people. The vocative s. of 2a nouns ends in -ε, e.g. ὦ ἄνθρωπε, τί ποιεῖς; 'Fellow, what are you doing?'

### Prepositions

16 Note that εἰς 'into' and πρὸς 'towards' take the acc. case. Note also that ἀπό 'away from', ἐκ 'out of, from' and ἐν 'in' take the genitive (ἀπο, ἐκ) and dative (ἐν) AND NO OTHER CASES. Consequently their meaning is fixed, and you need not worry for the moment about the form of the word which follows them. You will be dealing with genitives and datives later on.

**Particles**

17 One extremely important feature of the Greek language (and of Greek thought too) is the Greek love of drawing a contrast (even, at times, when there is not really one to be drawn). Such a contrast can be signalled by μέν 'on the one hand', which will usually be picked up by δέ 'on the other hand' later on. A smoother translation results if you translate with 'while' or 'but', e.g. not 'on the one hand he runs away, on the other hand the sailors pursue', but 'while he runs away, the sailors pursue' or 'he runs away, but the sailors pursue'.

**Vocabulary to be learnt with the grammar for Section One A-G**

ἀκούω <i>hear, listen</i>	ἐν (+ dat.) <i>in; on; among</i>	ὄραω (ἴδ-)* <i>see</i>
ἀναβαίνω (ἀναβα-)* <i>go/come up</i>	ἔχω (σχ-)* <i>have; hold</i>	πλέω (πλευσ-)* <i>sail</i>
ἄνθρωπος, ὁ <i>man; fellow (2a)</i>	θάλαττα, ἡ <i>sea</i>	πλοῖον, τό <i>vessel; ship (2b)</i>
ἀπό (+ gen.) <i>from; away from</i>	κακός ἢ ὄν <i>bad, evil, cowardly, lowly, mean</i>	ποιέω <i>make; do</i>
ἀποθνήσκω (ἀποθαν-)* <i>die</i>	καλός ἢ ὄν <i>fine, beautiful; good</i>	πρός (+ acc.) <i>to; towards</i>
ἀποχωρέω <i>go away, depart</i>	καταβαίνω	ρίπτω <i>throw</i>
βαίνω (βα-)* <i>go/come, walk</i>	(καταβα-)* <i>go/come down</i>	σώζω <i>save</i>
βλέπω <i>look (at)</i>	κυβερνήτης, ὁ <i>captain, helmsman</i>	σώσασθαι <i>safe</i>
βοηθέω <i>run to help, help</i>	λέγω (εἶπ-)* <i>say; speak; tell; mean</i>	σωτηρία, ἡ <i>safety</i>
διώκω <i>pursue</i>	μένω (μειν-)* <i>remain; wait for</i>	φεύγω (φυγ-)* <i>run off; flee</i>
εἰς (+ acc.) <i>to, into, onto</i>	ναύτης, ὁ <i>sailor</i>	φίλος, ὁ <i>friend (2a)</i>
ἐκ (+ gen.) <i>out of</i>		φροντίζω <i>think; worry</i>
ἔλθέ <i>come! (s.)</i>		

\* These parenthesised forms must be learnt with the word. They are very important stems of the verb (though different, as you can see, from the present), which will be introduced fully in later sections. ○

---

**Exercises – notes**

---

You should only do the exercises after the Text is read, the Vocabulary learnt, and the Grammar understood.

For ease of reference there are five divisions in the exercises:

(a) *Words* – vocabulary-building exercises, based on words you have already met. These are provided for Sections One–Ten only.

(b) *Morphology*  
 (c) *Syntax* } practising forms and their manipulation in sentences.

(d) *English into Greek* – preceded in Sections One–Four by Greek–English patterns. English–Greek sentences appear from then on at convenient intervals. Each section has a passage of prose in addition. There is an English–Greek vocabulary at the end of the book; please use this wherever you find problems. It has been specially written to help with the exercises in this volume.

(c) *Test exercises* – these occur at the end of each section (twice in One and Six) and test grammar and vocabulary from the section just completed. They should be done as written exercises, without help from vocabulary or grammar, after all other work on a section has been completed.

No exercises are provided for the unadapted sections (Fourteen, Eighteen and Nineteen.)

## Exercises for Section One A–G

### (a) Words

1. From the words in the left-hand column (which you have met) deduce the meaning of those on the right:

βαίνω	ἐκβαίνω
διώκω	ἐκδιώκω
θάλαττα	θαλάττιος α ον
κυβερνήτης	κυβερνώ
ναύτης	ναυτικός ή όν
όρώ	είσορώ
πλέω   πλοίου	ό πλούς (=πλό -ος, contr.)
φεύγω	άποφεύγω

### (b) Morphology

- Translate each word, then give the plural form:  
βαίν-εις, βλέπ-ω, ποι-εϊ, όρ-ῶ, βοήθ-ει
- Translate each word, then give the singular form:  
φροντίζ-ετε, κατα-βαίν-ουσι, άνα-βαίν-ομεν, όρ-άτε, άπο-χωρ-εϊτε
- Fit the appropriate form of the definite article to the following nouns:  
άνθρωπ-οι, ψόφ-ος, πλοϊ-α, λέμβ-ον (2a), νεώρι-ον (2b), άνθρώπ-ους
- Put the adjective and noun into the correct form:
  - ό καλ- άνθρωπ-
  - τά καλ- νεώρι-
  - τό καλ- έμπορι-
  - τούς καλ- άνθρώπ-
  - τόν καλ- άνθρωπ-

### (d) English into Greek

Translate these pairs of sentences:

- ό Ζηνόθεμις βαίνει εις τό πλοίου.

The man runs off towards the boat.

2. καλός ἐστὶν ὁ Παρθενών.  
The ship is safe.
3. ἄρα οὐχ ὄρᾳς σὺ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν;  
Can you (s.) see the men too?
4. δεῦρο ἔλθετε καὶ βλέπετε.  
Come and help (pl.)! Chase the man! Don't run away!
5. οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀναβαίνουσιν.  
The friends are waiting.

### Test Exercise One A–G

Translate into English (n.b. underlined words are given in the vocabulary):

τὸ πλοῖον ἀποχωρεῖ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς Εὐβοίας, πλεῖ δὲ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ. ὁ μὲν Ζηνόθεμις βλέπει πρὸς τὴν γῆν. ὁ δὲ Ἡγέστρατος κάτω μένει καὶ καταδύει τὸ πλοῖον. πέλεκυν γὰρ ἔχει ὁ ἄνθρωπος. ἄνω δὲ εἰσὶν ὁ κυβερνήτης καὶ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις. βλέπουσι πρὸς τὴν γῆν καὶ ὄρωσι τὰ τε νεώρια καὶ τὸν Παρθενῶνα. ἀλλὰ ἐξαίφνης ἀκούουσι τὸν ψόφον. ἔπειτα δὲ καταβαίνουσιν.

ΚΥΒΕΡΝΗΤΗΣ τίς ποιεῖ τὸν ψόφον; ἄρα ὄρᾳς, ὦ Δικαιοπόλι;  
ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ ναί· ὄρω ἔγωγε· ὁ γὰρ Ἡγέστρατος τὸν ψόφον ποιεῖ.  
πέλεκυν γὰρ ἔχει ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ.

ΚΥΒ μὴ μένετε, ὦ ναῦται, ἀλλὰ βοηθεῖτε καὶ διώκετε τὸν ἄνθρωπον.

ὁ μὲν Ἡγέστρατος φεύγει κάτωθεν, ὁ δὲ Ζηνόθεμις ἄνω μένει. οἱ μὲν ναῦται ἀναβαίνουσιν κάτωθεν. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι τοὺς ναύτας σαφῶς ὄρωσι καὶ ρίπτουσιν ἑαυτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. εἰς τὴν μὲν θάλατταν φεύγουσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ἐν δὲ τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποθνήσκουσιν.

### Vocabulary (in order of occurrence in the text)

τὴν γῆν	the land	ἐξαίφνης	suddenly
κάτω	below	ψόφος, ὁ	noise (2a)
καταδύω	sink	τῇ δεξιᾷ	his right hand
πέλεκυν	axe (acc.)	κάτωθεν	from below
νεώριον, τό	dockyard (2b)	ἑαυτοὺς	themselves

## Vocabulary for Section One H

ἀεὶ	always	εἰ	you (s.) are	ἐπὶ (+acc.)	over
ἀκριβ-ῶς	closely	ἐστί(ν)	he/there/it is	ἐρωτά-ω	ask
δῆλόν ἐστι(ν)	it is clear	ἐσμεν	(we) are	ἡμᾶς	us
διὰ (+acc.)	because of	εἰσι(ν)	(they) are	ἡ ναῦς	the ship

κοίλη ἐνὶ νηί in a hollow ship  
 κυβερνά-ω steer  
 κυβερνήτα captain (voc.)  
 μέλαινα black (nom.)  
 μῶρ-ος -α -ον stupid  
 ναῦτα sailor (voc.)  
 ναῦται sailors (voc.)  
 ναύτης τις a sailor (nom.)  
 νηὶ θοῇ a swift ship  
 νηὶ μελαίνῃ a black ship  
 νύξ night (nom.)

οἶνοπα πόντον the wine-faced  
 sea (acc.)  
 ὀναύτης the sailor  
 ὁ Σωκράτης Socrates  
 οἶδα I know  
 οἶσθα you (s.) know  
 οἶδε(ν) (he) knows  
 ὀμηρίζ-ω quote Homer  
 ὅτι that  
 παίξ-ω (πρός + acc.) joke (at)  
 ραψωδ-ός, ὁ rhapsode (2a)

ραψωδ-ός τις a rhapsode  
 σαφ-ῶς clearly  
 σιωπά-ω be quiet  
 τᾶν my dear chap  
 (condescendingly)  
 τὴν νύκτα the night/dark  
 τί τὸ what's this?  
 τὸν κυβερνήτην the captain  
 τὸν λιμένα the harbour  
 τοὺς μαθητάς the/his students  
 τῷ πλοίῳ the ship  
 ὡσπερ like

### Vocabulary to be learnt

δῆλος ἦ ον clear; obvious  
 ὅτι that  
 παίξω (πρός + acc.) play; joke  
 (at)

ραψωδός, ὁ rhapsode (2a)  
 σαφῶς clearly

## Vocabulary for Section One I

ἀπαιδευτ-ος -ον an  
 ignorant  
 γινώσκ-ω know  
 διότι because  
 εἶμι I am  
 εἶ you (s.) are  
 ἐστί(ν) (he) is  
 ἐμ-ός -ή -όν my  
 ἔμπειρ-ος -ον experienced  
 ἔργ-ον, τό work, task (2b)  
 ἡ ναὺς the ship  
 ἢ or  
 θο-ός -ή -όν swift  
 κοίλ-ος -η -ον hollow

μὰ Δία by Zeus  
 μέλαινα black (nom.)  
 μὲν οὖν no rather  
 μῶρ-ος -α -ον stupid  
 ναί yes  
 ναυτικ-ά, τά naval matters  
 (2b)  
 οἶσθα you (s.) know  
 Ὀμηρ-ος, ὁ Homer (2a) (epic  
 poet, author of the Iliad and  
 Odyssey)  
 περὶ (+ acc.) about, with  
 regard to  
 περὶ Ὀμήρου about Homer

πολεμικ-ός -ή -όν of war  
 πολλὰ many things (acc.)  
 πότερον . . . ἢ whether . . . or  
 πῶς how?  
 πῶς γὰρ οὐ; of course  
 στρατηγικ-ά, τά generalship  
 (2b)  
 στρατηγικ-ός -ή -όν of a  
 general  
 στρατιωτικ-ά, τά soldiering  
 (2b)  
 τί δέ; what next?

### Vocabulary to be learnt

γινώσκω (γνο-) know;  
 perceive; resolve  
 ἔμπειρος ον skilled, experienced  
 ἔργον, τό task, job (2b)

μῶρος α ον stupid; foolish  
 περὶ (+ acc.) about  
 πολλὰ many things (acc.)  
 ναί yes

## Vocabulary for Section One J

ἀγαθ-ός -ή -όν good  
 ἀεὶ always  
 ἀκριβ-ῶς accurately

ἅμα at the same time  
 ἀριστ-ος -η -ον best  
 δήπου of course

εἶ you (s.) are  
 ἐστί(ν) (he/it) is  
 εἰσι(ν) (they) are



ἐμέ me	μέλαινα black (nom.)	οὕτως thus, in this way
ἡναῦς the ship	μέντοι yes indeed	παῖδες children (nom.)
ἡῤαψωδική the rhapsode's skill	μία τέχνη one and the same skill (nom.)	πότερον . . . ἢ whether . . . or
ἡστρατηγική the general's skill	ναῦται sailors (voc.)	πῶς γὰρ οὐ; of course
ἦ οἱ	νῆ Δία by Zeus	στρατηγ-ός, ὁ general (2a)
θο-ός -ῆ-όν swift	οἱ Ἕλληνες the Greeks	Σωκρατέ-ω play Socrates
κοιλ-ος -η -ον hollow	οἶδε(ν) (he) knows	τοὺς μαθητάς the/his students
μάλιστα yes, indeed	ὁ Σωκράτης Socrates	τῶν Ἑλλήνων of the Greeks
	οὐκοῦν not . . . therefore	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀεί always	ἦ οἱ
ἀκριβῶς accurately; closely	ναῦς, ἡ ship
ἄριστος ἦ οἱ best; very good	οἶδα know
εἰμί be	πῶς γὰρ οὐ; of course
Ἕλλην, ὁ Greek	στρατηγός, ὁ general (2a)

## ○ Grammar for Section One H–J

### Summary:

Pres. of εἰμί, οἶδα

N. pl. of adjs.

τε . . . καί

### Verbs

Some irregular presents, εἰμί 'I am', οἶδα 'I know'

18 Note the verb 'to be' in the present:

εἰμί	'I am'	1st s.
εἶ	'you are'	2nd s.
ἐστί(ν)	'he/she/it is'	3rd s.
ἐσμέν	'we are'	1st pl.
ἐστέ	'you are'	2nd pl.
εἰσὶ(ν)	'they are'	3rd pl.

19 Note the verb 'to know' in the present:

οἶδα	'I know'	1st s.
οἶσθα	'you know'	2nd s.
οἶδε	'he/she/it/knows'	3rd s.
ἴσμεν	'we know'	1st pl.
ἴστε	'you know'	2nd pl.
ἴσασι(ν)	'they know'	3rd pl.

**Notes**

(i) The verb 'to be' does not need to appear in a sentence if it can be assumed. Cf. English 'Let's pretend that the sea is red, the sky (is) green and the air (is) blue', and the very common *καλός* inscriptions on Greek pots, e.g.

*Μέμνων καλός* 'Memnon (is) handsome'

(ii) In the sentence 'the Word was God', 'Word' is the subject, while 'God' is traditionally called the complement. In Greek, the complement does not normally have a definite article.

(iii) Complements always agree in case with the word with which they go; this is normally the nominative case.

**Nouns**

*20 πολλά* means 'many things'. It is, in fact, the neuter plural of an adjective meaning 'much, many', and as neuter plural can take on the meaning 'many things'. In a similar way, *στρατηγικός* means 'of a general', but in the neuter plural with a def. art., *τὰ στρατηγικά*, it means 'a general's business', or 'generalship'. This use of the n. pl. of an adjective, especially when linked with the def. art., is very common, e.g.

*τὰ ναυτικά* 'naval matters'

*τὰ στρατιωτικά* 'military matters'

**Particles**

*21 τε...τε* and *τε...καί* link two words or phrases together ('both...and'), e.g.

*ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ῥαψωδός* 'Dikaiopolis and the rhapsode'

*ὁρᾷ τε ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ φεύγει* 'the man sees and runs'

Note the position of *τε* in these phrases.

## Exercises for Section One H-J

**(a) Words**

1. From the words in the left-hand column deduce the meaning of those on the right:

<i>ἀποχωρῶ</i>	<i>περιχωρῶ</i>
<i>βαίνω</i>	<i>περιβαίνω</i>
<i>δηλός</i>	<i>δηλῶ</i>
<i>εἶμι</i>	<i>ἔνειμι</i>
<i>*Ἕλλην</i>	<i>*Ἕλληνικός ἢ ὄν</i>
<i>μένω</i>	<i>περιμένω</i>
<i>στρατηγός</i>	<i>στρατηγῶ</i>

**(b) Morphology**

1. Translate each verb, then change to the singular or plural form as appropriate:

ἔστέ, γινώσκει, οἶσθα, ἐστί, ἴσασι, παίζει, εἰμί, ἴσμεν

**(c) Syntax**

1. Translate these sentences:
- ὁ ῥαψωδός ἐστιν Ἕλλην.
  - ὁ Ἕλλην ἐστὶν ἄνθρωπος.
  - στρατηγοὶ ἀριστοὶ εἰσὶν οἱ ῥαψωδοί.
  - μῶρός ἐστιν ὁ ῥαψωδός.
  - κυβερνήτης ὁ ἄνθρωπος.

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate these pairs of sentences:

- δηλόν ἐστιν ὅτι ὁ Δικαιοπόλις παίζει πρὸς τὸν ῥαψωδόν.  
It is clear that the rhapsode knows many things.
- ἔμπειρός εἰμι ἐγὼ περὶ πολλά.  
You are not experienced in the job.
- οἱ ῥαψωδοὶ εἰσὶ στρατηγοὶ ἀριστοί.  
The best general is a rhapsode.
- ἄρ' οὐκ οἶσθα ὅτι ὁ ἄνθρωπος παίζει ἀεὶ;  
Doesn't he know that the rhapsode is speaking accurately?
- ἔμπειρος μὲν οὐκ εἶ, μῶρος δέ.  
But I am not a fool: I know a lot.

**Test Exercise One H–J**

Translate into English:

τὸ μὲν οὖν πλοῖον πλεῖ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ. οἱ δὲ ναῦται οὐκ ἴσασι ποῦ ἐστὶ τὸ πλοῖον.

ἔρωτῶσιν οὖν τὸν κυβερνήτην ποῦ ἐστὶν. ὁ μὲν κυβερνήτης λέγει ὅτι ἐγγὺς τοῦ λιμένος ἐστὶ τὸ πλοῖον. ἐξαίφνης δὲ ὁ ῥαψωδὸς ὀμηρίζει. καὶ δηλόν ἐστιν ὅτι πολλὰ γινώσκει περὶ Ὀμήρου ὁ ἄνθρωπος. ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις παίζει πρὸς τὸν ῥαψωδόν.

ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ ἄρα γινώσκεις τὰ ῥαψωδικά, ὦ ῥαψωδέ;

ΡΑΨΩΙΔΟΣ πῶς δὲ οὐ; γινώσκω δὲ καὶ τὰ στρατηγικά.

ΔΙΚ. τί λέγεις; ῥαψωδὸς γὰρ εἶ καὶ οὐ στρατηγός.

ΡΑΨ. ἄρα οὐκ οἶσθα ὅτι ὁ ἀγαθὸς ῥαψωδὸς ἐστὶν ἅμα καὶ στρατηγὸς ἀγαθός;

ΔΙΚ. οὐκ, ἀλλὰ οἶδα ὅτι σὺ μῶρος εἶ, ὦ ῥαψωδέ. σὺ μὲν γὰρ ῥαψωδὸς εἶ τῶν  
 Ἑλλήνων ἄριστος καὶ ἔμπειρος περὶ τοῦ Ὀμήρου. περὶ δὲ τὰ  
 στρατηγικὰ οὐκ ἔμπειρος εἶ, οὐδὲ οἶσθα οὐδὲν ἀκριβῶς.

### *Vocabulary*

ἐγγὺς τοῦ λιμένος	near the	ἀγαθός ἢ ὄν	good
harbour		ἅμα	at the same time
ἐξαίφνης	suddenly	τῶν Ἑλλήνων	of the Greeks
ἄμνηζω	recite Homer	οὐδὲ	and . . . not

## Section Two

---

### Vocabulary for Section Two A

---

ἄγε come! (s.)	κάλλιστ-ος-η-ον very, most beautiful	πίπτ-ω fall, die
ἀλλήλ-ους one another (acc.)	λόγ-ος, ὁ story (2a)	ῥητορικ-ά, τά rhetoric (2b)
βάρβαρ-ος, ὁ barbarian, Persian (2a)	μάλιστα yes, indeed; very well	ῥητορικ-ός-ῆ-όν rhetorical
βραδέ-ως slowly	Μηδικ-ά, τά the Persian Wars (2b)	Σαλαμίνα Salamis (acc.)
γίγν-εται (it) happens	Μῆδ-ος, ὁ Persian (2a)	τὰ πράγματα events
δη now, then (with imperative)	ναῦτ-αι sailors	τὰς Ἀθῆν-ας Athens
δια-λέγ-ονται (they) converse	νῆσ-ος, ἡ island (2a)	τὴν ἡμετέρ-αν τόλμ-αν our courage
δι-έρχ-εται (he) relates	οἱ Ἕλληνες the Greeks	τὴν ναυμαχί-αν the naval battle
ἐκεῖ there	οἱ ναῦτ-αι the sailors, crew	τὴν νίκ-ην the/our victory
έρχ-εται (it) is going	ὅποσ-οι-αι-α how many?	τὴν Σαλαμίνα Salamis
έρχ-όμεθα (we) are going	οὐ γάρ; is he not?	τίνα ἔργα what deeds (acc.)
ἡδέ-ως gladly, with pleasure	παρά (+ acc.) past, along	τοῖς Μηδικοῖς the Persian Wars
ἤδη now	περὶ Ὀμήρου about Homer	τολμά-ω dare, undertake
ἡμῖν to us		τὸν Πειραιᾶ the Piraeus
ἡσυχάζ-ω keep quiet		

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἡδέως with pleasure, sweetly
ἤδη by now, now, already
παρά (+ acc.) along, beside

---

### Vocabulary for Section Two B

---

ἀγαθ-ός-ῆ-όν good	αἰ ἀπορί-αι the perplexities, distress	αἰ ἱκετεῖ-αι the supplications
αἰεῖδ-ε sing! (s.)	αἰ βο-αί the shouts	αἰ νῆες the ships
Ἀθηναί-ος, ὁ Athenian (2a)		αἰ τῶν Ἀθηναί-ων (the ships: of the Athenians)

ἀπορέ-ω be at a loss, be perplexed	μάχ-ονται (they) fight	τὰς ναῦς their ships
ἀφ-ικν-οῦνται (they) arrive	μῆνιν οὐλομένην destructive wrath (acc.)	ταχέ-ως quickly
βάρβαρ-ος, ὁ Persian, barbarian (2a)	ναυτικ-όν, τό the navy (2b)	τέλος finally
βέβαι-ος -α -ον secure	νικά-ω defeat, win	τῆ ναυμαχί-α the naval battle
βραδέ-ως slowly	Ξέρξου θείου βασιλῆος of Xerxes, the god-like king	τὴν Ἑλλάδα Greece
γίγν-εται (it) becomes	οἱ Ἕλληνες the Greeks	τὴν πατρίδα the (tr) fatherland
διὰ (+ acc.) on account of	οἱ Πέρσ-αι the Persians	τὴν πόλιν the city
εἰσ-βαίν-ω embark	ὀλίγ-οι -αι -α few	τὴν τόλμ-αν their courage
ἐλευθερ-οῦσι(ν) (they) set free	ὅσ-οι -αι -α how many!	τὴν ὕβριν the aggression
ἡ ἀπορί-α the perplexity, distress	οὕτως thus, so	τοῖς θεοῖς to the gods
ἡ ἀρετ-ῆ (the) courage, excellence	πίπτ-ω fall, die	τὸ πλήθος superior numbers
ἡ ἐλευθερί-α (the) freedom	πολλ-αῖ many (nom.)	τῶν Ἀθηναί-ων of the Athenians
ἡ στρατι-ά the army	πολλ-ῆ much (nom.)	τῶν Ἑλλήνων of the Greeks
ἡ τόλμ-α (the) courage	πολ-ύς much, great (nom.)	τῶν θε-ῶν of the gods
ἡ τῶν Ἑλλήνων (the courage) of the Greeks	πολλὰ εὐχ-ονται they make many prayers	τῶν Περσ-ῶν of the Persian
Θε-ά goddess (voc.)	προσ-έρχ-εται (it) advances	τῶν στρατηγ-ῶν of their generals
θύ-ω (make a) sacrifice	προσ-έρχ-ονται (they) advance	ὑπέρ τῆς ἐλευθερί-ας for freedom
κίνδυν-ος, ὁ danger (2a)	τὰς θυσί-ας the sacrifices	φόβ-ος, ὁ fear (2a)
		φοβ-οῦνται (they) fear

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀγαθός ἢ ὄν good, noble, courageous	βραδέως slowly
Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ Athenian (2a)	νικάω win, defeat
ἀπορέ-ω be at a loss; have no resources	ὄσος ἢ ὄν how great!
βέβαιος α. ο. υ. secure	πίπτω (πεσ-) fall, die
	τέλος in the end, finally

## Vocabulary for Section Two C

ἀγών the contest (nom.)	ἐλευθερ-οῦτε free! (pl.)	ἡσυχί-αν ἔχ-ω keep quiet
αἰ νῆες the ships	Ἕλλήνων of the Greeks	ἠχέ-ω echo
ἀληθῶς truthfully	ἐμ-ός -ῆ -όν my	ἴσως perhaps
ἅμα at the same time	ἐνθα καὶ ἐνθα this way and that	ἴτε come! (pl.)
ἅμα ἔω at daybreak	ἐν τοῖς βαρβάροις among the barbarians	κάλλιστ-ος -ῆ -ον very fine, most lovely
ἀσθίς agam	ἐπειδή when	καλόν τινα λόγον a fine tale
ἀφ-ικν-εῖται (it) arrives	ζητέ-ω seek, look for	λόγ-ος, ὁ story, tale (2a)
βο-ή τις a shout	ἤδη now, already	μέντοι still, nonetheless
γίγν-εται there is, it becomes	ἡμῖν to us	μοι to me
γυναῖκας your wives (acc.)	ἡ σάλπιγξ trumpet	ναῦτ-αι sailors (voc.)
δῆ then, now		ναυτικ-όν, τό navy (2b)
ἐγγύς Σαλαμῖνος near Salamis		

νύξ night  
οἱ Ἕλληνες the Greeks  
οὐδὲν λέγ-ω speak nonsense  
οὐκοῦν not . . . therefore  
παῖδες children (voc.)  
παῖδας your children (acc.)  
πάππ-ος, ὁ grandfather (2a)  
πατρίδ' = πατρίδα fatherland  
(acc.)  
πολλάκις often  
πότερον . . . ἢ whether . . . or  
Σαλαμίνα Salamis (acc.)

Σαλαμινομάχ-ης a soldier at  
Salamis  
σιωπά-ω be quiet  
σκοπέ-ω look  
τὰ ἀληθῆ the truth  
τὰ πράγματα the events  
τὰ περὶ . . . (the events)  
around  
τὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων (the fine  
deeds) of the Greeks  
τὴν βο-ήν the shout  
τοῖς βαρβάροις the barbarians

τὸ ποίημα the poem  
τῶν Ἑλλήνων of the Greeks  
τῶν Περσ-ῶν of the Persians  
τῶν πετρ-ῶν the rocks  
ὑπὲρ πάντων for everything  
φῆς you (s.) say  
φόβ-ος, ὁ fear (2a)  
ψευδῆ lies (acc.)  
ψευδ-ῶς falsely  
ᾧδε as follows, thus  
ᾧσπερ like

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄμα at the same time  
ἀδθις again,  
βάρβαρος, ὁ barbarian,  
foreigner (2a)  
ἐμός ἢ ὄν my, mine

ἤσυχάζω be quiet, keep quiet  
κάλλιστος ἦσιν most/very  
fine/beautiful/good  
λόγος, ὁ story, tale (2a)  
πότερον . . . ἢ whether . . . or

σιωπά-ω be silent  
σκοπέ-ω look (at), consider  
ψευδῶς falsely

## Vocabulary for Section Two D

ἀκόσμ-ως in disorder  
ἀλλήλοις to one another  
ἀλλήλ-ους one another (acc.)  
ἄλλ-ος -η -ο other, rest of  
ἀνα-χωρέ-ω retreat  
ἀτάκτ-ως out of rank  
γίγν-ονται (they) become  
δειν-ός -ή -όν terrible, dire  
διὰ (+ acc.) because of  
ἐλεύθερ-ος -α -ον free  
ἐξαίφνης suddenly, out of the  
blue  
ἐπειδὴ when, since, because  
ἐπ-έρχ-ονται they advance  
against  
ἐπί (+ acc.) to, against,  
towards  
ἐπι-πλέ-ω sail forward  
attack  
ἔτι still  
εὖ well  
ἡ μεταβολ-ή the change  
θε-ᾶται (he) watches, gazes at

θε-ός, ὁ god (2a)  
κατὰ (+ acc.) by, in,  
according to  
κολάζ-ω punish  
κόσμῳ in order  
κυβερνήτα captain  
λαμβάν-ω capture, take  
μάλα very  
μαχ-όμεθα (we) } fight  
μάχ-ονται (they) }  
Μηδικ-ά, τά the Persian Wars  
(2b)  
Μῆδ-ος, ὁ Persian (2a)  
μισέ-ω hate  
μῖσος hatred (nom.)  
ναυμαχί-αν a naval battle  
(acc.)  
Ξέρξ-ης Xerxes (nom.)  
ὁ βασιλεὺς the king  
οἱ δὲ (with οἱ μὲν) others  
οἱ μὲν (with οἱ δὲ) some  
ὁμονόε-ω be of one mind,  
agree

ὁμόνοι-α agreement (nom.)  
ὁ Ξέρξης Xerxes  
οὐκέτι no longer  
οὕτως in this way  
πολέμι-οι, οἱ the enemy (2a)  
πόλεμ-ος, ὁ war (2a)  
πολλ-ή much, great (nom.)  
προσ-έρχ-ονται (they)  
advance  
τάξις rank (acc.)  
τὰς ναῦς the ships  
ταχέ-ως quickly  
τὴν ἀρετ-ήν their courage  
τὴν ναυμαχί-αν the naval  
battle  
τὴν πόλιν the city  
τῆς ὕβρις the aggression  
τις (nom.)  
τοῖς Ἕλλησι the Greeks  
τολμά-ω be daring  
τότε then  
τὸ φάσμα the phantom,  
apparition



τοὺς ναύτ-ας the sailors  
 τοὺς Πέρσ-ας the Persians  
 τῶν Πέρσ-ων of the Persians  
 τῶν πραγμάτων of/in things,  
 affairs  
 φαίν-εται (it) appears

φάσμα τι γυναικεῖον a  
 phantom in female form  
 (nom. n.)  
 φεῦ alas!  
 φεῦ τοῦ πολέμου alas for the  
 war!

φεῦ τῶν Ἑλλήνων alas for  
 the Greeks!  
 φοβ-οῦμαι (I) fear  
 φοβ-εῖσθε be afraid of! (pl.)  
 ὡσπερ like, as

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναχωρέω retreat  
 διά (+ acc.) because of  
 ἐλεύθερος α. ον free  
 ἐπειδή when  
 ἐπί (+ acc.) against, at, to

οὐκέτι no longer  
 οὕτω(s) thus, so, in this way  
 πολέμοι, οἱ the enemy (2a)  
 πολέμιος α. ον hostile, enemy  
 πόλεμος, ὁ war (2a)

ταχέως quickly  
 τι a, something  
 τολμάω dare, be daring,  
 undertake  
 ὡσπερ like, as

## ○ Grammar for Section Two

### Summary:

Pres. ind. act. -όω  
 Pres. ind. and imper. mid. -ομαι, -άομαι, -έομαι  
 βοή, ἀπορία, τόλμα, ναύτης (nom., acc.)  
 Gen. pls. meaning 'of'  
 Uses of def. art.  
 More preps.

### Verbs

Present indicative active of contracted verbs in ό-ω, δηλό-ω 'I show'

22 Here are the forms of the contracted verb δηλόω:

δηλ-ῶ	(δηλό-ω)	'I show' etc.
δηλ-οῖς	(δηλό-εις)	
δηλ-οῖ	(δηλό-ει)	
δηλ-οῦμεν	(δηλό-ομεν)	
δηλ-οὔτε	(δηλό-ετε)	
δηλ-οῦσι(ν)	(δηλό-ουσι(ν))	
Imperatives		
δήλ-ου	(δήλο-ε)	'show!' (s.)
δηλ-οὔτε	(δηλό-ετε)	'show!' (pl.)

Present indicative middle verbs, contracted and uncontracted, ἔρχ-ομαι 'I go', φοβέ-ομαι 'I fear', θεά-ομαι 'I watch'

23 Most of the verbs you have met so far have ended in -ω in the 1st s. But there is a second set of verbal forms, called 'middle', which end in -ομαι. Of these you



have met ἔρχομαι, γίγνομαι, μάχομαι, φοβέομαι, θεάομαι. Here are their conjugations in full:

ἔρχ-ομαι 'I go'	φοβ-οῦμαι (έ-ομαι) 'I fear'	θε-ῶμαι (ά-ομαι) 'I watch'
ἔρχ-η (ει)	φοβ-ῆ (έ-η)	θε-ᾶ (ά-η)
ἔρχ-εται	φοβ-εῖται (έ-εται)	θε-ᾶται (ά-εται)
ἔρχ-όμεθα	φοβ-ούμεθα (ε-όμεθα)	θε-ώμεθα (α-όμεθα)
ἔρχ-εσθε	φοβ-εἰσθε (έ-εσθε)	θε-ᾶσθε (ά-εσθε)
ἔρχ-ονται	φοβ-οῦνται (έ-ονται)	θε-ῶνται (ά-ονται)

### Imperative forms

ἔρχ-ου 'go!' (s.)	φοβ-οῦ (έ-ου) 'fear!'	θε-ῶ (ά-ου) 'watch!'
ἔρχ-εσθε 'go!' (pl.)	φοβ-εἰσθε (έ-εσθε) 'fear!'	θε-ᾶσθε (ά-εσθε) 'watch!'

### Nouns

24 Here are four further noun types, categorised as types 1a, 1b, 1c, 1d, to add to the 2a and 2b types that you learnt in the last chapter. Note again the similarities between these type 1 nouns, and their resemblance to the feminine def. art. Types 1a, b, and c are FEMININE; 1d is MASCULINE.

#### βο-ή, ἡ 'shout' (1a)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
βο-ή	βο-ήν	βο-ῆς	βο-ῆ	βο-αί	βο-άς	βο-ῶν	βο-αῖς

#### ναύτ-ης, ὁ 'sailor' (1d)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ναύτ-ης	ναύτ-ην	ναύτ-ου	ναύτ-η	ναύτ-αι	ναύτ-ας	ναύτ-ῶν	ναύτ-αις

#### ἀπορί-α, ἡ 'perplexity' (1b)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἀπορί-α	ἀπορί-αν	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-α	ἀπορί-αι	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-ῶν	ἀπορί-αις



## τόλμ-α, ἡ 'daring' (1c)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
τόλμ-α	τόλμ-αν	τόλμ-ης	τόλμ-ῃ

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
τόλμ-αι	τόλμ-ας	τόλμ-ῶν	τόλμ-αις

## Note

1b type nouns, like ἀπορία, keep the α all the way through the singular. They follow the same rule as already quoted for adjectives of which the stem ends in ρ ε ι (cf. 12 note). The final α may be long or short; the final α in the nom. and acc. s. of 1c nouns is short.

## Genitive case

25 All genitive plurals end in -ων, e.g. ἀνθρώπων, ἔργων, τῶν, καλῶν, ναυτῶν, etc. The genitive case has a wide range of functions, but is often equivalent to the English 'of' (it is this function you must learn at the moment), e.g.

τῶν ἀνθρώπων 'of the men'; τῶν ἔργων 'of the deeds'.

26 Note the order of the genitive in the following sentences:

τὸ πλοῖον τῶν ἀνθρώπων

τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων πλοῖον

τὸ πλοῖον τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων

τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὸ πλοῖον

The basic meaning of all these is 'the ship of the men, the men's ship'. Note especially the norm, which is τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων πλοῖον, e.g.

ὄρω τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων πλοῖον 'I am observing the men's ship' (in reply to the question 'What are you doing?'); but also note the very common:

τὸ πλοῖον ὄρω τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων 'it's the men's ship I see' (in reply to the question 'Whose ship do you see?').

27 Note also the use of the def. art. in the following phrases, especially its position:

τὰ περὶ Σαλαμίνα πράγματα

τὰ πράγματα τὰ περὶ Σαλαμίνα

τὰ περὶ Σαλαμίνα

'events around Salamis'

Likewise, consider:

οἱ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι 'the men in Salamis, those in Salamis'

αἱ ἐν τῷ Πειραιεῖ 'the women in the Piraeus'

This use of the def. art., to extend a phrase, is very common. It works in a similar way to the genitive usages outlined above.

### Prepositions

28 Note *παρά* + acc. 'along, alongside'; and *ἐπί* + acc. 'at, onto, to', and *διά* + acc. 'because of'.

### Vocabulary to be learnt with the grammar of Section Two

<i>ἀπορία</i> , ἡ <i>perplexity; lack of provisions</i> (1b)	<i>ἐπέρχομαι</i> ( <i>ἐπελθ-</i> ) <i>go against, attack</i>	<i>ὁμόνοια</i> , ἡ <i>agreement, harmony</i> (1b)
<i>βοή</i> , ἡ <i>shout</i> (1a)	<i>ἔρχομαι</i> ( <i>έλθ-</i> ) <i>go, come</i>	<i>προσέρχομαι</i> ( <i>προσελθ-</i> ) <i>advance, go/come towards</i>
<i>γίγνομαι</i> ( <i>γεν-</i> ) <i>become; be; be born; happen; arise</i>	<i>ἤσυχία</i> , ἡ <i>quiet, peace</i> (1b)	<i>στρατιά</i> , ἡ <i>army</i> (1b)
<i>διέρχομαι</i> ( <i>διελθ-</i> ) <i>go through, relate</i>	<i>θεά</i> , ἡ <i>goddess</i> (1b)	<i>τόλμα</i> , ἡ <i>daring</i> (1c)
<i>ἐλευθερία</i> , ἡ <i>freedom</i> (1b)	<i>μάχομαι</i> ( <i>μαχεσ-</i> ) <i>fight</i>	<i>φοβέομαι</i> <i>fear, be afraid (of)</i>
<i>ἐλευθερώω</i> <i>free, set free</i>	<i>ναυμαχία</i> , ἡ <i>naval battle</i> (1b)	
	<i>νίκη</i> , ἡ <i>victory, conquest</i> (1a)	




---

## Exercises for Section Two

---

### (a) Words

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

<i>ἀληθῆ</i>	<i>ἡ ἀλήθεια</i>
<i>ἀκριβῶς</i>	<i>ἡ ἀκρίβεια</i>
<i>ἄνθρωπος</i> , ὁ	<i>ἡ ἄνθρωπος</i>
<i>βοή</i>	<i>βοῶ</i>
<i>ἐμπειρος</i>	<i>ἡ ἐμπειρία</i>
<i>ἔργον</i>	<i>ἐργάζομαι</i>
<i>ἡδέως</i>	<i>ἡδομαι, ἡ ἡδονή</i>
<i>κακός</i>	<i>ἡ κακία</i>
<i>μάχομαι</i>	<i>ὁ μαχητής, ἡ μάχη, ἄμαχος ον</i>
<i>μῶρος</i>	<i>ἡ μωρία</i>
<i>ναῦς/μάχομαι</i>	<i>ναυμαχῶ</i>
<i>νίκη/νικάω</i>	<i>ἀνίκητος ον</i>
<i>ποιέω</i>	<i>ὁ ποιήτης</i>
<i>πόλεμος</i>	<i>ὁ πολεμήτης, πολεμῶ</i>
<i>σιωπάω</i>	<i>ἡ σιωπή</i>
<i>στρατιά</i>	<i>ὁ στρατός, στρατεύω, ὁ στρατιώτης</i>
<i>τολμάω</i>	<i>ὁ τολμητής, ἄτολμος ον, ἀτολμῶ</i>
<i>φίλος</i>	<i>φιλῶ, ἡ φιλία</i>
<i>φοβέομαι</i>	<i>ὁ φόβος</i>
<i>ψευδῶς</i>	<i>ψεύδομαι</i>

**(b) Morphology**

1. Translate each verb, then change to singular or plural as appropriate:  
διερχόμεθα, μάχεται, δηλοῦσι, φοβῆ, θεῶνται, δηλοῖς, θεᾶσθε,  
προσέρχεται, φοβούνται, δηλοῦμεν, φοβοῦμαι, γίνονται, ἐπέρχη,  
φοβοῦ, μάχεσθε
2. Aἶδ the correct form of the definite article to these nouns:  
ναύτης, τόλμαν, ναύτην, βοάς, νίκαι, ναῦται, στρατιάν, κυβερνήτας,  
νίκην, ἀπορία
3. Put in the correct form of adjective and noun:  
ἡ καλλίστ- βο-            τὴν πολεμί- βο-  
αἱ ἐμ- βο-                τὰς καλ- νίκ-  
τὴν ἐμ- ἀπορί-

**(c) Syntax**

1. 'The Athenians' war' = ὁ πόλεμος ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων/ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων πόλεμος  
Put together the following groups of words in the same patterns, and translate:
  - a. τὰ ἔργα + τῶν Περσῶν
  - b. ἡ στρατιά + τῶν βαρβάρων
  - c. ἡ βοή + ἐν τῷ λιμένι
  - d. οἱ ναῦται + ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ
  - e. τὸ πλοῖον + τῶν πολεμίων

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate these pairs of sentences:

1. ἡ ναῦς πρὸς τὴν ναυμαχίαν προσέρχεται.  
The sailors converse with the rhapsode.
2. ὁ ἄριστος ῥαψωδὸς ἀεὶ καλλίστους ποιεῖ τοὺς λόγους.  
The captain relates with pleasure our sea-battle.
3. ἔπειτα μάχονται μὲν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, φοβούνται δὲ οἱ τῶν Περσῶν στρατηγοί.  
Finally the Athenians are victorious, while the Athenians' enemies are falling.
4. μὴ ἀναχωρεῖτε, ὦ φίλοι, ἀλλὰ μάχεσθε.  
Don't be afraid, sailors, but fight and become free.
5. ἴσμεν ὅτι προσέρχεται ἡ τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατιά.  
You (pl.) know that the Persians' generals are retreating.

**Test Exercise Two**

Translate into English

ἐπειδὴ οὖν προσέρχονται ἡ τῶν Περσῶν στρατιὰ καὶ τὸ ναυτικόν, οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ταχέως εἰσβαίνουσι εἰς τὰς ναῦς καὶ πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμίνα πλέουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ οἷ τε Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἠσυχάζουσι. τέλος δὲ ἀφικνεῖται τὸ τῶν Περσῶν ναυτικόν, καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ γίνεταί, ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα βραδέως πλέουσιν αἱ νῆες. καὶ ἐπειδὴ γίνεταί ἡ ἡμέρα, οἱ μὲν Πέρσαι προσέρχονται ταχέως ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀποροῦσι καὶ φοβοῦνται. τέλος δὲ οὐκέτι φοβοῦνται, ἀλλὰ τολμῶσι καὶ ἐπέρχονται ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους. μάχονται οὖν εὐκόσμως καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς βαρβάρους. οἱ μὲν οὖν βάρβαροι φεύγουσι, φεύγει δὲ καὶ ὁ Ξέρξης. οὕτως οὖν ἐλεύθεροι γίνονται οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ τὴν ἀρετὴν.

**Vocabulary**

ναυτικόν, τό fleet, navy (2b)  
 ἀφικνεῖσθαι arrive  
 νύξ night (nom.)  
 ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα up and down

ἡμέρα, ἡ day (1b)  
 εὐκόσμως in good order  
 ἀρετή, ἡ courage (1a)

## Section Three

---

### Vocabulary for Section Three A

---

ἄγε come! (s.)	Zeû Zeus	ὅποθεν where from?
αἱ πολέμιαι νῆες the enemy ships	ἡ λαμπάς the torch	πόθεν from where?
ἄφ-ικνέ-σμαι arrive, come	ἡμᾶς us	πυρ-ά, τά fire-signal (2b)
δειν-ός -ή -όν dire, terrible	ἡ πόλις the city	Σαλαμίνη Salamis
δή then (with imper.)	ἰδοῦ look! (s.)	σπεύδ-ω hurry
δηλό-ω show, make clear	κίνδυνός τις some danger (nom.)	τῆν νῆσῳ the island
διότι because	κινδύνῳ danger	τὴν Σαλαμίνα Salamis
ἐπι-στρέφ-ω turn round	λαμπάδ-α a torch (acc.)	τι δεινόν something terrible
ἔρωτά-ω ask	λαμπάδ-α τινά a torch (acc.)	τὸν λιμέν-α the harbour
εὖ well	νῆ τὸν Δί-α yes, by Zeus	φῆς you (s.) say
εὐθὺς immediately	νῆσ-ος, ἡ island (2a)	χωρέ-ω come, go

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄγε come!	ἔρωτάω (ἔρ-) ask	πόθεν; from where?
ἀφικνέομαι (ἀφικ-) arrive, come	ἰδοῦ look! here! hey!	πυρά, τά fire-signal (2b)
δηλόω show, reveal	κίνδυνος, ὁ danger (2a)	σπεύδω hurry
	νῆσος, ἡ island (2a)	χωρέω go, come

---

### Vocabulary for Section Three B

---

αὐτ-η this (with βο-ή) (nom.)	ἐκεῖσε there, over there	θέ-ω run
γείτον neighbour (voc.)	ἐκ-φέρ-ω carry out	θόρυβ-ος, ὁ din, hustle and bustle (2a)
δειν-ός -ή -όν terrible	ἔξω outside	καὶ δὴ yes (I am . . .)
εἰπ-έ speak! tell (me)!	εὖ well	κινδύνῳ danger
εἶτα then	ἡ Σαλαμίς Salamis	κόσμ-ος, ὁ order (2a)
ἐκεῖν-α, τὰ those (acc.)	θεά-ομαι watch, gaze at	

μέγας } great (nom.)  
 μεγάλη }  
 μετὰ ἐμοῦ with me  
 μοι to me  
 νύξ night  
 ὁ γείτων his neighbour  
 οἱ ἄνδρ-ες the men  
 οἴκαδε home(wards)  
 οἰκί-α, ἡ house (1b)  
 ὁ παῖς the slave  
 ὄπλ-α, τά weapons (2b)  
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere  
 οὗτ-ος ὁ this (nom.)  
 οὗτ-ος this (with θόρυβος)  
 (nom.)

πολλ-αῖ many (nom.)  
 πολλ-οἱ ἄνδρ-ες many men  
 (nom.)  
 πολ-ύς much, a lot of (nom.)  
 πορεύ-ομαι journey, come,  
 go  
 Πρώταρχ-ος, ὁ Protarchos  
 (2a) (an armed soldier on a  
 trireme)  
 Πῶλ-ος, ὁ Polos (2a) (a tower)  
 ταῖς ὁδοῖς the streets  
 ταῦτ-α τὰ these (acc.)  
 τὴν λαμπάδ-α the torch

τὴν ναῦν the ship  
 τῆς οἰκίας the house  
 τὸν λιμέν-α the harbour  
 τὸν τροπωτήρ-α the/his  
 oar-loop  
 τοῦ Πάλου Polos'  
 τοὺς ἄνδρ-ας the men  
 τρέχ-ω run  
 τῷ λιμένι the harbour  
 τῷ Πειραιεῖ the Piraeus  
 ὑπηρέσι-ον, τό cushion (2b)  
 φαίν-ομαι appear

### Vocabulary to be learnt

δεινός ἢ ὄν terrible, dire, clever	οἰκία, ἡ house (1b)
εὖ well	οἴκαδε home(wards)
θεάομαι watch, gaze at	ὄπλα, τά weapons, arms (2b)
θόρυβος, ὁ noise, din, hustle and hustle (2a)	πορεύομαι march, journey, go φαίνομαι (φαν-) appear, seem

---

## Vocabulary for Section Three C

---

αἱ λαμπάδ-ες the torches	ἐκεῖν-ον τὸν ἄνδρ-α that man	λόγ-ος, ὁ word (2a)
αἱ νῆ-ες the ships	ἐμπειρί-αντινὰ some experience	μανθάν-ω learn
ἀλλήλ-ους one another (acc.)	ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile	μέγα great (nom.)
ἄλλ-ος -ῃ -ο other, rest of	ἐπειδὴ since, because	μελετά-ω practise
ἄλλ-ως otherwise	ἔτι still	μελετ-ή, ἡ practise (1a)
ἀπο-κρίν-ομαι answer	Ζεῦ Zeus	μετὰ πολλῆς μελετῆς with much practice
ἀπο-κτείν-ω kill	θαλάττι-ος -α -ον sea, of the sea	μηδὲ and don't
'Αχαι-ός, ὁ Akhaian (2a) (Homer's word for 'Greek')	καὶ δὴ καὶ and moreover	μιμνήσκ-ομαι remember
γὰρ δὴ really, I assure you	καὶ μὴν see!	μοι to me
γεωργ-ός, ὁ farmer (2a)	κατὰ (+ acc.) on, by	μύρμηκ-ες ants (nom.)
γῆ, ἡ land (1a)	κρατέ-ω hold sway, power	ναυτικ-ός -ῃ -όν naval
δια-λέγ-ομαι converse	κωλύ-ω prevent, stop	ναυτικά, τά naval matters (2b)
ἐγγὺς τοῦ λιμένος near the harbour	Λακεδαιμόνι-ος, ὁ Spartan (2a)	ναυτικόν, τό navigation (2b)
εἰπ-έ speak! tell me!	Λακεδαιμόνι-ος οὐδεὶς no Spartan	ὁ ἀνὴρ the man
ἐκεῖν-οἱ οἱ those (nom.)	λαμβάν-ω take, capture	οἱ ἄνδρ-ες the men
ἐκεῖν-οἱ they, those men (nom.)		ὁ Περικλῆς Pericles
		οὐδαμ-ῶς in no way, not at all

οὐδέ and not	συν-έρχ-ομαι assemble, come together, swarm	τὸ πλῆθος the number
οὐδεμί-α ναῦς no ship (nom.)	τῶν my dear chap (condescending)	τοῦ Περικλέους Pericles'
οὐδεμί-αν ἐμπειρί-αν no experience (acc.)	ταύτ-ην it, this (acc.)	τοῦτ-ο this (acc.)
οὐδέν-α any (acc.)	ταύτ-ην τὴν this (acc.)	τούτ-ους these (with τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους)
οὗτ-ος ὁ this	τέχν-η, ἡ skill (1a)	τριήραρχ-ος, ὁ trierarch (2a)
οὕτω = οὕτως	τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ the Assembly of the people (where all political decisions were made)	τῶν νεῶν of the ships
περὶ τοῦ πολέμου καὶ τῶν ναυτικῶν about the war and naval matters	τῆ νηί the ship	ὑμῶν of you
πτύσσ-ω crouch, cower	τίνας what? (nom.)	ἰφ' Ἑκτορι at Hector's mercy (Hektor: Trojan hero killed by Akhilleus)
ῥαδί-ως easily	τις someone, one (nom.)	φῆς you (s.) say
Σαλαμίη Salamis	τὸν λιμὲν-α the harbour	φησί (he) says
σε you (s.) (acc.)		φόβ-ος, ὁ fear (2a)
		χαλεπ-ῶς with difficulty

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀλλήλους each other, one another (2a)	κατά (+ acc.) in, on, by, according to	οὐδέ and not
ἄλλος ἢ ο other, the rest of	λαμβάνω (λαβ-) take, capture	Λακεδαιμόνιος, ὁ Spartan (2a)
γῆ, ἡ land (1a)	λόγος, ὁ word, speech; story, tale (2a)	τέχνη, ἡ skill, art, expertise (1a)
ἐγγύς (+ gen.) near, nearby	μανθάνω (μαθ-) learn, understand	ναυτικός ἡ ὄν naval
εἰπέ speak! tell me!		
ἐπειδὴ when, since, because		

## Vocabulary for Section Three D

ἀ-δύνατ-ος-ον impossible	θέ-α, ἡ sight (1b)	οὕτως γε yes, he is
οἱ ἀνδρ-ες the men	θύρ-α, ἡ door (1b)	παῖ slave!
βάλλε εἰς κόρακ-ας go to hell! (lit. 'to the crows')	καθεύδ-ω sleep	περὶ τούτου τοῦ κινδύνου about this danger
βοά-ω shout (for)	καλέ-ω call, summon	πολ-ύς much (nom.)
γάρ που of course, no need to say	κελευστ-ῆς, ὁ boatswain (1d)	Σαλαμίη Salamis
δεσπότης, ὁ master (1d)	κελευστ-ῆς τις a boatswain (he gave the time to the rowers)	σὲ you (acc. s.)
ἐκείν-α τὰ those (acc.)	κινδύνω danger	ταύτ-ην τὴν this (acc.)
ἐκείν-ον him (acc.)	κόπτ-ω knock	ταχὺ quickly
ἐκείν-ος he (nom.)	μάλιστά γε yes, all right	τῆ νήσω the island
ἐκίσε there	με me (acc.)	τῆς νεῶς the ship
ἐμέ me (acc.)	μοι to me	τίνα whom? (acc.)
ἐνδον inside	οἶκοι at home	τούτ-ο τὸ πρᾶγμα this business (nom.)
ἔτι still	ὁ Κυδαθηναίεὺς the member of Kydathene deme (a district of Athens)	τρέχ-ω run
ζητέ-ω seek, look for	ὁ παῖς the slave	τριήραρχ-ος, ὁ trierarch (2a)
ἡμέτερ-ος-α-ον our	οὗτ-ος he, the latter (nom.)	φέρ-ε come now!
ἡ Σαλαμίς Salamis		φῆς you (s.) say, mean
ἤσυχ-ος-ον quiet, quietly		



**Vocabulary to be learnt**

βοάω shout (for)	καλέω call, summon
ἔτι still, yet	κελευστής, ὁ boatswain (1d)
ζητέω look for, seek	οἶκοι at home
θύρα, ἡ door (1b)	τρέχω (δραμ-) run
καθεύδω sleep	τριήραρχος, ὁ trierarch

**Vocabulary for Section Three E**

ἀπο-πλέ-ω sail off	κατα-κελεύ-ω give the time	τὰς ναῦς the ships
δῆ then, now	κελεύ-ω order, give orders	τὴν πατρίδα our fatherland
ἐκείν-ος the former (nom.)	πάλιν back, again	τοῖς θεοῖς to the gods
ἐμ-βαίν-ω embark	πολλάκις often	ὑπὲρ τῆς σωτηρίας for our safety
εὖ γε well done!	Πόσειδον Poseidon (sea god) (voc.)	ἄναξ = ὦ ἄναξ O lord!
εὐχ-ή, ἡ prayer (1a)	σοι to you (s.)	ἄνδρες = ὦ ἄνδρ-ες men!
εὐχ-ομαι pray	σπένδ-ω make a libation	ὡς ὅπ in ... out ... in ... out
ἡμέτερ-ος -α -ον our	σπονδ-ή, ἡ libation (1a)	
θυσία-α, ἡ sacrifice (1b)	σωτήρ saviour (nom.)	
θύ-ω sacrifice		

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

δῆ then, indeed	θυσία, ἡ a sacrifice (1b)
ἐμβαίνω (ἐμβα-) embark	θύω sacrifice
εὐχή, ἡ prayer (1a)	κελεύω order
εὐχομαι pray	σπένδω pour a libation
ἡμέτερος α ον our	σπονδή, ἡ a libation (1a)

○ **Grammar for Section Three**

*Summary:*

λιμήν, ναῦς, Ζεὺς, οὗτος, ἐκεῖνος, ἐγώ, σύ, πολὺς, μέγας (nom., acc.)

**Negatives**

**Nouns**

29 So far you have met nouns classified as types 1 or 2 (or 1st and 2nd declension). These nouns, and the adjectives like καλός, and the def. art. all showed very useful similarities, and their genders could for the most part be predicted.



Here is the most common type of type 3 noun, classified as 3a:

λιμὴν (λιμέν-) 'harbour' (3a)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
λιμὴν	λιμέν-α	λιμέν-ος	λιμέν-ι

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
λιμέν-ες	λιμέν-ας	λιμέν-ων	λιμέ-σι(ν)

### Notes

(i) The stem on which the noun is declined is **NOT THE SAME AS THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR**. While patterns of stems will emerge over type 3 nouns, you will have to learn stems to start with, as you learn the noun. Thus you must learn λιμὴν (λιμέν-), ἀνὴρ (ἀνδρ-), λαμπάς (λαμπαδ-), so that you can spot the noun when it occurs in a form different from the nominative singular.

(ii) It is not always possible to predict the gender of type 3 nouns, and these must be learnt too. But again, you will find some patterns emerging as different type 3 nouns are met.

30 Here are two irregular nouns:

ναῦς, ἡ 'ship'

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ναῦς	ναῦν	νεῦς	νηί

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
νῆες	ναῦς	νεῶν	ναυσί(ν)

Ζεὺς, ὁ 'Zeus'

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
Ζεὺς	Δία	Διός	Δί

### Adjectives/pronouns

31 The Greek words for 'this' and 'that' can be used either as adjectives, when they will agree with a noun, or on their own, when they will mean 'this man', 'this woman', 'that thing' etc., depending on context.

Consider:

οὗτος ὁ ναύτης	'this sailor' or ὁ ναύτης οὗτος	} n.b. the position of the article
ταῦτα τὰ ἔργα	'these deeds' or τὰ ἔργα ταῦτα	
ἐκείνη ἡ βοή	'that shout' or ἡ βοή ἐκείνη	
οὗτος ἀφικνεῖται	'this man is approaching'	
αὗται τρέχουσιν	'these women are running'	

32 οὗτος αὕτη τοῦτο 'this, this man/woman/thing, (s)he, it'

οὗτος declines as follows:

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m. οὗτ-ος	τούτ-ον	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ῳ	οὗτ-οι	τούτ-ους	τούτ-ων	τούτ-οις
f. αὕτ-η	ταύτ-ην	ταύτ-ης	ταύτ-ῃ	αὗτ-αι	ταύτ-ας	ταύτ-ων	ταύτ-αῖς
n. τούτ-ο	τούτ-ο	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ῳ	ταύτ-α	ταύτ-α	ταύτ-ων	τούτ-οῖς

Notes

- (i) Presence or absence of τ- at the front of the word follows the same pattern as the def. art.
- (ii) α|η in the ending generates αυ in the stem; ο|ω in the ending generates ου in the stem.
- (iii) Note especially the neuter forms τοῦτο, ταῦτα.

33 ἐκεῖν-ος -η -ο 'that, that man/woman/thing, (s)he, it'

ἐκεῖνος declines as follows:

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m. ἐκεῖν-ος	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ῳ	ἐκεῖν-οι	ἐκεῖν-ους	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οῖς
f. ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-ην	ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-ῃ	ἐκεῖν-αι	ἐκεῖν-ας	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-αῖς
n. ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ῳ	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οῖς

Note

Both οὗτος and ἐκεῖνος can occur in forms ending in -ι, e.g. ἐκεινοσί, τουτονί etc. This intensifies the pronouns, so that they mean 'this man here', 'that woman there', etc.



## 34 ἐγώ 'I' (pl. 'we'), σύ 'you'

Learn the following pronouns, ἐγώ 'I' and σύ 'you'.

s.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἐγώ	(ἐ)με	(ἐ)μου	(ἐ)μοι

pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἡμεῖς	ἡμᾶς	ἡμῶν	ἡμῖν

## σύ 'you'

s.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
σύ	σέ	σοῦ	σοί

pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ὕμεῖς	ὕμᾶς	ὕμῶν	ὕμῖν

## 35 πολὺς πολλ-ή πολύ (πολλ-) 'many, much'

πολὺς (πολλ-) and μέγας (μεγαλ-) go just like καλός except for the four forms underlined:

s.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	<u>πολ-ύς</u>	<u>πολ-ύν</u>	πολλ-ού	πολλ-ῷ
f.	<u>πολλ-ή</u>	<u>πολλ-ήν</u>	πολλ-ῆς	πολλῇ
n.	<u>πολ-ύ</u>	<u>πολ-ύ</u>	πολλ-ού	πολλ-ῷ

pl.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
	πολλ-οί	πολλ-ούς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
	πολλ-αί	πολλ-άς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-αῖς
	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς

## 36 μέγας μεγάλ-η μέγα (μεγαλ-) 'great'

s.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	<u>μέγ-ας</u>	<u>μέγ-αν</u>	μεγάλ-ου	μεγάλ-ῳ
f.	<u>μεγάλ-η</u>	<u>μεγάλ-ην</u>	μεγάλ-ῆς	μεγάλ-ῃ
n.	<u>μέγ-α</u>	<u>μέγ-α</u>	μεγάλ-ου	μεγάλ-ῳ

pl.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
	μεγάλ-οι	μεγάλ-ους	μεγάλ-ων	μεγάλ-οις
	μεγάλ-αι	μεγάλ-ας	μεγάλ-ων	μεγάλ-αῖς
	μεγάλ-α	μεγάλ-α	μεγάλ-ων	μεγάλ-οις

## Idioms

37 (a) As we have already seen, Greek leaves out the verb 'to be' if it can be assumed from the context. Likewise, other words can be left out if they are understood easily from the context, e.g.

'Don't the Spartans practise?' οὐκ, ἀλλὰ ἡμεῖς κωλύομεν (understand 'them').

(b) Observe that what appears in Greek as an adjective may best be translated into English as an adverb, e.g. ἤσυχος καθεύδει ὁ δεσπότης 'the master sleeps peacefully'.

(c) Observe the way in which a Greek repeats a question which he has just been asked:

A. πόθεν ἡ λαμπάς;

B. ὀπόθεν; . . .

i.e. ὀ- is prefixed to the question word.

cf. A. τί ποιεῖς;

B. ὄ τι; οὐδὲν ποιῶ.

### Negatives

38 (i) Two or more negatives with the simple negative (οὐ) first in the clause reinforce the negative, e.g.

οὐκ ἀφικνείται οὐδεῖς 'nobody comes'

οὐκ ἀφικνείται οὐδεῖς οὐδέποτε 'no one ever comes'

(ii) Where the simple negative follows a negative, they cancel each other out, οὐδεῖς οὐκ ἀφικνείται 'everyone comes' (i.e. 'nobody does not come')

### Vocabulary to be learnt with the grammar

ἄνθρωπος (ἄνδρ-), ὁ man (3a)	λιμὴν (λιμεν-), ὁ harbour (3a)	πατρίς (πατριδ-), ἡ fatherland (3a)
γείτων (γειτον-), ὁ neighbour (3a)	μέγας μεγάλη μέγα (μεγαλ-) great, big	πολύς πολλή πολύ (πολλ-) much, many
ἐκεῖνος ηο that, (s)he, it	νύξ (νυκτ-), ἡ night (3a)	σωτήρ (σωτηρ-), ὁ saviour (3a)
Ζεὺς (Δι-), ὁ Zeus (3a)	οὗτος αὕτη τοῦτο this, (s)he, it	
λαμπάς (λαμπαδ-), ἡ torch (3a)	παῖς (παιδ-), ὁ slave, child (3a)	

○

---

## Exercises for Section Three

---

### (a) Words

1. Deduce the meanings of the words on the right from those on the left:

ἄνθρωπος	ἀνδρείος α ον
γῆ ἔργον	ὁ γεωργός, γεωργέω
γιγνώσκω	ἄγνοέω
ἐκεῖσε	ἐκεῖ, ἐκεῖθεν
ἔμπειρος	ἄπειρος ον
θεάομαι	ἡ θεά, ὁ θεατής, τὸ θέατρον

θόρυβος	θορυβέω
ὁ κίνδυνος	κινδυνεύω, ἀκίνδυνος ον
μανθάνω	ὁ μαθητής
οἰκία	οἰκείος α ον
ὄπλα	ὁ ὀπλίτης
παῖς	ἀπαιδευτος, ἡ παιδεία, παιδεύω
φαίνομαι	φανερὸς ἄ ὄν

2. Group together the words in this list which seem to share common roots; translate the words:

οὕτως, βοηθέω, κελεύω, ὑμέτερος, σπένδω, ἐκείσε, ἔνδον, βοή,  
 ἔμπειρος, εὐχομαι, ἡμεῖς, βοάω, ὑμεῖς, σπονδή, οὗτος, κελευστής, εὐχή,  
 ἐκεῖνος, ἐμπειρία, ἡμέτερος, κατακελεύω, ἐν, θέω

### (b) Morphology

1. Change nom. to acc.:

- οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ
- ταῦτα τὰ ἔργα
- αὕτη ἡ λαμπάς
- αἱ βοαὶ αὗται
- οὗτοι οἱ λιμένες

2. Change acc. to nom.:

- τούτον τὸν γείτονα
- ταύτας τὰς λαμπάδας
- τὰ πυρὰ ταῦτα
- τὴν πατρίδα ταύτην
- τούτους τοὺς ἄνδρας

3. Insert the appropriate form of μέγας or πολὺς:

- (μέγας) τὸ ἔργον.
- οἱ ἄνδρες (πολὺς) ἐμπειρίαν ἔχουσιν εἰς τὰ ναυτικά.
- ὁ κυβερνήτης πρὸς (μέγας) λιμένα κυβερνᾷ.
- (πολὺς) τὰ δεινά.

### (c) Syntax

1. Translate the answers to exercises (b) 1–3 above.

### (d) English into Greek

Translate these pairs of sentences:

- ὁ οὖν κυβερνήτης πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμίνα ταχέως βλέπει  
 So the ship sails slowly towards that harbour.

2. μέγας μὲν γὰρ ὁ κίνδυνος ὁ τῶν Ἀθηναίων, πολὺς δὲ ὁ τῶν ἀνδρῶν θόρυβος.  
There is much din, a lot of shouting and many men appear.
3. ἄρ' οὐκ οἶσθα πότερον ἐκεῖνοι ναῦται εἰσιν ἢ οὐ;  
I don't see whether that fellow is a general or not.
4. ὁ ἀγαθὸς κυβερνήτης οὐκ ἀκούει ταύτας τὰς βοάς.  
That stupid rhapsode is afraid of these Spartans.
5. ἐκεῖνος μὲν γὰρ μῶρος περὶ πολλά, οὗτος δὲ περὶ οὐδέν.  
They are experienced by land, but these by sea.

### Test Exercise Three

Translate into English:

ἡ μὲν ναὺς πλεῖ παρὰ τὴν νῆσον, ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις λαμπάδα ὄρα ἐν τῇ νήσῳ. ὁ δὲ κυβερνήτης εὖ οἶδεν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι λαμπάς, ἀλλὰ τὰ πυρά. σπεύδει οὖν εἰς τὸν λιμένα· δηλοῖ γὰρ τὰ πυρά ὅτι οἱ πολέμοι ἐπέρχονται ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες οἱ ἐν τῷ λιμένι θεῶνται τὰ πυρά καὶ οἴκαδε τρέχουσιν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα. ἴσασι γὰρ ὅτι μέγας ὁ κίνδυνος. φόβος δὲ μέγας λαμβάνει τὸν ῥαφωδόν. φοβεῖται γὰρ τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους. οἱ δὲ ναῦται λέγουσιν ὅτι Ἀθηναῖοι μὲν κρατοῦσι κατὰ θάλατταν, Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ κατὰ γῆν. καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι οὐ ῥαδίως μανθάνουσι τὴν ναυτικὴν τέχνην. ἐπειδὴ οὖν τὸ πλοῖον ἀφικνεῖται εἰς τὸν λιμένα, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ῥαφωδὸς πορεύονται πρὸς τὰς ναῦς. καὶ δῆλόν ἐστιν ὅτι αἱ νῆες αὗται ἐπέρχονται ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ κελευσταὶ ζητοῦσι τοὺς τριηράρχους. ἐκεῖνοι δὲ καθεύδουσιν ἤσυχοι. τέλος δὲ οἱ τριηράρχοι οὗτοι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν λιμένα καὶ ἐμβαίνουσιν. ἔπειτα τὰς θυσίας θύουσι καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς σπένδουσι καὶ ἀνάγονται.

### Vocabulary

ἀνάγομαι set sail, put out to

sea

# PART TWO

## Section Four

### Vocabulary for Section Four A

ἀγρ-ός, ὁ field (pl. country)

(2a)

αἰτί-α, ἡ reason, cause (1b)

αἴτι-ος -α -ον responsible

ἄστ-ός, ὁ townsman (2a)

γεωργ-ός, ὁ farmer (2a)

γυνή (γυναικ-), ἡ wife,

woman (3a)

δ' = δέ

δαίμων (δαιμον-), ὁ god,

daimon (3a)

δια-πέμπ-ομαι send across

δια-φθείρ-ω kill, destroy

εἰσ-κομίζ-ομαι bring in

ἐπι-γίγν-ομαι occur, follow

ἔτι καὶ νῦν even now

Εὐβοί-α, ἡ Euboea (1b)

ἡ πόλις city

ἦ που surely

Ἡράκλεις Herakles!

ἱερ-όν, τό sanctuary (2b)

κακο-δαίμων wretched,

unlucky (nom.)

κακο-δαίμον-α wretched,

unlucky (acc.)

κακό-δαμον wretched,

unlucky (nom.)

κακο-δαίμον-ες wretched,

unlucky (nom.)

κακο-δαίμον-ας wretched,

unlucky (acc.)

κατα-λείπ-ω leave behind

κολάζ-ω punish

κρατέ-ω hold sway

μακρ-ός -ά -όν long

μάλιστα particularly

μετά (+acc.) after

μοι to me

νῆ (+acc.) by . . .!

νομίζ-ω think x (acc.) to be y

(acc.)

νόσ-ος, ἡ plague (2a)

οἰκέ-ω dwell in, reside in

οἰκήσ-εις dwellings (nom.)

οἰκεῖ-ος, ὁ member of family

(2a)

ὀλίγοι -αι -α few

ὀλοφύρ-ομαι lament, mourn

for

ὄντ-α } (acc.)

ὄντ-ες } being (nom.)

ὄντ-ας } (acc.)

ὁ Περικλῆς Pericles

ὅσον πλήθος what a lot!

(nom.)

οὐκέτ' = οὐκέτι

οὖσ-α } (nom.)

οὖσ-αν } being (acc.)

οὖσ-ας } (acc.)

παιδί-ον, τό child (2b)

πειθ-ω persuade

Περικλέ-α Pericles (acc.)

πιθαν-ός -ή -όν persuasive

πλέ-ως -α -ων full

πόλ-ις a city (nom.)

πρόβατ-α, τά sheep (2b)

πρὸς τῶν θε-ῶν in the name of

the gods

πρῶτον (μέν) first

πυρ-ά, ἡ funeral pyre (1b)

ρήτωρ (ρητορ-), ὁ politician,

orator (3a)

τὰ σκεύ-η equipment,

furniture

τὰς οἰκήσ-εις the dwellings

τὰ τείχ-η the walls (of the

city)

τὴν πόλ-ιν the city

τῇ πόλει the city

τινας some (acc.)

τὸ ἄστ-υ the city (of

Athens)

τὸν Περικλέ-α Pericles

τὸ πλήθος the people

τὸ πρᾶγμα the matter

τοσ-οὔτ-ον πλήθος so great a

number

υἱ-ός, ὁ son (2a)



ὑμέτερο-ο-σ -α -ον your (where 'you' = more than one)	φιλέ-ω love, be well disposed το	ὦν being (nom.)
φησὶ he says	χαλεπ-ό-σ -ῆ -όν difficult	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

γεωργός, ὁ farmer (2a)	ἔτι καὶ νῦν even now, still now
γυνή (γυναικ-), ἡ woman, wife (3a)	κρατέω hold sway, power (ουετ)
δαίμων (δαιμον-), ὁ god, daimon (3a)	νῆ (+ acc.) by . . . ! ὀλίγοσ η ον small, few

## Vocabulary for Section Four B

ἀδελφ-ός, ὁ brother (2a)	εὐ-σεβέστατ-ο-σ -ῆ -ον most respectful of the gods (nom.)	ὄντ-α } (acc.) οὖσ-α } being (nom.) οὖσ-ασ } (acc.)
ἀλλ' = ἀλλά		
ἀ-νομί-α, ἡ lawlessness (1b)	εὐ-σεβοῦντεσ respecting the gods (nom.)	οὔτε . . . οὔτε neither . . . nor
ἀρ' = ἀρα	εὖ-φρων well-disposed	οὗτοσ hey, you!
ἀ-σεβει-α, ἡ disrespect towards the gods, impiety (1b)	ἐφ-ἡμερ-ο-σ -ον ephemeral, short-lived	πατήρ (πατερ-), ὁ father (3a)
ἀ-τιμάζ-ω hold in dishonour	ἤ than	παύ-ομαι stop
'Αφροδίτ-η, ἡ Aphrodite (1a) (goddess of love and sexual pleasure)	ἢ . . . ἢ either . . . or	παύ-ε stop!
βαρ-ύσ } heavy (nom.) βαρ-ύν } (acc.)	ἡδον-ή, ἡ pleasure (1a)	περί νόμων καὶ ὕβρεωσ about laws and aggression
βί-ο-σ, ὁ life (2a)	θάπτ-ω bury	ποθέ-ω desire, long for
γέρον (γεροντ-), ὁ old man (3a)	θαυμάζ-ω wonder	πολίτ-ησ, ὁ citizen (1d)
δ' = δέ	θε-ό-σ, ὁ(ἡ) god(-dess) (2a)	πολύ πλῆθοσ a great number (nom.)
δεσπότ-ησ, ὁ master (1d)	θνητ-ό-σ -ῆ -όν mortal	πρόβατ-α, τὰ sheep (2b)
δεῦρ' = δεῦρο	κωλύ-ω prevent, stop	πρὸσ θε-ῶν in the name of the gods!
δήμ-ο-σ, ὁ deme (2a) (local districts into which Attica was divided)	μάλιτοσ very much	πυρ-ά, ἡ funeral pyre (1b)
δια-φθείρ-ω kill	μήτηρ (μητερ-), ἡ mother (3a)	σέβ-ομαι show respect for
δούλ-ο-σ, ὁ slave (2a)	μιαρ-ό-σ -ά -όν foul, polluted	σκιᾶσ of a shadow
ἐπ' = ἐπί	μισέ-ω hate	ταίσ οἰκίαισ the houses
ἐπί νεκροίσ on top of corpses	μοι το me	τῆ πόλει the city
ἐπι-βάλλ-ω throw onto	νεανί-α-σ, ὁ young man (1d)	τῆμερον today
εὐ-δαίμον-α fortunate (ruled by a benevolent daimon) (acc.)	νεκρ-ό-σ, ὁ corpse (2a)	τὴν κόλασ-ιν punishment
	νεκρ-όν τιν-α a corpse (acc.)	τιμά-ω honour
	'νθρωπε = ἄνθρωπε	τίν-εσ; what? (nom.)
	νόμ-ο-σ, ὁ law, convention (2a)	τὸ πρᾶγμα the matter
	νόσ-ο-σ, ἡ plague (2a)	τοίσ ἱεροίσ the sanctuaries
	νῦν now then	τοὖσ ἀ-σεβεισ those who are disrespectful of the gods
	ὄναρ a dream (nom.)	τοὖσ εὐ-σεβεισ those who respect the gods



τρέπ-ομαι turn (oneself)  
 τύπτ-ω strike  
 υί-ός, ὁ son (2a)  
 φέρ-ω carry  
 φής you (s.) say

φόβ-ος, ὁ fear (2a)  
 ὠ τῆς ἀνομίας what  
 lawlessness!  
 ὠ τῆς ἀσεβείας what  
 irreverence!

ὠ τῆς ὑβρείως what aggressive  
 behaviour!  
 ὦν being (nom.)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀτιμάζω dishonour, hold in  
 dishonour

διαφθείρω (διαφθειρ-) destroy,  
 kill

δεσπότης, ὁ master (1d)

θεός, ὁ, ἡ god(-dess) (2a)

θνητός ἢ ὄν mortal

κωλύω prevent, stop

μάλιστα especially;  
 particularly; yes

νεκρός, ὁ corpse (2a)

νόμος, ὁ law, convention (2a)

νόσος, ἡ plague, disease (2a)

πυρά, ἡ funeral pyre (1b)

τιμάω honour

τύπτω strike, hit

φέρω (ένεγκ-) carry, bear

φόβος, ὁ fear (2a)



## Grammar for Section Four A–B

### Summary:

πράγμα, πλήθος, πόλις, πρέσβυς, ἄστυ, εὐφρων, τίς, τις, οὐδείς, ὦν  
 (nom. acc.)

### Nouns

39 Here are some more type 3 nouns, under the classifications 3b, c, e, f. Note the genders which they tend to have – 3b, c and f are all NEUTER; 3e in -is are all FEMININE, in -us all MASCULINE.

40 πᾶγμα (πραγματ-), τό 'thing, matter' (3b)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
πᾶγμα	πᾶγμα	πᾶγματ-ος	πᾶγματ-ι

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
πᾶγματ-α	πᾶγματ-α	πραγματ-ῶν	πᾶγμα-σι(ν)

41 πλῆθ-ος, τό 'number, crowd, people' (3c)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
πλῆθ-ος	πλῆθ-ος	πλῆθ-ους	πλῆθ-ει	πλῆθ-η	πλῆθ-η	πληθ-ῶν	πλήθε-σι(ν)

42 πόλ-ις, ἡ 'city-state' (3e)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
πόλ-ις	πόλ-ιν	πόλ-εως	πόλ-ει	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εις	πολ-έων	πόλ-εσι(ν)

πρέσβ-υς, ὁ 'old man' (pl. 'ambassadors') (3e)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
πρέσβ-υς	πρέσβ-υν	πρέσβ-εως	πρέσβ-ει	(then like πόλις)			

43 ἄστ-υ, τό 'city' (of Athens) (3f)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ἄστ-υ	ἄστ-υ	ἄστ-εως	ἄστ-ει	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-έων	ἄστ-εσι(ν)

Notes

(i) Be careful not to confuse 3c types like πλῆθος with 2a types like ἄνθρωπος.

(ii) Note the appearance of -ε- in the ending of these nouns. (The -ους ending was once -εος, the -η ending once -εα.)

(iii) Some 3a nouns have an acc. s. in -ιν, e.g. χάρις (χαριτ-) 'grace' acc. s. χάριν.

Adjectives/pronouns

44 There are a number of adjective types based on type 3 nouns, just as you have μετ καλός-type adjectives based on type 1/2 nouns. Note the similarity between the endings of these adjectives and of the type 3 nouns you have met so far (29):

## εὐφρων εὐφρον (εὐφρον-) 'well-disposed'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f.	εὐφρων	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι
n.	εὐφρον	εὐφρον	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι

pl.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f.	εὐφρον-ες	εὐφρον-ας	εὐφρον-ων	εὐφρο-αι(ν)
n.	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ων	εὐφρο-αι(ν)

45 In these adjectives, the same form describes both m. and f. nouns.

## 46 τις, τι (τιν-) 'a, a certain, some'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f.	τις	τιν-α	τιν-ος	τιν-ι
n.	τι	τι		

pl.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
	τιν-ες	τιν-ας	τιν-ων	τι-οι(ν)
	τιν-α	τιν-α		

## τις τί (τιν-) 'who? what? which?'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f.	τις	τιν-α	τιν-ος	τιν-ι
n.	τί	τί		

pl.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
	τιν-ες	τιν-ας	τιν-ων	τι-οι(ν)
	τιν-α	τιν-α		

## Notes

- (i) As above, the m./f. forms are identical.  
(ii) Note the difference between *τις* ('who, which, what?') and the form *τις* ('someone, a, a certain'). If *τις* is accented, the accent will fall on the last syllable, e.g. *τινά*.

## 47 οὐδ-είς οὐδε-μία οὐδ-έν 'no, no one, nothing'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	οὐδ-είς	οὐδ-έν-α	οὐδ-εν-ός	οὐδ-εν-ι
f.	οὐδε-μί-α	οὐδε-μί-αν	οὐδε-μι-άς	οὐδε-μι-ῆ
n.	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-εν-ός	οὐδ-εν-ι

Notes

(i) Remember that both *τίς*, *τις* and *οὐδείς*, when on their own, stand as nouns ('who, someone, no one'); when describing a noun, as adjectives ('what person?', 'some woman', 'no boy').

(ii) *οὐδείς* is simply *οὐδέ* ('nor, not') + *εἷς* ('one'). Observe that the feminine is *-μία*.

Participles

48 Here is the declension of 'being', the participle form of the verb 'to be':

ὄν οὖσα ὄν (ὄντ-) 'being'

s.				pl.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	ὄν	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-ες	ὄντ-ας	ὄντ-ων	οὖ-σι(ν)
f.	οὖσ-α	οὖσ-αν	οὖσ-ης	οὖσ-ῃ	οὖσ-αι	οὖσ-ας	οὖσ-ῶν	οὖσ-αις
n.	ὄν	ὄν	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ων	οὖ-σι(ν)

Notes

(i) The endings of the m./n. forms are like those of *εὐφρων* (29) but based on the stem *όντ-*; the f. declines as the 1c noun *τόλμα* (24). This 'mixed' declension has already been met in *οὐδείς οὐδεμία οὐδέν* (see 47).

(ii) A number of verbs take a participle to complete their meaning. One such is *φαίνομαι*, 'I appear to . . . , I seem to . . .'. Thus *φαίνομαι ὄν* means 'I seem to be' – with the implication that you really are whatever it is you seem to be. Thus it comes to mean 'I am obviously . . .' (cf. 54).

(iii) Note the range of possible translations of *ὄν*, e.g. 'being', 'since being', 'although being', 'while being', 'as being', 'who/which is/are'.

Vocabulary to be learnt with the grammar

<i>ἄστυ</i> , τό city (of Athens) (3f)	<i>πλῆθος</i> , τό number, crowd; the people (3c)	<i>τάξις</i> , ἡ battle-array, order, rank (3c)
<i>κακοδαίμων</i> (κακοδαιμον-) unlucky, dogged by an evil daimon	<i>πόλις</i> , ἡ city (state) (3c)	<i>τίς τί</i> (τίν-) who? what?
<i>οἴκησις</i> , ἡ dwelling (3c)	<i>πράγμα</i> (πραγματ-), τό thing; matter; affair; (pl.) troubles (3b)	<i>τις τι</i> (τιν-) a, a certain; someone
<i>οὐδείς οὐδεμία οὐδέν</i> (οὐδεν-) no; no one, nothing	<i>σκεύη</i> , τά gear, furniture (3c)	



---

## Exercises for Section Four A–B

---

**(a) Words**

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

ἀπαίδευτος		ἡ παιδείσις, τὸ παιδεύμα
ἀποθνήσκω (ἀποθαν-)	}	ἀθάνατος ον, ὁ θάνατος
θνητός		
γίγνομαι (γεν-)		ἡ γένεσις
δηλόω		ἡ δήλωσις
ἐμβαίνω (ἐμβα-)		ἡ ἔμβασις
ἐρωτάω		τὸ ἐρώτημα
ζητέω		ἡ ζήτησις
θεάομαι		τὸ θέαμα
καλέω		ἡ κλήσις
καλός		τὸ κάλλος
κρατέω		τὸ κράτος
μανθάνω		ἡ μάθησις, τὸ μάθημα
ποιέω		τὸ ποίημα, ἡ ποίησις
στρατηγός		τὸ στρατήγημα
στρατιά		τὸ στράτευμα
ταχέως		τὸ τάχος
τιμάω		ἡ τιμή, ἄτιμος ον
τολμάω		ἡ τόλμησις, τὸ τόλμημα
ψευδῶς		τὸ ψεῦδος

**(b/c) Morphology and Syntax**

1. Translate into Greek the italic phrases in the following sentences, using a part of ὧν οὐσα ὄν:
- Since I am unhappy*, I shall leave the city.
  - We who are few* shall not defeat you *who are many*.
  - As friends, ladies*, you do not quarrel.
  - I, an Athenian and fortunate*, hate you, *Spartan that you are and hated by the gods*.
  - Who are you to threaten me?*

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate these pairs of sentences:

1. ἐγὼ γὰρ θνητός ὧν οὐκ ἀτιμάζω τοὺς θεούς.  
 Since you are a farmer you know the laws.

2. ἐκείνους οὖν, ἐμπείρους ὄντας κατὰ γῆν, Ἀθηναῖοι νικῶσι κατὰ θάλατταν.  
As sailors we hold sway on the sea.
3. τὸ δ' ἄστνυ καλὸν ὄν οὐ τιμῶ.  
I am not afraid of the number of corpses, though it is large.
4. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς οὗτος, ἄριστος ὢν, οὐ φοβεῖται τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους πολεμίους ὄντας.  
My wife, who is unlucky, is afraid of the plague, which is evil.
5. οἱ γὰρ ἄνθρωποι, κακοδαίμονες ὄντες, τιμῶσι τοὺς τῶν θεῶν νόμους, ἀρίστους ὄντας.  
The people, since it is good, does not dishonour the gods, who are great.

### Test Exercise Four A–B

Translate into English:

- ΝΕΑΝΙΑΣ δεῦρ' ἔλθε καὶ εἶπέ. διὰ τί ὀλοφύρη, ὦ φίλε; ἄρα υἱὸν τινα, κακοδαίμονα ὄντα, ὀλοφύρη, ἢ θυγατέρα ἢ γυναῖκα;
- ΓΕΡΩΝ κακοδαίμων δὴ ὢν ἔγωγε, ὦ φίλε, τοῦτο ποιῶ. ὀλοφύρομαι γὰρ τὸν τε υἱὸν τὸν οὐκέτ' ὄντα καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν ἤδη νεκρὸν οὔσαν.
- ΝΕΑΝ. κακοδαίμων δὴ φαίνῃ ὢν. ἀλλὰ τί αἰτιὸν ἔστιν; πῶς ἀποθνήσκουσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι;
- ΓΕΡ. διὰ τὴν νόσον, ὦ φίλε, νεκροὶ ἐπὶ νεκροῖς πίπτουσι καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν ἄνθρωποι κακοδαίμονες ὄντες.
- ΝΕΑΝ. πολλὰ δὴ πράγματα ἔχομεν διὰ τὴν νόσον. ὁρῶ γὰρ ἔγωγε τὸ μὲν πλῆθος τῶν ἀνθρώπων κακόδαιμον ὄν, τὴν δὲ πόλιν πολλῇ ἐν ἀπορίᾳ οὔσαν, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους ἐφήμερους ὄντας καὶ κακοδαίμονας.
- ΓΕΡ. μὴ οὖν ἀτίμαζε τοὺς θεοὺς μηδὲ ἀσέβει εἰς τὴν πόλιν, ἀλλὰ τόλμα καὶ τίμα τοὺς θεοὺς.

### Vocabulary

ὀλοφύρομαι lament	ἐπὶ νεκροῖς on top of corpses	ἐφήμερος on short-lived
υἱός, ὁ son (2a)	πράγματα, τὰ troubles (3b)	ἀσεβέω commit irreverent acts (on)
θυγάτηρ (θυγατερ-), ἡ daughter (3a)	πολλῇ . . . ἀπορία much perplexity	

## Vocabulary for Section Four C

ἀπ-άγ-ω lead away	ἄ-τοπ-ος -ον strange	διώκ-ουτ-ες pursuing (nom.)
ἅπαντες all (nom.)	αὐτ-όν him (acc.)	δούλ-ος, ὁ slave (2a)
ἀπο-φεύγ-ων escaping (nom.)	αὐτ-ούς them (acc.)	δυσ-τυχής unfortunate (nom.)
	δῆλ-ος clearly	

ἐκείνω τῷ ἱερῷ that sanctuary  
 ἐξαίφνης suddenly  
 ἐφ' = ἐπί  
 ἔχ-ων having, wearing  
 (nom.)  
 Ἡράκλει-ος -α -ον of  
 Herakles  
 ἱερ-όν, τό sanctuary (2b)  
 ἱκετεΐ-α, ἡ supplication (1b)  
 ἱκέτ-ης, ὁ suppliant (1d)  
 ἴσως perhaps  
 καί μὴν look!  
 καίπερ although (-ing)  
 κήρυξ (κήρυκ-), ὁ herald (3a)  
 λανθάν-ω escape the notice of  
 x (acc.) in -ing  
 μά (+ acc.) by . . . ! (usually,  
 'no, by . . . !')  
 μοι to me

ξέν-ος, ὁ (or ξεῖν-ος, ὁ)  
 stranger, foreigner (2a)  
 ὁδοί-πόρ-ος, ὁ traveller (2a)  
 οἱ ἕνδεκα the Eleven (a body of  
 eleven magistrates responsible  
 for the prisons and for  
 summary justice)  
 ὀρθ-ῶς correctly  
 ὁσι-ος -α -ον sanctified  
 οὗτος hey, you!  
 ὁ φεύγ-ων the man running  
 off  
 πάσχ-ω suffer, experience,  
 undergo  
 ποτε ever  
 πρὸς Διός under Zeus'  
 protection  
 προσ-τρέχ-οντ-α running  
 towards (acc.)

Σάτυρ-ος, ὁ Satyros (2a)  
 τὸν φεύγ-οντ-α the man  
 running off  
 τοὺς ἕνδεκα the Eleven  
 τρέπ-ομαι turn (oneself)  
 τρέχ-ων running (nom.)  
 τυγχάν-ω happen to be  
 (-ing), be actually -ing  
 ὑπηρέτ-ης, ὁ public slave (1d)  
 φαίν-ομαι appear to be (-ing)  
 φεύγ-οντ-α } running off (acc.)  
 φεύγ-ων } (nom.)  
 φθάν-ω anticipate x (acc.) by  
 -ing  
 χλαμύς (χλαμυδ-), ἡ short  
 cloak, travelling cloak (3a)  
 ὦ τῆς ἀνομίας what  
 lawlessness!

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀνομία, ἡ lawlessness (1b)  
 ἀπάγω (ἀπαγαγ-) lead/take  
 away  
 ἀποφεύγω (ἀποφυγ-) escape,  
 run off

δοῦλος, ὁ slave (2a)  
 ἱερόν, τό sanctuary (2b)  
 ἱκέτης, ὁ suppliant (1d)  
 μά (+ acc.) by . . . !  
 ξένος/ξεῖνος, ὁ foreigner, guest,

host (2a)  
 ὀρθός ἢ ὄν straight, correct,  
 right

## Vocabulary for Section Four D

ἀγορ-ά, ἡ agora,  
 market-place (1b)  
 ἄ-δικ-ος -ον unjust  
 ἀπο-κόπτ-ω cut off  
 ἀπο-κτείν-ω kill  
 ἀπο-φαίν-ω make to appear  
 ἄρτι-ος -α -ον perfect  
 ἀ-σεβεῖς irreverent (nom.)  
 αὐτ-όν him (acc.)  
 ἀφ-έλκ-ω drag away  
 βασιλέ-α τὸν μέγαν the Great  
 King (of Persia)  
 βίαι-ος -α -ον violent  
 βο-ῶν shouting (nom.)  
 δῆλ-ος clearly

δηλ-ῶν showing, making  
 clear (nom.)  
 διδάσκαλ-ος, ὁ teacher (2a)  
 Δυσνομί-η, ἡ bad  
 government (1a)  
 δυσ-τυχῆς unfortunate  
 (nom.)  
 ἐγ-χειρ-ίδι-ον, τό dagger (2b)  
 εἰρήνη peace  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ βωμοῦ on the altar  
 ἐπι-καλέ-ομαι call upon (to  
 witness)  
 ἐπι-καλ-ούμεν-ος calling  
 upon (nom.)  
 εὖ-κοσμ-ος -ον in good order

εὖ-νομί-α/η, ἡ good  
 government (1b-a)  
 εὖ-πορί-α/η, ἡ solution of  
 difficulties; plenty (1b-a)  
 ἐφ' = ἐπί  
 ἦ που surely  
 ἱκέσι-ος -α -ον of suppliants  
 (Zeus' title)  
 ἱκετεΐ-α, ἡ supplication (1b)  
 καθ-ἵξ-ομαι sit down  
 καθ-ορά-ω look down upon,  
 see clearly  
 καίπερ although  
 κήρυξ (κήρυκ-), ὁ herald (3a)  
 λαμβάν-ομαι take hold of



μηδείς μηδεμί-α μηδέν no, no one	πλείστ-ος -η-ον very many	τοὺς φεύγ-οντ-ας the ones running off
μισέ-ω hate	πόλει to the city	τυγχάν-ω happen to be, be actually (-ing)
ναὶ τῶ σιῶ by the two gods (Castor and Pollux) (a typical Spartan oath)	πορευ-όμεν-ος travelling (nom.)	τῷ πολέμῳ (the) war
νέμεσ-ις, ἡ nemesis, retribution (3e)	πρέσβ-εις, οἱ ambassadors (3e)	ὑβρ-ις, ἡ aggression (3e)
ξένη-ος -α-ον of guests/strangers (title of Zeus)	πρεσβευτ-ῆς, ὁ ambassador (1d)	ὑπηρέτ-ης, ὁ public slave (1d)
ὄλοφυρ-όμεν-ος lamenting (for) (nom.)	πρό-γον-ος, ὁ ancestor (2a)	ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀθηναί-ων at the hands of the Athenians
ὅμως nevertheless	Σάτυρ-ος, ὁ Satyros (2a)	φαίν-ομαι appear to be (-ing)
πάντ' = πάντα	τῇ πόλει the city	φῆς you (s.) say
παρ-έχ-ω give, provide	τὸν ἐπι-καλ-ούμεν-ον the one calling on (acc.)	φιλ-ῶν being well-disposed to (nom.)
πάσχ-ω experience, suffer	τοῦ βωμοῦ the altar	χείρ (χειρ-), ἡ hand (3a)
παύ-ομαι stop (-ing)	τοὺς ἀ-σεβ-οῦντ-ας those who are being irreverent	ὦ τῆς ἀνομίας what lawlessness!
παῦ-ε stop! (s.) (-ing)	τοὺς ἔχ-οντ-ας the ones who have	ὦ τῆς ἀσεβείας what irreverence!
	τοὺς τρεπ-ομέν-ους the ones turning	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀποκτείνω (ἀποκτεν-) kill	μισέω hate	ὑβρις, ἡ aggression, violence (3e)
ἀσέβεια, ἡ irreverence to the gods (1b)	ὄλοφύρομαι lament, mourn for	ὑπηρέτης, ὁ servant, slave (1d)
αὐτόν ἢν ὁ him, her, it, them	πάσχω (παθ-) suffer, experience, undergo	φαίνομαι (φαν-) seem to be, appear to be (+ part.)
ἀφέλκω (ἀφελκυσ-) drag off	παύομαι stop	φθάνω anticipate X (acc.) in -ing (nom. part.)
βασιλεύς, ὁ king (3e)	πρεσβευτής, ὁ ambassador (1d)	ὦ what . . . ! (+ gen.)
βωμός, ὁ altar (2a)	πρέσβεις, οἱ ambassadors (3e)	
ἐπικαλέομαι call upon (to witness)	τρέπομαι (τραπ-) turn, turn in flight	
κῆρυξ (κηρυκ-), ὁ herald (3a)	τυγχάνω (τυχ-) happen to be -ing, be actually -ing (+ nom. part.)	
λανθάνω (λαθ-) escape notice of X (acc.) in -ing (part.)		

## ○ Grammar for Section Four C–D

### Summary:

Pres. part. act. and mid. (nom., acc.)

Vbs. taking parts.

βασιλεύς (nom., acc.)

Adjs. translated as advs.

Elision and crasis

### Participles

49 As 'to be' gives us a participle-form 'being', so most verbs have a participle-form, e.g. to run – running; to stop – stopping. The participles are inflected like an adjective. Participles based on the present stem decline as follows:

50 Present active participles (uncontr.): τρέχ-ων -ουσα -ον 'running'

	nom.	acc.	
m.	τρέχ-ων	τρέχ-οντ-α	
f.	τρέχ-ουσα	τρέχ-ουσ-αν	etc. as ὤν οὔσα ὄν 48
n.	τρέχ-ον	τρέχ-ον	

Learn the nom., acc., s. and pl.

#### Note

These are formed by adding -ων -ουσα -ον to the present stem.

51 Present middle participles (uncontr.): παυόμεν-ος -η -ον 'stopping'

	nom.	
m.	παυ-όμεν-ος	
f.	παυ-ομέν-η	etc. as καλ-ός -ή -όν 12
n.	παυ-όμεν-ον	

Learn the nom., acc., s. and pl.

#### Note

The endings are the same as for καλός type adjectives. The -μεν- marks the middle participle.

52 Contract verbs have endings as follows in participle forms:

δράω: δρῶν δρώσα δρῶν (δρωντ-) 'seeing' (= δρά-ων δρά-ουσα δρα-ον (δρα-οντ-))

ποιέω: ποιῶν ποιούσα ποιῶν (ποιουντ-) 'doing' (= ποιέ-ων ποιέ-ουσα ποίε-ον (ποιε-οντ-))

δηλώω: δηλῶν δηλούσα δηλοῦν (δηλουντ-) 'showing' (= δηλό-ων δηλό-ουσα δηλό-ον (δηλο-οντ-))

θεάομαι: θεώμενος -η -ον 'watching' (= θεα-όμενος -η -ον)

φοβέομαι: φοβούμενος -η -ον 'fearing' (= φοβε-όμενος -η -ον)

*Uses of the participle*

53 A very common Greek usage is to join a participle with a definite article and use it as a noun: e.g.

τρέχων = 'running'

ὁ τρέχων = 'he who runs, the man who is running'

οἱ τρέχοντες = 'those who run, the men who are running, the running men'

αἱ τρέχουσαι = 'the running women, the women who run'

54 Note the following expressions which tend to include a participle:

τυγχάνω (φεύγων) 'I happen, chance to be, actually am (fleeing)'

λανθάνω (σε φεύγων) 'I escape the notice of (you, in fleeing)'

φθάνω (σε φεύγων) 'I anticipate (you, in fleeing), I flee before you (do)'

παύομαι (φεύγων) 'I stop (fleeing)'

δῆλός εἰμι (φεύγων) 'I am obviously (fleeing)'

καίπερ (φεύγων) 'although (fleeing)'

Cf. 48 (ii). Note that the participle will change to agree with the noun to which it refers, e.g. αἱ γυναῖκες τυγχάνουσι φεύγουσαι 'the women happen to be fleeing'.

**Noun**

55 Here is another noun-type, classified as 3g:

βασιλ-εύς, ὁ 'king' (3g)

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
βασιλ-εύς	βασιλ-έα	βασιλ-έως	βασιλ-εῖ	βασιλ-ῆς	βασιλ-έας	βασιλ-έων	βασιλ-εῦσι(-εῖ)

**Idiom**

56 You have already met one adjective in Greek (ἡσυχος 'peaceful') which is best translated adverbially ('peacefully'; 37 (b)). Another one is δῆλος ('obvious, clear'), when used in the phrase δῆλός ἐστι + participle, i.e. 'he is obviously . . .'.

**Elision and crasis**

57 (1) Observe the following sentences and note the loss of vowels:

δεῦρ' ἔλθέ (= δεῦρῳ ἔλθέ)

βαρὺν δ' ὄντα φέρω (βαρὺν δὲ ὄντα φέρω)  
 ἄρ' οὐ σέβη τοὺς θεούς; (ἄρα οὐ . . .)  
 ἀποθνήσκουσι δ' οἱ ἄνθρωποι (ἀποθνήσκουσι δὲ οἱ . . .)

When a word ends in a short vowel, it may be dropped if the next word begins with a vowel. This is called 'elision'.

Observe what happens to the following words in elision:

ἀπὸ ἵππου → ἀφ' ἵππου  
 ἔστι ἡμέτερος → ἔσθ' ἡμέτερος  
 διὰ ἀσέβειαν → δι' ἀσέβειαν

Prefixes to verbs may be affected in the same way, e.g.

κατα-ὄράω → καθοράω  
 ἀπο-ὄράω → ἀφοράω

So with *μετά* (μετ', μεθ') and *ἐπί* (ἐπ', ἐφ') prefixing words beginning with vowels. τ becomes θ and π becomes φ before a rough breathing.

(2) Observe the loss of vowel in:

ἄνδρες (ᾠ ἄνδρες) 'men'

This is called 'crasis'. It occurs when a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word contracts with one at the beginning of the next word. Consider further:

τάγαθά (τὰ ἀγαθά) 'good things'  
 οὐπί (ὁ ἐπί) 'the one on . . .'  
 ἀνήρ (ὁ ἀνήρ) 'the man'

### Revise

-ω and contr. vbs. pres. act. 4-5, 22

Type 2 nouns (and 1/2 adjs.) 9-15

οἶδα 18 εἰμί 19

---

## Exercises for Section Four C-D

---

(a) Words (on word-building, cf. *Language Survey* (13), p. 327):

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

ἀσέβεια	τὸ σέβας
ιερόν	ὁ ἱερεὺς
ικέτης	ἱκετεύω
μισέω	τὸ μῖσος
ξένος	ἡ ξενία, ξενίζω
τυγχάνω δυστυχής	ἡ τύχη
ὑβρις	ὑβρίζω

**(b/c) Morphology and Syntax**

1. Translate these sentences, completing the second sentence in each of the pairs by using a participle or combination of participle + definite article:

c.g. τίς ἐπικαλεῖται ἡμᾶς; οἱ δούλοι ἀφέλκουσι (τὸν ἐπικαλούμενον).

- τίς τρέχει; οὐχ ὄρῳ ἔγωγε . . .
- τίνες ὀλοφύρονται; ποῦ εἰσιν . . .
- οἶδα τίς ἀποφεύγει. οὐ γὰρ λανθάνει ἐμέ . . .
- τίνες φεύγουσιν; ἄρ' ὄρᾶς . . .
- ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀποτρέχει καὶ οὐ παύεται . . .
- αἱ γυναῖκες αἰεὶ φοβοῦνται. διὰ τί οὐ παύονται . . .

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate these pairs of sentences:

- ἐγὼ δ' οὐχ ὄρῳ Λακεδαιμόνιον οὐδένα φεύγοντα.  
We see the men running.
- ἄρα λανθάνει ὑμᾶς ὁ δεσπότης σκευή ἔχων;  
Don't you (s.) see that the slave is dragging the suppliant away?
- οἱ γὰρ πρέσβεις φθάνουσι τοὺς ὑπηρέτας ἀποφεύγοντες.  
The Spartan runs into the sanctuary before his pursuers.
- ὁ δὲ κῆρυξ οὐ παύεται μισῶν τοὺς ξένους καὶ φοβούμενος.  
The stranger does not stop calling on us and shouting.
- ἀλλὰ δῆλος εἰ ἰκέτης ὢν καὶ τυγχάνεις ὀλοφυρόμενος τὸ πρᾶγμα.  
The man is clearly an ambassador, and happens to be escaping.

**Test Exercise Four C–D**

Translate into English:

ξένος δέ τις τρέχων τυγχάνει εἰς τὸ Ἡράκλειον ἱερόν. καὶ δῆλός ἐστιν ὁ ξένος δεινόν τι πάσχων, ἐπειδὴ ταχέως προσέρχονται ἄνδρες τινές, διώκοντες αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ ξένος φθάνει τοὺς διώκοντας εἰς τὸ ἱερόν φεύγων, ἔγγυς ὄν. ἀφικνουῦνται δὲ οἱ διώκοντες καὶ ἐρωτῶσι τὸν ῥαψῳδὸν ποῦ τυγχάνει ὢν ὁ ξένος. δῆλον γάρ ἐστιν ὅτι ὁ ξένος οὐ λανθάνει τὸν ῥαψῳδὸν ἀποφεύγων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ διώκοντες ὄρωσιν αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ὄντα, ἀπάγουσι, καίπερ βοῶντα καὶ τοὺς θεοὺς ἐπικαλούμενον. καὶ ὁ μὲν ξένος οὐ παύεται ὀλοφυρόμενος καὶ δηλῶν τί πάσχει, ὁ δὲ ῥαψῳδὸς καὶ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἡσυχάζουσι, φοβούμενοι τοὺς ἕνδεκα.

οὕτως οὖν ἢ τε ἀνομία καὶ ἢ ἀσέβεια γίνονται ἐν τῇ τῶν Ἀθηναίων πόλει.

**Vocabulary**

τῷ ἱερῷ the sanctuary  
τῇ πόλει the city

## Section Five

### Vocabulary for Section Five A

ἄγρ-οικ-ος -ον from the country	ἐ-λαμβάν-ε(ν) (she/he) used to take, kept taking (λαμβάν-ω)	ὄλ-ος -η -ον (ὄ) all of
ἄγρ-υπν-ος -ον sleepless	ἐ-λοιδορ-οῦμεθα we kept arguing (λοιδορέ-ομαι)	ὄνειρο-πολέ-ω dream (of)
αἰτι-ος -α -ον responsible, to blame	ἐ-μάνθαν-ε(ν) (he) used to learn (μανθάν-ω)	ὄτε when
ἀπορία perplexity	ἐξ = ἐκ	οὐδέποτε never
ἄστειος the city (of Athens)	ἐ-παν-όμεθα (we) used to stop (παύ-ομαι)	οὐδέπω not yet
ἀστικ-ός -ή -όν from the city	ἐ-αφί-ε(ν) (he) was saving (σώζ-ω)	οὐτοσί αὐτήι τουτοί this here (pointing)
βαθύς deep (nom.)	ἐ-φευγ-ον (I) was running away from (φεύγ-ω)	ὀφείλ-ω owe
βαθέ-ως deeply	ἤδύς sweet (nom.)	πατήρ (πατερ-), ὁ father (3a)
βαρέα heavy (nom.)	ἤκουε (he) used to hear (ἄκούω)	περί τοῦ παιδός about the child
βί-ος, ὁ life (2a)	ἦ I was	περί τῶν ἵππων about horses
γάμ-ος, ὁ marriage (2a)	ἡμέρ-α, ἡ day (1b)	πικρ-ός -ά -όν bitter
δάκν-ω bite, worry	ἦν (she/it) was	Στρεψιάδ-ης, ὁ Strepsiades (1d)
δαπάν-η, ἡ expense (1a)	ιοῦ alas!	σχεδόν nearly
δια-φθείρ-ω ruin	ἵππο-μανής horse-mad (nom.)	τάλας unhappy me!
δι-ε-λέγ-ετο she used to converse (δια-λέγ-ομαι)	ἵππ-ος, ὁ horse (2a)	τοῖς ὀνείροις my dreams
δι-έ-φθειρ-εν (it) was ruining (δια-φθείρ-ω)	καί γάρ yes, certainly	τότε then
δίκ-η, ἡ lawsuit (1a)	καί δὴ καί and moreover	υἱ-ός, ὁ son (2a)
δίκ-ην λαμβάν-ω exact one's due	κεφαλ-ή, ἡ head (1a)	ὑπν-ος, ὁ sleep (2a)
δίκ-ην ἐ-λάμβαν-ον they kept trying to exact their due	λοιδορέ-ομαι argue	χθές yesterday
διότι because	νεανί-ας, ὁ young man (1d)	χρέ-α, τὰ debts (3c uncontr.)
ἐ-δίωκ-ον (they) kept on pursuing (διώκ-ω)	ὁ δυσ-τυχής the unlucky one	χρῆμα (χρηματ-), τό thing: size; length (3b)
εἰσ-έ-φερ-ε(ν) (she) started to bring in/cause (εἰσ-φέρ-ω)		χρήματ-α, τὰ money (3b)
ἐ-κάθευδ-ον I was sleeping (καθεύδ-ω)		χρήστ-ης, ὁ creditor (1d)
		χρόν-ος, ὁ time (2a)
		ὠνειρο-πόλ-ει he used to dream of (ὄνειρο-πολέ-ω)
		ὥσπερ ἔχεις just as you are

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

αἷτιος α ον responsible (for), guilty (of)	δίκτην λαμβάνω (λαβ-) exact one's due; punish (παρά + gen.)	οὐδέπω οὐπω not yet
βαθύς deep	διότι because	ὀφείλω owe
βαρύς heavy	δυστυχῆς unlucky	πατήρ (πατ(ε)ρ-), ὁ father (3a)
βίος, ὁ life, means, livelihood (2a)	ἡδύς sweet, pleasant	σχεδόν near, nearly; almost
γάμος, ὁ marriage (2a)	εἰσφέρω (εἰσενεγκ-) bring in, carry in	τότε then
διαλέγομαι converse	ἵππος, ὁ horse (2a)	υἱός, ὁ son (2a)
δίκη, ἡ lawsuit; penalty; justice (1a)	ὅλος η ον whole of	χρήματα, τά money (3b)

**Vocabulary for Section Five B**

ἄπτ-ω light	οἱ (φοβέ-ομαι)	οἶμοι τῶν κακ-ῶν alas for my troubles!
ἄργ-ός -ή -όν lazy	ἡμεν (we) were	ὄτε when
βαθεῖα deep (nom.)	ἦσαν (they) were	παύ-ω stop x (acc.) -ing (acc. part.)
γέρων (γεροντ-), ὁ old man (3a)	ιοῦ hurrah!	πείθ-ομαι obey
γνώμ-η, ἡ plan (1a)	καίπερ although (+ part.)	τάλας unhappy me!
ἐ-κόλαζ-ον (they) used to punish (κολάζ-ω)	κακὰ ἐ-ποί-ουν they would treat badly (κακὰ ποιέ-ω)	τῷ λυχνῷ the oil-lamp
ἐλαι-ον, τό olive-oil (2b)	κλαί-ω weep, be punished	φῆς you (s.) say
ἐμαυτ-όν myself	κολάζ-ω punish	χρέ-α, τά debts (3c uncontr., gen. pl. χρε-ῶν)
ἐν-εἰμι be in	κόλασ-ις, ἡ punishment (3c)	χρηστ-ός -ή -όν good, fine
ἐ-πείθ-οντο they would obey (πείθ-ομαι)	λυχν-ός, ὁ oil-lamp (2a)	
ἐ-φοβ-οῦντο they were afraid	νεανί-ας, ὁ young man (1d)	
	νέ-ος-α-ον young	
	οἰκέτ-ης, ὁ house-slave (1d)	

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἄπτω light; fasten, fix	νέος α ον young	φῆς you (s.) say
ἐνεῖμι be in	οἰκέτης, ὁ house-slave (1d)	χρηστός ἢ ὁν good, fine, serviceable
κακὰ } ποιέω treat badly;	παύω stop	
κακῶς } do harm to	πείθομαι (πιθ-) trust, obey (+ dat.)	
κολάζω punish	χρέα, τά debts (3c uncontr.)	
νεανίας, ὁ young man (1d)		

○ Grammar for Section Five A-B

*Summary:*

Impf. ind. act. and mid.

Position of adj.

## Verbs

Imperfect indicative active and middle ἔπαυον, ἐπαύομην 'I was stopping'  
(and contracts)

58 The forms of the imperfect indicative active are as follows:

παύ-ω		τιμ-άω	ποι-έω	δηλ-όω
ἔ-παυ-ον	'I was stopping, I stopped'	ἔ-τίμ-ων (α-ον)	ἔ-ποι-ουν (ε-ον)	ἔ-δήλ-ουν (ο-ον)
ἔ-παυ-ες	'you were stopping, you stopped'	ἔ-τίμ-ας (α-ες)	ἔ-ποι-εις (ε-ες)	ἔ-δήλ-ους (ο-ες)
ἔ-παυ-ε(ν)	'he/she/it was stopping', etc.	ἔ-τίμ-α (α-ε)	ἔ-ποι-ει (ε-ε)	ἔ-δήλ-ου (ο-ε)
ἔ-παύ-ομεν	'we were stopping'	ἔ-τιμ-ᾶμεν (ᾶ-ομεν)	ἔ-ποι-οῦμεν (έ-ομεν)	ἔ-δηλ-οῦμεν (ό-ομεν)
ἔ-παύ-ετε	'you were stopping'	ἔ-τιμ-ᾶτε (ᾶ-ετε)	ἔ-ποι-εῖτε (έ-ετε)	ἔ-δηλ-οὔτε (ό-ετε)
ἔ-παυ-ον	'they were stopping'	ἔ-τίμ-ων (α-ον)	ἔ-ποι-ουν (ε-ον)	ἔ-δήλ-ουν (ο-ον)

59 The forms of the imperfect indicative middle are as follows:

ἔ-παυ-όμην	'I was stopping'	ἔ-τιμ-ώμην (α-όμην)	ἔ-ποι-ούμην (ε-όμην)	ἔ-δηλ-ούμην (ο-όμην)
ἔ-παύ-ου	'you were stopping' etc. as 58 above	ἔ-τιμ-ῶ (ᾶ-ου)	ἔ-ποι-οῦ (έ-ου)	ἔ-δηλ-οῦ (ό-ου)
ἔ-παύ-ετο		ἔ-τιμ-ᾶτο (ᾶ-ετο)	ἔ-ποι-εῖτο (έ-ετο)	ἔ-δηλ-οὔτο (ό-ετο)
ἔ-παυ-όμεθα		ἔ-τιμ-ώμεθα (α-όμεθα)	ἔ-ποι-οῦμεθα (ε-όμεθα)	ἔ-δηλ-οῦμεθα (ο-όμεθα)
ἔ-παύ-εσθε		ἔ-τιμ-ᾶσθε (ᾶ-εσθε)	ἔ-ποι-εῖσθε (έ-εσθε)	ἔ-δηλ-οὔσθε (ό-εσθε)
ἔ-παύ-οντο		ἔ-τιμ-ῶντο (ᾶ-οντο)	ἔ-ποι-οῦντο (έ-οντο)	ἔ-δηλ-οῦντο (ό-οντο)

## Notes

(i) The distinguishing mark of a past indicative tense is the presence of the augment (usually ἐ-) at the front of the verb, e.g. ἔ-λεγον, ἔ-βαινον. If the verb starts with a vowel, the vowel will lengthen, e.g.:

οἰκέω → ὤκουν 'I was living'

ἀκούω → ἤκουον 'I was listening'

ἔχω → εἶχον 'I had'

ἐλευθερόω → ἤλευθέρουν 'I was freeing'



Use the following chart to determine the augment on verbs beginning with vowels:

unaugmented vowel	augmented vowel
α ε, α, αι, ει	↔ η, η
ο, οι	↔ ω, ω
αυ ευ	↔ ηυ
ε	↔ ει η

(ii) The imperfect is based on the present stem of the verb. Take the present stem and add an augment to the beginning and the appropriate personal endings.

(iii) The augment is added to the base verb, not to any prefixes it may have acquired. Thus the imperfect of:

διαβαίνω is δι-έ-βαινον  
 εισβαίνω εισ-έ-βαινον etc.

(iv) You have already seen how, in the imperfect, διαβαίνω becomes διέβαινον. Observe how other prefixes to verbs react to the addition of an augment.

κατα-βαίνω	κατ-έβαινον
ἀπο-βαίνω	ἀπ-έβαινον
ἐπι-βαίνω	ἐπ-έβαινον
μετα-βαίνω	μετ-έβαινον
ἐκ-βαίνω	ἐξ-έβαινον
ἐμ-βαίνω (= ἐν-βαίνω)	ἐν-έβαινον
ἐγ-καλῶ (= ἐν-καλῶ)	ἐν-εκάλουν
προ-βαίνω	προ-έβαινον (or προῦβαινον)

(v) The imperfect tense carries the meanings:

'I was -ing'	'I tried to -'
'I used to -'	'I began -ing, I kept on -ing'
'I continued -ing'	

In other words, they denote an action continuing or going on in the past, as a process rather than as a single event.

(vi) Note the irregular imperfect of the verb 'to be':

ἦ(ν)	I was etc.
ἦσθα	
ἦν	
ἦμεν	
ἦτε (ἦστε)	
ἦσαν	

**Adjectives**

60 Observe the subtle Greek use of the *position* of the adjective in relation to its noun + def. art. to indicate a slightly different meaning:

(a) ὁ σοφὸς ἀνὴρ 'the wise man'

(b) ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός 'the wise man'

BUT: (c) σοφὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ 'the man is wise'

(d) ὁ ἀνὴρ σοφός 'the man is wise'

This distinction applies to all cases of the noun, e.g.

πολλὴν τὴν δαπανὴν εἰσέφερον 'much the expense she caused'

i.e. 'the expense which she caused was much'; cf.

πολλὴν δαπανὴν εἰσέφερον 'she caused much expense'

When the adjective stands *outside* the def. art. + noun phrase and is not linked with it by a preceding def. art., it will carry this 'predicative' meaning (as in (c) and (d) above). ○

## Exercises for Section Five A–B

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate each sentence, then change the verbs from the present to imperfect tense:
  - a. καθεύδω ἐγώ, ἀλλ' ἔτι διώκουσί με οἱ ἄνδρες οὗτοι.
  - b. τίς αἰτιός ἐστιν; ἡ γυνή. αἰὶ γὰρ λαμβάνει τὸν υἱὸν καὶ διαλέγεται περὶ τῶν ἵππων.
  - c. ὁ γάμος ὡς πικρός ἐστιν. αἰὶ γὰρ πικρὸν ποιεῖ τὸν γάμον ἡ γυνή.
  - d. νέοι ἐσμὲν καὶ κολάζομεν τοὺς οἰκέτας. οὕτως γὰρ χρηστοὶ γίνονται οἱ οἰκέται.
  - e. οὐ φοβοῦνται τοὺς δεσπότης οἱ δούλοι, οὐδὲ πείθονται.
2. Translate each verb, then change to singular or plural as appropriate (numbers in brackets indicate which person, where there is ambiguity):
 

διελεγόμεθα, ἐθεώμεθα, εἰσέφερον (3), ὤφειλες, ἐνήμεν, ἐθεάσθε, ἐπίθου, ἐφοβοῦντο, ἐπεκαλούμην, ἔπαυον (1), ἦν, ἐφοβοῦ, ἐθεάτο

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. I was sleeping deeply but my son did not stop shouting.
2. The father always punished his son.

3. Young men used to be good, and obey.
4. We used to give orders, but the slaves mistreated us.
5. We would shout and stop the slaves conversing.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Five C

---

<p>αἰτί-α, ἡ responsibility (1b)  ἀκούσ-ομαι I shall listen  (ἀκού-ω)  αὔριον tomorrow  δια-νοέ-ομαι intend, have in  mind  διά-νοι-α, ἡ plan (1b)  Διόνυσ-ος, ὁ Dionysos (2a)  (god of nature, esp. wine)  ἤκου-ον } imperfect of ἀκού-ω  ἤκου-ες }  ἵππι-ος -α -ον of horses,  horsey  ἴσως perhaps  κελεύσ-ω I shall order  (κελεύ-ω)  κελεύσ-εις you (s.) will order  (κελεύ-ω)  λέξ-ω I shall tell (λέγ-ω)</p>	<p>μάτην in vain, to no purpose  μηδαμ-ῶς in no way, not at  all  μοι to me  νυνί = νῦν  νῦν mind  οὐδέποτε never  οὐχί = οὐκ  πάνυ very  παύσ-ομαι I shall stop/cease  (παύ-ομαι)  παυσ-όμεθα we shall stop,  cease (παύ-ομαι)  παύσ-ω I shall stop (παύ-ω)  παύσ-ει (it) will stop (παύ-ω)  πείσ-ομαι I shall obey  (πεῖθ-ομαι)  πέισ-ῃ you (s.) will obey  (πεῖθ-ομαι)</p>	<p>ποιήσ-ω I shall do (ποιέ-ω)  ποιήσ-εις you will do  (ποιέ-ω)  Ποσειδῶν (Ποσειδων-), ὁ  Poseidon (3a)  πως somehow  σμικρ-ός -ά -όν small  σοι το γου  σ-ός σ-ή σ-όν your  σώσ-ει (it) will save (σώζ-ω)  Φειδιππίδ-ης, ὁ Pheidippides  (1d)  Φειδιππίδι-ον dear little  Pheidippides (2b)  φιλέ-ω love  φιλήσ-ω I shall love (φιλέ-ω)  φιλήσ-εις you (s.) will love  (φιλέ-ω)</p>
---	---	--

### Vocabulary to be learnt

<p>αἰτία, ἡ reason, cause,  responsibility (1b)  διανοέομαι intend, plan  διάνοια, ἡ intention, plan (1b)  νοῦς, ὁ (νόος contr.) mind,  sense (2a)</p>	<p>οὐδέποτε never  Ποσειδῶν (Ποσειδων-), ὁ  Poseidon (god of sea) (3a)  (νοσ. Πόσειδον; acc.  Ποσειδῶ)</p>	<p>πως somehow  φιλέω love, kiss</p>
--	--	--

---

## Vocabulary for Section Five D

---

<p>ἀ-δικ-ος -ον unjust  αἶβοι uggghh!  ἀκούσ-ομαι I shall listen  (ἀκού-ω)  ἀκούσ-ῃ you (s.) will listen  (ἀκού-ω)</p>	<p>ἀκριβεῖς exact, accurate (acc.)  ἀνθραξ (ἀνθρακ-), ὁ charcoal  (3a)  ἀντί-δικ-ος, -ον adversary (in  court) (2a)  ἀν-υπό-δητ-ος -ον unshod,</p>	<p>barefoot  ἀπο-βλέπ-ω gaze at, observe  closely  αὔριον tomorrow  αὐτ-ὸς myself (nom.)</p>
--	--	--

βοήσ-ομαι I shall shout  
(βοά-ω)  
βραδύς slow (nom.)  
γε at least; yes, and  
γενήσ-ομαι I shall become  
(γίγν-ομαι)  
γέρον (γεροντ-), ὁ old man  
(3a)  
γνώσ-ομαι I shall get to know  
(γιγνώσκ-ω)  
δέχ-ομαι receive  
δῆτα then  
δια-φθερ-εῖ (it) will get rid of  
(δια-φθείρ-ω)  
διδάσκ-ω teach  
δίκαι-ος -α -ον just  
διώξ-ω I shall chase (διώκ-ω)  
δύο two (acc.)  
εἰ (μῆ) if (not)  
εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι enter  
εἰσ-εἶμι I shall enter  
(εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι)  
εἰσ-εἶ (you) (s.) will enter  
(εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι)  
εἰσ-εἰσι(ν) (he) will enter  
(εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι)  
εἰσ-ιμεν we will enter  
(εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι)  
εἰς κόρακας to hell! (lit. 'to the  
crows')  
ἐκ-βαλ-ῶ I shall throw out  
(ἐκ-βάλλ-ω)  
ἐνδον inside  
ἐν-οικέ-ω live (in)  
εὐξ-ομαι I shall offer prayers  
(εὐχ-ομαι)

ἤ ἤ tut tut!  
θύρι-ον, τό little door (2b)  
ἵππι-ος -α -ον of horses,  
horsey  
καὶ δὴ καὶ and moreover  
καλοῖ τε κάγαθοί jolly good  
chaps, real gentlemen  
κόπτ-ω knock (on)  
κόψ-ω I shall knock (on)  
(κόπτ-ω)  
λέξ-εις you (s.) will say  
(λέγ-ω)  
λήψ-ονται (they) will get  
(λαμβάν-ω)  
λόγ-ος, ὁ argument (2a)  
μαθήσ-ομαι I shall learn  
(μανθάν-ω)  
μαθήσ-ονται they shall learn  
(μανθάν-ω)  
μαθητ-ῆς, ὁ student (1d)  
μῆ not  
μοι to me  
νικήσ-εἰ (he) will win  
(νικά-ω)  
νικήσ-ουσι(ν) they will  
defeat (νικά-ω)  
νικη-φόρ-ος -ον victorious  
νυν then  
οἰκίδι-ον, τό little house (2b)  
ὁμως nevertheless  
ὄνομα (ὄνοματ-), τό name  
(3b)  
οὐδαμ-ῶς no way, not at all  
οὐκουν not . . . therefore  
οὐραν-ός, ὁ sky (2a)  
οὔτε . . . οὔτε neither . . . nor

παρὰ τῶν μαθητῶν from the  
students  
παύσ-εται (he) will stop  
(παύ-ομαι)  
παυσ-όμεθα we shall cease  
(παύ-ομαι)  
παύσ-ω I shall stop (παύ-ω)  
πείθ-ω persuade  
πέισ-ομαι I shall obey  
(πέιθ-ομαι)  
πέισ-ῃ you (s.) will obey  
(πέιθ-ομαι)  
πιγεύς, ὁ oven (3g)  
ποιήσ-ω I shall do (ποιέ-ω)  
ποιήσ-εις you (s.) will do  
(ποιέ-ω)  
πονηρ-ός -ά -όν wicked, nasty  
σοφιστ-ῆς, ὁ sophist (1d)  
σοφ-ός -ῆ -όν wise, clever  
ταῖς δίκαις their lawsuits  
τῆς οἰκίας the house  
τῆμερον today  
τὸν Σωκράτη Socrates  
φεύξ-ομαι I shall run off  
(φεύγ-ω)  
φιλο-σοφί-α, ἡ philosophy  
(1b)  
φροντιστήρι-ον, τό  
think-tank, mental institute  
(2b)  
Χαιρεφῶν (Χαιρεφωντ-), ὁ  
Khairaphon (3a)  
χρηστ-ῆς, ὁ creditor (1d)  
ψυχ-ή, ἡ soul (1a)  
ὡς that  
ὠχρ-ός -ά -όν pale

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀδικος ον unjust  
αὔριον tomorrow  
γε at least (denotes some sort of  
reservation)  
δέχομαι receive  
διδάσκω teach  
δίκαιος α ον just

εἰσερχομαι (εἰσελθ-) enter  
ἐνδον inside  
καὶ δὴ καὶ moreover  
κόπτω knock (on), cut  
λόγος, ὁ argument; word,  
speech; story, tale; reason (2a)  
μαθητῆς, ὁ student (1d)

οὔτε . . . οὔτε neither . . . nor  
πείθω persuade  
σοφιστής, ὁ sophist, thinker  
(1d)  
σοφός ἢ ὄν wise, clever

---

○ Grammar for Section Five C–D

---

*Summary:*

Fut. ind. act. and mid.

Act./mid. distinction

Indef. words

Σωκράτης|τριήρης (nom., acc.)

**Verbs**

*Future indicative active and middle* παύσω, παύσομαι 'I shall stop'

61 The forms of the future indicative active are as follows:

παύσ-ω 'I shall stop' etc.

παύσ-εις

παύσ-ει

παύσ-ομεν

παύσ-ετε

παύσ-ουσι(ν)

62 The forms of the future indicative middle are as follows:

παύσ-ομαι 'I shall stop' etc.

παύσ-η (-ει)

παύσ-εται

παυσ-όμεθα

παύσ-εσθε

παύσ-ονται

*Notes*

(i) The distinguishing signs of the future are two:

(a) most commonly, the presence of some form of σ- suffix at the end of the present stem,

e.g.

παύω → παύσω 'I shall stop'

εὔχομαι → εὔξομαι 'I shall pray'

κόπτω → κόψω 'I shall knock'

πείθω → πείσω 'I shall persuade'

Observe that κσ → ξ and πσ → ψ.

or (b) an -εω suffix, after a stem different from that of the present, e.g.

διαφθείρω → διαφθερῶ (-έω) 'I shall destroy'

νομίζω → νομιῶ (-έω) 'I shall think'

This frequently applies to verbs whose stem ends in λ, μ, ν or ρ

(ii) The endings for the future active and middle are identical to those for the present.

(iii) Contr. vbs. lengthen the final vowel of the stem and add σ-, e.g.

ποιέω → ποιήσω 'I shall do'

δηλόω → δηλώσω 'I shall show'

τιμάω → τιμήσω 'I shall honour'

Notice that α lengthens to η, cf. τόλμα, τόλμης and ἀκούω, ἤκουον (but n.b. ρ ε ι at 12 (ii) and 24 (note)).

(iv) The meaning of the future is:

'I will/shall -'

'I am about to -'

'I am going to -'

### Some important futures

63 The following futures look irregular, but in fact fall into a pattern which you will soon come to recognise:

μανθάνω → μαθήσομαι 'I shall learn'

λαμβάνω → λήψομαι 'I shall take'

γινώσκω → γνώσομαι 'I shall get to know'

γίγνομαι → γενήσομαι 'I shall become'

N.b. the use of the middle forms in the future does not affect the meaning.

64 Ensure that you know the future of 'to be':

ἔσ-ομαι 'I shall be' etc.

ἔσ-η (-ει)

ἔσ-ται

ἔσ-όμεθα

ἔσ-εσθε

ἔσ-ονται

and the abnormal future εἶμι 'I shall go' (note accent and cf. εἶμί 'I am'):

εἶμι 'I shall go' etc.

εἶ

εἶσι

ἴμεν

ἴτε

ἴασι(ν)

### Middles

65 So far, you have met verbs which have active forms, and verbs which have middle forms. But in this chapter, you have met verbs which display both types of form, e.g.

παύω 'I stop x'

παύομαι 'I stop myself'

πείθω 'I persuade'

πείθομαι 'I persuade myself, I trust,  
I believe in'

Very crudely, the difference can be described as follows: that in active verbs, the action moves out from the doer, but in middle verbs, it moves out from the doer and *back again* – i.e., in middle verbs, the doer's interest is involved. Consider the following examples:

φέρω 'I carry, bear'    φέρομαι 'I carry off for myself, win'  
 λύω 'I release'        λύομαι 'I release for myself, ransom'

*Note*

This 'rule' only applies to verbs which display both active and middle forms in any one tense. It does not apply, for example, to 63 above, where the middle form of the future is the only form the verbs have. You will find quite a few verbs which have active present forms and middle future forms – but the meaning is not affected by the change because these will be the only forms they have, e.g.

ἀκούω 'I hear'    ἀκούσομαι 'I shall hear'

**Indefinites/Interrogatives**

66 You already know the distinction between τίς and τις. The accented form means 'who?', the unaccented form means 'someone'. This distinction is carried across a wide range of Greek words, of which you have recently met πῶς and πως. The accented form means 'how?', the unaccented form means 'somehow'. These words are also connected with forms used in other contexts and built on different roots, characterised either by the absence of the initial π (hence ὡς 'how!' which you have already met), or by the presence of ὀ before the consonant (to give in this case ὀπως). Thus the complex of words πῶς; ὀπως, πως, ὡς all mean basically 'how', 'somehow', and Greek uses each in accordance with the context. Note the following chart:

<i>Direct question</i>	<i>Indirect question</i>	<i>Indefinite</i>	<i>Relative</i>
	'He asked where . . . ' etc.	'Somewhere . . . '	'He goes where . . . '
ποῦ 'where at?'	ὅπου	που	οὗ, ὅπου
ποῖ 'to where?'	ὅποι	ποι	οῖ, ὅποι
πόθεν 'from where?'	ὀπόθεν	ποθεν	ὄθεν, ὀποθεν
πῶς 'how?'	ὀπως	πως	ὡς, ὀπως
πότε 'when?'	ὀπότε	ποτε	ότε, ὀπότε

N.b. The indefinite forms are all *enclitics* (see Reference Grammar A.3 (5)).

**Noun**

Here is the noun-type to be denoted 3d, like Σωκράτης (in the singular), and τριήρης (a trireme) in the plural:

## 67 Σωκράτης, ὁ 'Socrates' (3d)

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
Σωκράτ-ης	Σωκράτ-η	Σωκράτ-ους	Σωκράτ-ει

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-ων	τριήρ-εσι(ν)

## Notes

- (i) Words ending in -ης could be either like 1d ναύτης or 3d above.  
 (ii) The vocative form of 3d types is quite common: it is Σώκρατ-ες. ○

## Exercises for Section Five C–D

## (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

- Translate these sentences, then change the verb(s) in each from the present to the future tense:
  - ὁ πατήρ κελεύει τὸν υἱόν.
  - τί λέγεις, ὦ τᾶν;
  - οὐ διδάσκομεν τοὺς διδασκάλους.
  - οἱ ἄνδρες πολλὰ χρήματα δέχονται.
  - οὐκ ἀκούομεν τοὺς λόγους.
  - ἐγὼ εἶμι σοφός, οὗτος δ' οὐ νικᾷ με.
  - ὁ υἱὸς οὐ φιλεῖ τὸν πατέρα.
  - ἡ διάνοια σώζει ἡμᾶς.
    - κόπτω τὴν θύραν καὶ βοῶ.
    - τίς νικᾷ τὰς δίκας;
  - οὐ παύονται μανθάνοντες οἱ μαθηταί.
    - τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ σοφοί;
- Translate each verb, then change to singular or plural as appropriate:
 

παύσει, ἔσονται, ἀκουσόμεθα, διαφθερεῖς, εὐξέσθε

## (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

- The young men will learn the unjust argument.



2. The good son will always love his father.
3. This horse will not stop running.
4. The student will go into the house.
5. The wise man will be just.

## Vocabulary for Section Five E

ἄγρ-οικ-ος-ον from the country	ἐ-παύσ-ατο he stopped (παύ-ομαι)	παιδί-ον, τό slave, slave dear (2b)
ἄ-μαθῆ ignorant (acc.)	ἐπει when	πάλιν again
ἄ-μαθῆς ignoramus (nom.)	ἐ-πήδησ-ε(ν) (it) leapt (πηδά-ω)	πηδά-ω leap
ἄνοιγε open!	ἐ-ποίησ-ας (you) (s.) did (ποιέ-ω)	πήδημα (πηδηματ-), τό a leap (3b)
ἄξι-ος-α-ον worthy of	ἐ-ποίησ-αν (they) did (ποιέ-ω)	πόδας see πούς
ἀπ-έ-κοψ-ας you (s.) cut off (ἀπο-κόπτ-ω)	ἦ truly	ποτε ever
ἄρτι recently, just now	ἦκ-ω I have come	πούς (ποδ-), ὁ foot (3a)
βάλλ' εἰς κόρακας go to hell!	Θαλ-ῆς, ὁ Thales (1d) (early Greek scientist and inventor, a by-word for cleverness)	πρῶτον first
δάκν-ω bite, worry	θαυμάζ-ω wonder (at)	ράδι-ως easily
ἐ-βόησ-α I shouted (βοά-ω)	θέμις, ἡ right, lawful (lit. law sanctioned by the gods) (3a)	σοι to you
ἐ-βόησ-ας you (s.) shouted (βοάω)	θερμ-ός-ῆ-όν hot	Σωκράτους Socrates'
ἐ-βόησ-ε(ν) (he) shouted (βοάω)	καίπερ although (+ part.)	τὴν ὄφρ-ῦν the eyebrow
ἐ-θε-σαν they placed (τίθημι)	κεφαλ-ῆ, ἡ head (1a)	τῆς σοφίας the cleverness!
εἰς κόρακας to hell!	κηρ-ός, ὁ wax (2a)	τῆς ψύλλης of the flea
εἶτα then	Κικυννόθεν from the deme Kikynna	τί δέ; what next?
ἐκ-βάλλ-ω throw out	λύ-ω release, undo	τί δῆτ' why then . . . ?
ἐ-κέλευσ-α (I) gave the order (κελεύ-ω)	μετρέ-ω measure (fut. μετρήσ-ω)	τίθημι I place, put
ἐ-κέλευσ-ας you (s.) gave the order (κελεύ-ω)	μοι to me	τοῦ Ὀλυμπικοῦ στεφάνου the Olympic crown
ἐ-κοψ-α (I) knocked at (κόπτ-ω)	μόν-ος-ῆ-ον alone	φροντίς (φροντιδ-), ἡ thought (3a)
ἐ-κοψ-ε (he) knocked at (κόπτ-ω)	κῶ mind	φροντιστήρι-ον, τό think-tank, mental institute (2b)
ἐ-λυσ-αν they undid (λύ-ω)	ὅπόσους τοὺς ἑαυτῆς πόδας how many of its own foot lengths	Χαιρεφώντος Khairephon's
ἐμβάς (ἐμβαδ-), ἡ slipper (3a)	οὗτος hey, you!	χωρί-ον, τό space, distance (2b)
ἐ-μέτρησ-αν they measured (μετρέ-ω)		ψύλλ-α, ἡ flea (1c)
ἐ-παυσ-άμην I stopped (παύ-ομαι)		ψύλλης flea's
		ψυχρ-ός-ά-όν cold
		ὡς as

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀγροικός ον from the country,  
boorish  
βάλλ' εἰς κόρακας go to hell!  
δάκνω (δακ-) bite, worry  
ἐκβάλλω (ἐκβαλ-) throw out  
ἐνὼ ἔχω intend, have in mind

καίπερ although (+ part.)  
κεφαλή, ἡ head (1a)  
λύω release  
ὄτε when  
πούς (ποδ-), ὁ foot (3a)  
ράδιος α ον easy

ράδιως easily  
φροντίς (φροντιδ-), ἡ thought,  
care, concern (3a)  
ὡς as

## Vocabulary for Section Five F

ἄ-δύνατ-ος-ον impossible  
Ἀθῆν-αι, αἱ Athens (1a)  
ἀνα-μετρέ-ω measure up  
ἀπ-ελθε go away!  
ἀρα then, in that case  
ἀστρο-νομέ-ω observe the  
stars  
ἀστρο-νομί-α, ἡ astronomy  
(1b)  
αὐτ-ός Himself, the Master  
(nom.)  
βολβ-ός, ὁ truffle (2a)  
γεωμετρί-α, ἡ geometry (1b)  
γῆς of the earth  
δήμ-ος, ὁ deme (2a)  
δικαστ-ῆς, ὁ dikast, juror (1d)

ἐ-βόησ-as you (s.) shouted  
(βοά-ω)  
ἐγγύς ἡμῶν near to us  
ἐ-θαύμασ-as you (s.) were  
amazed (θαυμάζ-ω)  
εἶνα one (acc. m. of εἷς μία εἶν)  
ἐνταῦθα here  
ἐπεὶ since  
ἐπὶ τῆς κρεμάθρας in the  
basket  
Εὔβοι-α, ἡ Euboeia (1b)  
Ἡράκλεις Herakles!  
θαυμάζ-ω be amazed  
θηρί-ον, τό beast (2b)  
καθ-ίζομαι sit down  
κατὰ γῆς below the earth

Λακεδαίμων (Λακεδαιμον-), ἡ  
Sparta (3a)  
μοι to me  
ὄλοφυρ-εἶσθ' = 2nd pl. fut.  
(contr.) of ὄλοφύρ-ομαι  
ὅπου where?  
οὐραν-ός, ὁ sky (2a)  
πάνυ very  
παπαί good heavens!  
πείθ-ομαι believe  
περί-οδ-ος, ἡ map (2a)  
πόρρω far  
πρωκτ-ός, ὁ rump (2a)  
ταύτη with this  
χρήσιμ-ος-η-ον useful

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄδύνατος ον impossible  
Ἀθῆναι, αἱ Athens (1a)  
δήμος, ὁ deme (2a)  
θαυμάζω wonder at, be amazed  
at

ὅπου where? where  
οὐρανός, ὁ sky, heavens (2a)  
πείθομαι (πιθ-) believe, trust

## ○ Grammar for Section Five E-F

## Summary:

Wk. aor. ind. act. and mid.

ὄφρῦς (nom. acc.)

### Verbs

*Weak aorist indicative active and middle* ἔπαυσα, ἐπαυσάμην 'I stopped'

68 The forms of the weak aorist indicative active are as follows:

ἔ-παυσ-α 'I stopped' etc.

ἔ-παυσ-ας

ἔ-παυσ-ε(ν)

ἐ-παύσ-αμεν

ἐ-παύσ-ατε

ἔ-παυσ-αν

69 The forms of the weak aorist indicative middle are as follows:

ἐ-παυσ-άμην 'I stopped' etc.

ἐ-παύσ-ω

ἐ-παύσ-ατο

ἐ-παυσ-άμεθα

ἐ-παύσ-ασθε

ἐ-παύσ-αντο

### Notes

(i) Note the presence of the augment, to denote the past tense (cf. 59 (iii)).

(ii) The distinguishing mark of the wk. aorist indicative is the augment, and a -(σ)α-suffix added to the stem (which is sometimes different from that of the present):

κόπτω → ἔκοψα 'I knocked'

διδάσκω → ἐδίδαξα 'I taught'

δέχομαι → ἐδεξάμην 'I received'

Note the stem change in μένω-ἔμεινα, διαφθείρω-διέφθαιρα.

(iii) Contracted verbs lengthen the final vowel of their stem (cf. 62 (iii)).

ποιέω → ἐποίησα 'I did'

τιμάω → ἐτίμησα 'I honoured'

δηλόω → ἐδήλωσα 'I showed'

(iv) Aorist indicatives indicate that something has happened in the past without reference to the duration of time over which it occurred. They regard the action as a single event, not as a process (contrast imperfects at 59 (iii)). Translate them as:

'I -ed' (sometimes, also, 'I had -ed', sometimes 'I have -ed'.)

## Noun

Here is the final noun-type, denoted  $\zeta\eta$ :

70 ὄφρ-ύς, ἡ 'eyebrow' ( $\zeta\eta$ )

s.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ὄφρ-ύς	ὄφρ-ύν	ὄφρ-ύος	ὄφρ-ύει

pl.

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ὄφρ-ύες	ὄφρ-ύς	ὄφρ-ύων	ὄφρ-ύσι(ν)

---

## Exercises for Section Five E-F

---

### (b.c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate each sentence, then change the verb into the aorist:

- τίς κόπτει τὴν θύραν;
- τίς βιάζεται εἰς τὸ φροντιστήριον;
- ἀλλ' αὖθις κόπτω καὶ οὐ παύομαι κόπτων.
- λέξω σοί.
- τέλος δὲ τὰς ἐμβάδας λύσομεν.
- τί δὴτ' ἐκείνοι τὸν Θαλῆν θαυμάζομεν;

2. Translate each sentence, then change the verb into the aorist:

- ἡ ψύλλα πηδᾷ ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν τὴν Σωκράτους.
- ἀλλὰ πῶς μετρήσεις, ὦ Χαιρεφῶν;
- τέλος δὲ μετροῦμεν τὸ χωρίον.
- ζητοῦσιν οὗτοι τὰ κατὰ γῆς καὶ οὐ παύονται ζητοῦντες.
- τί δηλοῖ τὸ πρᾶγμα, ὦ Σώκρατες;

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

- The farmer gave a shout and a knock on the door.
- Don't they know that you received this idea with pleasure?
- The sophist did not persuade the clever young men.
- The just man, though clever, was astounded at the unjust argument.
- They stopped looking at the horses

## Vocabulary for Section Five G

ἀερο-βατέ-ω tread the air	ἐπὶ κρεμάθρας in a basket	οὐδὲν λέγ-ω <i>νεαὶ</i> nonsense
ἄ-μαθής ignorant (nom.)	ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς κρεμάθρας in this basket	οὐδέποτε never
ἀνα-μετρέ-ω measure up	ἔ-σχ-ε(ν) (it) had (ἔχ-ω)	ὄφρ-ύς, ἡ eyebrow (3h)
ἀπ-έρχ-ομαι depart	ἔ-τυχ-ε (it) happened to, actually was (τυγχάν-ω)	περι-φρονέ-ω surround with thought, circumcontemplate
βιάζ-ομαι use force, force one's way	ἐφ-ήμερ-ος -ον lasting a day, creature of a day	Περσικ-ός -ή -όν Persian
δρά-ω do	ἦλθ-ον I came (ἔρχ-ομαι)	πηδά-ω leap
ἐ-γέν-ετο (it) became (γίγν-ομαι)	ἦλθ-ες (you) (s.) came (ἔρχ-ομαι)	πρῶτον first
ἔ-δακ-ε (it) bit (δάκν-ω)	ἦλι-ος, ὁ sun (2a)	σ-ός σ-ή σ-όν your
ἔ-θε-τε you (pl.) put (τίθημι)	ἦρ-ου you (s.) asked (ἔρωτά-ω)	Σωκρατίδι-ον dear Socrates (2b)
εἶδ-ον (I) saw (ὄρά-ω)	θερμ-ός -ή -όν hot	τῆς γῆς the earth
εἶδ-ες (you) (s.) saw (ὄρά-ω)	κατὰ τί; for what?	τί; why?
εἶπ-ε (he) said (λέγ-ω)	κηρ-ός, ὁ wax (2a)	φροντιστήρι-ον, τό think-tank, mental institute (2b)
εἶτα then, next	Κικυννόθεν from the deme Kikynna	Χαιρεφώντος of Khairephon
ἐ-λάβ-ετε you (pl.) took (λαμβάν-ω)	κρεμάθρας a basket	χωρί-ον, τό space, distance (2b)
ἐ-λαθ-ες you (s.) escaped the notice of (λαινθάν-ω)	μέμφ-ομαι blame, find fault with	ψύλλ-α, ἡ flea (1c)
ἔ-μαθ-ον (I) learnt (μανθάν-ω)	μετέωρ-ος -ον in the air	ψυχρ-ός -ά -όν cold
ἐμβάς (ἐμβαδ-), ἡ slipper (3a)	μοι me	ὡς that
ἐξ-ευρίσκ-ω (ἐξευρ-) find out, discover	ὀπόσους τοὺς ἑαυτῆς πόδας how many of its own foot lengths	
ἐξ-ηύρ-ον (I) found out, discovered (ἐξ-ευρίσκ-ω)		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀπέρχομαι (ἀπελθ-) depart, go away	πηδάω leap, jump	τί; why?
βιάζομαι use force	πόρρω far, far off	(τίθημι) <i>ρε</i> - put, place
εἶτα then, next	πρῶτος η ον first	χωρίον, τό place, space, region (2b)
ἐξευρίσκω (ἐξευρ-) find out	πρῶτον first, at first	
ἥλιος, ὁ sun (2a)	ὀπόσος η ον how many	
	Σωκράτης, ὁ Socrates (3d)	

## Vocabulary for Section Five H

ἄ-μαθής ignorant (nom.)	Ἄπολλων (Ἄπολλων-), ὁ Apollo (3a) (acc.)	γέρων (γεροντ-), ὁ old man (3a)
ἄ-μαθῆ ignorant (acc.)	Ἄπολλω	γνώμη, ἡ plan (1a)
ἀνα-τελ-εῖ (it) will rise (fut. of ἀνα-τέλλ-ω)		

δανείζ-ω lend (money)  
 δῆτα then; indeed  
 δρά-ω (δρασ-) do, act  
 ἔ-γεν-όμην I became  
 (γίγν-ομαι)  
 ἔ-γέν-ου (you) (s.) became  
 (γίγν-ομαι)  
 εἰ if  
 εἰ ἄρα whether, indeed  
 ἐκφροντίζ-ω think out  
 ἔ-λαθ-ον I escaped notice  
 (λανθάν-ω)  
 ἐμαυτ-όν myself (acc.)  
 ἔ-παθ-ον I experienced,  
 suffered (πάσχ-ω)  
 ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης on the couch  
 ἕτερο-σ -α -ον the one (of 2)  
 ἦλθ-ον (I) came (έρχ-ομαι)  
 ἥττων ἥττον  
 (ἥττον-) weaker, lesser

ἵππικ-ή, ἡ horse-fever (1a)  
 ἵππο-μανῆ horse-mad (acc.)  
 κατα-κλίνθη lie down! (s.)  
 κλέπτω steal  
 κῶρ-ις, ὁ bug (3c)  
 κρείττων κρείττον  
 (κρείττον-) stronger,  
 greater  
 λήσ-ω I shall escape notice  
 (fuit of λανθάν-ω)  
 μή not  
 μῆν (μην-), ὁ month (3a)  
 νυκτι at night  
 ὅπως; how?  
 ὅτι; what?  
 οὗτος hey, you!  
 πᾶν at all  
 πέ-ος, τό penis (3c)

πότερο-σ -α -ον which (of  
 τῶ)?  
 προσ-αγορεύ-ω address  
 σεαυτοῦ your own  
 σελήν-η, ἡ moon (1a)  
 σιγά-ω be quiet  
 σ-ὄς σ-ῆ-σ-όν your  
 Σωκρατίδι-ον dear Socrates  
 (2b)  
 τῆ δεξιᾷ right hand  
 τήμερον today  
 ὑπο-χρέ-ω-σ -ων in debt  
 φαρμακίς (φαρμακιδ-), ἡ  
 witch, sorceress (3a)  
 φροντιστήρι-ον, τό  
 think-tank, mental institute  
 (2b)  
 χρήσιμ-ο-σ -η -ον useful  
 χρήστ-η-σ, ὁ creditor (1d)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀμαθής ignorant  
 ἄρα then, in that case (inferring)  
 γέρον (γεροντ-), ὁ old man  
 (3a)  
 γνώμη, ἡ mind, purpose,  
 judgment, plan (1a)  
 δεξιός ἄ-όν right  
 δεξιᾶ, ἡ right hand (1b)  
 δῆτα then  
 δράω (δρασ-) do, act

εἰ if  
 ἐμαυτόν myself  
 ἕτερο-σ ἄ-ον one (or the other) of  
 τῶ  
 ἥττων ἥττον (ἥττον-) lesser,  
 weaker  
 κλέπτω steal  
 κρείττων κρείττον  
 (κρείττον-) stronger, greater

οὗτος hey there! hey you!  
 πᾶν very (much); at all  
 πότερο-σ ἄ-ον which (of τῶ)  
 σελήνη, ἡ moon (1a)  
 σὸς σῆ-σ-όν your (when 'you' are  
 one person)  
 τήμερον today  
 χρήσιμος ἡ-ον useful, profitable

## ○ Grammar for Section Five G—H

### Summary

Str. aor. ind. act. and mid., interrogatives

### Verbs

Strong aorist indicative active and middle ἔλαβον ἐλαβόμην 'I took'

71 The forms of the strong aorist indicative active are as follows:

ἔ-λαβ-ον 'I took' etc.

ἔ-λαβ-ες

ἔ-λαβ-ε(ν)

ἐ-λάβ-ομεν

ἐ-λάβ-ετε

ἔ-λαβ-ον

72 The forms of the strong aorist indicative middle are as follows:

ἐ-λαβ-όμην 'I took' etc.

ἐ-λάβ-ου

ἐ-λάβ-ετο

ἐ-λαβ-όμεθα

ἐ-λάβ-εσθε

ἐ-λάβ-οντο

### Notes

(i) Verbs which take strong aorist forms nearly always undergo a more radical stem-change than weak aorists. These stem changes have to be learnt. Some you should already recognise from earlier learning vocabularies.

The most important and common verbs taking strong aorist forms are:

μανθάνω → ἔμαθον 'I learnt'

λαμβάνω → ἔλαβον 'I took'

τυγχάνω → ἔτυχον 'I happened'

γίγνομαι → ἐγενόμην 'I became'

εὐρίσκω → ἤνυρον 'I found'

ἔχω → ἔσχον 'I had'

λέγω → εἶπον 'I said'

ὁράω → εἶδον 'I saw'

ἔρχομαι → ἤλθον 'I came/went'

τρέχω → ἔδραμον 'I ran'

} Note the use of a  
completely different stem for  
the present and aorist  
(cf. English 'go': 'went').

(ii) The endings of the strong aorist forms are just the same as for the imperfects (see 58, 59). The difference lies in the change of stem, because the strong aorists have a stem of their own which is different from that of the present and imperfect. The imperfect adds endings to the present stem; the strong aorist adds endings to the strong aorist stem, e.g.

μανθάνω imperf ἐ-μάνθαν-ον (μανθαν- is present stem)

μανθάνω aor. ἔ-μαθ-ον (μαθ- is strong aorist stem)

(iii) The meaning of the strong aorist is just the same as the weak, i.e. 'I-ed' (see 69 (iv)). (On finding the lexicon form, cf. p. 335).

### Interrogatives

73 Observe that τί, which you have learnt to mean 'what?' can also, and very commonly, mean 'why?'. When τί does mean 'why?', it is in the accusative case and being used adverbially. Its literal meaning is 'in relation to what?' or 'in respect of what?' – in other words, 'why?'

**Revise:**

Pres. mid. 23

Type 1 nouns 24

---

**Exercises for Section Five G–H**


---

**(b) Morphology**

1. Form the aorist (1st s.) of these verbs and give the aorist stem:

c.g. *παύω* ἔπαυσα παυσ(α)

*βιάζομαι*

*κλέπτω*

*θαυμάζω*

*διδάσκω*

*δέχομαι*

*φιλέω*

*πηδάω*

*ποιέω*

*δηλόω*

2. Give the aorist (1st s.) of these verbs and give the aorist stem:

c.g. *τρέχω* ἔδραμον δραμ-

*μανθάνω*

*ἔρχομαι*

*ἔξευρίσκω*

*διαβάλλω*

3. Give the meaning of each verb (unaugmented stem in brackets), then pair aorist with present from the list below:

*εἶδον* (ἰδ-), *εἶπον* (εἶπ-), *ἔλαθον* (λαθ-), *ἤυρον* (εὕρ-), *ἔμαθον* (μαθ-),

*ἤλθον* (ἔλθ-), *ἐγενόμην* (γεν-), *ἔπαθον* (παθ-)

*γίγνομαι*, *λέγω*, *πάσχω*, *λανθάνω*, *εὕρισκω*, *ἔρχομαι*, *μανθάνω*, *ὀράω*

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate into Greek:

1. The student said that he discovered how big the space was.
2. The farmer happened to be an ignoramus.
3. The old man departed.
4. The father became unjust.
5. I noticed that you were a bumpkin.



---

 Exercises for Section Five
 

---

## (a) Words

1. Deduce the meanings of the words in the right-hand columns from those in the left:

ἀδύνατος	ἡ δύναμις	δύναμαι	
αἴτιος/αἰτία	αἰτιάομαι		
βιάζομαι	βίαιος α ον	ἡ βία	
διδάσκω	ὁ διδάσκαλος	ἡ δίδαξις	διδασκτικός ἢ οἶ
δίκη	δίκαιος ον   ἀδικέω	ὁ ἀντίδικος	ἄδικος ον
		ὁ δικαστής	δικάζω
δράω	τὸ δράμα		
δυστυχής	δυστυχέω		
θαυμάζω	θαυμάσιος α ον	τὸ θαῦμα	θαυμαστός ἢ οἶ
ἵππομανής	μαίνομαι	ἡ μανία	
ἵππος	ἵππιος	ἡ ἵππική	ὁ ἵππεύς
κλέπτω	ὁ κλέπτης	ἡ κλοπή	
μανθάνω	μαθητής	ἀμαθής	μαθηματικός ἢ οἶ
νοῦς	διανοέομαι	διάνοια	νοέω ἐννοέω
οἰκέτης	οἰκίδιον   ὁ οἶκος	ἡ οἰκία	ἐνοικέω
		οἰκείος α ον	
σοφός	ἡ σοφία   φιλέω	σοφιστής	ἡ φιλοσοφία

2. Translate these pairs of words: what is the significance of the change from left to right?

γέρων	γερόντιον
θύρα	θυρίδιον
οἰκία	οἰκίδιον
παῖς	παιδίον
πατήρ	πατρίδιον
Σωκράτης	Σωκρατίδιον
Φειδιππίδης	Φειδιππίδιον

## (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate this passage (if you did not do Test Exercise Two); then change the tense of the verbs to imperfect or aorist as indicated:

ἐπειδὴ οὖν προσέρχονται (Aorist) ἡ τῶν Περσῶν στρατιὰ καὶ τὸ ναυτικόν, οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ταχέως εἰσβαίνουσιν (imperfect) εἰς τὰς ναῦς καὶ

πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμίνα πλέουσι (aorist). ἔπειτα δὲ οἷ τε Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἡσυχάζουσι (imperfect). τέλος δὲ ἀφικνεῖται (aorist) τὸ τῶν Περσῶν ναυτικόν, καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ γίγνεται (aorist), ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα βραδέως πλέουσι (aorist) αἱ νῆες. καὶ ἐπειδὴ γίγνεται (aorist) ἡ ἡμέρα, οἱ μὲν Πέρσαι προσέρχονται (aorist) ταχέως ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀποροῦσι (aorist) καὶ φοβοῦνται (imperfect). τέλος δὲ οὐκέτι φοβοῦνται (imperfect), ἀλλὰ τολμῶσι (imperfect) καὶ ἐπέρχονται (aorist) ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους. μάχονται (imperfect) οὖν εὐκόσμως καὶ νικῶσι (aorist) τοὺς βαρβάρους. οἱ μὲν οὖν βάρβαροι φεύγουσι (imperfect), φεύγει (aorist) δὲ καὶ ὁ Ξέρξης. οὕτως οὖν ἐλεύθεροι γίνονται (aorist) οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ τὴν ἀρετὴν.

### Vocabulary

ἐνθα καὶ ἔνθα	up and down	πλέω	αογ. ἔπλευσα
ἡμέρα, ἡ	day (1b)	ἀφικνέομαι	αογ. ἀφικόμην
εὐκόσμως	in good order	φεύγω	αογ. ἔφυγον
ἀρετή, ἡ	courage (1a)		

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

An old man and his son, a young man, were talking about money. The youngster, as it happened, owed a lot of money. And because of this, his creditors would not stop pursuing his father. The father did not punish the son (for his mother stopped him), but conceived a clever plan. When therefore the father managed to persuade his son, the boy went obediently to the sophists and learnt a great deal. The sophists always persuaded him, taught a lot of clever stuff and received a lot of money. So the son learnt quickly the just and unjust arguments, always winning his case. But when the youth came home, this plan did not put a stop to his debts. The young man did not like his father (who was a yokel), but hated him. So the boy never stopped mocking his father. Finally, the old man threw him out.

### Test Exercise Five

Translate into English:

νεανίας δέ τις ἔτυχε πολλὰ χρήματα ὀφείλων διὰ τὴν ἵππικὴν. οὕτως οὖν ὁ μὲν πατὴρ αἰεὶ τὰς δίκας τὰς τῶν χρηστῶν ἔφευγεν, οἱ δὲ χρήσται ἐδίωκον αὐτὸν καὶ οὐκ ἐπαύοντο δίκην λαμβάνοντες. διαλέγονται οὖν ὅτε πατὴρ καὶ ἡ μήτηρ.

ΠΑΤΗΡ οὐ δὴ, ὦ γύναι, φαίνη αἰτία οὔσα τῶν ἐμῶν κακῶν. τίς γὰρ

ἐλάμβανε τὸν υἱὸν καὶ περὶ ἵππων διελέγετο, εἰ μὴ σύ; τίς οὖν ἵππομανῆ ἐποίησε τὸν υἱόν, εἰ μὴ σύ; τί νῦν ποιήσω ἐγώ; πῶς παύσω τὰ χρέα;

ΜΗΤΗΡ σὺ δὴ αἴτιος εἶ, ὦ ἄνερ. ἀμαθῆ μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἄγροικον ὄντα σὲ οὐ φιλεῖ ὁ νεανίας οὐδὲ πείθεται, ἐμὲ δὲ ἀστικὴν οὖσαν μάλιστα φιλεῖ.

ἀλλὰ μὴ φρόντιζε. ἔχω γὰρ διάνοιάν τινα ἐγώ. πείσω καὶ διδάξω τὸν υἱὸν ἔγωγε, πείθουσα δὲ παύσω ἐκ τῆς ἵππομανίας.

ἀλλὰ διδάσκουσα καὶ πείθουσα οὐκ ἐκώλυσε τὸν νεανίαν ἢ μήτηρ, οὐδὲ ἐπαύετο ὁ υἱὸς ἵππομανῆς ὧν. τέλος δὲ ἦλθεν ὁ νεανίας εἰς τὸ τῶν σοφιστῶν φροντιστήριον καὶ μαθητῆς ἐγένετο. πολλὰ δὲ σοφὰ καὶ εἶδε καὶ ἤκουσε, πολλὰ δὲ ἐδίδαξαν οἱ σοφισταί. ὅτε δὲ ἔμαθε τὸν τε δίκαιον καὶ τὸν ἄδικον λόγον ὁ υἱός, εἶπεν ὁ πατήρ.

ΠΑΤ. ιοὺ ἰού. νῦν γὰρ οὐ λήφονται οὐκέτι οἱ χρήσται τὰ χρήματα. ὁ μὲν γὰρ υἱὸς νικήσει τὰς δίκας διὰ τὸν ἄδικον λόγον, τὸν κρείττονα ὄντα, ἡμεῖς δὲ φευξόμεθα τοὺς χρήστας.

### Vocabulary

ἵππικ-ή, ἡ horse-fever (1a)  
 μήτηρ (μητ(ε)ρ-), ἡ mother  
 (3a)  
 χρήστης, ὁ creditor (1d)  
 ἵππομανῆ horse-mad (acc. s.  
 m.)  
 ἀμαθῆ ignorant (acc. s. m.)

ἀστικός ἢ ὄν from the city  
 τῆς ἵππομανίας his  
 horse-madness  
 ἵππομανῆς horse-mad (nom.  
 s. m.)  
 ἰοὺ ἰού hurrah!

## Section Six

### Vocabulary for Section Six A

ἀλήθει-α, ἡ truth (1b)	εἰδέναι to know (οἶδα)	παίζ-ειν to joke, to poke fun at (παίζ-ω)
ἀνάγκ-η, ἡ necessity (1a)	ἑταῖρ-ος, ὁ friend (2a)	πάντα everything (acc.)
ἀνάγκ-η ἐστὶ it is obligatory for x (acc.) to - (inf.)	ἦ than	παρὰ τῷ θεῷ in the god's presence
ἀπο-κρίν-ομαι (ἀποκριν-) answer	ἦ-ει (he) went (impf. of ἔρχ-ομαι εἶμι)	παρ-έχ-εσθαι to present (παρ-έχ-ομαι)
βούλ-ομαι wish, want	θορυβέ-ω make a din	ποι-εῖν to do (ποιέ-ω)
γάρ δῃ I assure you; indeed	ἵεναι to go (ἔρχ-ομαι εἶμι)	ποτέ once
γάρ . . . που of course (no need to ask)	ἴσως perhaps	Πυθί-α, ἡ the Pythian priestess (1b) (who sat on a tripod and delivered Apollo's oracle to the priest, who interpreted it)
δεῖ it is necessary for x (acc.) to - (inf.)	καὶ μὴν moreover	σοφί-α, ἡ wisdom (1b)
Δελφ-οί, οἱ Delphi (2a) (site of Apollo's oracle)	λέγ-ειν to speak, say, tell (λέγ-ω)	σοφώτατ-ος -η -ον wisest (σοφ-ός)
Δελφοῖς Delphi	λογίζ-ομαι reckon, consider	σοφώτερ-ος -α -ον wiser (σοφ-ός)
δια-βάλλ-ειν to slander	μαντεῖ-α, ἡ answer, pronouncement (1b)	σφοδρ-ός -ά -όν impetuous
δια-βάλλ-ω (διαβαλ-) slander	μαντεύ-εσθαι to consult the oracle	φαν-οῦμαι I shall appear (fut. of φαίν-ομαι)
δια-βολ-ή, ἡ a slander (1a)	μαντεύ-ομαι get from the oracle	
διδάσκ-ειν to teach	μαρτυρέ-ω bear witness	
δι-έ-βαλ-ον they slandered (aor. of διαβάλλ-ω)	μάρτυς (μαρτυρ-), ὁ witness (3a)	
δόξα-α, ἡ reputation (1c)	μέντοι however	
ἐαυτ-όν himself	νέου youth	

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀλήθεια, ἡ truth (1b)	ἐαυτόν himself
βούλομαι wish, want	ἦ than
διαβάλλω (διαβαλ-) slander	ἴσως perhaps
δόξα, ἡ reputation, opinion (1c)	σοφία, ἡ wisdom (1b)

## Vocabulary for Section Six B

αἰσχύν-ομαι be ashamed	ἐν-θουσιασμ-ός, ὁ inspiration	οὕτωςι as follows
ἀνάγκ-η ἔστι it is obligatory	(2a)	παρ-όντ-ες present (part of
for x (acc.) to - (inf.)	ἐντεῦθεν from that point.	πάρ-ειμι)
ἀπ-ῆ-α I went off (impf. of	ἴθι from there	πειρά-ομαι try
ἀπ-έρχ-ομαι/ἄπειμι)	ἐπεὶ when	ποίημα (ποιηματ-), τό poem
Ἄπολλων (Ἄπολλων-), ὁ	ῆ-α I went (impf. of	(3b)
Apollo (3a) (acc. Ἄπολλω)	ἔρχ-ομαι εἶμι)	ποίησ-ις, ἡ poetry (3c)
ἀπορία perplexity	ζήτησ-ις, ἡ inquiry (3c)	ποιητ-ης, ὁ poet (1d)
ἀποφαίν-ειν to reveal, to	θέμις lawful (lit. θέμις, ἡ law	πολιτικ-ός -ῆ-όν concerned
show (ἀπο-φαίν-ω)	of the gods (3a))	with the city
αὐτῷ for him	θεό-μαντ-ις, ὁ prophet (3e)	ποτε ever
γάρ δῃ I am positive; really	καὶ γὰρ for really	σοφώτατ-ος -ῆ-ον wisest
γούν at any rate	κύων (κυν-), ὁ dog (3a)	(σοφ-ός)
δεῖ it is necessary for x (acc.)	λέγ-ειν to say, to tell (λέγ-ω)	σοφώτερ-ος -α-ον wiser
to - (inf.)	λογίζ-ομαι reckon, consider	(σοφ-ός)
δοκέ-ω seem; consider oneself	μαντεῖ-ον, τό oracle (2b)	χρησμ-ωδ-ός, ὁ soothsayer
to (+ inf.)	μετὰ (+ acc.) after	(2a)
εἰδέναι to know (οἶδα)	μωρότερ-ος -α-ον more	χρόν-ος, ὁ time (2a)
εἰδότη-ες knowing (nom.)	stupid	φύσ-ις, ἡ nature (3c)
(οἶδα)	νοέ-ω mean	ψεύδ-ομαι tell lies
εἰδ-ώς knowing (nom.)	ὅμως nevertheless	ᾤμην I thought (οἶμαι)
(οἶδα)	ὅτι what	ὥς that
εἶναι to be (εἶμι)	οὐ γὰρ δήπου . . . γε it can't	
ἐλέγχ-ειν to refute (ἐλέγχ-ω)	be that . . .	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀνάγκη ἔστι it is obligatory (for	δεῖ it is necessary for X (acc.)	νοέω think, notice, mean, intend
X (acc. or dat.)) to - (inf.)	to (inf.)	πάρειμι be present, be at hand
ἀνάγκη, ἡ necessity (1a)	ἐντεῦθεν from then, from there	ποιητῆς, ὁ poet (1d)
ἀποφαίνω reveal, show	λογίζομαι reckon, calculate.	ποτε once, ever
γάρ δῃ really; I assure you	consider	ὥς that

## Vocabulary for Section Six C

ἀπορ-εῖν to be at a loss	εἰδέναι to know (οἶδα)	ἐξ-ετάζ-ω question closely
(ἀπορέ-ω)	εἰδότη-ες knowing (nom.)	ἔρωτ-άν to ask (ἔρωτά-ω)
βαρεῖ-αι serious (nom.)	(οἶδα)	εὕρισκ-ω find, discover
δια-βολ-ή, ἡ slander (1a)	εἰδότη-ων knowing (gen.)	ῆ-α I went, came (impf. of
δια-φθείρ-ω corrupt	(οἶδα)	ἔρχ-ομαι εἶμι)
δοκ-εῖν to seem (δοκέ-ω)	εἶναι to be (εἶμι)	ᾔδ-η I knew (past of οἶδα)
δοκέ-ω seem; consider oneself	ἐξ-ετάζ-ειν to question	ᾔδ-ομαι enjoy
to -	closely (ἐξ-ετάζ-ω)	κατά-δηλ-ος -ον obvious



λέγ-ειν to say, tell (λέγ-ω)  
 μέντοι however, but  
 μετέωρ-α, τά things in the air  
 (2b)  
 μή ποί  
 μιαιώτατ-ος-η-ον most  
 abominable (person)  
 (μιαρ-ός)  
 νομιζ-ειν to acknowledge  
 (νομιζ-ω)  
 οίμαι think  
 ὀργίζ-ομαι get angry  
 πάθ-ος, τό experience (3c)

πειρά-ομαι try  
 πλούσι-ος -α -ον rich  
 ποι-εῖν to make (ποιέ-ω)  
 πολλάκις often  
 πρεσβύτερ-ος, ὁ older man  
 (2a)  
 σοφώτατ-ος-η-ον wisest  
 (σοφ-ός)  
 σοφώτερ-ος -α -ον wiser  
 (σοφ-ός)  
 σχολ-ή, ἡ leisure (1a)  
 ταυτησὶ τῆς ζητήσεως this  
 inquiry

τοιοῦτος τοιαύτη τοιοῦτο(ν)  
 ... καί the same sort of  
 ... as  
 ὕβριστ-ής, ὁ bully (1d)  
 ὑπὸ γῆς beneath the earth  
 φιλό-σοφ-ος, ὁ philosopher  
 (2a)  
 χειρο-τέχν-ης, ὁ craftsman  
 (1d)  
 ὤμην I thought (impf. of  
 οἶμαι)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

διαβολή, ἡ slander (1a)  
 διαφθείρω  
 (διαφθειρ-) corrupt; kill;  
 destroy  
 δοκέω seem; consider oneself  
 to -

εἰδώς εἰδύια εἰδός  
 (εἶδοτ-) knowing (part. of  
 οἶδα)  
 εἶμι shall go; ἵεναι to go; ἦα I  
 went  
 ἐξετάζω question closely

εὐρίσκω (εὐρ-) find, come  
 upon  
 μή not; don't! (with imper.)  
 οἶμαι think (impf. ὤμην)  
 πειράομαι (πειρασ-) try, test  
 πολλάκις often

## ○ Grammar for Section Six A-C

### Summary:

Pres. inf. act. and mid.

δεῖ

Comp. and sup. adjs.

ἦα

### Verbs

Present infinitive active and middle παύειν, παύεσθαι 'to stop'

74 Infinitives based on the present stem are formed as follows:

Active infinitive: add -ειν to the present stem, e.g. παύ-ειν 'to stop'

Middle infinitive: add -εσθαι to the present stem, e.g. παύ-εσθαι 'to stop'

### Notes

(i) α-contracts have act. inf. in -ᾶν, mid. -ᾶσθαι (τιμᾶν, τιμᾶσθαι)

ε-contracts have act. inf. in -εῖν, mid. -εῖσθαι (ποιεῖν, ποιεῖσθαι)

ο-contracts have act. inf. in -οῦν, mid. -οῦσθαι (δηλοῦν, δηλοῦσθαι)

(ii) Note the following infinitives:

εἶναι 'to be'

ἵεναι 'to go'

εἰδέναι 'to know'

(iii) The negative with the infinitive is usually μή (cf. Language Survey (9)).

Some uses of the infinitive

75 Certain verbs take infinitive constructions, e.g.

- βούλομαι 'I wish to' + inf.
- δεῖ 'ought to, must' + inf.
- ἀνάγκη ἐστί 'obligatory to' + inf.
- δοκέω 'I seem to myself, I think that I' + inf.

Note

ἀνάγκη and δεῖ put the person who must into the accusative case, e.g.

- δεῖ με ἵέναι 'I must go'
- ἀνάγκη ἐστί τὸν θεὸν λέγειν 'the god is obliged to speak' (sometimes τῷ θεῷ)

Adjectives

76 Comparative and superlative adjectives of the καλός type are formed as follows:

- σοφ-ός 'wise' σοφ-ώτερ-ος -α -ον 'wiser' σοφ-ώτατ-ος -η -ον 'wisest'
- δειν-ός 'clever' δειν-ότερ-ος -α -ον 'more clever' δειν-ότατ-ος -η -ον 'most clever'

Notes

(i) Comparatives also mean 'rather -', 'fairly -', 'quite -'; superlatives also mean 'most -', 'extremely -', 'very -'.

(ii) When two things are being compared, Greek uses ἢ = 'than', e.g.

ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐστί σοφώτερος ἢ ὁ παῖς 'the man is wiser than the boy'. Note that the two things being compared are in the same case.

(iii) Difficult comparative forms are:

- |                           |                            |  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| ἀγαθός, ἀμείνων, ἄριστος  | 'good', 'better', 'best'   | } Comparatives decline<br>like εὐφρων 44 |
| κακός, κακίων, κακίστος   | 'bad', 'worse', 'worst'    |  |
| καλός, καλλίων, κάλλιστος | 'fine', 'finer', 'finest'  |  |
| πολύς, πλείων, πλείστος   | 'much', 'more', 'most'     |  |
| μέγας, μείζων, μέγιστος   | 'big', 'bigger', 'biggest' |  |

Verbs

ἦα 'I went'

77 εἶμι 'I shall go' has an irregular imperfect:

- ἦα 'I was going, I went' etc.
- ἦεισθα
- ἦει
- ἦμεν
- ἦτε
- ἦσαν

---

## Exercises for Section Six A–C

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Change the following verbs into the infinitive form. Then, adding subjects where indicated, use them to complete the sentences. Translate the sentences:

λέγω, διαβάλλω, δοκέω, ἀποφαίνω, διαλέγομαι, διαφθείρω, εὐρίσκω, εἶμι, εἶμί, οἶδα

- δεῖ (you) (pl.) τὴν ἀλήθειαν (tell), καὶ μὴ (slander) Σωκράτη.
- οὐ βουλόμεθα (to seem) ἄριστοι, ἀλλ' (to be).
- οἱ σοφοὶ δοκοῦσί τι (know), οὐκ εἰδότες.
- ἀνάγκη ἦν (Socrates) (to go) πρὸς τοὺς σοφοὺς καὶ (to talk) περὶ σοφίας.
- Σωκράτης, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐ πειράται (to corrupt) τοὺς νέους.
- Σωκράτης ἐβούλετο (to discover) πότερον τὴν ἀλήθειαν λέγει ὁ ἐν Δελφοῖς θεὸς ἢ οὐ. καὶ πολλάκις ἐπειράτο Σωκράτης (to show) τὸν θεὸν οὐ τὰληθῆ λέγοντα.

2. Pair up comparative forms with positive. Add the superlative where you can:

ἀγαθός, βέβαιος, δεινός, κακός, καλός, μέγας, μῶρος, πολέμιος, πολὺς, φίλος, χρήσιμος  
καλλίων, μείζων, φίλτερος, πολεμιώτερος, μωρότερος, δεινότερος, βεβαιότερος, ἀμείνων, χρησιμώτερος, πλείων, κακίωι

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

- I was obliged to go to the poets.
- You must question me closely and consider carefully.
- I am trying to discover how the poets show their wisdom.
- You knew that you wanted to slander me.
- From then on I appeared to be corrupting the young, although I knew nothing.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Six D

---

ἀκούσ-ας upon hearing  
(nom. s. m.) (ἀκού-ω)  
ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ . . . γε but the  
fact is that . . .  
ἄμαθεις ignorant (nom.)

ἀμφοτέρ-οι-αι-α both  
ἀνδρεί-ως bravely  
ἀπο-κρίν-ομαι answer (fut.  
ἀπο-κριν-οῦμαι)  
ἀπο-κριν-ᾶμεν-ος in answer,

answering (ἀπο-κρίν-ομαι)  
ἀπορήσ-ας on being at a loss  
(nom. s. m.) (ἀπορέ-ω)  
ἀρετ-ή, ἡ excellence, virtue  
(1a)



γὰρ δῆποι of course  
 γε δὴ certainly  
 γελά-ω (γελασ-) laugh  
 γελάσ-ας on laughing, with a  
 laugh (nom. s. m.)  
 (γελά-ω)  
 Διονυσόδωρ-ος, ὁ  
 Dionysodoros (2a)  
 εἰεν well, all right then!  
 ἐναιτίον ἡμῶν in front of us  
 ἐνθάδε here  
 ἐρυθρία-ω blush  
 ἐρώτημα (ἐρωτηματ-), τό  
 question (3b)  
 Εὐθύδημ-ος, ὁ Euthydemos  
 (2a)

εὐθύς at once  
 ἔ-φην (I) said (φημί)  
 ἔ-φη (he) said (φημί)  
 ἕως while  
 ἤδ-ομαι enjoy  
 ἦν δ' ἐγώ I said  
 ἦ δ' ὅς he said  
 ἠρυθρίασ-εν see ἐρυθρία-ω  
 καὶ μὴν look here  
 κατα-λαμβάν-ω  
 (κατα-λαβ-) come upon  
 Κλενί-ας, ὁ Klemas (1d)  
 Κρίτων (Κριτων-), ὁ Kriton  
 (3a)

Λύκει-ον, τό Lykeion (2b) (a  
 training ground, where young  
 and old met)  
 μετ(α) ἄλλων πολλῶν with  
 many others  
 μηδέ and don't  
 νεανίσκ-ος, ὁ young man (2a)  
 προ-τρέπ-ω urge, impel  
 τούτω this interval  
 φιλοσοφί-α, ἡ philosophy  
 (1b)  
 χθές yesterday

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀνδρείος α ον brave, manly  
 ἀποκρίνομαι  
 (ἀποκριν-) answer  
 ἀρετή, ἡ virtue, excellence (1a)

δήπου of course, surely  
 ἠδομαι enjoy, be pleased  
 ἦν δ' ἐγώ I said  
 ἦ δ' ὅς he said

νεανίσκος, ὁ young man (2a)  
 προτρέπω urge on, impel  
 φιλοσοφία, ἡ philosophy (1b)

## Vocabulary for Section Six E

ἀμαθεῖς ignorant (nom.)  
 διδάσκαλ-ος, ὁ teacher (2a)  
 ἔ-φη (he) said (φημί)  
 ἤσ-μεν we knew (past of  
 οἶδα)

ἤσ-τε you (pl.) knew (past of  
 οἶδα)  
 μειράκι-ον, τό youth (2b)

πάνυ γε yes indeed  
 πω yet  
 ὡμο-λόγ-ει (he) agreed  
 (ὁμο-λογέ-ω)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

διδάσκαλος, ὁ teacher (2a)  
 ὁμολογέω agree  
 οὐκοῦν therefore  
 οὐκουν not. therefore

## Vocabulary for Section Six F

ἀμαθεῖς ignorant (nom.)  
 ἀπορία perplexity  
 ἄρτι just now  
 γελάσ-αντ-ες laughing, with  
 laughs (nom. pl. m.)  
 (γελά-ω)  
 ἐκ-δεξ-άμεν-ος receiving in  
 turn (ἐκ-δέχ-ομαι)

ἐκ-δέχ-ομαι take up, receive  
 in turn  
 ἐμ-πίπτ-ω fall into  
 ἐνταῦθα at this point  
 ἐπ-αιέ-ω praise (1st)  
 ἐπ-ήνεσ-α)

εὐθύς at once  
 ἔ-φη (he) said (φημί)  
 θορυβῆσ-αντ-ες making a  
 din, with a din (nom. pl.  
 m.) (θορυβέ-ω)  
 καὶ δὴ let's suppose  
 σφαῖρ-α, ἡ ball (1b)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

γελάω (γελασ-) laugh

ἐκδέχομαι receive in turn

ἐμπίπτω (ἐμπεσ-) fall into, on (+ ἐν or εἰς)

ἐπαινέω (ἐπαινεσ-) praise

εὐθύς at once, straightaway

φημί ἔφην I say/I said

## ○ Grammar for Section Six D–F

## Summary:

Wk. aor. part. act. and mid.

Aspect

ἤδη, φημί, ἔφην

## Participles

78 You have already met participles based on the *present* stem of verbs, e.g. βλέπων 'looking', τρέχων 'running' (50). Greek also has participles based on the *aorist* stem of verbs. To form the aorist stem take the *aorist indicative*, and discount (i) the augment, (ii) the personal endings, e.g.

ἔ-παυσ-α aor. stem: παυσ-(α)

ἤ-κουσ-α aor. stem: ἄκουσ-(α)

ἀπ-ε-κριν-ἄμην aor. stem: ἀποκριν-(α)

To form the weak aorist participle, add endings as follows to the aorist stem:

Weak aorist participle active παύσας παύσασα παῦσαν (παυσαντ-)  
'stopping'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	παύσ-ας	παύσ-αντ-α	παύσ-αντ-ος	παύσ-αντ-ι
f.	παύσ-ασ-α	παύσ-ασ-αν	παυσ-άσ-ης	παυσ-ά-σ-η
n.	παῦσ-αν	παῦσ-αν	παύσ-αντ-ος	παύσ-αντ-ι

pl.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	παύσ-αντ-ες	παύσ-αντ-ας	παυσ-άντ-ων	παύσ-ασι(ν)
f.	παύσ-ασ-αι	παυσ-άσ-ας	παυσ-ασ-ῶν	παυσ-άσ-αῖς
n.	παύσ-αντ-α	παύσ-αντ-α	παυσ-άντ-ων	παύσ-ασι(ν)

## Note

For the endings (not the stem) of the active participles cf. εὐφρων (45) in the m., n., and τόλμα (24) for the f. Learn them as παύσας παύσασα παῦσαν (παυσαντ-).

79 Weak aorist participle middle *παυσάμενος παυσαμένη παυσάμενον*  
'stopping'

	nom.	acc.	gen.	
m.	παυσ-άμεν-ος	παυσ-άμεν-ον	παυσ-αμέν-ου	etc. just like καλ-ός -ή -όν
f.	παυσ-αμέν-η	παυσ-αμέν-ην	παυσ-αμέν-ης	
n.	παυσ-άμεν-ον	παυσ-άμεν-ον	παυσ-αμέν-ου	

Learn the nom., acc., s. and pl.

*Aspect*

What is the difference in meaning between, say, *παύων* and *παύσας*, or between *βλέπων* and *βλέψας*? One vital thing to say is that the difference is NOT NECESSARILY ONE OF TIME. *παύσας* or *βλέψας* need not be translated 'having stopped', or 'having looked'. The difference is one of what is called ASPECT, and is the same as the difference that has already been shown to exist between the aorist and imperfect indicatives – i.e., the difference between regarding the action as a *process* (imperfect) and an *event* (aorist). A present participle regards the action as a *process* (and is therefore sometimes called 'imperfective'), while the aorist participle regards it simply as a single *event*. Thus it is possible to translate both *βλέπων* and *βλέψας* as 'looking'; in the former case, it would be understood that the look *went on*, in the latter that it simply took place. Indeed, there might be a case for translating an aorist participle by a NOUN to show that the idea of time is not necessarily involved, e.g. *βλέψας πρὸς ἐμὲ ἠρυθρίασεν* might best be translated 'with a glance at me, he blushed'. Alternatively, one might co-ordinate the sentence and write 'he looked at me and blushed'. Whatever else you do, it is essential that you pay close attention to actual Greek usage. At times the distinction between the two aspects may seem quite arbitrary to an English speaker. (On aspect in general, cf. Language Survey (3), p. 310.)

Two irregular verbs ἤδη 'I knew', φημί 'I say'

80 The past of οἶδα is as follows:

ἤδη 'I knew' etc.

ἤδησθα

ἤδει

ἤσμεν

ἤστε

ἤσαν (ἤδεσαν)

81 *φημί* 'I say' inflects as follows in the present and imperfect (though note that the imperfect usually carries an aorist meaning 'I said'):

<i>φημί</i>	'I say' etc.	<i>ἔφην</i>	'I said' etc.
<i>φῆς</i>	<i>οἱ φῆς</i>	<i>ἔφησθα</i>	<i>οἱ ἔφης</i>
<i>φησί</i>		<i>ἔφη</i>	
<i>φαμέν</i>		<i>ἔφαμεν</i>	
<i>φατέ</i>		<i>ἔφατε</i>	
<i>φασί(ν)</i>		<i>ἔφασαν</i>	

Note

Do not use *φημί* if you are translating English 'say that' into Greek. Use *λέγω ὅτι* for the moment. See further Reference Grammar K(i), p. 301.

## Exercises for Section Six D–F

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

- Translate into Greek the italic phrases, using either aorist or present participle to suit the sense:
  - We sat silently, *all the time perplexed* as to his meaning.
  - With a glance* at me the teacher began to speak.
  - The spectators *heard* his arguments and applauded.
  - Dionysodoros replied *with laughter constantly in his voice*.
  - The woman *picked up* the argument and replied.
  - He happened to *say in answer*.
- Form the aorist participles of these verbs:
 

<i>βλέπω</i>	<i>δέχομαι</i>
<i>φροντίζω</i>	<i>βιάζομαι</i>
<i>ρίπτω</i>	<i>λογίζομαι</i>
<i>σώζω</i>	<i>μάχομαι (μαχεσ-)</i>
<i>παύομαι</i>	<i>ἀποκρίνομαι (ἀποκριν-)</i>
- Form the aorist participles of these contracted verbs:
 

<i>ποιέω</i>	<i>ἐλευθερόω</i>
<i>βοηθέω</i>	<i>τολμάω</i>
<i>ἀπορέω</i>	<i>θεάομαι (θεασ-)</i>

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

- The teacher answered and said that the love of wisdom was a virtue.

2. Dionysodoros laughed and took up the argument.
3. The sophist, with a glance at me, agreed.
4. I praised them and said, 'Urge them on at once.'
5. Once in a state of perplexity, the student tried to escape.

### Test Exercise Six A–F

Translate into English:

*Kriton reports how he and Socrates discussed the nature of expertise and decided that an expert's opinion is more valuable than another man's.*

(From Plato, *Kriton*)

'σὺ μὲν, ὦ Σώκρατες', ἔφην ἐγώ, 'ἐξέταζε, ἐγὼ δ' ἀποκρινούμαι.'

'σκόπει οὖν', ἦ δ' ὅς ὁ Σωκράτης, 'καὶ εἴ τι ἔχεις ἀντιλέγειν, ἀντίλεγε, καὶ πείσομαι ἔγωγε.'

'καλῶς δοκεῖς λέγειν', ἦν δ' ἐγώ, 'ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι.'

'εἶεν', ἔφη, 'ἄρα ἀληθῆ λέγει ὁ φιλόσοφος ὁ λέγων ὅτι οὐ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπαινεῖν πάσας τὰς δόξας τῶν ἀνθρώπων; τί φῆς; ἄρα ἀληθῆ δοκεῖ λέγειν, ταῦτα λέγων, ἦ οὐ; ἀποκρίνου.'

'ἀληθῆ', ἔφην.

'οὐκοῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς τὰς μὲν ἀγαθὰς δόξας ἐπαινεῖν καὶ τιμᾶν, τὰς δὲ κακὰς μῆ;'

ὠμολόγουν.

'φέρε δὴ', ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, 'ἐπειδὴ ἡ νόσος ἐνέπιπτε καὶ διέφθειρε τὴν πόλιν, ποῖ ἤρισθα σὺ, πότερον πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, ἢ πρὸς τὸν ιατρόν;'

'πρὸς τὸν ἱατρόν ἦα', ἦν δ' ἐγώ, 'ἦσαν δὲ ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ φίλοι. ἦδει γὰρ ὁ ἱατρός τὰ περὶ τῆς νόσου, ἐμπειρότερος ὢν ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι.'

'ἐμπειρότατος δὴ ἐφαίνετο ὢν ὁ ἱατρός', ἦ δ' ὅς ὁ Σωκράτης. 'ἔδει οὖν σὲ πρὸς τὸν ἱατρόν ἰέναι, καὶ οὐδένα ἄλλον;'

'ἔδει', ἔφην ἐγώ.

'περὶ τῆς νόσου ἄρα οὐ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπαινεῖν καὶ φοβεῖσθαι τὰς τῶν πολλῶν δόξας, ἀλλὰ τὴν τῶν ἱατρῶν, εἴ τις ἐμπειρότατος τυγχάνει ὢν; οὕτω φαμέν ἦ οὐ;'

'φάμεν νῆ τὸν Δία', ἔφην.

### Vocabulary

ἀντιλέγω object

εἶεν well then

πάσας all (acc. pl. f.)

φέρε come!

ἱατρός, ὁ doctor (2a)

ἐνταῦθα here

φοβεῖσθαι respect

## Vocabulary for Section Six G

'Αμαζών ('Αμαζον-), ἡ Amazon (3a)	ἔγνωσαν they recognised (them) (aor. of γινώσκω)	μαθ-οῦσ-αι upon understanding (nom. pl. f.) (μανθάνω ἔμαθον)
ἀν-εἶλ-ον they took up (aor. of ἀν-αιρέω)	εἰσ-πεσ-όντ-ες attacking, falling upon (nom. pl. m.) (εἰσ-πίπτω εἰσ-έ-πεσον)	μέντοι however, but
ἀν-ελ-όντ-ες on taking up (nom. pl. m.) (ἀναιρέω ἀν-εἶλ-ον)	ἔμ-πεσ-όντ-ες attacking, falling upon (nom. pl. m.) (ἔμ-πίπτω ἔν-έ-πεσον)	νομίζω think x (acc.) to be y (acc.)
ἀνεμ-ος, ὁ wind (2a)	ἔλθ-όντ-ες upon coming (nom. pl. m.) (ἔρχομαι ἦλθον)	παιδο-ποιέ-ομαι beget children
ἀπ-ελθ-οῦσ-αι upon going away (nom. pl. f.) (ἀπ-έρχομαι ἀπ-ἦλθον)	ἑπ-ομαι follow	περι-οῦσ-ας surviving (part. of περί-εμι)
ἀπο-βάσ-αι upon disembarking (nom. pl. f.) (ἀπο-βαίνω ἀπ-έ-βην)	ἧπερ where	πλησίον nearby, near (+ gen.)
ἀπο-πέμπ-ω send off	ἠῆρ-ον they came upon (aor. of εὐρίσκω)	Σκύθης, ὁ Scythian (1d)
ἀφ-ικ-όμεν-αι arriving (nom. pl. f.) (ἀφ-ικνέομαι ἀφ-ικ-όμεν)	ἰδ-οῦσ-αι upon seeing (nom. pl. f.) (ὁράω εἶδον)	στρατοπεδεύ-ομαι make camp
ἀφ-ικ-οντο they arrived (aor. of ἀφ-ικνέομαι)	ἵππο-φόρβι-ον, τό herd of horses (2b)	τῇ θαλάττῃ the sea
γν-όντ-ες knowing, realising (nom. pl. m.) (γινώσκω ἔγνω-ν)	λαβ-όντ-ες upon taking (nom. pl. m.) (λαμβάνω ἔλαβον)	τῇ μάχῃ the battle
δι-αρπαζ-ω lay waste	λαβ-οῦσ-αι upon taking (nom. pl. f.) (λαμβάνω ἔλαβον)	τῆς μάχης the battle

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναιρέω (ἀνελ-) pick up	μάχη, ἡ fight, battle (1a)
ἀποβαίνω (ἀποβα) leave, depart	μέντοι however, but
ἑπομαι (ἑσπ-) follow	νομίζω think, acknowledge
	φυλαττω guard

## Vocabulary for Section Six H

ἀγαγ-οῦσ-αν bringing (acc. s. f.) (ἄγω ἤγαγον)	ἀπο-λαγχάν-ω (ἀπο-λαχ-) obtain by lot	ἀφ-ικ-όμεν-οι upon arriving (nom. pl. m.) (ἀφ-ικνέομαι ἀφ-ικ-όμεν)
ἄγ-ω (ἀγαγ-) lead, bring	ἀπο-λαχ-όντ-ες upon obtaining (nom. pl. m.) (ἀπο-λαγχάνω ἀπ-έ-λαχον)	γεν-όμεν-α, τὰ what had happened, the happenings (γίγν-ομαι ἐγεν-όμεν)
αἱ δὲ but they	αὐτ-ην herself	γυναικεῖ-ος -α-ον woman's
'Αμαζών ('Αμαζον-), ἡ Amazon (3a)	αὐτ-ῆ she herself	διὰ σημείου by means of sign-language
ἀπ-ελθ-ών going away (nom. s. m.) (ἀπ-έρχομαι ἀπ-ἦλθον)	αὐτ-οί they themselves	
	αὐτ-ὸς he himself	

δια-βάντ-ες crossing, once across (nom. pl. m.) (δια-βαίν-ω, δι-έ-βην)	ἐπ-αν-έρχ-ομαι (ἐπ-αν-ελθ-) return	νόμ-ος, ὁ custom, usage (2a)
δι-αρπάζ-ω lay waste	ἐργάζ-ομαι perform, do	οἱ αὐτοὶ the same
δυν-άμεθα (we) are able	εὐρ-όντ-ες on finding (nom. pl. m.) (εὐρίσκ-ω, ἠύρ-ον)	οἰκέ-ω dwell in
δύο two (nom.)	ἰππάζ-ομαι ride horses	ὄμοῦ together
ἐ-δύν-ατο she was able (δύν-ομαι)	κατα-λαβ-ὼν on coming across (nom. s. m.) (κατα-λαμβάν-ω κατ-έ-λαβ-ον)	πάλιν back, again
ἐ-δύν-αντο they were able (δύν-ομαι)	κατα-λαμβάν-ω (κατα-λαβ-) come across	ποταμ-ός, ὁ river (2a)
εἰπ-οῦσ-αι saying (nom. pl. f.) (λέγ-ω εἶπ-ον)	κατα-λαβ-ὼν (κατα-λαβ-) come across	σημαίν-ω give a sign
ἐκεῖ there	κτῆμα (κτηματ-), τό possession (3b)	Σκύθ-ης, ὁ Scythian (1d)
ἐλθ-όντ-ας on going (acc. pl. m.) (ἔρχ-ομαι ἦλθ-ον)	λοιπ-ός -ῆ-όν other, rest of	συν-οικέ-ω live together
ἐλθ-ὼν upon coming (nom. s. m.) (ἔρχ-ομαι ἦλθ-ον)	μαθ-όντ-ες on learning (nom. pl. m.) (μανθάν-ω ἔ-μαθ-ον)	ταῖς ἀμάξαις their waggons (Scythians were nomads)
ἐξ-ανα-στ-άντ-ες upon getting up and going off (nom. pl. m.) (ἐξ-αν-ίστα-μαι ἐξ-αν-έ-στη-ν)	μεθ' ἡμῶν with us	Τάνα-ις, ὁ Tanais (3e)
ἐξ-αν-ιστά-μεθα we get up and go off	μέρ-ος, τό share, portion (3c)	τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ on the next day
ἐξ-ομεν we shall have (fut. of ἔχ-ω)	μετὰ (+ acc.) after	τῆς γῆς ταύτης this land
ἐπ-αν-ελθ-όντ-ας upon returning (acc. pl. m.) (ἐπ-αν-έρχ-ομαι ἐπ-αν-ἦλθ-ον)	μόν-ος -η-ον alone	τὸ αὐτ-ὸ the same

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἄγω (ἄγαγ-) lead, bring	(καταλαβ-) come across, overtake	ποταμός, ὁ river (2a)
αὐτός ἢ ὁ self	κτῆμα (κτηματ-), τό possession (3b)	σημεῖον, τό sign, signal (2b)
διαβαίνω (διαβα-) cross	μετὰ (+ acc.) after	ὑμέτερος αὐτῶν your
δύναμαι be able	ὁ αὐτός the same	φωνέω speak, utter
δύο two	οἰκέω dwell (in), live	φωνή, ἡ voice, language, speech (1a)
ἐπανέρχομαι (ἐπανελθ-) return	πάλιν back, again	
καταλαμβάνω		

*Summary*

Str aor part. act and mid

αὐτός, ὁ αὐτός, αὐτόν

δύναμαι

### Participles

82 Verbs with weak aorists form their aorist participle on the weak aorist stem; verbs with strong aorists form it on the strong aorist stem, as follows:

83 Strong aorist participle active λαβών 'taking'

s.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	λαβ-ών	λαβ-όντ-α	λαβ-όντ-ος	λαβ-όντ-ι
f.	λαβ-ούσ-α	λαβ-ούσ-αν	λαβ-ούσ-ης	λαβ-ούσ-η
n.	λαβ-όν	λαβ-όν	λαβ-όντ-ος	λαβ-όντ-ι

pl.

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
	λαβ-όντ-ες	λαβ-όντ-ας	λαβ-όντ-ων	λαβ-ούσι(ν)
	λαβ-ούσ-αι	λαβ-ούσ-ας	λαβ-ουσ-ών	λαβ-ούσ-αις
	λαβ-όντ-α	λαβ-όντ-α	λαβ-όντ-ων	λαβ-ούσι(ν)

84 Strong aorist participle middle λαβόμενος 'taking'

	nom.	acc.	gen.	
m.	λαβ-όμεν-ος	λαβ-όμεν-ον	λαβ-ομέν-ου	
f.	λαβ-ομέν-η	λαβ-ομέν-ην	λαβ-ομέν-ης	etc., like καλ-ός -ή -όν
n.	λαβ-όμεν-ον	λαβ-όμεν-ον	λαβ-ομέν-ου	

Learn the nom., acc., s. and pl.

Note

The endings for these participles are exactly the same as for present participles (50, 51). (For a full survey of παύω, see Reference Grammar E.1, and cf. E.2.)

### Adjectives/Pronouns

αὐτός, αὐτόν

85 The declension of αὐτός ('self, same'); αὐτόν ('him, her, it') is as follows:

	nom.	acc.	gen.	
m.	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-οῦ	
f.	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ῆς	etc., just like καλ-ός -ή -όν
n.	αὐτ-ό	αὐτ-ό	αὐτ-οῦ	

Learn the nom., acc., s. and pl.



86 It has a variety of meanings. As an adjective, it means 'self', e.g.

Σωκράτης αὐτός 'Socrates himself'

τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτόν 'the man himself' (acc.) (or αὐτὸν τὸν ἄνδρα)

87 It is used in the reflexive forms

ἐμαυτ-όν -αὐ-ῶ 'myself' pl. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, etc.

σεαυτ-όν (or σαυτ-όν) -οῦ-ῶ 'yourself' pl. ὑμᾶς αὐτούς, etc.

ἑαυτ-όν (or αὐτ-όν) -οῦ-ῶ 'himself' pl. ἑαυτούς (or αὐτούς), etc.

Note

*Reflexive forms are used when 'I' 'you' 'he' etc. refer to the same person as the subject of the clause. In indirect speech, they can refer to the subject of the main verb of the sentence, e.g. ἡ Ἀμαζὼν ἐπεισε τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτὴν λύειν 'The Amazon persuaded the man to release her' (i.e. the Amazon).*

88 Preceded by the definite article, it means 'same', e.g.

ὁ αὐτὸς νεανίας 'the same youth'

89 Used as a pronoun, but *never* in the nom., nor as first word of a clause, when it will always mean 'self', it means 'him', 'her', 'it', 'them', e.g.

εἶδεν αὐτοὺς τρέχοντας 'he saw them running'

ἔλαβον αὐτήν 'I caught her' BUT

αὐτὸς εἶδον τὸν ἄνδρα 'I myself saw the man'

### Verbs

90 Note the -α- dominated δύναμαι 'I am able, I can' and cf. ἀνίσταμαι at 98.

δύνα-μαι 'I am able' etc.

δύνα-σαι

δύνα-ται

δυνά-μεθα

δύνα-σθε

δύνα-νται

### Revise:

Type 3 nouns 29–30, 40–3

οὗτος 32

ἐγώ|σύ 34




---

## Exercises for Section Six G–H

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Form the aorist indicative of these verbs, then construct the aorist participle.

γίγνομαι, μανθάνω, ὁράω, ἀφικνέομαι, ἔρχομαι, λαμβάνω, εὐρίσκω, αἰρέω, πίπτω

2. Translate the following sentences, completing them with the aorist participle of the verbs indicated.
  - a. οἱ νεανίσκοι (ἀπέρχομαι) εἶπον ταῦτα πρὸς τοὺς λοιπούς.
  - b. αἱ Ἀμαζόνες (καταλαμβάνω) τοὺς νεανίας, διελέγοντο πρὸς αὐτούς.
  - c. ὁ νεανίας (ὁράω) τὴν Ἀμαζόνα, προσῆλθεν πρὸς αὐτήν.
  - d. οἱ Σκύθαι (εὐρίσκω) τὰς Ἀμαζόνας, πλησίον ἀφικνοῦνται.
  - e. οἱ νεανίσκοι, πλησίον (ἀφικνέομαι), ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο.
  - f. οἱ Σκύθαι (ἀν-αἰρέω) τοὺς νεκροὺς καὶ (μανθάνω) γυναῖκας οὔσας, ἐθαύμαζον.
3. In the following sentences, translate the italic words by the correct forms of αὐτός, αὐτόν, ὁ αὐτός.
  - a. We saw *them* approaching.
  - b. *The same man* did this too.
  - c. *She herself* brought another Amazon with her.
  - d. Did you see *the same* woman as I?
  - e. What does *he himself* think of it?
  - f. They all speak *about the same things*.
  - g. *I myself* do not enjoy sentences.
  - h. I saw *the young men themselves* behaving like this.
  - i. Women? We love *them*! Men? We hate *them*.

#### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. The men picked up the bodies of the women and went away.
2. Coming upon these women, the young men were amazed.
3. Once friends, the young men are able to converse with those women.
4. The women said these things and persuaded the young men.
5. After this the young men returned to their houses and took their possessions.

## Exercises for Section Six

(a) Words (on word-building, cf. *Language Survey* (13), pp. 327ff.)

1. Deduce the meaning of the words in the right-hand columns from those in the left:

ἀνάγκη      ἀναγκαῖος α ον      ἀναγκάζω

γελᾶω	ὁ γέλωσ	γέλοιος	α ον
διαβαίνω	ἡ διάβασις		
διαφθείρω	ἡ διαφθορά		
δύναμαι	δύνατος	ἡ δύναμις	η ον
ἐπαινέω	ὁ ἔπαινος		
κτῆμα	κτάομαι	ἡ κτῆσις	
λογίζομαι	ὁ λογισμός		
ὁμολογέω	ἡ ὁμολογία		
πειράομαι	ἡ πείρα		
φυλάττω	ὁ φύλαξ	ἡ φυλακή	ἀφύλακτος ον

2. Group this pool of words into sets of cognate words. Give the meaning of each word:

μάχη, ἀληθής, διαβάλλω, σοφία, ἀποφαίνω, λόγος, ἠδέως, νέος, οἰκέω, φάσμα, δοκέω, νεανίας, διαβολή, μάχομαι, λογίζομαι, φαίνομαι, ἦδομαι, δόξα, σοφός, οἰκία, ἀλήθεια

#### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

When the Amazons had killed the Athenians, they came to the land of the Scythians. On arrival, they found horses and fought with the Scythians. The Scythians, defeating them and learning about them, wished to become friends. The young men therefore followed closely, but did not fight; and the Amazons, seeing this, kept quiet themselves. At last they became friends and lived together; but it was necessary for the young men and their wives to cross the river and inhabit another place. 'For', said the Amazons, 'we do not want to live in your land, since on arrival we fought you.'

#### Test Exercise Six

Translate into English:

Ἄμαζόνες τινές, εἰς τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν γῆν ἀφικόμενοι καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλοίων ἀποβάσαι, εἰσπεσοῦσαι τὴν γῆν διήρπασαν. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι, ἐν μάχῃ νικήσαντες αὐτάς, τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀνείλον καὶ μαθόντες γυναῖκας οὔσας, ἐβούλοντο ἐκ τῶν Ἄμαζόνων παιδοποιεῖσθαι. κελεύοντες οὖν τοὺς νεανίσκους μάχεσθαι μὲν μηδέποτε, πλησίον δὲ ἐλθόντας φίλους γίγνεσθαι, ἀπέπεμψαν αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὰς Ἄμαζόνας. αἱ δὲ Ἄμαζόνες, ἰδοῦσαι αὐτοὺς πλησίον μὲν ἐπομένους, μαχομένους δὲ οὐδέποτε, οὐκέτι ἐφρόντιζον αὐτῶν. ἔπειτα δὲ Σκύθης τις, καταλαβὼν Ἄμαζόνα τινὰ μόνην οὔσαν, καὶ φίλος γενόμενος, ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους ποιεῖν τὸ αὐτό,

καί, Ἀμαζόνες τινὰς εὐρόντας, φίλους γίγνεσθαι. ἐπείθοντο οὖν οἱ ἄλλοι, τέλος δὲ συνώκουν οἷ τε Σκύθαι καὶ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες. ἀλλ' αἱ Ἀμαζόνες οὐκ ἐβούλοντο ἐπανίεναι εἰς τὸ τῶν Σκυθῶν πλῆθος. οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα, ἔφασαν, συνοικεῖν μετὰ τῶν γυναικῶν τῶν ὑμετέρων. οὐ γὰρ οἱ αὐτοὶ οἱ ἡμέτεροι νόμοι καὶ οἱ τῶν Σκυθῶν.' λαβόντες οὖν τὰ κτήματα καὶ διαβάντες τὸν ποταμόν, ἤϋρον χωρίον τι πλησίον ὃν καὶ ὤκησαν αὐτό.

### Vocabulary

διαρπάζω lay waste

μηδέποτε never

# PART THREE

## Section Seven

### Vocabulary for Section Seven A

ἀγορ-ά, ἡ market-place. agora (1b)	ἡγέ-ομαι lead	περι-μέν-ω wait around (fut. περι-μενέ-ω)
αἵτι-ος -α -ον responsible for	καθ-ορά-ω (κατ-ιδ-) see, notice	πολίτ-ης, ὁ citizen (1d)
ἀν-ἀκού-οιμι I would listen to	καν-οῦν, τό basket (2b ἐ-ον contr.) (holding sacrificial meal and knife)	προσ-δραμ-ῶν see προσ-τρέχ-ω
ἀν-ίστα-μαι get up and leave, emigrate	κόραξ (κορακ-), ὁ crow (3a)	προσ-ιών approaching (nom. s. m.) (part. of προσ-έρχ-ομαι πρόσ-εμι) προσ-τρέχ-ω (προσδραμ-) run towards
ἀπ-ιόντ-α going off (acc. s. m.) (part. of ἀπ-έρχ-ομαι ἀπ-εμι)	κύρι-ος -α -ον with power, sovereign	τῆ χειρί his hand
ἀ-πράγμων ἀ-πραγμον (ἀπραγμον-) free from trouble	λαμβάν-ομαι (λαβ-) take hold of	τῆς of the (s.)
ἀσπάζ-ομαι greet	λέγ-οιμι ἄν I will tell (you)	τῆς βο-ῆς the shout (after αἴτιος)
βέλτιστ-ε my very good friend	λέγ-οιτε ἄν won't you (pl.) please tell me?	τῆς βο-ῆς ἐκεῖν-ης that shout (after αἴτιος)
βέλτιστ-ος -η -ον best	μετ' αὐτ-οῦ with him	τῆς πατρίδ-ος our fatherland
βελτίων βέλτιον (βελτιον-) better	μετ' ἐκεῖν-ου τοῦ κόρακ-ος with that crow	τῆς τοῦ Δικαιοπόλ-εως (the hand) of Dikaiopolis
διὰ τοῦ πλήθ-ους through the crowd	μετὰ τοῦ ῥαψῶδ-οῦ with the rhapsode	τῆς χειρ-ός the hand (after λαβ-όμενος)
ἐκεῖσε (το) there	μῶν surely not?	τίν-ος ἀνθρώπ-ου; of which man? whose?
ἐκκλησί-α, ἡ assembly. ekklesia (1b)	οἰκίζ-ω found (a city) (fut. οἰκιέ-ω)	τόπ-ος, ὁ place (2a)
ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile	ὀπισθεν behind	τοῦ of the (s.)
ἐπὶ τῆ χειρί on his/your hand	ὁ Στιλβωνίδ-ου Stilbonides' son	τοῦ ἐμ-οῦ ἱματί-ου my cloak (after λαμβάνη)
ἑταῖρ-ος, ὁ friend, companion (2a)	ὁ τοῦ Πολεμάρχ-ου Polemarkhos' son	τοῦ Εὐελπίδ-ου of Euelpides
Εὐελπίδ-ης, ὁ Euelpides (1d) (‘Great hopes’)	Πεισ-έταιρ-ος, ὁ Peisetairos (2a) (‘Persuasive-friend’)	τοῦ ἰκέτ-ου of the suppliant
ἡγεμών (ἡγεμον-), ὁ leader (3a)	πέμπ-ω send	

τοῦ ἱματίου his cloak (after  
λαμβάνεται)  
τοῦ Πειραιῶς the Piraeus  
τοῦ Πολεμάρχου of

Polemarkhos  
τῶν of the (pl.)  
τῶν ἑνδεκά of the Eleven  
ὑμῶν ἕνεκα for your sake.

because of you  
χαῖρ-ε hello! greetings!  
ὡς (+acc) to

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀγορά, ἡ market-place, agora  
(1b)  
βελτίων βέλτιον  
(βελτιον-) better  
βέλτιστος ἦεν best  
ἐκείσε (to) there

ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile  
ἡγεμῶν (ἡγεμον-), ὁ leader  
(3a)  
ἡγέομαι lead (+dat.)  
καθοράω (κατιδ-) see, look  
down on

πέμπω send  
πολίτης, ὁ citizen (1d)  
προστρέχω (προσδραμ-) run  
towards  
χαῖρε hello! farewell!  
χείρ (χειρ-), ἡ hand (3a)

## Vocabulary for Section Seven B

ἀδικέω do wrong  
ᾄδω sing  
ἀνίσταμαι get up and go,  
emigrate  
ἀπολοῦσι they will destroy  
βαρέως φέρω find hard to  
bear, take badly  
δῆμος, ὁ the people (2a)  
δικαστήριον, τό law-court  
(2b)  
δικαστής, ὁ juror, dikast (1d)  
εἰκότως reasonably  
ἐκκλησίαι, ἡ assembly,  
ekklesia (1b)  
ἐπεὶ since  
ἐπὶ τῶν δικῶν on their  
lawsuits  
ἐπὶ τῶν κραδῶν on their  
branches  
ἐρ-εις you (s.) will say  
(ἐρέω, fut. of λέγω)  
ἔρπω go along, take its  
course  
εὐδαιμονέστατος -η -ον  
wealthiest, most blessed by

the gods (εὐ-δαίμων)  
εὐδαιμονέστερος -α -ον  
more wealthy, more  
blessed (εὐ-δαίμων)  
ἡγέομαι consider x to be γ  
ἡμῶν ἀναιτίων ὄντων us,  
although we were innocent  
(after κατεψηφίσαντο)  
καταψηφίζομαι condemn  
κλαυθμός, ὁ lamentation (2a)  
μάρτυς (μαρτυρ-), ὁ witness  
(3a)  
μέγιστος -η -ον greatest  
(μέγας)  
μείζων μείζον  
(μειζον-) greater (μέγας)  
μῶν surely not?  
οἰκτίρω pity  
πάθος, τό experience (3c)  
πανταχοῦ everywhere  
περὶ τοῦ δικαστηρίου καὶ τῶν  
δικαστῶν about the  
law-courts and the dikasts  
πλέως -α -ων full of  
ποιός -α -ον; what? what sort of?

ρήτωρ (ρήτορ-), ὁ politician,  
speaker (3a)  
ταύτης τῆς πόλεως than this  
city (after μείζων)  
τέττιξ (τεττιγ-), ὁ cicada,  
grasshopper (3a)  
τῆς ἀπορίας perplexity (after  
πλέως)  
τῆς πόλεως the city (after  
ἐκ); of the city  
τῆς τόλμης the brazenness  
(after πλέα)  
τίμη; of course  
τοιοῦτος τοιαύτη  
τοιοῦτος(ν) like this, of  
this kind  
ὑπέρ σου for you (s.)  
φιλόπολις (φιλοπολιδ-), ὁ,  
ἡ patriotic  
χρόνος, ὁ time (2a)  
ψευδομαρτυρία, ἡ  
false-witness, perjury (1b)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀδικέω be unjust, commit a  
crime, do wrong  
ᾄδωλαίδω sing

ἀνίσταμαι (ἀναστα-) get up,  
emigrate  
δικαστήριον, τό law-court (2b)

δικαστής, ὁ juror, dikast (1d)  
δῆμος, ὁ people; deme (2a)

ἐκκλησία, ἡ assembly, ekklesia (1b)	μέγιστος ἢ ὄν greatest (sup. of μέγας)	πάθος, τό experience, suffering (3c)
εὐδαιμόνων εὐδαιμον (εὐδαιμον-) happy, rich, blessed by the gods (comp. εὐδαιμονέστερος α. ον; sup. εὐδαιμονιέστατος ἢ ὄν)	μείζων μείζων (μείζων-) greater (comp. of μέγας)	πανταχοῦ everywhere ῥήτωρ (ῥήτορ-) ὁ orator, politician (3a)
	μῶν; surely not? οἰκτίρω (οἰκτιρ-) pity	χρόνος, ὁ time (2a)

## Vocabulary for Section Seven C

ἀγρῶ the country ἄγ-ω live in, be at ἀλλ' ὅν however that may be ἀνάγκη of necessity ἄν βουλ-οίμην (I) would like το ἀνα-πεῖθ-ω bring over to one's side ἄν ποι-οίην (I) would do ἀντί χειρόν-ων instead of worse ἄξι-ος-α-ον worth ἀπ-ολ-εῖ (he) will destroy ἀπορί-αs lack of provision; perplexity (after πλέα) ἀ-πράγμων ἀ-πραγμον (ἀπραγμον-) free from trouble ἄρχ-ομαι begin (+ inf.) αὐτ-οῦ . . . πονηρ-οῦ ὄντ-ος him . . . being wicked (after κατεψηφίσαντο) ἄχν-ύμεν-ος-η-ον grieving βελτί-ους better (nom./acc.) γν-οῦs knowing (nom. s. m.) (γιγνώσκ-ω) γούνασι lap (lit. 'knees') δεξι-ός-ά-όν clever, handy δικαιοσύν-η, ἡ justice, being just (1a) δώρ-ον, τό gift (2b) εἰκόσ it is likely εἰρήν-η, ἡ peace (1a)	έορτ-ή, ἡ festival (1a) ἐπεῖ since ἐπὶ αὐχένι upon our neck έτοιμ-ος-η-ον ready (to) (+ inf.) εὐ-δόκμ-ος-ον well thought of ζυγ-ός, ὁ yoke (2a) ἦτοι indeed ἡγέ-ομαι consider (x to be γ) ἡδον-ῆs pleasure (after πλέα) Ἡράκλεις Herakles! (voc.) καί . . . πέρ although καίτοι nonetheless κακά λέγ-ω speak ill of καρτερέ-ω endure, put up with κατα-ψηφίζ-ομαι condemn (x on charge of γ) κεῖται (they - ταῦτα) lie; (it - ζυγός) lies κλοπ-ή, ἡ theft (1a) μόν-ος-η-ον alone νε-ών of ships νόσ-ου disease (after πλέως) νυν then οἶν-ου wine (after πλέα) οἱ δέ others οἱ μὲν some ὁ Περικλῆs Pericles ὅτι what ὅτι because of οὐδενός nothing (after ἄξιοι) πάντ-ων of all	παρασκευ-ῆs equipping (after πλέως) περὶ εἰρήν-ηs about peace Περικλῆs Pericles (nom.) πλέ-ως-α-ων full of ποιέ-ομαι make πλήν except πλούτ-ου riches, wealth (after πλέα) σίτ-ου food (after πλέα) σπεύδ-οιμι ἄν I would hurry σπονδ-αί, αἱ truce, treaty (1a) συγγεν-ῆs, ὁ relation (3d) τὰ βελτί-ω the better things (acc.) τᾶν my dear chap (condescendingly) τέτλαμεν we endure τῆ ἐκκλησίᾳ the assembly τῆ νηὶ the ship τῆs πατρίδ-ος my fatherland τῆs πόλ-εωs of the city τὸν Περικλέ-α Pericles τόπ-ος, ὁ place (2a) τῶ δήμ-ω the people ὑγίει-αs health (after πλέα) φέρε come! (s.) φιλό-πολιs patriotic (nom.) φιλό-σοφ-ος, ὁ philosopher (2a) χαλεπ-ός-ῆ-όν difficult, hard χείρ-ους worse (nom.) χείρων χειρον (χειρον-) worse
--	---	---



### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀγω (ἀγαγ-) live in, be at; lead, bring	ἐτοιμος ἦν ready (to) (+ inf.)	ποιέομαι make
ἄξιος αὐτῶν worth, worthy of (+ gen.)	ἡγέομαι think, consider; lead (+ dat.)	σπονδαί, αἱ treaty, truce (1a)
ἀπολέω I shall kill, destroy	ἡδονή, ἡ pleasure (1a)	σίτος, ὁ food (2a) (pl. σίτα, τά 2b)
δεξιός ἄρ' dexter, right-hand διά (+ gen.) through	Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ Herakles (3d uncount.)	συγγενής, ὁ relation (3d)
ἐγγύς (+ gen.) near	λαμβάνομαι take hold of (+ gen.)	τῶν my dear chap (condescendingly)
εἰρήνη, ἡ peace (1a)	μετά (+ gen.) with	ὑπέρ (+ gen.) for, on behalf of
εἰρήνην ἄγω live in/be at peace	μόνος ἦν alone	ὑπό (+ gen.) by, at the hands of
ἐναντίον (+ gen.) opposite, in front of	νῦν then (cf. νῦν now)	φιλόσοφος, ὁ philosopher (2a)
ἐπεὶ since	ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ another	χαλεπός ἡ ὄν difficult, hard
ἐπί (+ gen.) on	περὶ (+ gen.) about	χείρων χειρὸν (χειρὸν-) worse
	πλέως αὐτῶν full of (+ gen.) (as if α-ος α-α α-ον contr.)	

## ○ Grammar for Section Seven

### Summary:

Gen. (all types), and usages

Irr. comp., and contr. comp.

Pres. opt. act. and mid.

ἄν + opt.

ἀνίσταμαι, ἀπολέω, τί + part., ἶέναι, ἰών, Περικλῆς

### Nouns/adjectives

#### Genitives

91 The forms of the genitive singular and plural across the range of noun and adjective types you have met are as follows:

	s.				pl.			
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
1a	βο-ή, ἡ	βο-ήν	βο-ῆς	βο-ῆι	βο-αί	βο-άς	βο-ῶν	βο-αῖς
1b	ἀπορί-α, ἡ	ἀπορί-αν	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-α	ἀπορί-αι	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-ῶν	ἀπορί-αις
1c	τόλμ-α, ἡ	τόλμ-αν	τόλμ-ης	τόλμ-ῃ	τόλμ-αι	τόλμ-ας	τόλμ-ῶν	τόλμ-αις
1d	ναύτ-ης, ὁ	ναύτ-ην	ναύτ-ου	ναύτ-ῃ	ναύτ-αι	ναύτ-ας	ναυτ-ῶν	ναύτ-αις
	νεανί-ας, ὁ	νεανί-αν	νεανί-ου	νεανί-α				
2a	ἀνθρωπ-ος, ὁ	ἀνθρωπ-ον	ἀνθρώπ-ου	ἀνθρώπ-ῳ	ἀνθρωπ-οι	ἀνθρώπ-ους	ἀνθρώπ-ων	ἀνθρώπ-οις
2b	ἔργ-ον, τό	ἔργ-ον	ἔργ-ου	ἔργ-ῳ	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-ων	ἔργ-οις
3a	λιμέν, ὁ	λιμέν-α	λιμέν-ος	λιμέν-ι	λιμέν-ες	λιμέν-ας	λιμέν-ων	λιμέν-οι(ν)



πράγμα, τό	πράγμα	πράγματ-ος	πράγματ-ι	πράγματ-α	πράγματ-α	πραγματ-ων	πράγμα-σι(ν)
πλήθ-ος, τό	πλήθ-ος	πλήθ-ους	πλήθ-ει	πλήθ-η	πλήθ-η	πληθ-ών	πλήθ-ει(ν)
τριήρ-ης, ἡ	τριήρ-η	τριήρ-ους	τριήρ-ει	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-ων	τριήρ-ει(ν)
πόλ-ις, ἡ	πόλ-ις	πόλ-εως	πόλ-ει	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εων	πόλ-ει(ν)
πρέσβ-υς, ὁ	πρέσβ-υν						
ἄστ-υ, τό	ἄστ-υ	ἄστ-εως	ἄστ-ει	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-εων	ἄστ-ει(ν)
βασιλ-εύς, ὁ	βασιλ-έα	βασιλ-έως	βασιλ-εῖ	βασιλ-ῆς	βασιλ-έας	βασιλ-έων	βασιλ-εῦσι(ν)
				βασιλ-εῖς			
ὄφρυ-ς, ἡ	ὄφρυ-ν	ὄφρυ-ος	ὄφρυ-ι	ὄφρυ-ες	ὄφρυ-ς	ὄφρυ-ων	ὄφρυ-σι(ν)

Irregular nouns

ναῦς, ἡ	ναῦν	νεώς	νηί	νηες	ναῦς	νεών	ναυσί(ν)
γραῖς, ἡ	γραῖν	γραός	γραιί	γρᾶες	γραῦς	γραῶν	γραισί(ν)
Ζεὺς, ὁ	Δία	Διός	Διί				

Personal pronouns

ἐγώ	(ἐ)μέ	(ἐ)μου	(ἐ)μοί	ἡμεῖς	ἡμᾶς	ἡμῶν	ἡμῖν
σύ	σέ	σου	σοί	ὁμεῖς	ὁμᾶς	ὁμῶν	ὁμῖν

Adjectives

καλ-ός	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῶ	καλ-οί	καλ-οῦς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
καλ-ή	καλ-ήν	καλ-ῆς	καλή	καλ-αί	καλ-άς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-αῖς
καλ-όν	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῶ	καλ-ά	καλ-ά	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
ἡμέτερ-ος	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτερ-ου	ἡμέτερ-ω	ἡμέτερ-οι	ἡμέτερ-οῦς	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-οῖς
ἡμετέρα	ἡμέτερ-αν	ἡμέτερ-ας	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-αι	ἡμέτερ-ας	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-αῖς
ἡμέτερον	ἡμέτερον	ἡμέτερ-ου	ἡμέτερ-ω	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-οῖς
οὗτ-ος	τοῦτ-ον	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ω	οὗτ-οι	τούτ-οῦς	τούτ-ων	τούτ-οῖς
αὐτ-η	ταύτ-ην	ταύτ-ης	ταύτ-η	αὐτ-αι	ταύτ-ας	τούτ-ων	ταύτ-αῖς
ταύτ-α	ταύτ-α	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ω	ταύτ-α	ταύτ-α	τούτ-ων	τούτ-οῖς
ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-οι	ἐκεῖν-οῦς	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οῖς
ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-ην	ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-αι	ἐκεῖν-ας	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-αῖς
ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οῖς
αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτῶ	αὐτ-οί	αὐτ-οῦς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-ῆ	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-άς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-αῖς
αὐτ-ό	αὐτό	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτῶ	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
πολ-ός	πολ-όν	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-οί	πολλ-οῦς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
πολλ-ή	πολλ-ήν	πολλ-ῆς	πολλ-ῆ	πολλ-αί	πολλ-αῖς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-αῖς
πολ-ύ	πολύ	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
εὐφρον	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-ες	εὐφρον-εις	εὐφρόν-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
εὐφρον	εὐφρον	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρόν-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
τις	τιν-α	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-ες	τιν-ας	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
τι	τι	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-α	τιν-α	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
οὐδ-είς	οὐδ-ένα	οὐδ-ενός	οὐδ-ενί				
οὐδε-μῖα	οὐδε-μίαν	οὐδε-μῖας	οὐδε-μιᾷ				
οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-ενός	οὐδ-ενί				

{ f. n.	ων	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-ες	ὄντ-ας	ὄντ-ων	οὖ-σι(ν)
	οὖσ-α	οὖσ-αν	οὖσ-ης	οὖσ-ῆ	οὖσ-αι	οὖσ-ας	οὖσ-ῶν	οὖσ-αις
	ὄν	ὄν	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ων	οὖ-σι(ν)
{ f. n.	παύσ-ας	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-αντος	παύσ-αντι	παύσ-αντες	παύσ-αντας	παυσ-άντων	παύσ-ασι(ν)
	παύσ-ασα	παύσ-ασαν	παυσ-άσης	παυσ-άση	-παύσ-ασαι	παυσ-άσας	παυσ-ασῶν	παυσ-άσαις
	παύσ-αν	παύσ-αν	παύσ-αντος	παύσ-αντι	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-αντα	παυσ-άντων	παύσ-ασι(ν)

## Notes

- (i) Genitive plurals all end in -ων.  
 (ii) Genitive singulars of type 3 nouns/adjectives all originally ended in some form of -ος. Later contractions and changes created forms in -ους and -εως.  
 (iii) Watch the changing patterns of α/η in 1st declension nouns (cf. 24) and note the gen. s. of ναύτης: ναύτου.

## Uses of the genitive

92 The most common uses of the genitive are as follows:

- (i) to correspond to English phrases introduced by 'of' in such senses as:
- possession, e.g. ἡ τοῦ Δικαιοπόλεως οἰκία 'the house of Dikaio-polis'
  - description, e.g. τὸ τῶν πολιτῶν πλῆθος 'the crowd of citizens, the citizen crowd'
  - source or origin, e.g. οἱ λόγοι οἱ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου 'the words of the fellow', and ἡ τῶν Ἐνδεκα ἀνομία 'the lawlessness of the Eleven'
  - a part, e.g. ὀλίγοι τῶν ἀνθρώπων 'few of the men'
- (ii) with certain adjectives, e.g.
- ἀξιος 'worthy of'
  - αἷτιος 'responsible for'
  - πλέως 'full of'
- (iii) with certain prepositions, e.g.
- ἀπό 'away from'
  - ἐκ 'out of, from'
  - μετά 'in company with'
  - διά 'through'
  - ἕνεκα 'for the sake of' (comes AFTER the noun)
  - περί 'concerning, about' (and cf. Reference Grammar F, p. 290)
- (iv) with certain verbs, e.g.
- ἀκούω 'I hear' (a person)
  - λαμβάνομαι 'I seize, take hold of'
  - καταδικάζω 'I condemn'

(v) to express comparison. So far you have met comparisons of the type described in 76, i.e. done with ἤ='than'. Greek can also express comparison without ἤ by putting the thing compared in the genitive, e.g. Σωκράτης

σοφώτερός ἐστί τούτου τοῦ ἀνθρώπου 'Socrates is wiser than this fellow' (as opposed to the method described in 76, which gives: Σωκράτης σοφώτερός ἐστιν ἢ οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ).

*Note*

Revise 26. and see Language Surveys (10), (11).

*Further comparative forms*

93 Note the following irregular comparatives and superlatives:

ἀγαθός βελτίων βέλτιστος 'good', 'better', 'best'

μέγας μείζων μέγιστος 'great', 'greater', 'greatest'

Cf. 76, and note the alternative comparison of ἀγαθός.

*Note*

Comparative forms in -(ι)ων may form the acc. s. m./f., the nom. pl. and the acc. pl. from an alternative stem without the -v-, where the vowel of the stem and that of the ending contract, e.g.

βελτίο(v)α → βελτίω (acc. s., m./f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)

βελτίο(v)ες → βελτίους (nom. pl. m./f.)

βελτίο(v)ας → βελτίους (acc. pl. m./f.)

94 Observe also that adjectives ending in -ων like κακοδαίμων have comparatives and superlatives in

-ονέστερ-ος -α -ον (comparative)

-ονέστατ-ος -η -ον (superlative)

e.g.

εὐδαιμονέστερος 'more lucky'

εὐδαιμονέστατος 'most lucky, very lucky'

**Verbs**

*Present optative active and middle παύοιμι, παυοίμην*

95 The forms of the present optative, active and middle, for non-contracted verbs are as follows:

<i>Active</i>	<i>Middle</i>
παύ-οιμι	παυ-οίμην
παύ-οις	παύ-οιο
παύ-οι	παύ-οιτο
παύ-οιμεν	παυ-οίμεθα
παύ-οιτε	παύ-οισθε
παύ-οιεν	παύ-οιντο

*Note*

Look for a present stem with an -οι- in it.

*Present optative of contract verbs*

96 The forms for contracted verbs in the *active* are as follows. Note that the forms arise from contracting the vowel with the endings *-οίην, -οίης, -οίη* in the singular.

<i>α-contracts</i> τιμ-ώην	<i>ε-contracts</i> ποι-οίην	<i>ο-contracts</i> δηλ-οίην
τιμ-ώην (-α-οίην)	ποι-οίην (-ε-οίην)	δηλ-οίην (-ο-οίην)
τιμ-ώης (-α-οίης)	ποι-οίης (-ε-οίης)	δηλ-οίης (-ο-οίης)
τιμ-ώη (-α-οίη)	ποι-οίη (-ε-οίη)	δηλ-οίη (-ο-οίη)
τιμ-ώμεν (-ά-οιμεν)	ποι-οῖμεν (-έ-οιμεν)	δηλ-οῖμεν (-ό-οιμεν)
τιμ-ώτε (-ά-οιτε)	ποι-οῖτε (-έ-οιτε)	δηλ-οῖτε (-ό-οιτε)
τιμ-ώεν (-ά-οιεν)	ποι-οῖεν (-έ-οιεν)	δηλ-οῖεν (-ό-οιεν)

Middle forms contract with the middle endings as in 95, e.g. τιμ-ώμην, ποι-οίμην, δηλ-οίμην (see also p. 280 (ii)).

*ἄν and optative*

97 The optative forms are used with the particle *ἄν* to express a 'polite' request or agreement. Sometimes 'polite' requests are difficult to distinguish from a straight request. The best translations involve using the English forms 'would', 'would like to', 'can', or the simple future 'will', e.g.

λέγοις ἄν μοι; 'Would you tell me? Would you like to/can you/will you tell me?'

λέγοιμι ἄν 'I would/would like to/can/will tell you'.

*Two verbs to watch for*

98 Note ἀνίσταμαι 'I get up and go, I am leaving, emigrating', the stem of which is dominated by *-α-* in the present:

ἀνίστα-μαι 'I leave' etc.

ἀνίστα-σαι

ἀνίστα-ται

ἀνιστά-μεθα

ἀνίστα-σθε

ἀνίστα-νται

Infinitive: ἀνίστασθαι 'to leave'

Participle: ἀνιστά-μεν-ος -η -ον 'leaving'

Cf. δύνα-μαι 'I am able' (90)

99 Note ἀπολέω 'I shall destroy, ruin, kill'. Bear in mind the ἀπολ- stem for future reference.

*A common Greek construction*

100 Note the Greek love of  $\tau\acute{\iota}$  + participle, and the variety of possible translations it takes:

$\tau\acute{\iota}$  βουλόμενος τούτο ποιεῖς; (lit.) ‘Wanting what do you do this?’, i.e. ‘What do you want when you do this? What do you have in mind in doing this? What is your motive for doing this?’

$\tau\acute{\iota}$  παθὼν τούτο λέγεις; (lit.) ‘Suffering what do you say this?’, i.e. ‘What did you suffer to make you say this?’

Note also that  $\pi\acute{\alpha}\sigma\chi\omega$  basically means ‘I have something done to me’, so that a perfectly good translation would also be ‘What made you say this?’

101 Revise εἶμι ‘I shall go’ (64), and remember the infinitive form  $\dot{\iota}\acute{\epsilon}\nu\alpha\iota$  ‘to go’, and the participle form  $\dot{\iota}\acute{\omega}\nu$  ‘going’ ( $\dot{\iota}\acute{\omega}\nu$   $\dot{\iota}\acute{\omega}\sigma\alpha$   $\dot{\iota}\acute{\omega}\nu$  ( $\dot{\iota}\acute{\omega}\nu\tau-$ )). These forms are not used in a future sense (cf. 74 (ii)).

**Nouns**

102 Uncontracted 3d type nouns decline as follows:

*Περικλῆς, ὁ ‘Pericles’ (3d)*

---

nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
Περικλῆς (= Περικλέ-ης)	Περικλέα	Περικλέους	Περικλεῖ

---

These are restricted to proper names. Cf. also *Ἡρακλῆς*, but contrast the contracted *Σωκράτης* at 67. (For full noun survey, see *Reference Grammar B*, p. 270.)

**Revise:**

Pres. parts. 48–54 Reference Grammar I

Def. art. Language Survey (12)




---

**Exercises for Section Seven**

---

**(a) Words**

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

ἀδικέω	τὸ ἀδίκημα
ἀνίσταμαι	ἡ ἀνάστασις
ἄξιος	ἀξιόλογος οὐ
δημοσκρατέω	ἡ δημοκρατία

ἡγεμών	ἡ ἡγεμονία		
κρατέω	κράτιστος		
πέμπω	ἡ πομπή		
πολίτης	ἡ πολιτεία	πολιτεύω	πολιτικός ἢ ὄν
χαλεπός	χαλεπαίνω		
χείρ	ἐπιχειρέω		

**(b/c) Morphology and Syntax**

1. Translate the whole passage into English, putting the bracketed words into the genitive case:

- A. ἀλλὰ τίς αἰτιός ἐστι (οὗτος ὁ πόλεμος) καὶ (αὕτη ἡ ἀπορία);  
 B. οἱ ῥήτορες, εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι, αἰτιοὶ (τοῦτο τὸ πρᾶγμα). ἡ γὰρ πόλις πλέα (θόρυβος) καὶ (βοή) διὰ τὸν τε πόλεμον καὶ τὴν (οἱ ῥήτορες) τόλμαν. τίς γὰρ οὐκ οἶδε περὶ (ἡ τόλμα) (αὐτοῦς);  
 A. ἀλλ' οὐκ αἰτίους (ταῦτα τὰ πρᾶγματα) ἡγοῦμαι τοὺς ῥήτορας ἔγωγε, ἀλλὰ βελτίστους (ἄνθρωποι). αἰεὶ γὰρ μάχονται περὶ (τὸ πλῆθος) καὶ (ἡ πόλις), ὡς φασὶν αὐτοί.  
 B. ναί. ἀλλὰ ψευδῆ λέγουσι. κακὸν γὰρ τὸ (οὗτοι οἱ ἄνδρες) πλῆθος καὶ οὐδεὶς χείρων (ῥήτωρ). οἱ γὰρ ῥήτορες λαμβάνονται (ἡ ἐκκλησία) καὶ (τὸ δικαστήριον).

2. Convert these verbs into the polite form (optative + ἄν) and translate:

- (a) μένεις            (e) ἀποκρίνη  
 (b) λέγω            (f) κελεύεις  
 (c) βουλόμεθα    (g) παύομαι  
 (d) πείθεσθε    (h) φέρομεν

3. Translate these sentences and contrast the use of the preposition in each pair:

- a (i). ὁ ξένος ἐπὶ τοῦ βωμοῦ καθίζεται.  
 (ii). ἡ ναὺς ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπέρχεται.  
 b (i). εἶμι αὐριον εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν μετὰ τῶν φίλων.  
 (ii). μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπάνειμι εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν.  
 c (i). τὸ πλοῖον πλεῖ παρὰ τὴν νῆσον.  
 (ii). ὁ σοφιστὴς πολλὰ χρήματα δέχεται παρὰ τῶν μαθητῶν.  
 d (i). ὁ παῖς προσέδραμε πρὸς ἡμᾶς, βιαζόμενος διὰ τοῦ πλήθους.  
 (ii). ἡ ἐμὴ γυνὴ φοβεῖται τὸ ἄστυ διὰ τὴν νόσον.

4. Compare Dionysodoros unfavourably with Euthydemos using the words listed below and these formulae:

Διονυσόδωρος κακίων } ἐστὶ(ν) { Εὐθυδήμου  
                                  χείρων }            { ἢ Εὐθύδημος  
 καλός, μέγας, κακοδαίμων, εὐφρων, ἀγαθός, μῶρος, σοφός

**(d) English into Greek**

## 1. Translate into Greek:

1. The man's slave goes up to the rhapsode and grabs his hand.
2. Who is responsible for those shouts, which are very loud?
3. You are a sophist and worth nothing.
4. Why are the politicians richer than the people of the city? Tell me!
5. We suffered many bad experiences, but fought against the Persians for freedom.

## 2. Translate into Greek:

ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ Look! I see a slave running towards us. Whose slave are you?

SLAVE As it happens I am slave of Euelpides, your friend.

ΔΙΚ. Would you please say what you want, and for what reason you ran to me?

SLAVE I will. For I must, as Euelpides ordered, ask you to wait.

ΔΙΚ. Then I shall wait. Hullo, Euelpides and Peisetairos. Why are you leaving the city? Where are you off to?

ΠΕΙΣΕΤΑΙΡΟΣ We have to go away to a new and more useful city.

**Test Exercise Seven**

παῖς τις, διὰ τοῦ τῶν πολιτῶν πλήθους ἰών, προσέδραμε πρὸς τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν καί, λαβόμενος τῆς χειρὸς, μένειν ἐκέλευεν. ἔπειτα οἱ τὸν παῖδα πέμψαντες, ὃ τε Εὐελπίδης καὶ ὁ Πεισέταιρος, φίλοι ὄντες τοῦ Δικαιοπόλεως προσελθόντες ἠσπάζοντο Δικαιοπόλιν. ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ εἰδὼς τί βουλόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ ἄστεως ἀπέρχονται, ἤρετο ποῖ ἀπιέναι διανοοῦνται καὶ τίνος ἔνεκα. ἐκεῖνοι δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι δεῖ αὐτοὺς Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν ζητεῖν, εὐρόντας δὲ οἰκεῖν. Δικαιοπόλις δὲ εὐδαιμονεστάτας ἠγείτο τὰς Ἀθήνας καὶ βελτίω τῶν Ἀθηνῶν οὐδεμίαν πόλιν. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν μανθάνειν οὐκ ἔδύνατο τίνος ἔνεκα ἀνίστανται, ἔπειτα ἀκούσας τὰ περὶ τῶν δικαστῶν καὶ τοῦ δικαστηρίου καὶ τῶν ῥητόρων, ὠμολόγησεν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ δικασταὶ ἐφαίνοντο ἀδικούντες τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς, οἱ δὲ ῥήτορες (ὡς ἔδοξαν) ἔτυχον διαφθείροντες τὸν δῆμον καὶ οὐκ οἰκτίροντες. οἱ μὲν οὖν φίλοι οἱ Δικαιοπόλεως ἀπήσαν. αὐτὸς δέ, βαρέως φέρων τὰ τῆς τε πόλεως καὶ τοῦ δήμου καὶ βελτίστην ἠγούμενος τὴν εἰρήνην, διανοεῖτο σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ. ἀλλ' ὁ ῥαψωδός, ἀμαθεῖς ἠγούμενος τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ μῶρους, αὐτὸς οὐκ ἐβούλετο μετιέναι μετ' αὐτοῦ, ἀλλ' ἀπῆλθε μόνος.

**Vocabulary**

Νεφελοκοκκυγία, ἡ  
Cloud-cuckoo land (1b)

ἀμαθεῖς ignorant (acc. pl. m.)

μετιέναι inf. of  
μετέρχομαι accompany

## Section Eight

---

### Vocabulary for Section Eight A

---

ἀλλήλ-οις to each other  
βο-ῆ a shout (*ἄφ' ἑστέ χρώμαι*)  
δρᾶμα (δραματ-), τό drama,  
play (3b)  
δυσ-τυχεῖ unlucky (*ἔσθ' ἄνθρωπῳ*)  
κακοδαίμονι ἀνθρώπῳ ὄντι/  
ἐμ-πεσ-εῖται it will befall  
(fut. of ἐμ-πίπτ-ω)  
ἐμπρόσθεν (+ gen.) in front  
of, before  
θεατ-ῆς, ὁ spectator, member  
of the audience (1d)

θηρί-ον, τό beast (2b)  
καὶ δὴ well, all right; look  
κακο-δαίμον-ι ἀνθρώπ-ῳ  
ὄντ-ι unlucky/ill-favoured  
man that you are  
κατα-λέγ-ω  
(κατ-εἰπ-) recount, tell  
μοι to me  
Ξανθί-ας, ὁ Xanthias (1d)  
οἷ-ος -α -ον what sort of  
πολλ-οῖς οὖσιν being many  
(*ἔσθ' ἄνθρωπῳ*)  
(*ἔσθ' ἄνθρωπῳ*)

σοι to you (s.); you (*ἄφ' ἑστέ*)  
ἐμ-πεσ-εῖται  
σοῦ ἕνεκα for your sake  
Σωσί-ας, ὁ Sosias (1d)  
τίν-ι to whom? (s.)  
τοῖς to/with/by the  
τοῖς θεατ-αῖς to the audience  
τῷ to/with/by the  
τῷ πλήθ-ει to the crowd  
χρά-ομαι use, employ

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

δρᾶμα (δραματ-), τό play,  
drama (3b)  
θεατ-ῆς, ὁ spectator, member of  
audience (1d)

---

### Vocabulary for Section Eight B

---

ἄνω above, up there  
ἀπορί-α perplexity  
ἀρχ-ῆ, ἡ beginning (1a)  
ἔ-γνω he realised  
(*ἔ-γινωσκ-ω, ἔ-γινω-ν*)  
ἡμ-ῖν to us  
ἡμ-ῖν ἐρωτ-ῶσιν to us asking

ἤσυχ-ος -ον quiet(ly)  
κατα-πύγων κατὰ-πυγον  
(καταπυγον-) homosexual,  
queer  
κελεύ-οντ-ι him ordering  
(*ἄφ' ἑστέ ἐπιθόμεθα*)  
κύων (κυν-), ὁ dog (3a)

μοι ἐρ-ομέν-ω to me asking  
ὄνομα (ὄνοματ-), τό name  
(3b)  
οὐ μὲν ἀλλὰ nonetheless  
πονηρ-ός -ά -όν wicked, bad  
ταύτ-η τῆ νόσ-ω to this  
disease



τῇ in/with/by the  
 τῇ πόλ-ει the city  
 τοι-οὔτ-ος τοι-αὐτ-ῆ  
 τοι-οὔτ-ο(ν) of such a  
 kind, like this  
 τῷ ἀνδρ-ὶ to the man

τῷ δεσπότη-ῳ to the master  
 τῷ πατρ-ὶ to the father  
 φέρε come!  
 φιλο- love  
 φιλο-θύτ-ῆς, ὁ lover of  
 sacrifices (1d)

φιλό-κυβ-ος -ον lover of dice,  
 gambler  
 φιλό-ξεν-ος -ον loving  
 strangers, hospitable  
 Φιλόξεν-ος, ὁ Philoxenos (2a)  
 (a noted homosexual)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄνω up, above  
 ἤσυχος ον quiet, peaceful  
 ὄνομα (ὀνοματ-), τό name  
 (3b)  
 πονηρός ἄδιν wicked, wretched

τοιούτος τοιαύτη  
 τοιοῦτο(ν) of this kind, of  
 such a kind  
 φέρε come!

## Vocabulary for Section Eight C

ἀνα-πείθ-ω persuade,  
 convince  
 ἀπορί-α perplexity  
 αὐλ-ῆ, ἡ courtyard (1a)  
 αὐτ-ῷ . . . ἀνα-πείθ-οντ-ι him  
 . . . trying to persuade (him)  
 (after ἐπειθετο)  
 αὐτῷ τῷ τυμπάν-ῳ drum and  
 all  
 βαρέ-ως φέρ-ω take hard,  
 find hard to bear  
 Βδελυ-κλέων (Βδελυκλεων-),  
 ὁ Bdelykleon (3a) ('Loather  
 of Kleon')  
 γράφ-ω write  
 Δῆμ-ος, ὁ Demos (2a) (a  
 notably handsome young man)  
 δικάζ-ω be a juror, decide a  
 case  
 ἐγ-κλεί-ω shut in  
 ἐξ-έρχ-ομαι go out  
 ἐπεὶ when  
 ἐραστ-ῆς, ὁ lover (1d)

ἠλιάστ-ῆς, ὁ juror in the  
 Eliaia court (1d)  
 θύρ-α τιν-ὶ a door  
 θυράζε out of doors  
 καθ-ίζ-ομαι sit down  
 καίτοι furthermore  
 κῆμ-ος, ὁ funnel (2a) (through  
 which the voting pebble goes  
 into the voting urn)  
 κορυβαντίζ-ω introduce into  
 the Korybantic rites (a  
 mystery religion involving  
 wildness of all kinds, and the  
 beating of drums)  
 ὄνειρο-πολέ-ω dream  
 παρα-γράφ-ω write alongside  
 πλησίον nearby  
 πολλ-οῖς τε οὖσι καὶ  
 μεγάλ-οις being many and  
 large (goes with τούτ-οις  
 τοῖς μόχλ-οις)  
 τῆς ἡμέρ-ας during the day  
 τῆς νυκτ-ὸς during the night

τοιόσδε τοιάδε τοιόνδε like  
 this, as follows  
 τούτ-οις τοῖς δικτύ-οις with  
 these nets  
 τούτ-οις τοῖς μόχλ-οις with  
 these bars  
 τῷ γέροντ-ι to the old man  
 τῷ δικαστηρί-ῳ the  
 law-court  
 τῷ πατρ-ὶ his father (after  
 ἐμ-πεσ-οῦσ-α)  
 τῷ σὺ υἱ-ῷ your son (after  
 πείσ-ῃ)  
 τῷ υἱ-ῷ τούτ-ῳ to this son  
 here  
 ὑμ-ῖν . . . οὔσι to you (pl.)  
 being  
 φιλ-ηλιάστ-ῆς, ὁ lover of  
 being a juror in the court of  
 the Eliaia (1d)  
 Φιλο-κλέων (Φιλοκλεων-), ὁ  
 Philokleon (3a) ('Lover of  
 Kleon')

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναπειθω persuade over to one's  
 side  
 βαρέως φέρω take badly, find  
 hard to bear

δικάζω be a juror; make a  
 judgment  
 ἐξέρχομαι (ἐξελθ-) go out;  
 come out

ἐπεὶ when; since  
 καθίζομαι sit down  
 καθίζω sit down  
 πλησίον nearby, (+ gen.) near

## Vocabulary for Section Eight D

ἀναξ (ἀνακτ-), ὁ lord (3a)	καπν-ῶ . . . ἔξ-ιόντ-ε smoke coming out (after ὄμοι-ος)	σοί to you (s.)
βο-ῆ shout (after χρῆται)	καπν-ός, ὁ smoke (2a)	τάλας wretched (me)
ἐμ-οῖ to me	λόγ-ω in word (i.e. supposedly)	τέγ-ος, τό roof (3c)
ἐμ-οιγε to me at least	μηχαν-ή, ἡ device, scheme (1a)	τίσι; to whom? (pl.)
ἐνταῦθα (from) here	μοι to me	τοῖς δούλ-οις to the slaves
ἐν-τυγχάν-ω (ἐν-τυχ-) meet, chance upon	ὄμοι-ος -α -ον like	τόλμ-η brazenness (after χρῆται)
ἐργ-ω in fact, indeed (i.e. actually)	ὄπ-ῆ, ἡ hole (1a)	τῷ Φιλο-κλέων-ι Philokleon (after ὁμοιότερος)
ἡμ-ῖν to us	ὄτι; what?	Φιλο-κλέων-ι Philokleon (after ὁμοιος)
ἡμ-ῖν καθεύδ-ουσιν us sleeping (after ἐντυχῶν)	οὐδεν-ὶ no one (after ὁμοιότερος)	χρά-ομαι use, employ (3rd s. χρῆται)
ἰπν-ός, ὁ oven (2a)	πολλ-ῆ σπουδ-ῆ with much urgency (i.e. very urgently)	ψοφέ-ω make a noise
κάπν-η, ἡ chimney (1a)		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναξ (ἀνακτ-), ὁ prince, lord, king (3a)	μέλας μέλαινα μέλαν (μελαν-) black
ἐνταῦθα here, at this point	τάλας τάλαινα τάλαν (ταλαν-) wretched, unhappy

## Vocabulary for Section Eight E

ἄμεινον better	ἐγ-κλεί-ω shut in	Ὀδυσσ-εύς, ὁ Odysseus (3g)
ἄνοιγε open!	ἐκ-φεύγ-ω (ἐκ-φυγ-) escape	ὄμοι-ος -α -ον like
ἀπο-δραμ-ῶν see ἀπο-τρέχ-ω	ἔμοι-γε to me	ὄτι because
ἀπο-τρέχ-ω (ἀπο-δραμ-) run away	ἐξ-άγ-ω bring out, lead out	Οὐ-τις No-man
*Ἀπο-δρασ-ιππ-ίδης, ὁ the son of Runawayhorse (1d) (comic name)	ἡμίον-ος, ὁ mule (2a)	πάντ-ων of all
αὐτ-οῖς τοῖς	*Ἰθακήσι-ος, ὁ (an) Ithakan (2a)	παρα-σκευάζ-ομαι devise, prepare
καθηλί-οις pack-saddle and all	κάτω below, underneath	ποδαπός from which country?
βῶλι-ον, τό clod of earth (2b)	λήσ-ει he will escape notice (fut. of λανθάν-ω)	πράγματα παρ-έχ-ω cause problems (fut. παρ-έξ-ω)
δίκτυ-ον, τό net (2b)	λίθ-ος, ὁ stone (2a)	πωλέ-ω sell
δυν-αίμην I would be able (opt. of δύν-αμαι)	μηκέτι no longer	σοί to you (s.)
ἐγ-κλείσ-ασι . . . ἡμ-ῖν to us shutting (him) in	μιαρ-ός -ά -όν foul	σοῦ shoe!
	μοι me (after ἐνέπεσε); my (after ἐστι)	σπουδ-ῆ πάσ-ῃ with all urgency (i.e. most urgently)
	νου-μηνί-α, ἡ first of the month (1b) (market-day)	

στέν-ω *groan*  
 στρουθ-ός, ὁ *sparrow (2a)*  
 ταῖς χερσὶ *with your hands*  
 τῆ ἀγορᾶ *the market-place*  
 τῷ δικτύ-ῳ *with the net*

τῷ Ὀδυσσ-εῖ *Odysseus (after*  
*ὁμοιότατος)*  
 ὑφ-έλκ-ω *drag from beneath*  
 φθῆσ-εται *he will anticipate*  
*(fut. of φθάν-ω)*

φύλαξινοῦσι *(to us) being*  
*guards (goes with*  
*ἐγκλείσασσι . . . ἡμῖν)*  
 ὠθέ-ω *push*

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀμείνων *ἄμεινον*  
*(ἀμειν-)* *better*  
 ἀποτρέχω *(ἀποδραμ-)* *run*  
*away*  
 ἐγκλείω *shut in, lock in*  
 ἐκφεύγω *(ἐκφυγ-)* *escape*  
 ἐξάγω *(ἐξαγαγ-)* *lead/shring*  
*out*

ἡμίονος, ὁ *mule (2a)*  
 μηκέτι *no longer*  
 μισρός ἄδν *soul, polluted*  
 ὁμοιος *αὐτῷ* *like, similar to*  
*(+ dat.)*  
 παρέχω *(παρασχ-)* *give to,*  
*provide*

πράγματα παρέχω *cause*  
*trouble*  
 πωλέω *sell*  
 στένω *groan*  
 χράσμαι *use, employ (+ dat.)*

## Grammar for Section Eight A–E

### Summary:

Dat. (all types), and usages  
 ἐρωτάω, λανθάνω

### Nouns/adjectives

#### Datives

103 The forms of the dative singular and plural across the range of noun and adjective types you have met are as follows:

	s.				pl.			
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
1a	βο-ῆ, ἡ	βο-ήν	βο-ῆς	βο-ῇ	βο-αί	βο-άς	βο-ῶν	βο-αῖς
1b	ἀπορί-α, ἡ	ἀπορί-αν	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-ᾳ	ἀπορί-αι	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-ῶν	ἀπορί-αις
1c	τόλμ-α, ἡ	τόλμ-αν	τόλμ-ης	τόλμ-ῃ	τόλμ-αι	τόλμ-ας	τόλμ-ῶν	τόλμ-αις
1d	ναύτ-ης, ὁ	ναύτ-ην	ναύτ-ου	ναύτ-ῃ	ναύτ-αι	ναύτ-ας	ναυτ-ῶν	ναύτ-αις
	νεανί-ας, ὁ	νεανί-αν	νεανί-ου	νεανί-ᾳ				
2a	ἄνθρωπ-ος, ὁ	ἄνθρωπ-ον	ἄνθρώπ-ου	ἄνθρώπ-ῳ	ἄνθρωπ-οι	ἄνθρώπ-ους	ἄνθρώπ-ων	ἄνθρώπ-οις
2b	ἔργ-ον, τό	ἔργ-ον	ἔργ-ου	ἔργ-ῳ	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-ων	ἔργ-οις
3a	λιμήν, ὁ	λιμέν-α	λιμέν-ος	λιμέν-ι	λιμέν-ες	λιμέν-ος	λιμέν-ων	λιμέ-σι(ν)
3b	πράγμα, τό	πράγμα	πράγματ-ος	πράγματ-ι	πράγματ-α	πράγματ-α	πραγμάτ-ων	πράγμα-σι(ν)
3c	πλήθ-ος, τό	πλήθ-ος	πλήθ-ους	πλήθ-ει	πλήθ-η	πλήθ-η	πλήθ-ῶν	πλήθ-εσι(ν)
3d	τριήρ-ης, ἡ	τριήρ-η	τριήρ-ους	τριήρ-ει	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-ων	τριήρ-εσι(ν)

s.

pl

	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
3c	πόλ-ις, ἡ	πόλ-ιν	πόλ-εως	πόλ-ει	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εων	πόλ-εσι(ν)
	πρέσβ-υς, ὁ	πρέσβ-υν						
3f	ἄστ-υ, τό	ἄστ-υ	ἄστ-εως	ἄστ-ει	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-εων	ἄστ-εσι(ν)
3g	βασιλ-εύς, ὁ	βασιλ-έα	βασιλ-έως	βασιλ-εῖ	βασιλ-ῆς	βασιλ-έας	βασιλ-έων	βασιλ-εῦσι(ν)
					βασιλ-εῖς			
3h	ὄφρῦ-ς, ἡ	ὄφρῦ-ν	ὄφρῦ-ος	ὄφρῦ-ι	ὄφρῦ-ες	ὄφρῦ-ς	ὄφρῦ-ων	ὄφρῦ-σι(ν)

Irregular nouns

ναῦς, ἡ	ναῦν	νεώς	νηί	νήες	ναῦς	νεών	ναυσί(ν)
γραῦς, ἡ	γραῦν	γραός	γραί	γράες	γραῦς	γραῶν	γραυσί(ν)
Ζεὺς, ὁ	Δία	Διός	Διί				

Personal pronouns

ἐγώ	(ἐ)μέ	(ἐ)μοῦ	(ἐ)μοί	ἡμεῖς	ἡμᾶς	ἡμῶν	ἡμῖν
σύ	σέ	σοῦ	σοί	ὑμεῖς	ὑμᾶς	ὑμῶν	ὑμῖν

Adjectives

m.	καλ-ός	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῶ	καλ-οί	καλ-οὺς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
f.	καλ-ή	καλ-ήν	καλ-ῆς	καλ-ῆ	καλ-αί	καλ-άς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-αῖς
n.	καλ-όν	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλῶ	καλ-ά	καλ-ά	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
m.	ἡμέτερ-ος	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτερ-ου	ἡμέτερ-ω	ἡμέτερ-οι	ἡμέτερ-ους	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-οις
f.	ἡμέτερα	ἡμέτερ-ην	ἡμέτερ-ης	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-αι	ἡμέτερ-ας	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-αις
n.	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτερ-ου	ἡμέτερ-ω	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-ων	ἡμέτερ-οις
m.	οὗτ-ος	οὗτ-όν	οὗτ-ου	οὗτ-ω	οὗτ-οι	οὗτ-ους	οὗτ-ων	οὗτ-οις
f.	οὗτ-η	οὗτ-ήν	οὗτ-ης	οὗτ-η	οὗτ-αι	οὗτ-ας	οὗτ-ων	οὗτ-αις
n.	οὗτ-ον	οὗτ-ον	οὗτ-ου	οὗτ-ω	οὗτ-α	οὗτ-α	οὗτ-ων	οὗτ-οις
m.	ἐκεῖν-ος	ἐκεῖν-όν	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-οι	ἐκεῖν-ους	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οις
f.	ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-ήν	ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-αι	ἐκεῖν-ας	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-αις
n.	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οις
m.	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτῶ	αὐτ-οί	αὐτ-οὺς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
f.	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-ῆ	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-άς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-αῖς
n.	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτ-ῶ	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
m.	πολ-ός	πολ-όν	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-οί	πολλ-οὺς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
f.	πολλ-ή	πολλ-ήν	πολλ-ῆς	πολλ-ῆ	πολλ-αί	πολλ-άς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-αῖς
n.	πολλ-όν	πολλ-όν	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
m.	εὐφρον	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-ες	εὐφρον-ας	εὐφρον-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
n.	εὐφρον	εὐφρον	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
m.	τις	τιν-α	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-ες	τιν-ας	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
n.	τι	τι	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-α	τιν-α	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
m.	οὐδ-είς	οὐδ-ένδ	οὐδ-ειός	οὐδ-ειί				
f.	οὐδε-μία	οὐδε-μίαν	οὐδε-μίας	οὐδε-μίᾱ				
n.	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-ενός	οὐδ-ειί				

s.		pl.						
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	ὄντ	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-ες	ὄντ-ας	ὄντ-ων	οὐ-σι(ν)
f.	οὐσ-α	οὐσ-αν	οὐσ-ης	οὐσ-η	οὐσ-αι	οὐσ-ας	οὐσ-ων	οὐσ-αις
n.	ὄντ	ὄντ	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ων	οὐ-σι(ν)
m.	παύσ-ας	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-αντος	παύσ-αντι	παύσ-αντες	παύσ-αντας	παύσ-άντων	παύσ-ασι(ν)
f.	παύσ-ασα	παύσ-ασαν	παυσ-άσης	παυσ-άση	παύσ-ασαι	παυσ-άσας	παυσ-ασῶν	παυσ-ασαίς
n.	παύσ-αν	παύσ-αν	παύσ-αντος	παύσ-αντι	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-αντα	παυσ-άντων	παύσ-ασι(ν)

Notes

- (i) Dative singulars all end in -ι (whether subscript or not).
- (ii) Dative plurals all end in -ις or -σι(ν). (But note ἡμῖν, ὑμῖν.)
- (iii) Type 3 stems in -οντ- have dat. pl. in -ουσι (e.g. participles like παύ-ων with stem παυοντ- and dat. pl. παύουσι). Those in -αντ- have dat. pl. in -ασι.
- (iv) Type 3's with single consonant at the end of the stem either drop it in the dat. pl. (λιμήν, stem λιμεν-, dat. pl. λιμέσι) or let it coalesce (φύλαξ, stem φυλακ-, dat. pl. φύλαξι (=φύλακ-σι)).

Uses of the dative

104 The most common uses of the dative are as follows:

- (i) to express English indirect object phrases introduced by 'to', e.g.
  - τοῦτό μοι παρέχει 'he offers this to me'
  - λέγε τοῖς θεάταις 'speak to the spectators'
- (ii) to express the idea of possession with the verb 'to be', e.g.
  - ἔστι μοι πατήρ (lit.) 'there is to me a father', i.e. 'I have a father'
- (iii) to show the means by which something is achieved, usually expressed by the English 'by' or 'by means of' or 'with', e.g.
  - φυλάττομεν τὸν γέροντα τοῖς δικτύοις 'we guard the old man with the nets'
- (iv) to show the way in which something is done (rather like an adverb), usually expressed by the English 'with' again, e.g.
  - πολλῇ σπουδῇ 'with much enthusiasm, enthusiastically'
- (v) Note the two expressions:
  - (a) αὐτοῖς τοῖς καθηλίοις 'baggage and all'
  - (b) λόγῳ μὲν . . . ἔργῳ δέ . . . 'in word . . . but in fact', i.e. outwardly something appears to be the case, but the reality is very different
- (vi) Certain verbs take the dative, e.g.
  - χράομαι 'I use, have to do with'
  - πείθομαι 'I obey, trust in'
  - ἐμπίπτω 'I fall on, attack'

ἐντυγχάνω 'I meet with'

ἔπομαι 'I follow'

δοκεῖ μοι 'it seems to me'

(vii) Certain adjectives take the dative, e.g.

ὁμοίος 'resembling, like (to)'

(viii) With prepositions, e.g.

ἐν 'in'

ἐπί 'on, for the purpose of'

παρά 'with, near'

πρός 'near, in addition to'

σύν 'with the help of'

(cf. *Reference Grammar F*, p. 290, and *Language Surveys* (10), (11)).

### Time phrases

In *time* phrases, the *accusative* case expresses time throughout, or during which something happens (English 'for'), e.g.

καθεύδει ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν 'he sleeps for the whole day'

The *genitive* case expresses time within which something happens (English 'in the course of', or simply 'in'), e.g.

τῆς νυκτὸς κρίνει 'he judges in the night, in the course of the night'

The *dative* case expresses the point of time at which something happens (English 'at, on'), e.g.

τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπῆλθεν 'he left on the next day'

### Note

*A visual representation may help:*

the *accusative* case ('during') may be considered as a line ———

the *dative* case ('point at which') as a dot ●

the *genitive* case as a circle ○ (the action is taking place somewhere within the circle but one doesn't know where.)

### Verbs

*More optatives, ἐρωτάω, λαμβάνω*

105 You have already seen how *-a-* dominates certain verbs in the indicative, e.g. δύναμαι 90 and ἀνίσταμαι 98. It continues to dominate in the optative, e.g. δυναίμην, δύναιο, δύναιτο etc. (cf. 95).

106 Note the past of ἐρωτάω 'I ask' is ἠρόμην 'I asked' (stem ἐρ-). Distinguish this stem from ἐρ-έω 'I shall say' (future of λέγω).

- 107 The principal parts of *λανθάνω* are  
*λανθάνω* 'I escape the notice of'  
*λήσ-ω* (fut.) 'I shall escape the notice of'  
*ἔ-λαθ-ον* (aor.) 'I escaped the notice of'

---

## Exercises for Section Eight A-E

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Give the dative singular and plural of the following nouns:  
*ἄνθρωπος, βοή, ἀπορία, ἀνὴρ, γυνή, πόλις, βασιλεύς, γέρον, ναύτης*
2. Translate the sentences, then change underlined dative singulars into plurals or vice-versa, as appropriate:
  - a. *ἔστι πατήρ μοι, πάνυ πονηρὸς ὢν.*
  - b. *μέγα κακόν σοι ἐμπεσεῖται, κακοδαίμονι ὄντι.*
  - c. *λόγῳ μὲν ἐν τῇ πόλει οὐδεὶς ἀμείνων ἐστὶ τοῦ πατρὸς, ἔργῳ δὲ οὐδεὶς χείρων.*
  - d. *λέγε τῷ θεατῇ τὸν τοῦ δράματος λόγον πάσῃ προθυμίᾳ.*
  - e. *βοαῖς χρώμεθα μεγάλαις.*
  - f. *ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ἔτυχον ὄντες οἱ ναῦται.*
  - g. *τοῖς κελεύουσι δεῖ ἡμᾶς πείθεσθαι.*
  - h. *τί τὸ ὄνομα τῷ βασιλεῖ;*
  - i. *διὰ τί πειρᾶσθε ἀναπείθειν ἐμὲ τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ;*
  - j. *τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ὁ υἱὸς ἐδίωξε τὸν πατέρα πάλιν εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν τοῖς μεγάλοις δικτύοις.*

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. This spectator's name is Philoxenos.
2. He is speaking to you and to the spectators.
3. They will find sitting in the court hard to bear.
4. I shut my father in by using many slaves.
5. The politicians persuaded the people with fine words.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Eight F

---

*ἀλεκτροῦν* (*ἀλεκτρον*-), ὁ  
 cockerel (3a)  
*ἀναγκάζ-ω* force, compel  
*ἀνα-μέν-ω* hold on, wait  
 around

*ἀν-ίστασο* get up! (s.)  
 (*ἀν-ίστα-μαι*)  
*ἀτάρ* but  
*γεν-έσθαι* to become  
 (*γίγν-ομαι*·*ἔ-γεν-όμην*)

*δειν-ὸς* *καθεύδειν* clever at  
 sleeping  
*δειν-ὸς* *φαγ-εῖν* clever at  
 eating  
*δι' ὀλίγου* after a short while

δικάσ-αι to give a judgment  
(δικάζ-ω)  
δυνήσ-ομαι I will be able (fut.  
of δύν-αμαι)  
δυνήσ-ῃ you (s.) will be able  
(fut. of δύν-αμαι)  
εἶά-ω (εἶασ-) allow  
ἐγείρ-ω wake up  
ἔδ-ομαι I shall eat (fut. of  
ἐσθί-ω)  
ἐθέλ-ω wish, want (to)  
ἐκ-φέρ-ω (ἐξ-ενεγκ-) carry  
out  
ἐνεγκ-εῖν to bring  
(φέρ-αι ἤνεγκ-ον)  
ἐνθάδε here  
ἔξ-εστι it is possible (for x  
(dat.) to -)  
ἔξ-ευρ-εῖν to discover  
(ἔξ-ευρίσκ-ω ἔξ-ηύρ-ον)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναμένω (ἀναμειν-) wait, hold  
on  
ἀτάρ *but*  
δεινός ἢ ὄν clever at (+ inf.);  
*dire, terrible*  
εἶάω (εἶασ-) allow

ἐξ-ήνεγκ-ας you (s.) brought  
out (aor. of ἐκ-φέρ-ω)  
ἐξ-οίσ-ω I shall bring out  
(fut. of ἐκ-φέρ-ω)  
ἐσθί-ω (φαγ-) eat  
ἤκ-ω come  
ιοῦ hurrah!  
κατά-σκοπ-ος, ὁ scout, spy,  
inspector (2a)  
κατήγορος, ὁ prosecutor (2a)  
λαβ-εῖν to exact  
(λαμβάν-ω ἔ-λαβ-ον)  
μακρ-ός -ά -όν long  
μισθ-ός, ὁ pay (2a)  
μόγισ with difficulty  
οἶ-ός τ' εἰμί be able (to)  
(+ inf.)  
ὅμως nevertheless, however

ὁπόθεν from where  
ὄ τι; what?  
οὔπω = οὐδέπω not yet  
παρά (+ gen.) from  
πάντ-α everything (acc.)  
πάσ-ῃ προθυμί-α with all  
eagerness (i.e. most eagerly)  
παύσ-ασθαι to stop; to cease  
from (+ gen.) (παύ-ομαι)  
πιθ-έσθαι to obey  
(πείθ-ομαι ἔ-πιθ-όμην)  
ποιήσ-αι to act on (ποιέ-ω)  
πῦρ (πυρ-), τό fire, brazier  
(3b)  
τί-ι τρόπ-ω how? in what  
way? (τρόπ-ος, ὁ way (2a))  
φακ-ῆ, ἡ lentil-soup (1a)  
χρή it is necessary (for x (acc.)  
to -)

ἐκφέρω (ἐξενεγκ-) carry out;  
(often: carry out for burial)  
ἐνθάδε here  
ἔξεστι it is possible (for X (dat.)  
to - (inf.))  
ἐσθίω (φαγ-) eat (fut. ἔδομαι)

ὅμως nevertheless, however  
ὄ τι; what? (in reply to τίς;)  
χρή it is necessary (for X (acc.)  
to - (inf.))

## Vocabulary for Section Eight G

ἀκούσ-ατε listen! pay  
attention! (pl.) (ἀκού-ω)  
ἀκουσ-ον listen! pay  
attention! (s.) (ἀκού-ω)  
ἀμῖς (ἀμιδ-), ἡ chamber-pot  
(3a)  
ἀνευ (+ gen.) without  
ἄπ-ιθι go away! (s.)  
(ἀπ-έρχ-ομαι ἄπ-εἰμι)  
ἀρέσκ-ει it pleases (+ dat.)  
ἄρχ-ομαι begin (+ part.)  
ἔασ-ον leave me be! (s.)  
(εἶά-ω)  
ἐκ-τρέχ-ω run out  
ἐνεγκ-έ fetch!  
(φέρ-ω ἤνεγκ-ον)

ἐξ-ενέγκ-ατε fetch out! (pl.)  
(ἐκ-φέρ-ω ἔξ-ήνεγκ-α)  
εὖξ-ασθε pray! (pl.)  
(εὖχ-ομαι)  
θέ-σθαι to cast  
(τίθεμαι ἔ-θεί-μην)  
ἴθι come! (s.) (ἔρχ-ομαι εἰμι)  
ἴσθι know! (s.) (οἶδα)  
κάδ-ος, ὁ voting-urn (2a)  
κάδ-ων ἔνεκα because of the  
urns  
καὶ δὴ well, all right (you  
have my attention)  
καλῶς γε fine!  
κατηγορέ-ω accuse,  
prosecute

κλειψύδρ-α, ἡ water-clock  
(1b)  
κυμβί-ον, τό cup (2b)  
λέξ-ον out with it! (λέγ-ω)  
μηδαμ-ῶς in no way  
πάντ-α everything; all (nom.)  
πάντ-ες all (nom. pl. m.)  
πάσι to all (dat. pl. m.)  
παύσ-αι stop! (s.) (παύ-ομαι)  
πίθ-εσθε obey! (pl.)  
(πείθ-ομαι ἔ-πιθ-όμην)  
πιθ-οῦ obey! (s.)  
(πείθ-ομαι ἔ-πιθ-όμην)  
πλῆν (+ gen.) except  
πῦρ (πυρ-), τό fire (3b)  
ψηφ-ος, ἡ vote (2a) (lit.  
voting-pebble)



### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄρχομαι <i>begin (+ inf. or part.)</i>	πάρειμι <i>be present</i>
ἐκτρέχω (ἐκδραμ-) <i>run out</i>	πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-) <i>all</i>
ἕνεκα (+ gen.) <i>because, for the sake of (usually placed after the noun)</i>	ὁ πᾶς <i>the whole of</i>
	πλήν (+ gen.) <i>except</i>
	πῦρ (πυρ-), τό <i>fire (sb)</i>

## ○ Grammar for Section Eight F–G

### Summary:

Aor. inf. act. and mid.

Aor. imper. act. and mid. (inc. εἰμί, εἶμι, οἶδα)

φέρω, ἔξεστι, δεινός, πᾶς

### Verbs

*Aorist infinitives, active and middle: παῦσαι, παύσασθαι 'to stop'. λαβεῖν, λαβέσθαι 'to take'*

108 You have already met present infinitives (infinitives based on the present stem). Greek also has infinitives based on the aorist stems (weak and strong). Their forms are as follows:

*Weak aorist active: παῦσ-αι 'to stop'*

*Weak aorist middle: παύσ-ασθαι 'to stop'*

### Note

*Take the weak aorist stem and for active verbs add -αι, for middle verbs add -ασθαι. Note the dominance of the -(σ)α- ending in the stem again (cf. aorist indicatives at 68 and 69).*

*Strong aorist active: λαβ-εῖν 'to take'*

*Strong aorist middle: λαβ-έσθαι 'to take'*

### Note

*Take the strong aorist stem (without augment) and for active verbs add -εῖν, for middle verbs add -έσθαι. Observe that the endings (except for accent) are just the same as the endings for the present infinitives active and middle, BUT THE STEM IS DIFFERENT. (Cf. present infinitives at 74 and strong aorist participles at 82–4.)*

### Aspect in the infinitive

109 The difference in meaning between present and aorist infinitives is not one of time, but one of aspect (cf. on participles at 79 (iii)). Both παύειν and παῦσαι mean 'to stop', but the present infinitive carries the idea of process with

it ('keep on stopping'), the aorist looks at the action as a simple event. But this distinction is often a very fine one and 'rules' as such are very difficult to make. It is far better to observe closely actual Greek usage.

*Aorist imperatives, active and middle: παῦσον, παῦσαι 'stop!' λαβέ, λαβοῦ 'take!'*

110 You have already met present imperatives (see 6), which are based on the present stem. There are also imperatives based on the aorist stem. Their forms are as follows:

*Weak aorist imperatives active: s. παῦσ-ον 'stop!'*

*pl. παύσ-ατε 'stop!'*

*Weak aorist imperatives middle: s. παῦσ-αι 'stop!'*

*pl. παύσ-ασθε 'stop!'*

*Note*

*Again observe the dominance of -(σ)α- in the aorist stem. Note particularly carefully the singular imperative form in -(σ)-ον.*

*Strong aorist imperatives active: s. λαβ-έ 'take!'*

*pl. λάβ-ετε 'take!'*

*Strong aorist imperatives middle: s. λαβ-οῦ 'take!'*

*pl. λάβ-εσθε 'take!'*

*Note*

*As with strong aorist participles (82-4) and strong aorist infinitives (108), the endings of the strong aorist imperatives are identical to those for present imperatives, but based on the aorist stem.*

*Observe that you have been meeting some strong aorist imperatives all through the course in the forms:*

*ἔλθέ 'come!' (ἤλθον)*

*εἰπέ 'say!' (εἶπον)*

*ἴδου 'look!' (εἶδον, middle)*

*Aspect in the imperative*

111 Again, the distinction between present and aorist imperatives is one not of time but of aspect (cf. 109 and 79 (iii));\* equally, it is sometimes very difficult indeed to tell the difference between the two, or to decide exactly why a writer used this, rather than that, imperative at any one time (Aristophanes seems to use φέρε and ἔνεγκε 'bring!' quite indiscriminately). The distinction, when it can be made, is between an instruction to do something and keep on doing it (present imperative), and one to do something, but just once (aorist imperative).

\* Besides, how could one have a *past* imperative?!

Note

It is natural that certain verbs have, by their very nature, a tendency to lean towards one aspect or the other. Thus, for example, λαμβάνω 'I take' tends to use the aorist forms of participle, infinitive and imperative, because 'taking' is the sort of thing that occurs once or at once and does not involve a long-drawn-out process. On the other hand, a verb like ζητέω 'seek', which naturally implies a process, tends to appear in the present forms of participle, infinitive and imperative.

Four imperatives

112 Note the imperative forms of εἰμί 'I am', εἶμι 'I shall go', οἶδα 'I know':

	εἰμί	εἶμι	οἶδα
s.	ἴσθι 'be!'	ἴθι 'go!'	ἴσθι 'know!'
pl.	ἔστε 'be!'	ἴτε 'go!'	ἴστε 'know!'

N.b. the imperative forms of ἀνίσταμαι: ἀνίστασο 'get up!'  
ἀνίστασθε 'get up!'

φέρ-ω

113 Observe the irregular verb φέρω:

φέρ-ω 'I bear, carry, put up with'

οἶσ-ω fut. 'I shall bear'

ἤνεγκ-ον (ένεγκ-) or ἤνεγκ-α (aor.) 'I bore, carried'

ἔξεστι + infinitive 'be permitted to' and δεινός + infinitive 'clever at'

114 You have already met δεῖ (= χρή), which means 'must, ought' and takes an accusative and infinitive (75).

ἔξεστι 'it is permitted, it is possible' works in the same way, except that it takes a dative (not accusative) of the person, e.g. ἔξεστι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ ἐξελεῖν 'the man is permitted/allowed to go out, the man may go out'.

115 Note also δεινός + inf. = 'clever at -ing', e.g. δεινός λέγειν 'clever at speaking'.

Adjectives

πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-) 'all, every'

116 Observe that πᾶς goes exactly like an aorist participle of the παύσας type (see 78), i.e.

πᾶς (παντ-) m.

πᾶσα f.

πᾶν (παντ-) n.

## Exercises for Section Eight F–G

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Write down the aorist of these verbs. Then construct the aorist infinitive:

παύομαι	φέρω	ὄράω
ἀκούω	γίγνομαι	πείθομαι
ποιέω	μανθάνω	πίπτω
ἄδικέω	λαμβάνω	
λέγω	ἄφικνέομαι	

2. Translate these imperatives. Give in brackets the person and aspect (i.e. s./pl., pres./aor.):

μάθετε, λέγε, εἰπέ, φεύγετε, ζήτηι, ὄρα, δήλωσον, ἴσθι, μείνατε, γενού, ἀφίκεσθε, ἔνεγκε, ἴτε, φοβεῖσθε, πιθοῦ, εὔρετε, παύσατε, ἰδοῦ, παῦσαι

3. Put the verb in brackets into the present or aorist infinitive as requested, and translate the sentences:

- βούλομαι (δικάζω) (aorist) ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ, ἀλλ' ὁ υἱὸς οὐκ ἔα με (δικάζω) (present) ἐνθάδε.
- δεῖ ἡμᾶς πάντας (ἔξειμι) (present) εἰς τὴν ἀγοράν.
- τί χρή σε (ποιέω) (aorist);
- ἔξεστι Φιλοκλέωνι (κατηγορέω) (present).
- ὁ υἱὸς οὐκ εἶσε τὸν πατέρα (εἶμι) (aorist) εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον.
- πῶς πείσω σε, ὦ πάτερ, (ἀκούω) (aorist) πάντων τῶν λόγων;
- διὰ τί οὐ βούλη (ἐκφέρω) (aorist) Φιλοκλέωνα, ὦ ἡμίονε;
- δεῖ σε δικαστὴν (γίγνομαι) (aorist) ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
- χρὴ αὐτοὺς (μανθάνω) (aorist) τοὺς τοῦ δράματος λόγους.
- βούλεται αὐτὸς (λαμβάνω) (present) πάντα τὸν μισθὸν παρὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ.
- οὐκ ἔασω αὐτὸν (ἄφικνέομαι) (present) εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον.
- ἔξεστί μοι ἐνθάδε καὶ (λαμβάνω) (aorist) πάντα τὸν μισθὸν καὶ (ἐσθίω) (aorist).

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

- Father, you must stay here and give judgments.
- It will be possible for you all to sell your mules.
- Everything is here except the fire.
- Bring out the torches, slaves!
- 'Out with it, what were you looking for when you ran out?' 'What? Everything.'

## Vocabulary for Section Eight H

ἀγαθός -ῆ -όν good (at) (+ inf.)	εἰσ-ίτω let him come in! (εἰσ-έρχ-ομαι εἰσ-εἶμι)	κυμβίον, τό cup (2b)
Ἀίξων-εύς, ὁ man from the deme Aixone (3g)	εἰσ-καλέ-ω call in, summon	κύων (κυν-), ὁ dog (3a)
αἰρέ-ω (ἐλ-) convict	ἐλ-εἶν } see αἰρέ-ω	Λάβης (Λαβητ-), ὁ Labes (3a) ('Grabber')
αἰτέ-ω ask (for)	ἐλ-ετε }	μάρτυς (μαρτυρ-), ὁ witness (3a)
ἀκού-ω listen (to) (+ gen.)	ἐλπίζ-ω hope, expect (to)	μέλλ-ω be about (to)
ἄμφοτεροι -αι -α both	ἐξ-απατήσ-ειν to deceive (ἐξ-απατά-ω)	μέρ-ος, τό share (3c)
ἀνα-βάς going up	ἔξω outside	μονο-φαι-ίστατ-ος most selfish (lit. 'alone') eater
(ἀνα-βαίν-ω ἀν-έ-βην)	ἐπ-ίστα-μαι know how (to) (+ inf.)	πολύ much
ἀνα-βῆν-αι to go up	εὖ γε well done! hurrah!	προ-κατα-γιγνώσκ-ω prejudge
(ἀνα-βαίν-ω ἀν-έ-βην)	ἠλιάστ-ης, ὁ juror in the Eliaia court (1d)	πρός (+ gen.) in the name of
ἀν-έ-βη (he) went up	θέ-σθαι to cast	προσ-ιόντων let them come forward!
(ἀνα-βαίν-ω ἀν-έ-βην)	(τίθε-μαι ἐ-θέ-μην)	(προσ-έρχ-ομαι πρόσ-εἶμι)
ἀν-αίτι-ος -ον innocent	καὶ δὴ and indeed	προσ-ίτω let him come forward
ἄπας ἄπασ-α ἄπαν	καὶ μὲν and look . . .	(προσ-έρχ-ομαι πρόσ-εἶμι)
(ἀπαντ-) all	κατά-βηθι get down! (s.)	σιγᾶ-ω be quiet
ἀπο-λογέ-ομαι make speech for the defence	(κατα-βαίν-ω κατα-έ-βην)	σπευδ-έτω let him hurry! (σπεύδ-ω)
ἀπο-λογήσ-εσθαι to make the defence speech	κατ-εσθί-ω (κατα-φαιγ-) eat up	τυρό-κινηστis (τυροκινησιδ-), ῆ cheese-grater (3a)
αὐαὐ wool! wool!	κατηγορέ-ω prosecute, make a prosecution speech	τυρ-ός, ὁ cheese (2a)
αὐ again, moreover	κατηγορί-α, ῆ prosecution (1b)	φαικ-ῆ, ῆ lentil-soup (1a)
γραφ-ῆ, ῆ indictment, charge (1a)	κηρύττ-ω announce	φανερ-ός -ά -όν clear, obvious
γράφ-ομαι indict x (acc.) for y (gen.)	κλέπτ-ης, ὁ thief (1d)	φεύγ-ω be a defendant
δικανικ-ά, τά court affairs, legal matters (2b)	κλοπ-ῆ, ῆ theft (1a)	χυτρ-ά, ῆ cooking-pot
διώκ-ω prosecute	Κυδαθηναί-εύς, ὁ man from the deme Kydathene (3g)	ψηφ-ος, ῆ vote (2a) (lit. 'voting-pebble')
ἐθέλ-ω wish, want (to)		

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀκούω hear, listen to (+ gen. of person/thing)	διώκω prosecute, pursue	πολύ (adv.) much
ἀπολογέομαι defend oneself, make a speech in one's own defence	ἐθέλω wish, want (to)	πρός (+ gen.) in the name of, under the protection of
γραφῆ, ῆ indictment, charge, case (1a)	κατηγορέω prosecute X (gen.) on a charge of Y (acc.)	φεύγω (φυγ-) be a defendant, be on trial; flee
γράφομαι indict, charge	κατηγορία, ῆ speech for the prosecution (1b)	ψηφός, ῆ vote, voting-pebble (2a)
γραφῆν γράφομαι indict X (acc.) on charge of Y (gen.)	κύων (κυν-), ὁ dog (3a)	
	μάρτυς (μαρτυρ-), ὁ witness (3a)	
	μέρος, τό share, part (3c)	

## Vocabulary for Section Eight I

αἰβοί yuk! arghh!  
 αἰρέ-ω (ἐλ-) convict  
 αἰτέ-ω ask  
 ἀμφοτέρ-οι-αι -α both  
 ἀνά-βηθι go up! (v.)  
 (ἀνα-βαίν-ω, ἀν-έ-βην)  
 ἀντι-βολέ-ω beg, plead  
 (with)  
 ἀπο-λογία-α, ἡ defence speech  
 (1b)  
 ἀπο-λύ-ω acquit  
 ἀπο-λύσ-ατε pl. as if to a whole  
 jury  
 ἀρχ-ομαι begin (+ gen.)  
 αὐ again, further  
 δαίμονι-ε my good fellow  
 δακρύ-ω weep  
 ἐλ-εῖν } see αἰρέ-ω  
 ἐλ-όντ-α }  
 ἐλπίζ-ω hope, expect  
 ἐξ-απατά-ω deceive  
 ἐπ-ίστα-μαι know (how to)  
 (+ inf.)  
 θάνατ-ος, ὁ death (2a)  
 καίτοι and yet

κατα-βάντ-ος getting down  
 (gen. v. m.)  
 (κατα-βαίν-ω κατ-έ-βην)  
 κατὰ-βηθι get down! (v.)  
 (κατα-βαίν-ω κατ-έ-βην)  
 κατα-βῆναι to get down  
 (κατα-βαίν-ω κατ-έ-βην)  
 κατα-βήσ-ομαι I shall get  
 down  
 (κατα-βαίν-ω κατ-έ-βην)  
 κατα-δικάζ-ω convict, find  
 guilty (+ gen.)  
 κατα-κνά-ω grate  
 κατ-εσθί-ω eat up  
 καθαρίζ-ω play the kithara  
 (i.e. be educated)  
 κλέπτ-ης, ὁ thief (1d)  
 λύκ-ος, ὁ wolf (2a)  
 μέγα loudly  
 μέν οὖν no, rather  
 μηδεῖς μηδεμί-α μηδέν  
 (μηδεν-) no  
 νυνὶ = νῦν  
 ὄδε ἦδε τόδε this  
 οἰκτίρ-ατε pl. as if to a whole  
 jury

οἶ-ός τ' εἰμί be able (to)  
 ὄφελ-ος, τό use (3c)  
 παιδί-ον, τό puppy (2b)  
 παρά (+ gen.) from  
 περι-βαίν-ω surround  
 πονηρ-ός -ά -όν poor,  
 wretched  
 πρόβατ-α, τὰ sheep (2b)  
 σιτί-α, τὰ provisions, food  
 (2b)  
 συγγνώμ-ην ἔχ-ω forgive  
 τόδε see ὄδε  
 τοσ-οὔτ-ος, τοσ-αύτ-η  
 τοσ-οὔτ-ο(ν) so great  
 τυγχάν-ω (τυχ-) chance on,  
 happen upon, hit upon  
 (+ gen.)  
 τυρό-κνηστις (τυροκνηστιδ-),  
 ἡ cheese-grater (3a)  
 ὑφ-αιρέ-ομαι (ὑφ-ελ-) steal,  
 take by stealth for oneself  
 ὑφ-αιρήσ-εσθαι to steal  
 (ὑφ-αιρέ-ομαι)  
 ψεύδ-ομαι lie

### Vocabulary to be learnt

αἰρέω (ἐλ-) take, capture,  
 convict  
 αἰτέω ask (for)  
 ἀμφοτέροιαια both  
 ἀπολογία, ἡ speech in one's  
 own defence (1b)  
 ἀρχομαι begin (+ gen.); begin  
 to (+ part. or inf.)

αὐ again, moreover  
 ἐλπίζω hope, expect (+ fut.  
 inf.)  
 θάνατος, ὁ death (2a)  
 καταδικάζω condemn, convict  
 (X (gen.) on charge of Y  
 (acc.))  
 κλέπτης, ὁ thief (1d)

παιδίον, τό child; slave (2b)  
 παρά (+ gen.) from  
 τυγχάνω (τυχ-) hit, chance on,  
 happen on, be subject to  
 (+ gen.); happen (to), be  
 actually (+ part.)  
 ὑφαιρέομαι (ὑφελ-) steal, take  
 for oneself by stealth

## Vocabulary for Section Eight J

ἀγωνίζ-ομαι contest  
 ἄκων ἄκουσ-α ἄκοι  
 (ἀκοντ-) unwilling(ly)  
 ἀπο-δακρύ-ω burst into tears

ἀπο-λύ-ω acquit  
 ἀπο-φεύγ-ω (ἀποφυγ-) be  
 acquitted  
 βαδίζ-ω walk

δαίμονι-ε my dear fellow  
 δηλώσ-ειν to reveal (δηλό-ω)  
 ἐκὼν ἐκούσ-α ἐκόν  
 (ἐκοντ-) willing(ly)

ἐξ-απατά-ω deceive	μέλλ-ω be about to	πρότερ-ος -α -ον first (of two), former
ἐπ-αίρ-ω raise up, lit	ὄδε ἤδε τόδε this (here)	συγγνώμ-ην ἔχ-ω forgive (+ dat.)
ἐπ-ίστα-μαι know (how to) (+ inf.)	ὄντ-ως really	τῆδε this way
εὖ γε hurrah!	ὅτι because	τῆνδε see ὄδε
θε-ς put! (s.) (τίθη-μι-θε-)	πατρίδιον daddy dear (2b)	ὔδωρ (ὔδατ-), τό water (3b)
θε-ίς putting (nom. s. m.) (τίθη-μι-θε-)	πέισ-ομαι I shall suffer (fut. of πάσχ-ω)	ὔστερ-ος -α -ον last (of two), further
κάδ-ος, ὄ voting-urn (2a)	περι-άγ-ω lead round	φακ-ῆ, ῆ lentil-soup (1a)
κατ-εσθί-ω eat up	περί-πατ-ος, ὄ walkabout (2a)	φέρε . . . περιάγω come . . . let me take you round
κιθαρίζ-ω play the kithara (i.e. be educated)	πολυ-τίμητ-ος -ον much-honoured	

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἀπολύω admit, release	μέλλω be about to (+ fut. inf.); intend; hesitate (+ pres. inf.)	συγγνώμην ἔχω forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
ἐξαπατάω deceive, trick	ὄδε ἤδε τόδε this	ὔστερος α ον later, last (of two)
ἐπίσταμαι know how to (+ inf.); understand	ὅτι because	ὔστερον later, further

○ Grammar for Section Eight H–J

*Summary:*

3rd person imper. pres./aor., act. and mid.

Fut. inf. and usages

ἀκούω, αἰρέω, τίθημι, ἐπίσταμαι, βαίνω, πάσχω (principal parts)

**Verbs**

*Third person imperatives, present and aorist, active and middle*

117 As well as having second person imperatives, which you have already met (110 and 6), Greek has third person imperative forms, which mean 'let him –', 'let them –'. Here are the imperative forms of παύω in full, with the third person imperatives taking their place beside the second persons:

118 *Present imperatives*

Active: 2nd s. παῦ-ε	Middle: 2nd s. παύ-ου
3rd s. παυ-έτω	3rd s. παυ-έσθω
2nd pl. παύ-ετε	2nd pl. παύ-εσθε
3rd pl. παυ-όντων	3rd pl. παυ-έσθων

## 119 Aorist imperatives (weak)

Active: 2nd s. παῦσ-ον		Middle: 2nd s. παῦσ-αι
3rd s. παυσ-άτω	'let him stop'	3rd s. παυσ-άσθω
2nd pl. παύσ-ατε		2nd pl. παύσ-ασθε
3rd pl. παυσ-άντων	'let them stop'	3rd pl. παυσ-άσθων

## 120 Aorist imperatives (strong) (λαμβάνω, λαμβάνομαι)

Active: 2nd s. λαβ-έ		Middle: 2nd s. λαβ-οῦ
3rd s. λαβ-έτω	'let him take'	3rd s. λαβ-έσθω
2nd pl. λάβ-ετε		2nd pl. λάβ-εσθε
3rd pl. λαβ-όντων	'let them take'	3rd pl. λαβ-έσθων

## Notes

(i) Note again the similarity of endings between aorist (strong) and present forms of the third person imperative.

(ii) Third person imperatives are fairly rare, but note that the present plural form (in -οντων) and the aorist plural form (in -σαντων) could be mistaken for present and aorist participles in the genitive plural! The presence of a stated subject in the nominative and/or lack of any other possible finite verb-form will tell you that the third person imperative is being used, e.g.

ἀπελθόντων οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι 'let the Athenians depart!'

διωκόντων τὸν ἄνδρα 'let them pursue the man!' BU'T

ἀκούω τῶν λεγόντων 'I hear the men talking'

(iii) Note the full imperatives of εἰμί 'I am', εἶμι 'I shall go', οἶδα 'I know':

εἰμί	εἶμι	οἶδα
2nd s. ἴσθι 'be!'	ἴθι 'go!'	ἴσθι 'know!'
3rd s. ἔστω 'let him be!' etc. ἴτω 'let him go!' etc. ἴστω 'let him know!' etc.		
2nd pl. ἔστε	ἴτε	ἴστε
3rd pl. ἔστων	ἴόντων	ἴστων

Future infinitives active and middle: παύσειν, παύσεσθαι 'to be about to stop'

121 Here are the forms of the future infinitives active and middle:

Active: παύσ-ειν 'to be about to stop'

Middle: παύσ-εσθαι 'to be about to stop'

## Notes

(i) Future infinitives bear the meaning 'to be about to, to be going to'.

(ii) They are formed by taking the future stem and adding -ειν or -εσθαι as appropriate (endings the same as for present infinitives. Cf. 74).



*Uses of the future infinitive*

122 One common use of the future infinitive is with verbs that offer some future hope, intention or promise, for example:

ἐλπίζω 'I hope/expect to . . .' e.g. ἐλπίζω νικήσειν 'I hope/expect to win'

μέλλω 'I am about to . . ., I am on the point of . . .' e.g. ἔμελλε παύσεσθαι 'he was about to stop'

ὑπισχνέομαι 'I promise to . . .' e.g. ὑπισχνεῖται λήψεσθαι 'he promises to take'

*Five verbs to follow*

123 Note the principal parts of αἰρέω ('I take, capture; condemn'), αἰρέομαι ('I take for myself; I choose'):

αἰρέ-ω 'I take'

αἰρέ-ομαι 'I choose'

αἰρήσ-ω (fut.) 'I shall take'

αἰρήσ-ομαι (fut.) 'I shall choose'

εἶλ-ον (έλ-) (aor.) 'I took'

εἶλ-όμην (aor.) 'I chose'

124 τίθημι 'I put, place' (middle τίθεμαι) has a present stem in τιθε- and an aorist stem in θε-. It will be dealt with in full later on (together with other -μι verbs), but for the moment note:

θές	} aor. imperatives	active	} 'place! put!'
θοῦ		middle	

θεῖναι	} aor. infinitives	active	} 'to put, to place'
θέσθαι		middle	

125 Revise δύναμαι and ἀνίσταμαι (90 and 98) and note that ἐπίσταμαι 'I know' conjugates in the same way.

*Note*

ἐπίσταμαι followed by an infinitive means 'know how to', e.g.

ἐπίσταμαι κιθαρίζειν 'I know how to play the cithara'.

126 Principal parts of βαίνω 'I go' are:

βαίν-ω 'I go'

βήσ-ομαι (fut.) 'I shall go'

ἔ-βη-ν (βα-, βη-) (aor.) 'I went'

ἔβη-ν is what is called a 'root' aorist: it simply adds personal endings onto the root ἔβη- without any intervening vowels, i.e.

ἔ-βη-ν

ἔ-βη-ς

ἔ-βη

ἔ-βη-μεν

ἔ-βη-τε

ἔ-βη-σαν

Infinitive: βῆναι

Participle: βάς, βᾶσα, βάν (βαντ-)

127 Principal parts of πάσχω 'I suffer, experience, have something happen to me' are:

πάσχ-ω 'I suffer'

πείσ-ομαι (fut.) 'I shall suffer'

ἔ-παθ-ον (παθ-) (aor.) 'I suffered'

Note here that the principal parts of πείθω 'I persuade' are:

πείθ-ω 'I persuade'

πείσ-ω (fut.) 'I shall persuade'

ἔ-πεισ-α (aor.) 'I persuaded'

The middle form of πείθω is πείθομαι, which means 'I trust, believe in', the future of which will be πείσομαι 'I shall trust, believe in' – exactly the same form as the future of πάσχω. Only the context will tell you whether πείσομαι means 'I shall believe in' or 'I shall experience'.

128 ἀκούω 'I hear' takes a genitive of the person heard, e.g.

ἀκούω τοὺς λόγους 'I hear the speeches', but

ἀκούω σοῦ λέγοντος 'I hear you speaking'.

Revise:

Impf. tense 58–9

Fut. tense 61–4

Aor. tense 68–9, 71–2

---

## Exercises for Section Eight H–J

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Sort this list into present, aorist and future infinitives:

πλεῖν, φροντιεῖν, βοηθῆσαι, διώξειν, ἀποχωρεῖν, ἔσεσθαι, μαχέσασθαι, μαθήσεσθαι, ἀφικέσθαι, σπεύδειν, ὀλοφυρεῖσθαι, κρατῆσαι, ποιήσειν, ὀφείλειν, παύσεσθαι, δέξεσθαι, βιάσασθαι, λήσειν

2. Give the aorist imperative, infinitive and participle of these verbs:

δέχομαι, δράω, ἔρχομαι, γίγνομαι, κωλύω, ἐπαινέω, βάλλω, παύω

3. Give meaning of verb and part shown in right-hand column. Then pair up the right column with left:

αἶρέω	λήσειν
ἀποθνήσκω	λάβετε
βάλλω	έλειν
γίγνομαι	ιδών
εἶμι	λαθών
εἶμι	έλθέ
ἔρχομαι	λήψεσθαι
ἔρωτάω	ἀπέθανε
ἔσθίω	γενήσεσθαι
εὕρισκω	ἔρόμενος
ἔχω	μαθόντες
λαμβάνω	γένεσθε
λανθάνω	δραμείν
μανθάνω	οἴσουσα
οἶδα	τυχούση
ὁράω	ἐνέγκατε
πίπτω	εἶναι
τρέχω	ἰόντος
τυγχάνω	ἦδεσαν
φέρω	ἦεισθα
	βαλεῖν
	εἰδότες
	εὐρήσειν
	πεσόντι
	σχές
	πεσουμένω
	ἔδεσθαι
	ἔξειν

(Cf. list of important stems in *Language Survey (13)*, p. 332.)

#### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. Let the dogs come in!
2. Let the thief steal this dog's share!
3. I expect the defendants will make a good defence speech.
4. This juror is going to condemn the dog to death.
5. Let the prosecutor begin the prosecution!

---

## Exercises for Section Eight

---

**(a) Words**

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

αἶρέω	καθαιρέω
γράφομαι	τὸ γράμμα
ἐλπίζω	ἡ ἐλπίς
ἐπίσταμαι	ἡ ἐπιστήμη
μάρτυς	ἡ μαρτυρία, μαρτυρέω
ὄνομα	ὀνομάζω
πονηρός	ἡ πονηρία

**(d) English into Greek**

1. Translate into Greek:

A young man had an old man for a father. The young man's name was Bdelykleon, the old man's Philokleon. The old man, it happened, had a terrible disease – he never stopped wanting to judge in the law-courts. The young man tried to persuade him not to judge, but the old man would not obey him, for all his persuasion. Finally, the young man locked him in the house. The old man was in despair and tried to escape, using all sorts of arguments. But he was not able to escape without being seen by the slaves, who guarded the house.

2. Translate into Greek:

BDELYKLEON Once and for all, father, listen and obey me. I shall not allow you to leave the house and judge in the courtroom.

PHILOKLEON Why aren't I allowed to? I expect you to tell me everything.

BDELYKLEON Because you are the wickedest man in the city.

PHILOKLEON Well, what am I allowed to do? What do you intend to do?

BDELYKLEON I shall allow you to pass judgment here in the house. Would you like that?

PHILOKLEON Yes, I would. Tell me quickly, what must I do?

BDELYKLEON Wait here. I shall fetch out the legal equipment.

(Fetches gear; sets up the court)

Let the advocate come forward! Let the trial begin! Where is the prosecutor? Come here, dog, and prosecute. Get up and speak. Tell us who has made the charge and for what reason. Father, I hope you will pay attention.

PHILOKLEON Don't worry. Come on, dog, speak up!

## Test Exercise Eight

Translate into English:

*Philokleon laments his luck to the passing jurors, and prays to Zeus and Lykos to change his appearance, so that he will be able to escape; the jurors send for help to rescue him.*

(From Aristophanes, *Wasps*)

ΦΙΛΟΚΛΕΩΝ ἴτε, πάντες φίλοι, ἴτε. ἀκούω γὰρ ὑμῶν ἄδόντων, ἀλλ' οὐχ οἶός τ' εἶμι ἄδειν ἐγὼ. τί ποιήσω; οὗτοι γάρ με φυλάττουσιν, καίπερ βουλόμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τὸ δικαστήριον καὶ κακόν τι ποιῆσαι. ἀλλ' ὦ Ζεῦ, παῦσαι πράγματά μοι παρέχων καὶ φίλος γενοῦ καὶ οἰκτιρον τὸ πάθος. σῶσόν με, ὦ Ζεῦ. ἦ με ποιήσον καπνὸν ἐξαίφνης, ἢ δῆτα λίθον με ποιήσον, ἐφ' οὗ τὰς ψήφους ἀριθμοῦσιν. τόλμησον, ἄναξ, σῶσαί με.

ΔΙΚΑΣΤΑΙ τίς γὰρ ἔστιν ὁ ἐγκλείων σε; λέξον, αἰτοῦμέν σε.

ΦΙΛ ὁ ἐμὸς υἱός, εὐ ἴστε. ἀλλὰ μὴ βοᾶτε. καὶ γὰρ τυγχάνει οὐτοσὶ πρόσθεν καθεῦδων.

ΔΙΚ. τίνος ἔνεκα οὐκ ἔξεστί σοι μεθ' ἡμῶν συνελθόντι ἀκούσαι τῶν τε κατηγορούντων καὶ τῶν ἀπολογουμένων;

ΦΙΛ. ὁ υἱός οὐκ ἔῃ με, ὦνδρες, δικάζειν οὐδὲ δρᾶν οὐδὲν κακόν. ἀλλὰ ζητεῖτε μηχανὴν τινα, αἰτῶ ὑμᾶς. μέλλω γὰρ ἐγὼ τήμερον ἀκούσεσθαι τῶν τε διωκόντων καὶ τῶν φευγόντων.

ΔΙΚ. οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα, ὦ φίλε, σῶσαί σε. φυλάττουσι γὰρ σε οἱ οἰκείοι πάντες, καὶ οὐκ ἔξεστί σοι φυγεῖν.

ΦΙΛ. χρῆ οὖν με εὐξασθαι τοῖς θεοῖς, ἐλπίζοντα φεῦξεσθαι. ἀκουόντων οὖν οἱ θεοί, καὶ βοηθούντων. ὦ Λύκε δέσποτα, γείτων ἤρωσ – σὺ γὰρ φιλεῖς τὸ δικαστήριον – οἰκτιρον καὶ σῶσόν με ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ὄντα.

ΔΙΚ. (*addressing slaves who are leading them*)

καὶ ὑμεῖς, ὦ παῖδες, τρέχετε καὶ βοᾶτε καὶ Κλέωνι ταῦτ' ἄγγέλλετε καὶ κελεύετε αὐτὸν ἦκειν. ὁ γὰρ Βδελυκλέων λέγει ὅτι χρὴ μὴ δικάζειν δίκας. ἴτω οὖν Κλέων καὶ σωτὴρ γενέσθω τῷ γέροντι.

## Vocabulary

καπνός, ὁ smoke (2a)

λίθος, ὁ stone (2a)

ἐφ' οὗ on which

ἀριθμέω count

πρόσθεν in front

μηχανή, ἡ device (1a)

οἰκείος, ὁ family member (2a)

ἤρωσ, ὁ hero (*this shrine was next to the lawcourts*)

ἄγγέλλω tell

ἦκω come

## Section Nine

### Vocabulary for Section Nine A

ἄ what, which (acc. pl. n.)	ἔρπ-ω go along, take its course	παγ-κατάπυγον totally lascivious
ἀναγκάζ-ω compel	ἦ who (nom. s. f.)	παρ-έρχ-ομαι (παρ-ελλθ-) come forward
ἄνευ (+ gen.) without	κατα-λύ-ω bring to an end	ποιήσ-ειας ἄν will you (s.) do (ποιέ-ω)
ἄν ἰδ-οιμι I would (like to) see (ὄρά-ω εἶδ-ον)	Κλεονίκ-η, ἡ Kleonike (1a)	ποιήσ-ειε ἄν will (he) do (ποιέ-ω)
ἄν ποιήσ-αιμι I will do (ποιέ-ω)	Λάκαιν-α, ἡ Spartan woman (1c)	συμ-ψηφισ-αίμην ἄν I will vote with (+ dat.) (συμ-ψηφίζ-ομαι)
ἅπας ἅπασ-α ἅπαν (ἅπαντ-) all, the whole	Λυσι-στράτ-η, ἡ Lysistrata (1a) ('Destroyer of the army')	συμ-ψηφίσ-αιο ἄν will you (s.) vote with (συμ-ψηφίζ-ομαι) (+ dat.)
ἄπ-έχ-ομαι refrain from (+ gen.)	μᾶλλον . . . ἢ rather than μέλλ-ω intend	συν-δοκ-εῖ it seems a good idea to x (dat.) also
ἄφροδίσι-α, τὰ καλ (2b)	μηχαν-ή, ἡ plan, scheme (1a)	σώσ-αιμεν ἄν we might save (σώζ-ω)
βαδίζ-ω walk	Μυρρίν-η, ἡ Myrrhine (1a)	τοί then
γέν-ος, τό race, kind (3c)	καὶ τῶ σὺ (Spartan dialect) by the Two Gods! (Castor and Pollux)	τοῖνυν so, then
δαί then	ὄ what, which (acc. s. n.)	φίλτατ-ος -η -ον most dear (φίλ-ος)
δακρύ-ω weep	οἷ who (nom. pl. m.)	χῆμιν = καὶ ἡμῖν
δοκ-εῖ it seems a good idea (to x (dat.) to y (inf.))	οὐδαμ-ῶς not at all, in no way	
ἐθέλησ-αιμι ἄν I would (like to) (ἐθέλ-ω)	οὗς which, who (acc. pl. m.)	
εἴπερ if indeed, if really (-περ strengthens the word to which it is attached)	ὄψ-όμεθα we shall see (fut. of ὄρά-ω)	

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀπέχομαι refrain, keep away (from) (+ gen.)  
ἅπας ἅπασα ἅπαν (ἅπαντ-) all, the whole

βαδίζ-ω walk, go (fut. βαδιέομαι)  
δοκεῖ it seems a good idea to X (dat.) to do Y (inf.); X (dat.) decides to do Y (inf.)

καταλύω bring to an end; finish  
μηχανή, ἡ device, plan (1a)  
οὐδαμῶς in no way, not at all

## Vocabulary for Section Nine B

ἀκρόπολις, ἡ acropolis (3c)	ἔ-γνω-ς you (s.) recognised (γιγνώσκ-ω ἔ-γνω-ν)	ὅς who (nom. s. m.)
ἀναγκάζ-ω compel	ἔ-γνω (she) recognised (γιγνώσκ-ω ἔ-γνω-ν)	οὗ whose (gen. s. m.)
ἀπο-πέμπ-ω send away, dismiss	ἐξαίφνης suddenly	παρά (+ dat.) with, at, beside
ἀργύρι-ον, τό silver (2b) (deposited in the Parthenon; these were reserves built up from the silver mines at Laurion)	ἣ which (nom. s. f.)	παρα-μέν-ω remain beside
ἄρτι just now, recently	ἣν which (acc. s. f.)	παρα-σκευάζ-ομαι prepare
ὄς who (acc. pl. f.) (after ἔδει)	ιοῦ oh!	προσ-αγορεύ-ω address
γν-οῦσ-α recognising (nom. s. f.) (γιγνώσκ-ω ἔ-γνω-ν)	καὶ μὴν look!	συν-εξ-απατήσ-αιμ' ἄν I will join with x (dat.) in deceiving (συν-εξ-απατά-ω)
γνώ-ναι to recognise (γιγνώσκ-ω ἔ-γνω-ν)	Κηροσί-ας, ὁ Kinesias (1d) (comic name implying sexual prowess)	συν-οικέ-ω live (with) (+ dat.)
γραῦς (γρα-), ἡ old woman (3a)	Λακεδαιμόνων (Λακεδαιμον-), ἡ Sparta (3a)	τριήρ-ης, ἡ trireme (3d)
δῶρ-ον, τό gift, bribe (2b)	Λαμπιτώ, ἡ Lampito (voc. Λαμπιτοῖ)	τίν-ι τρόπ-ω how? in what way?
ἔ-γνω-ν (I) recognised (γιγνώσκ-ω ἔ-γνω-ν)	ὁ which (acc. s. n.)	φέρ-ω lead
	ὁδ-ός, ἡ road (2a)	ὃ with whom (dat. s. m.)
	οἷ who (nom. pl. m.)	ὧν whose (gen. pl. f.)
	οἰμώζ-ω cry οἶμοι	ὥς (+ acc.) to

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναγκάζω force, compel	ἐξαίφνης suddenly
ἄρτι just now, recently	παρά (+ dat.) with, beside, in the presence of
γραῦς (γρα-), ἡ old woman (3 m.) (dat. s. γραῦν; dat. pl. γραῦς)	συνοικέω live with, live together
δῶρον, τό gift, bribe (2b)	

## Vocabulary for Section Nine C

ἄ-λουτ-ος-ον unwashed	δώσ-εις you (s.) will give (δίδω-μι δο-)	ἐκ-καλέ-ω call out
ἄν διδ-οίην I would like to give (δίδω-μι δο-)	δώσ-ουσι they will grant (δίδω-μι δο-)	ἐκποδών out of the way
γούν at any rate	ἔ-δο-σαν they granted (δίδω-μι δο-)	εὐγε hurrah! good!
δαιμονί-α my dear lady	δό-τε grant! (pl.) (δίδω-μι δο-)	ἣ who (nom. s. f.)
διά στόμα on her lips	δυσ-τυχ-ῆ unlucky (acc. s. m.)	θεράπιον (θεραπειοντ-), ὁ slave, servant (3a)
διδό-ναι to give (δίδω-μι δο-)	εἰεν very well	καὶ μὴν look!
δίδω-μι I give, offer		καλ-ῶ I shall call (fut. of καλέ-ω, ἔ-ω contr.)
δώσ-ω I shall give (δίδω-μι δο-)		μαμμί-α, ἡ mummy (1b)
		μήλ-ον, τό apple (2b)

Μυρρινίδιον Myrrhine baby  
 ὃ which (acc. s. n.); which  
 (nom. s. n.)  
 οἶος -α -ον what sort of a!  
 οἷς to whom (dat. pl. m.)  
 ὅπερ what indeed, the very  
 thing which (acc. s. n.)  
 ὅς who (nom. s. m.)  
 Παιονίδης, ὁ of the deme  
 Paeonias (1d) (comic name  
 implying sexual prowess)

προσ-αγορεύ-ω address  
 σπασμ-ός, ὁ discomfort (2a)  
 σπουδ-ή, ἡ haste (1a)  
 τεῖχ-ος, τό wall (of a city) (3c)  
 τὸ τεκ-εῖν to be a mother,  
 motherhood  
 (τίκτ-ω|ἔ-τεκ-ον)  
 ὑπ-ακού-ω obey, listen to  
 (+ dat.)

φίλτατ-ος -η -ον dearest  
 (φίλ-ος)  
 φύλαξ (φυλακ-), ὁ, ἡ guard  
 (3a)  
 ᾧ with/to whom (dat. s. m.)  
 ὥς since, because

### Vocabulary to be learnt

οἶος α ον what a! what sort of a!  
 προσαγορεύω address, speak to  
 σπουδή, ἡ haste, zeal,  
 seriousness (1a)  
 τεῖχος, τό wall (of a city) (3c)

φίλτατος η ον most dear  
 (φίλος)  
 φύλαξ (φυλακ-), ὁ, ἡ guard  
 (3a)

## Vocabulary for Section Nine D

ἀ-μελ-εῖ uncaring (dat. s. m.)  
 ἀ-μελέστερ-ος -α -ον more  
 uncaring (ἀ-μελ-ής)  
 ἀ-μελ-ῆ uncaring (acc. s. m.)  
 ἄν δράσ-εῖε (he) might do  
 (δρά-ω)  
 βαδι-οῦμαι I shall walk (fut.  
 of βαδίζ-ω; ἐ-ω contr.)  
 βαδι-ῆ you (s.) will walk (fut.  
 of βαδίζ-ω; ἐ-ω contr.)  
 γλυκ-εῖ-α sweet (nom. s. f.)  
 γλυκ-ὺ sweet (nom. s. n.)  
 γλυκ-ὺν sweet (acc. s. m.)  
 γλυκ-ύς sweet (nom. s. m.)  
 δυα-τυχέστερ-ος -α -ον more  
 unlucky (δυσ-τυχ-ής)

ἐκποδών out of the way  
 εὖ-τυχί-α, ἡ good luck (1b)  
 θεράπων (θεραποντ-), ὁ  
 servant, slave (3a)  
 καὶ δὴ there!  
 καίτοι and yet  
 κατα-γέλαστ-ος  
 -ον laughable, silly  
 κατα-κλίν-ομαι lie down  
 κλινίδι-ον, τό little couch (2b)  
 Μαν-ῆς, ὁ Manes (voc.  
 Μαν-ῆ) (1d)  
 μέμφ-ομαι criticise (+ dat.)  
 μηδαμ-ῶς not at all

μήτηρ (μητ(ε)ρ-), ἡ mother  
 (3a)  
 ὅς who (nom. s. m.)  
 παύ-ομαι cease from (+ gen.)  
 προσ-άγ-ω bring (to) (+ dat.)  
 πρότερον before, first  
 πύλ-η, ἡ gate (1a)  
 τέκν-ον, τό child (2b)  
 τοι then  
 φέρε . . . φιλήσω come . . . let  
 me kiss  
 φίλημα (φιληματ-), τό kiss  
 (3b)  
 χαμαὶ on the ground

### Vocabulary to be learnt

καίτοι and yet  
 κατακλίνομαι lie down  
 μέμφομαι blame, criticise, find  
 fault with (+ acc. or dat.)  
 μηδαμῶς not at all, in no way

μήτηρ (μητ(ε)ρ-), ἡ mother  
 (3a)  
 παύομαι cease from (+ gen.)  
 τοι then (inference)



## Vocabulary for Section Nine E

ἀλείφ-ομαι anoint (oneself)	ἐκ-δύ-ομαι undress	(gen. pl. n.) (lit. 'as many as')
ἀμέλει of course	ἔ-λιπ-ον see λείπ-ω	
ἀνα-πηδά-ω jump up	ἡδ-ύ sweet, pleasant (nom. s. n.)	ὅσ-τις he who (nom. s. m.)
ἀπ-ολ-οίμην may I die (ἀπ-όλλ-υμαι ἀπ-ολ-)	καὶ δὴ there!	ποι-ος -α -ον; what sort of?
ἀπ-όλ-οιτο may he die (ἀπ-όλλ-υμαι ἀπ-ολ-)	κάκιστα most badly (tr. 'an awful death')	προσ-κεφάλαι-ον, τό pillow (2b)
Ἄρτεμις, ἡ Artemis (3a) (acc. Ἄρτεμιν) (goddess of hunting and chastity)	κατα-κλίν-ηθι lie down! (s.)	προ-τείν-ω stretch forth
βινέ-ω make love (to) (colloquial)	κλινίδι-ον, τό small couch (2b)	Ῥόδι-ος -α -ον from Rhodes
γοῦν at any rate	κυνέ-ω (κυσ-) kiss	σιούρ-α, ἡ blanket (1b)
δαιμονί-α my dear lady	λείπ-ω (λιπ-) leave	στροφή-ον, τό wash (2b)
δέ-ομαι need, ask for (+ gen.)	λύ-ομαι undo (one's own)	ταχὺ quickly
δια-τριβ-ή, ἡ delay (1a)	μηδεῖς μηδεμί-α μηδέ (μηθεν-) no one, nothing	ὑπο-λύ-ομαι undo one's shoes
δός gr.int! (s.) (δίδω-μι δο-)	μυρίζ-ω anoint with myrrh (fut. μυριέ-ω)	φιλέ-ω kiss
δυσ-τυχέστατ-ος -η -ον most unlucky (δυσ-τυχ-ής)	μύρ-ον, τό myrrh (2b)	φυλάττ-ομαι μὴ take care not (to)
δώσ-ω I shall give (δίδω-μι δο-)	Μυρρινίδιον Myrrhine, darling	ψηφίζ-ομαι vote (fut. ψηφιέ-ομαι)
ἔ-δωκ-ας you (s.) gave (δίδω-μι δο-)	ὄ what, which (acc. s. n.)	ψίαθ-ος, ἡ mattress (2a)
	ὄζ-ω smell of (+ gen.)	ὧν which (gen. pl. f.)
	ὅσ-ων of all the things which	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀμελής ἐς uncaring	μηδεῖς μηδεμία μηδέν (μηθεν-) no, no one	what(ever)
γλυκύς εἶα ὤ sweet	ὅς ἢ ὄ who, what, which	ποιός α ον; what sort of?
γοῦν at any rate	ὅσπερ ἢ περ ὅπερ who/which indeed	ψηφίζομαι vote (fut. ψηφιέομαι)
δέομαι need, ask, beg (+ gen.)		
δίδωμι (δο-) give, grant		
ἐκδύομαι undress	ὅστις ἢ τις ὅτι who(ever).	

## Grammar for Section Nine

### Summary:

Aor. opt. act. and mid.

δίδωμι, γιγνώσκω, ἀμελής, γλυκίς

Rel.

## Verbs

Aorist optatives, active and middle: παύσαιμι, παυσαίμην; λάβοιμι, λαβοίμην

129 You have already met present optatives (95–7). Here are the forms of the aorist optatives, based on the aorist stems:

Active (weak)	Middle (weak)
παύσ-αιμι	παυσ-αίμην
παύσ-ειας (-αις)	παύσ-αιο
παύσ-ειε (-αι)	παύσ-αιτο
παύσ-αιμεν	παυσ-αίμεθα
παύσ-αιτε	παύσ-αισθε
παύσ-ειαν (-αιεν)	παύσ-αιντο

## Notes

(i) Look for the aorist stem + αι or ει.

(ii) Note the alternative forms of the 2nd and 3rd s. and 3rd pl. of the weak active. (On optative in general, cf. Language Survey (4) p. 312.)

Active (strong)	Middle (strong)
λάβ-οιμι	λαβ-οίμην
λάβ-οις	λάβ-οιο
λάβ-οι	λάβ-οιτο
λάβ-οιμεν	λαβ-οίμεθα
λάβ-οιτε	λάβ-οισθε
λάβ-οιεν	λάβ-οιντο

## Notes

(i) Observe yet again that the endings of the strong aorist optative are identical to those for the present. Look out for aorist stem + οι.

(ii) As you will hardly need informing by now, there is no difference of time between present and aorist optative: the difference is one of aspect, if there is a difference at all which is really noticeable in translation.

130 Note the phrase ἀπολοίμην (sometimes just ὀλοίμην) to express a wish – ‘may I die! damn me!’ (cf. the stem ἀπολ- noted at 99). This use of the optative without ἄν to express a wish for the future will be fully introduced later on.

## δίδωμι ‘I give’

131 You have already made a brief acquaintance with one -μι verb, τίθημι, (see 124), and noted its stems τιθε-, θε-. Here now, in full, is the conjugation of δίδωμι. It will give you the key to all -μι verbs, as you will see.

<i>Present indicative active</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
Stem: <i>διδο-</i>				
<i>δίδω-μι</i>	<i>διδο-ύς</i>	<i>διδό-ναι</i>	<i>δίδο-υ</i>	<i>διδο-ίην</i>
<i>δίδω-ς</i>	<i>διδο-ῦσα</i>		<i>διδό-τω</i>	<i>διδο-ίης</i>
<i>δίδω-σι(ν)</i>	<i>διδό-ν</i>		<i>δίδο-τε</i>	<i>διδο-ίη</i>
<i>δίδο-μεν</i>	<i>(διδοντ-)</i>		<i>διδό-ντων</i>	<i>διδο-ίμεν</i>
<i>δίδο-τε</i>				<i>διδο-ίτε</i>
<i>διδό-ασι(ν)</i>				<i>διδο-ίεν</i>

<i>Present indicative middle</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
<i>δίδο-μαι</i>	<i>διδό-μεν-ος</i>	<i>δίδο-σθαι</i>	<i>δίδο-σο</i>	<i>διδο-ίμην</i>
<i>δίδο-σαι</i>	<i>-η</i>		<i>διδό-σθω</i>	<i>διδο-ίῳ</i>
<i>δίδο-ται</i>	<i>-ον</i>		<i>δίδο-σθε</i>	<i>διδο-ίτο</i>
<i>διδό-μεθα</i>			<i>διδό-σθων</i>	<i>διδο-ίμεθα</i>
<i>δίδο-σθε</i>				<i>διδο-ίσθε</i>
<i>δίδο-νται</i>				<i>διδο-ίντο</i>

*Imperfect indicative active*

Stem: *διδο-*

*ἐ-δίδο-ουν*  
*ἐ-δίδο-ουσ*  
*ἐ-δίδο-υ*  
*ἐ-δίδο-μεν*  
*ἐ-δίδο-τε*  
*ἐ-δίδο-σαν*

*Imperfect indicative middle*

*ἐ-διδό-μην*  
*ἐ-δίδο-σο*  
*ἐ-δίδο-το*  
*ἐ-διδό-μεθα*  
*ἐ-δίδο-σθε*  
*ἐ-δίδο-ντο*

<i>Aorist indicative active</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
Stem: <i>δο-</i>				
<i>ἔ-δω-κα</i>	<i>δο-ύς</i>	<i>δο-ῦναι</i>	<i>δό-ς</i>	<i>δο-ίην</i>
<i>ἔ-δω-κας</i>	<i>δο-ῦσα</i>		<i>δό-τω</i>	<i>δο-ίης</i>
<i>ἔ-δω-κε</i>	<i>δό-ν</i>		<i>δό-τε</i>	<i>δο-ίη</i>

ἔ-δο-μεν	(δοντ-)	δό-ντων	δο-ίμεν
ἔ-δο-τε			δο-ίτε
ἔ-δο-σαν (ἔ-δω-καν)			δο-ίεν

Aorist indicative middle	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
ἔ-δό-μην	δό-μεν-ος	δό-σθαι	δο-ῦ	δο-ίμην
ἔ-δο-υ	-η		δό-σθω	δο-ίω
ἔ-δο-το	-ον		δό-σθε	δο-ίτο
ἔ-δό-μεθα			δό-σθων	δο-ίμεθα
ἔ-δο-σθε				δο-ίσθε
ἔ-δο-ντο				δο-ίντο

### Future active

δώσ-ω

(etc., like παύσ-ω)

### Future middle

δώσ-ομαι

(etc., like παύσ-ομαι)

### Notes

(i) Given that one keeps a firm grip on the stems (διδω-, δο-), there is very little here that is difficult to recognise. The most remarkable feature is the aorist inflection with its change from ἔ-δω-κα, -κας, -κε to ἔ-δο-μεν, -τε, -σαν in the plural.

(ii) τίθημι 'I place, put' follows exactly the same pattern. For διδο-, δο- write τιθε-, θε- and note that

(a) διδω- δω- corresponds to τιθη- θη-

(b) διδου- δου- corresponds to τιθει- θει- (but note the impf. ἐτίθην), and you have the forms of τίθημι. In summary form, they are:

	Indicative	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
Present (active) (stem τιθε-):	τίθη-μι	τιθε-ίς	τιθέ-ναι	τίθε-ι	τιθε-ίην
Present (middle):	τίθε-μαι	τιθέ-μενος	τίθε-σθαι	τίθε-σο	τιθε-ίμην
Imperfect (active):	ἐ-τίθη-ν				
Imperfect (middle):	ἐ-τιθέ-μην				
Aorist (active) (stem θε-):	ἔ-θη-κα	θε-ίς	θε-ίναί	θέ-ς	θε-ίην
Aorist (middle):	ἔ-θέ-μην	θέ-μενος	θέ-σθαι	θ-οῦ	θε-ίμην
Future (active):	θήσ-ω (regular)				
Future (middle):	θήσ-ομαι (regular)				

(On -μι verbs in general, see Language Survey (7).)

Another 'root' verb

132 The aorist of γινώσκω 'I know, perceive, resolve' is as follows.

ἔ-γνων-ν I knew

ἔ-γνω-ς

ἔ-γνω

ἔ-γνω-μεν

ἔ-γνω-τε

ἔ-γνω-σαν

Infinitive: γνῶ-ναι to know

Participle: γνούς, γνούσα, γνόν (γνοντ-) 'knowing'

It is another 'root' aorist, like βαίνω, ἔβην-ν (cf. 126).

Note

ἔγνων can also be translated 'I made up my mind, I was convinced'.

Adjectives

ἀμελής, γλυκός

133 The declension of adjective-types like ἀμελής and γλυκός is as follows

ἀμελ-ής -ές 'uncaring'

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f. ἀμελ-ής	ἀμελ-ῆ	ἀμελ-οῦς	ἀμελ-εῖ	ἀμελ-εῖς	ἀμελ-εῖς	ἀμελ-ῶν	ἀμελ-έσι(ν)
n. ἀμελ-ές	ἀμελ-ές	ἀμελ-οῦς	ἀμελ-εῖ	ἀμελ-ῆ	ἀμελ-ῆ	ἀμελ-ῶν	ἀμελ-έσι(ν)

γλυκός -εῖα -ύ 'sweet'

s.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m. γλυκ-ύς	γλυκ-ύν	γλυκ-έος	γλυκ-εῖ
f. γλυκ-εῖ-α	γλυκ-εῖ-αν	γλυκ-εῖ-ας	γλυκ-εῖ-α
n. γλυκ-ύ	γλυκ-ύ	γλυκ-έος	γλυκ-εῖ

pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m. γλυκ-εῖς	γλυκ-εῖς	γλυκ-έων	γλυκ-έσι(ν)
f. γλυκ-εῖ-αι	γλυκ-εῖ-αις	γλυκ-ει-ῶν	γλυκ-εῖ-αις
n. γλυκ-έα	γλυκ-έα	γλυκ-έων	γλυκ-έσι(ν)



term for the word it picks up is 'antecedent' (thus the antecedent of the first phrase is 'woman', of the second phrase 'boy', etc.) in gender and number (singular or plural), but its case is entirely determined by the function it fulfils in the relative clause - as you can see from the examples given

**Notes**

(i) Sometimes the antecedent is suppressed. In that case, the relative will mean 'the man who', 'the woman who', 'the thing which', depending on its gender, e.g.

ὃ ἠθέλησας, ἔχεις 'what you want, you have' (i.e. 'the things which you want')

ὃι οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσι ἀποθνήσκει νέος 'whom the gods love, dies young' (i.e. 'he whom')

As you can see from the above examples, Greek works rather like English in this respect

(ii) If the antecedent is in the genitive or dative case, the Greek relative is sometimes attracted into that case, irrespective of the function it should have in the relative clause, e.g.

περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἃν γινώσκω 'concerning the men whom I recognise'  
 We would expect περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν οἷς γινώσκω, since 'whom' is the object of 'recognise', but the relative is attracted into the case of its antecedent ἀνδρῶν and becomes ἃν instead of οἷς

136 The relative pronoun does have a number of other forms, though its meaning is only slightly altered thereby

ὅσπερ (ὄσ-περ) 'the very one who'

ὅστις (ὄσ-τις) 'anyone who'. This declines as follows.

				pl				
	nom	acc	gen	dat	nom	acc	gen	dat
m	ὅστω	ὄστωα	ὄστωος	ὄστωι	ὄστωες	ὄστωας	ὄστωνων	ὄστωισι(ν)
f	ὄστω	ὄστωα	ὄστωος	ὄστωι	ὄστωες	ὄστωας	ὄστωνων	ὄστωισι(ν)
n	ὄστω	ὄστω	ὄστωος	ὄστωι	ὄστωα	ὄστωα	ὄστωνων	ὄστωισι(ν)

**Notes**

(i) This is simply a compound of ὄσ and τις, each separately declined. Sometimes the two words appear as one (e.g. as declined above), at other times they are kept separate, e.g. ὄσ τις, ὄ τι κτλ

(ii) The following variant forms are allowed

gen ὄστων for ὄστωος; ὄστων for ὄστωνων

dat ὄστω for ὄστωι; ὄστωις for ὄστωισι

nom/acc/pl ἄστωα for ὄστωα

(iii) ὄστωις can be used to introduce indirect questions (cf. 66, and check the list of relative usages there).

## Revise

Pres. inf. 74-5

Aor. parts. 78-9, 82-4

φημί 81

αὐτός 85-9

## Exercises for Section Nine

(a) Words (cf. Language Survey (13), pp. 327 ff.)

1. Deduce the meaning of the words in the right-hand columns from those in the left:

ἀμελής	μέλει		
δίδωμι	ἀποδίδωμι	ἡ δόσις	ἡ ἀντίδοσις
δῶρον	ἡ δωρέα	δωρέω	
μηχανή	μηχανάομαι		
σπουδή	σπουδάζω	σπουδαῖος	α ον
συνοικέω	ἡ συνοίκησις		
τείχος	τειχίζω		

## (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate each sentence, then convert present optatives to aorist:
- προσαγορεύοις ἂν ἐμέ.
  - ἤδέως ἂν παυοίμην τοῦ πολέμου.
  - ἐθέλοισιν ἂν σπονδὰς ποιῆσθαι πολλή σπουδή.
  - οὐκ ἂν ποιοίην ταῦτα, ὦ μήτηρ.
  - ὀρώην ἂν ἐγὼ τὴν πόλιν.
2. Translate each sentence then substitute the correct part of δίδωμι for παρέχω:
- ἄρα παρέξεις μοι ὃ ἔχεις;
  - παρεῖχε τὰ χρήματα τῇ γυναικί.
  - τί οὐκ ἐθέλεις παρέχειν μοι ἃ δέομαι;
  - τί παρέχεις μοι τοῦτο τὸ μῆλον, ὦ Μυρρίνη;
  - ἐξαίφνης παρασχὼν τὰ χρήματα ἃ ἐδεῖτο ἡ γυνή, ἀπῆλθεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος.
3. Translate each of the following pairs of sentences. Then join them together into one sentence, following these patterns:
- (a) Λυσιστράτη γυνὴ Ἀθηναία ἐστὶ· Λυσιστράτη λέγει.  
= Λυσιστράτη, ἡ γυνὴ Ἀθηναία ἐστὶ, λέγει.
  - (b) τίνες εἰσὶν οὗτοι, τίνες διώκουσι τὸν ἄνδρα;  
= τίνες εἰσὶν οὗτοι, οἱ διώκουσι τὸν ἄνδρα;



- a. *Κινησίας ἐστὶν ἀνὴρ Μυρρίνης. Κινησίας βαδίζει πρὸς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν.*  
 b. *αἱ γυναῖκες εἰσιν ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει. αἱ γυναῖκες βοῶσιν.*  
 c. *οἱ ἄνδρες τὰς μάχας μάχονται. οἱ ἄνδρες οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν οὐδαμῶς τὸν πόλεμον καταλύσαι.*  
 d. *τί ἐστὶ τοῦτο; τί ἐθέλεις λέγειν;*  
 e. *αἱ γυναῖκες ἐθέλουσιν ἀκούειν τοὺς λόγους. τοὺς λόγους λέγει Λυσιστράτη.*  
 f. *αἱ γράες ἔχουσι τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐγὼ τὰς γράας ἰδεῖν δύναμαι.*  
 g. *ποῦ ἐστὶ Κινησίας; Μυρρίνη ἐστὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ.*  
 h. *ποῦ αἱ γράες; τὸ ἔργον ἐστὶν αὐτῶν φυλάττειν τὰ χρήματα.*  
 i. *ἄρα γινώσκεις τὸν ἄνδρα; ὁ ἀνὴρ προσέρχεται.*  
 j. *δεῖ ἡμᾶς εἰρήνην ἄγειν. ἡ εἰρήνη αἰτία ἐστὶ πολλῶν καλῶν.*

## (d) English into Greek

## 1. Translate into Greek:

1. Will the women refrain from the bribes which the men will give them?
2. These guards are uncaring and guard with no zeal.
3. The old women are making a plan by which they will capture the walls.
4. It seems a good idea to us women to bring the war to an end.
5. Won't anyone force the men to stop fighting?

## 2. Translate into Greek (words in italics are given in the vocabulary):

LYSISTRATA We must stop the war and make a truce. We will persuade the men, whose duty it is to fight, to do what we want.

WOMAN I should like to. But how is it possible for us, who are women, to do this? Say what you have in mind.

LYS. Would you do what I order?

WOMEN We would, by Zeus

LYS. The plan I have in mind happens to be difficult. Listen then to the words I speak, and obey. We must all refrain from sex!

MYRRHINE I will not do it!

KLIONIKE Neither will I!

LYS. Is there anyone who will do what I order?

LAMPITO We must bring peace and stop the men who fight the wars. I will vote *with* you.

LYS. Dear Lampito! Give me your hand.

LAMP. Here, I give it.

LYS. Go then to *Sparta* and persuade the Spartans.

LAMP. I will go at once.

## Vocabulary

sex ἀφροδίσια, τά (2b)

vote with συμψηφίζομαι  
(+ dat.)

Sparta Λακεδαίμων

(Λακεδαιμον-), ἡ (3a)

## Test Exercise Nine

Translate into English:

A Spartan envoy arrives. After he has explained how things stand in Sparta, he and his Athenian counterpart agree to come to terms with Lysistrata. Lysistrata states the conditions on which a return to work might be agreed.

(From Aristophanes, *Lysistrata*)

ΛΑΚΕΔΑΙΜΟΝΙΟΣ ποῦ ἡ τῶν Ἀθηναίων βουλή; ἐθελήσαιμι ἂν ἀγγεῖλαι νέον τι.

ΑΘΗΝΑΙΟΣ σὺ δὲ τίς εἶ ὃς δεῦρο βαίνεις πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος, πολλῇ σπουδῇ βαδίζων;

ΛΑΚ. κῆρυξ ἐγώ, ναὶ τῷ σιῷ, καὶ ἔβην ἄρτι ἀπὸ Σπάρτης περὶ εἰρήνης.

ΑΘ. τί δ' ἐστὶ σοι τόδε, ὃ ἔχεις ἐν ταῖς χερσί;

ΛΑΚ. σκυτάλα Λακαινικά.

ΑΘ. εὐ οἶδ' ὃ λέγεις. ἀλλὰ τί γίγνεται ἐν Λακεδαιμόνι; εἴποις ἄν.

ΛΑΚ. εἴπομι ἂν ἠδέως. κακὸν γάρ τι μέγα ἐπέπεσεν ἡμῖν· αἰτία δὲ Λαμπιτῷ, ἡ ἐξ Ἀθηνῶν ἀναβάσα ἔπεισε τὰς γυναῖκας ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν ἀφροδισίων.

ΑΘ. καὶ πῶς ἔχετε; κακῶς πάσχετε, ἐξ ὧν λέγεις.

ΛΑΚ. κακῶς παθὼν τυγχάνω, ναὶ τῷ σιῷ. δεῖ οὖν ἡμᾶς, πειθομένους ταῖς γυναῖξί, σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι, ἃς κελεύουσιν αὐταί, καὶ καταλύσαι τὸν πόλεμον.

ΑΘ. τί οὐ καλοῦμεν δῆτα τὴν Λυσιστράτην, ἡ ποιήσαιτ' ἂν ἡμῖν σπονδὰς μόνη, ἐπάθομεν γὰρ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοῦτο τὸ κακόν.

ΛΑΚ. ναὶ τῷ σιῷ. τίς ἂν εἴποι ποῦ ἐστὶν ἡ Λυσιστράτη;

ΑΘ. ἀλλ' ἡμᾶς οὐ δεῖ καλεῖν αὐτήν· αὐτὴ γάρ, ἀκούσασα ἃ ἐλεγόμεν, ἦδε βᾶσα τυγχάνει

ΛΥΣΙΣΤΡΑΤΗ ἴτε, ἄνδρες τῶν λόγων ἀκούετε ὧν λέγω. ἐγὼ γυνὴ μὲν εἰμι, νοῦς δ' ἐνεστί μοι. τί νῦν οὕτως μάχεσθε καὶ οὐ παύεσθε τῆς μοχθηρίας ὑμεῖς, οἷς οἱ αὐτοὶ εἰσι βωμοὶ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ θυσίαι; τί νῦν Ἕλληνας ἄνδρας καὶ πόλεις ἀπόλλυτε, οἷς ἀντὶ τούτων ἔξεστιν εἰρήνην ἰδεῖν, φίλοις τ' οὐσι καὶ συμμάχοις,

ΛΑΚ ΚΑΙ ΑΘ. καίτοι οὐδὲν ἄλλο δῶρον δεόμεθα ἢ βινεῖν δύνασθαι.ΛΥΣ. ἅπαντες οὖν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενοι καταλύσατε τὸν πόλεμον. κᾶπειτα τὴν αὐτοῦ γυναῖκα λαβὼν ἀπίτω ἕκαστος

*Vocabulary*

βουλή, ἡ Council of Five

Hundred (1a)

ναὶ τῶ σιῶ by the Two Gods\*

σκυτάλα Λακκαινικά a Spartan  
code-staff\*\*

ἀφροδίσια, τί sex (2b)

ἀγγέλλω announce (aor.

ἤγγειλα)

μοχθηρία, ἡ nastiness (1b)

ἀπόλλυμι destroy

ἀντί (+ gen.) instead of

σύμμαχος, ὁ ally (2a)

βινέω make love (*colloquial*)

ἕκαστος ἑοῦ each

\* The two gods – Castor and Pollux.

\*\* The message was written on a leather strip wrapped round the pole and when removed was unintelligible; the recipient would have a similar staff for use in decoding.

## Section Ten

### Vocabulary for Section Ten A

ἀγορεύ-ω speak	κάθαρμα (καθαρματ-), τό purified place (3b)	Πνύξ (Πνυκ-), ἡ Pnyx (3a) (meeting-place of the ekklesia)
ἀγρός, ὁ country (2a)	κάτω down	ποθέ-ω desire
ἀθάνατ-ος -ον immortal	κηρύττ-ω proclaim, herald, announce	πρόσθεν in front
Ἀμφί-θε-ος, ὁ Amphitheos (2a) (comic name: 'god on both sides')	κύρι-ος -α -ον sovereign, with power	πρύτανι-ς, ὁ prytanis (3c) (current administrative officer of the βουλή)
ἀπαγόντων . . . αὐτῶν them leading (him) off	μένοντος Ἀμφιθέου Amphitheos remaining	σιγά-ω be quiet
ἀπο-βλέπ-ω look out	ὅπως how, that	σχοινί-ον, τό rope (2b) (this was stained with red dye, and swept up and down the agora by slaves to drive the citizens into the ekklesia)
ἐν-ός (+ gen.) inside	ὀργίζ-ομαι become/be made angry	τοξότη-ς, ὁ archer (1d) (Scythian archers in Athens were public slaves used for a variety of policing duties)
ἐρήμ-ος -ον empty, deserted	ὄψε late	χρηματίζ-ω do business
εὖ-νους -ουν well-disposed	παρελθόντων πάντων all coming forward	
ἐφ-όδι-α, τά travelling-expenses, journey-money (2b)	παρ-έρχ-ομαι πάρ-ειμι (παρελθ-) come forward	
ἦκ-ω come		
θορυβέ-ω clamour, raise a clamour		

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀγορεύω speak (in assembly), proclaim	θορυβέω make a disturbance, din	πρύτανις, ὁ prytanis (3c) (member of the βουλή committee currently in charge of public affairs)
ἀγρός, ὁ field, country (side) (2a)	κάτω below	σιγάω be quiet
ἀθάνατος ὄν immortal	κηρύττω announce, proclaim	
ἀποβλέπω look steadfastly at (and away from everything else)	ὅπως how? (answer to πῶς); how (indir. q.)	
ἦκω come	παρέρχομαι (παρελθ-) come forward, pass by, go by	

## Vocabulary for Section Ten B

ἄ-γραφ-ος -ον unwritten	ἐμ-βάλλ-ω bump into (+ dat.)	ὄσ-οι -αι -α as many as
ἀδικ-οῦμεθα we are being wronged (ἀδικέ-ω)	ἐξ-απατ-ᾶσθαι to be deceived (ἐξ-απατά-ω)	ὀκτώ eight
ἀδικ-ουμέν-οις being wronged (ἀδικέ-ω)	ἐξ-απατ-ώμεθα we are (being) deceived (ἐξ-απατά-ω)	ὀλ-οιωτο may they die (ὄλλυ-μαι ὀλ-)
ἄκωι ἄκουσ-α ἄκον (ἄκοντ-) unwilling(ly)	ἐξ-απατ-ώμεν-ος being deceived (ἐξ-απατά-ω)	πειθ-εσθαι to be persuaded (πειθ-ω)
ἀναγκάζ-εται he is forced (ἀναγκάζ-ω)	ἐξ-ίστα-μαι get out of the way	πειθ-όμεν-ος being persuaded (πειθ-ω)
ἀναγκαζ-όμεν-ον being forced (ἀναγκάζ-ω)	ἔστω let it be; so be it	πειθ-ονται they are (being) persuaded (πειθ-ω)
ἀναγκάζ-ονται they are (being) forced (ἀναγκάζ-ω)	εὐ-δαιμονέ-ω be happy	πολεμέ-ω make war
ἄνευ (+ gen.) without	εὐ-ρους -οον well-disposed	πόρ-ος, ὁ ways of raising, provision (2a)
ἀπ-ολλύ-μεθα we are being ruined (ἀπ-όλλυ-μι ἀπολ-)	ἐφ-όδι-α, τὰ travelling expenses (2b)	πρεσβεύ-ομαι deal with ambassadors
ἀπ-ολλύ-μεν-οι being ruined (ἀπ-όλλυ-μι)	θέσ-ις, ἡ making (3c)	συμ-βουλεύ-ω give advice
ἀπ-όλ-οιωτο may they perish! (ἀπ-όλλυ-μαι ἀπολ-)	θωπευ-όμεν-ος being flattered (θωπεύ-ω)	σύμ-μαχ-ος, ὁ ally (2a)
ἄρχ-εται (it) is ruled (ἄρχ-ω)	θωπεύ-εσθαι to be flattered (θωπεύ-ω)	τιμ-ᾶται (he) is (being) honoured (τιμά-ω)
ἄρχ-ω rule	θωπεύ-ω flatter	τριήρ-ης, ἡ trireme (3d) τοῦ Δικαιοπόλεως
ἀτεχν-ῶς really, utterly	ἱερ-ά, τὰ sacrifices (2b)	δόντος Δικαιοπόλεως giving
γεγραμμέν-ος -η -ον written	κάκιστα most horribly	τῶν ἄλλων πολεμούντων the others making war
δια-φθειρ-όμεν-ος being corrupted (δια-φθείρ-ω)	μέγεθ-ος, τό great size (3c)	χρηματίζ-ω do business
δραχμ-ή, ἡ drachma (1a)	μήτε . . . μήτε neither . . . nor	φαίη he might say (with ἄν) (opt. of φημί)
εἶεν all right then	ρεῦρι-ον, τό dockyard (2b)	φιλέ-ω be accustomed, used to
ἐκ-δικάζ-ω make judgment	ὁδοι-πόρ-ος, ὁ traveller (2a)	
	ὁδ-ός, ἡ road (2a)	
	οἷς what (after πείθ-ομαι)	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄκωι ἄκουσα ἄκον (ἄκοντ-) unwilling(ly)	pay for two days' attendance at the ekklesia)	kill: (in pass.) be killed, die, perish (aor. ὠλόμην)
ἀπόλλυμι (ἀπολεσ-, ἀπολ-) kill, ruin, destroy; (in pass.) be killed etc. (aor. ἀπωλόμην)	εἶεν very well then!	ὄσος ἦ ον as much as (pl. as many as)
ἄνευ (+ gen.) without	εὖρους οον well-disposed	πολεμέω make war
δραχμή, ἡ drachma (1a) (coin;	μήτε . . . μήτε neither . . . nor	τριήρης, ἡ trireme (3d)
	ὁδοιπόρος, ὁ traveller (2a)	φιλέω be used to; love, kiss
	ὁδός, ἡ road, way (2a)	χρηματίζω do business
	ὄλλυμι (ὄλεσ-, ὀλ-) destroy.	

## Vocabulary for Section Ten C

αἰβοῖ yuk!

αἰρέ-ομαι choose

αἰσθάν-ομαι

(αἰσθ-) perceive, notice

ἀμβροσί-α, ἡ ambrosia (1b)

ἀρέσκ-ω please (+ dat.)

Ἀχαρν-εύς, ὁ member of the  
deme Akharnai (3g) (in  
central Attica, in the path of  
Spartan attacks)γεῦμα (γευματ-), τό taste,  
sample (3b)

γεύ-ομαι taste

δεκέτ-ης -ες for ten years

Δικαιοπόλεως . . . εἰπόντος

Dikaionpolis saying

Διονύσι-α, τὰ festival of

Dionysus (2b)

δόντος Ἀμφιθέου Amphitheos  
giving

ἡδιστα most pleasantly

(ἡδ-ύς)

λαβόντων αὐτῶν them taking

Λακεδαιμονίων . . . ὀλεσάντων  
the Spartans destroyingΛακεδαίμων (Λακεδαιμον-),  
ἡ Sparta (3a)

λίθ-ος, ὁ stone (2a)

Μαραθωνο-μάχ-ης, ὁ fighter  
at the battle of Marathon

(which took place in 490) (1d)

μήπω not yet

νέκταρ (νεκταρ-), τό nectar  
(3b)

ὄζ-ω smell of (+ gen.)

ὄξ-ύτατ-α most sh. rply  
(ὄξ-ύς)παρα-σκευ-ῆ, ἡ preparation,  
equipping (1a)

πεντέτ-ης -ες for five years

τρία three (n. of τρεῖς)

τριακοντούτ-ης -ες for thirty  
years

χαίρειν πολλά

κελεύων bidding a long  
farewell to

### Vocabulary to be learnt

αἰρέομαι (ἐλ-) choose

αἰσθάνομαι (αἰσθ-) perceive,  
notice

ἀρέσκω please (+ dat.)

ἄρχομαι be ruled

ἄρχω rule (+ gen.)

γεῦμα (γευματ-), τό taste,  
sample (3b)

γεύομαι taste

ἡδιστος ἦν most pleasant  
(sup. of ἡδύς)

λίθος, ὁ stone (2a)

ὁ δέ and/he

οἱ δέ and/they

ὄξύς εἶα ὕ sharp; bitter; shrill

παρασκευῆ, ἡ preparation,  
equipping; force (1a)

τρεῖς τρία three

## ○ Grammar for Section Ten

Summary:

Pres., impf. pass.

Gen. abs.

Comp. adv. and two-termination adjs.

Opt. of φημί

### Verbs

Present and imperfect passive

137 So far you have met and learnt verbs which are *active* in voice and verbs which are *middle* in voice. The distinction has usually been one of form (active verbs in -ω or -μι, middle verbs in -μαι), though occasionally the

meaning has been radically altered by the conversion of an active verb into a middle, e.g.

πείθω 'I persuade'

πείθομαι 'I believe in, trust'

We now come to the third and final voice – the PASSIVE. This does have a specific meaning, which cannot be ignored. It signifies that the subject of the sentence is *having something done to it*, e.g. 'the slave is being beaten', 'the soldiers were cut down', 'I shall be defeated.'

THE FORMS OF THE PASSIVE IN THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, PARTICIPLE, INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, OPTATIVE (and all) ARE IDENTICAL TO THE FORMS FOR THE MIDDLE. So you have no new learning to do; but you must now be alert to the possibility that what you are used to as a middle form might be passive – and therefore carry a different meaning.

138 Consequently, to take an extreme example, πείθομαι could mean 'I trust', but it could equally be the passive form of πείθω and mean 'I am being persuaded'. Likewise, παύομαι could mean 'I stop myself' or 'I am being stopped'. In practice, of course, the context will make it clear which meaning is required. To help you get used to the new meaning, passive forms will always be accompanied by ὑπό + genitive = ('by' a person), or by a dative ('by' a thing, or 'with' a thing), e.g.

πείθεται ὑπὸ ἐμοῦ 'he is being persuaded by me'

ἐπαύοντο ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν 'they were being stopped by the men'

φυλαττόμεθα τοῖς δικτύοις\* 'we are being guarded by nets'

ἐβαλλόμην τοῖς λίθοις 'I was being pelted with stones'

### *Genitive absolute*

139 When a noun + participle stand together in the GENITIVE, they must often be translated by a clause beginning with 'when', 'as', 'since', 'after', 'because', as best suits the context, e.g.

κελεύοντος τοῦ κήρυκος, τί μένεις; (lit. 'the herald ordering, why do you wait?') 'why wait when the herald orders?'

τῶν ἀνδρῶν φυγόντων, ἐπανήλθον. (lit. 'the men fleeing, I returned') 'when the men fled, I returned'

### **Adverbs**

#### *Comparative and superlative adverbs*

140 The comparative adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comp. adj., e.g.

\* Observe that φυλαττόμεθα τὰ δίκτυα means 'we are guarding ourselves against the nets', or 'we are watching out for the nets'.

σοφώτερος 'more wise' → σοφώτερον 'more wisely'

κακίων 'worse' → κάκιοι 'in a worse way, worse'

The superlative adverb is the acc. n. pl. of the superlative adjective, e.g.

σοφώτατος 'most, very wise' → σοφώτατα 'most, very wisely'

Note

*Irregular adverbs* μάλλον 'more, rather (more)'

μάλιστα 'much, very much, a great deal'

## Adjectives

### Two-termination adjectives

141 You have already met some types of adjective that decline the same in the m. and f. (e.g. κακοδαίμων). There are a number of adjectives like this of the καλός type as well, which do not decline -η -ην etc. in the f., but, like the masculine, -ος -ον, etc. These are called two-termination adjectives because they have only two sets of endings – one for m./f., one for n. You have already met one of these, ἐρήμος 'deserted', which has occurred in the sentence ἐρήμος ἡ Πύξ 'the Pnyx is deserted'. One would have expected ἐρήμη, but the adjective is two-termination, using the same form for m. and f.

Most two-termination adjectives are *compounds*, e.g.

ἄ-δικ-ος -ον 'unjust'

ἄ-θάνατ-ος -ον 'immortal'

εὖ-δόκιμ-ος -ον 'of good reputation'

ἄ-δύνατ-ος -ον 'impossible'

but there are a number of other adjectives which are two-termination without being compounds as such, e.g.

βάρβαρ-ος -ον 'barbarian, foreign'

## Verb

### Optative of φημί

142 Note the optative of φημί 'I say'

φα-ίην

φα-ίης

φα-ίη

φα-ίμεν

φα-ίτε

φα-ίεν

## Revise:

Gen. case 91–2 Pres. opt. 95–7



---

## Exercises for Section Ten

---

**(a) Words**

1. Deduce the meaning of the words on the right from those on the left:

αἰσθάνομαι ἡ αἴσθησις

ἄκων ἐκών

πρύτανις τὸ πρυτανεῖον

**(b/c) Morphology and Syntax**

1. Translate each sentence, then, making the necessary changes in nouns and verbs, change from active to passive:

a. τιμᾶ τοὺς χρηστοὺς ὁ δῆμος.

b. ἀναγκάζει ἡμᾶς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ἡ Λυσιστράτη.

c. ἀδικοῦσιν οἱ ῥήτορες τὴν πόλιν.

d. ἐξαπατᾶ ὁ ῥήτωρ τὸν δῆμον.

e. θωπεύομεν τὴν ἐκκλησίαν τοῖς λόγοις.

f. πείθετε τοὺς πολίτας εἰρήνην ἄγειν.

g. τὰ δῶρα ἔπειθε τὸν δῆμον.

h. οἱ λόγοι τῶν ῥητόρων ἠδίκουν τὴν ἐκκλησίαν.

i. τὰ τεῖχη ἐφύλαττε τὴν πόλιν.

j. αἱ μηχαναὶ τῶν γυναικῶν ἠνάγκαζον τοὺς ἄνδρας σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι.

2. Translate each pair of sentences, then join them into one, using the genitive absolute construction:

a. ἀπῆλθον οἱ ἄνδρες. ἡμεῖς δὲ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἐπορευόμεθα.

b. ἔδωκέ μοι τὸ ἀργύριον ἡ γυνή. ἐγὼ δ' ἀπῆλθον.

c. ὁ θεὸς μένει. οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι οὐ βούλονται ἀκούειν.

d. οἱ ἄλλοι πολεμοῦσιν. ἐγὼ δ' οὐ πολεμήσω.

e. ἡ πόλις ἀδικεῖται ὑπὸ τῶν ῥητόρων. οἱ δ' Ἀθηναῖοι οὐδὲν φροντίζουσιν.

f. ἡ ἐκκλησία περὶ τοῦ πολέμου ἐχρημάτιζεν. ὁ δὲ Λικαιόπολις οὐδέι ἐφρόντιζεν.

g. ἡ ἐκκλησία ὑπ' οὐδενὸς ἄρχεται. ὁ δὲ δῆμος ποιεῖ ἃ ἐθέλει.

h. οἱ Ἀχαρνεῖς λίθους ἔλαβον. ἐγὼ δ' ἐφειγην.

i. ὁ μὲν Ἀμφίθεος ἔδωκε τὰς σπονδὰς. Λικαιόπολις δ' ἐδέξατο.

j. ὁ μὲν κῆρυξ ἐκήρυξεν. ὁ δὲ θεὸς ἐσίγησεν.

**(d) English into Greek**

Translate into Greek:

1. The herald was making his announcement while the prytanes came into the assembly.

2. The people were being persuaded to make war by the politicians, while the farmers gazed out into the countryside.
3. The politicians are said to be well-disposed towards the city.
4. The Spartans are destroying our land while we are being deceived by the politicians.
5. The assembly is ruled by no one.

2. Translate into Greek:

Here are the prytanes! Now they have come, you can be sure that the politicians will come forward, wishing to speak. We farmers will keep quiet, looking out into the country, forced against our will to hear the words spoken by them. But they will not tell the truth. They always say that the city is ruled by itself and is beloved of all the politicians. But they are well-disposed only to themselves. The city is being destroyed by them; but no one will move business about that, or about peace. The whole thing is not at all to my liking.

### Test Exercise Ten

Translate into English:

*Dikaiopolis defends his action in getting a peace treaty for himself with the Spartans. He gives his own version of the causes of the Peloponnesian War. (From Aristophanes, *Akharnians*)*

ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ μη θορυβεῖτε, ὦνδρες οἱ θεώμενοι, εἰ πτωχὸς ὢν ἤκω ἐγὼ καὶ ἐν Ἀθηναίοις λέγων ἄρχομαι περὶ τῆς πόλεως, κωμωδίαν ποιῶν. τὸ γὰρ δίκαιον οἶδε καὶ κωμωδία. ἐγὼ δὲ λέξω δεινὰ μὲν, δίκαια δέ. οὐ γὰρ με νῦν γε διαβαλεῖ Κλέων ὅτι, ξένων παρόντων, ὑπ' ἐμοῦ κακῶς λέγεται ἡ πόλις. αὐτοὶ γὰρ ἔσμεν, κοῦπω ξένοι πάρεισιν. ἐγὼ δὲ μισῶ μὲν Λακεδαιμονίους σφόδρα. ἀπόλονται αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ παῖδες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες. ὑπ' αὐτῶν γὰρ ἡ ἀμπελία μου κόπτεται, ἡμεῖς δ' ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐγκλειόμεθα ἄκοντες, τῇ δὲ νόσῳ ἀπολλύμεθα, εἰς δὲ τοὺς ἀγροὺς αἰεὶ ἀποβλέπομεν. ἀτάρ, (ὑμεῖς γὰρ οἱ παρόντες φίλοι) πῶς αἴτιοι Λακεδαιμόνιοι τούτων κακῶν; ἡμῶν γὰρ ἄνδρες (οὐχὶ τὴν πόλιν λέγω, μέμνησθε τοῦθ', ὅτι οὐχὶ τὴν πόλιν λέγω) αἴτιοι, μάλιστα δὲ Περικλῆς Οὐλύμπιος, ὃς ἐτίθει νόμον ὡς χρῆ Μεγαρέας μήτε γῆ μήτ' ἐν ἀγορᾷ, μήτ' ἐν θαλάττῃ μήτ' ἐν ἠπείρῳ μένειν. τῶν δὲ Μεγαρέων καὶ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων δεομένων πολλάκις καὶ αἰτούντων ἡμᾶς ἀφέλεσθαι τὸ ψήφισμα, οὐκ ἠθέλομεν· οὐ γὰρ ἠρέσκει τῷ Περικλεῖ. αὕτη ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ πολέμου.

## Vocabulary

πτωχός, ὁ beggar (2a)  
 (Dikaiopolis has borrowed  
 some tags from Euripides to  
 gain sympathy)  
 κωμωδία, ἡ comedy (1b)  
 αὐτοί alone, by ourselves

σφόδρα very much  
 ἀμπελία, ἡ vineyard (1b)  
 ἀλλά but  
 μέμνησθε remember  
 Οὐλύμπιος the Olympian  
 τίθημι pass (of a law)

ἤπειρος, ἡ mainland (2a)  
 ἀφαιρέομαι  
 (ἄφελ-) withdraw  
 ψήφισμα, τό decree (3b)  
 ἀρχή, ἡ cause (1a)

# PART FOUR

## Section Eleven

### Vocabulary for Section Eleven A

Note: from now on, prefixes in compounds will not be hyphenated, and new forms will be glossed as a whole, without hyphens.

ἄλλος... ἄλλον one... another	ἕτερος... ἕτερον one... another (of two)	οὗ where (at)
ἄπειρος-ος -ον inexperienced in (+ gen.)	Εὐεργίδης, ὁ Euergetes (1d) (a dikast)	ὄχλος, ὁ crowd (2a)
Ἀπολόδοτος, ὁ Apollodoros (2a) (prosecuting in the case)	ἱμάτιον, τό cloak (2b)	Στυμόδοτος, ὁ Stymodoros (2a) (a young dikast)
ἀσπάζομαι greet, welcome	Κωμίς, ὁ Komias (1d) (a dikast)	τύχη, ἡ fortune, piece of luck (1a)
διατρίβω pass time, be	λαμπρός -ά -όν famous, notorious	χρῆμα (χρηματ-), τό astounding size, amount (3b)
δικανικός -ή -όν judicial	μηδέ... μηδέ neither... nor	ὠθέω push, shove
ἐντεύξεσθαι fut. inf. of ἐντυγχάνω	Νεαίρα, ἡ Neaira (1b) (defendant in the case)	
ἐντυγχάνω meet (+ dat.)	νή καὶ σύγε and you, too	

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄλλος... ἄλλον one... another	ἕτερος... ἕτερον one... another (of two)	τύχη, ἡ chance, fortune (good or bad) (1a)
ἀσπάζομαι greet, welcome	ἱμάτιον, τό cloak (2b)	ὠθέω push, shove
δικανικός ἢ ὄν judicial	μηδέ... μηδέ neither... nor	
ἐντυγχάνω (ἐντυχ-) meet with, come upon (dat.)		

### Vocabulary for Section Eleven B

ἀγωνίζομαι go to law	βῆμα (βηματ-), τό stand, podium (3b)	εἰκός rightly, reasonably
ἀποδίδωμι (ἀποδο-) pledge, give back	διαφέρω make a difference	εἴτε... εἴτε whether... or
		ἐκάτερος -α -ον each (of two)

<i>εὐεργετέ-ω</i> benefit	<i>κοιν-ός -ή -όν</i> common, undivided	<i>προσέχ-ω τὸν νοῦν</i> pay attention
<i>εὖνοι-α, ἡ</i> good will (1b)	<i>κύρι-ος -α -ον</i> valid	<i>τιμωρέ-ομαι</i> revenge oneself on
<i>ἔφν-ν</i> bc, be naturally ( <i>from</i> <i>φύ-ομαι</i> )	<i>ξενί-α, ἡ</i> alien status (1b)	<i>ὑπάρχ-ω</i> begin, start (+ gen.)
<i>ἔχθρ-α, ἡ</i> hostility, enmity (1b)	<i>ὅπως</i> see to it that (+ fut md.)	<i>φιλόπολις</i> patriotic, loyal
<i>καὶ μῆν</i> what's more	<i>ὄρκ-ος, ὁ</i> oath (2a)	<i>φύσ-ις, ἡ</i> nature (3c)
<i>κατά (+ acc.)</i> in accordance with	<i>πολυπράγμων</i> <i>πολύπραγμον</i> meddling	<i>φύ-ομαι</i> grow ( <i>see ἔφν</i> )
<i>κατήγορ-ος, ὁ</i> prosecutor, accuser (2a)	<i>προκαταγιγνώσκ-ω</i> ( <i>προκαταγνο-</i> ) pre-judge	<i>χρέμπτ-ομαι</i> clear one's throat

## Vocabulary to be learnt

<i>διαφέρ-ω</i> make a difference; differ from (+ gen.); be superior to (+ gen.)	<i>εὖνοια, ἡ</i> good will (1b)	<i>κατήγορος, ὁ</i> prosecutor (2a)
<i>εἴτε . . . εἴτε</i> whether . . . or	<i>καὶ μῆν</i> what's more; look!	<i>ὄρκος, ὁ</i> oath (2a)
<i>ἐκάτερος α ον</i> both (of two)	<i>κατά (+ acc.)</i> according to; down; throughout; in relation to	<i>προσέχω τὸν νοῦν</i> pay attention to (+ dat.)

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven C

<i>ἀγών (ἀγων-), ὁ</i> trial, contest (3a)	<i>ἐχθρ-ός, ὁ</i> an enemy (2a)	<i>κατέστησε</i> (he) placed ( <i>καθίστημι καταστησ-</i> )
<i>ἀγωνίζ-ομαι</i> go to law, fight	<i>ἠδικήθη</i> (he) was harmed, wronged ( <i>ἀδικέ-ω</i> )	<i>μεγάλα</i> very much, greatly
<i>ἀδικηθεὶς</i> harmed, wronged (nom. s. m.) ( <i>ἀδικέ-ω</i> )	<i>ἠδικήθην</i> I was harmed, wronged ( <i>ἀδικέ-ω</i> )	<i>ὅπως</i> see to it that (+ fut. ind.)
<i>ἀδικηθέντες</i> harmed, wronged (nom. pl. m.) ( <i>ἀδικέ-ω</i> )	<i>θυγάτηρ (θυγατ(ε)ρ-), ἡ</i> daughter (3a)	<i>οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καὶ</i> not only . . . but also
<i>ἀναστάντες</i> standing up (nom. pl. m.) ( <i>ἀνίσταμαι ἀναστα-</i> )	<i>καθίστη-μι (καταστησ-)</i> set up, put, place (x in y position)	<i>πενί-α, ἡ</i> poverty (1b)
<i>ἀντιδικ-ος, ὁ</i> contestant (2a)	<i>καὶ γὰρ</i> in fact	<i>πιστεύ-ω</i> trust (+ dat.)
<i>ἀρχ-ή, ἡ</i> start (1a)	<i>καταστάς</i> being put (nom. s. m.) ( <i>καθίσταμαι καταστα-</i> )	<i>προδιηγέ-ομαι</i> give a preliminary outline of
<i>διατελέ-ω</i> continue	<i>κατέστην</i> I was placed ( <i>καθίσταμαι καταστα-</i> )	<i>πώποτε</i> ever, yet
<i>ἔοικε</i> it seems	<i>κατέστη</i> he was placed ( <i>καθίσταμαι καταστα-</i> )	<i>Στέφαν-ος, ὁ</i> Stephanos (2a) ( <i>who lived with Neaira in</i> <i>Athens</i> )
<i>ἔσχατ-ος -η -ον</i> furthest, worst	<i>κατέστημεν</i> we were placed ( <i>καθίσταμαι καταστα-</i> )	<i>τιμωρέ-ομαι</i> take revenge on
<i>εὐποιέ-ω</i> do good to, treat well		<i>τιμωρί-α, ἡ</i> revenge (1b)
<i>ἐχθρ-α, ἡ</i> hostility (1b)		<i>ὑπάρχ-ω</i> begin (+ gen.)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

<i>ἀγών (ἀγων-), ὁ</i> contest, trial (3a)	<i>ἀντιδικός, ὁ</i> contestant in lawsuit (2a)	<i>εὐποιέω</i> treat well, do good to
<i>ἀγωνίζομαι</i> contest, go to law	<i>ἀρχή, ἡ</i> beginning, start (1a)	<i>ἐχθρ-α, ἡ</i> enmity, hostility (1b)
		<i>ἐχθρός, ὁ</i> enemy (2a)

ἐχθρός ἄνθρωπος hostile, enemy  
 θωπεύω flatter  
 καὶ γάρ in fact; yes, certainly

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καὶ not  
 only . . . but also  
 πιστεύω trust (+ dat.)

τιμωρέομαι take revenge on  
 τιμωρία, ἡ revenge, vengeance  
 (1b)  
 ὑπάρχω begin (+ gen.)

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven D

ἀδικηθεῖς wronged, harmed  
 (nom. & m.) (ἀδικέω)  
 αἰσχύν-η, ἡ sense of shame,  
 humiliation (1a)  
 ἀλλότριος -α -ον alien  
 ἀταιδῶρ -ος -ον cowardly,  
 feeble  
 ἀσεβέ-ω εἰς commit sacrilege  
 upon  
 ἀτιμ-ος -ον deprived of all  
 rights  
 ἀφαιρέ-ομαι take X (acc.)  
 from Y (acc.), claim  
 βουλευτ-ής, ὁ member of  
 βουλή (1d)  
 γράφ-ω propose  
 δημότ-ης, ὁ member of  
 deme, demesman (1d)  
 ἐγγύα-ω give in marriage  
 εἰσάγ-ω (εἰσαγαγ-) introduce  
 ἐκτίω-ω (ἐκτεῖω-) pay (a fine)  
 ἐλάττων (ἐλαττων-) less,  
 smaller (comp. of ὀλίγος)  
 ἐνδε-α, ἡ poverty (1b)  
 ἐξελέγχ-ω convict, expose  
 ἐπεισθησαν (they) were  
 persuaded (πείθω)

ἐπιδείκνυ-μι  
 (ἐπιδείξ-) demonstrate,  
 prove  
 ἔσχατ-ος -η -ον worst, most  
 severe  
 ἑταίρ-α, ἡ whore, prostitute  
 (1b)  
 ἠδικήθην I was wronged,  
 harmed (ἀδικέω)  
 θυγάτηρ (θυγατ(ε)ρ-), ἡ  
 daughter (3a)  
 καταστάς  
 (κατασταίτ-) placed, put,  
 made  
 (καθίσταμαι καταστα-)  
 καταστήσας  
 (καταστήσαντ-) placing,  
 putting, making  
 (καθίστημι καταστησ-)  
 καταστήσεσθαι to be put  
 (καθίσταμαι καταστα-)  
 καταφρονέ-ω despise, hold in  
 contempt (+ gen.)  
 οἰκεῖ-ος ὁ relative (2a)  
 οἶός τ' εἰμί be able to (+ inf.)  
 ὀνειδίζ-ω rebuke, reproach  
 (+ dat.)

παρά (+ acc.) against  
 παρακαλέ-ω encourage, urge  
 παρανόμων as illegal  
 πενί-α, ἡ poverty (1b)  
 προίξ (προικ-), ἡ dowry (3a)  
 πρότερον previously, first  
 συμφορ-ά, ἡ chance,  
 misfortune, disaster (1b)  
 τιμά-ω fine (+ dat.)  
 τίμημα (τιμηματ-), τό a fine  
 (3b)  
 τοσ-ούτος -αὐτή -οὔτο(ν) so  
 great  
 ὑβρίζ-ω εἰς act violently  
 against  
 φάσκ-ω allege  
 φράτηρ (φρατερ-), ὁ member  
 of a phratry (3a) (a phratry is  
 a group of families: as such it  
 fulfilled various religious and  
 social functions)  
 ψευδ-ής -ές false, lying  
 ψήφισμα (ψηφισματ-), τό  
 decree (3b)  
 χάριν οἶδα be grateful to  
 (+ dat.)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀσεβέω εἰς commit sacrilege  
 upon  
 ἀλλότριος ἄνθρωπος someone else's,  
 alien  
 ἀτιμος ὄν deprived of citizen  
 rights

ἀφαιρέομαι (ἀφελ-) take X  
 (acc.) from Y (acc.), claim  
 εἰσάγω (εἰσαγαγ-) introduce  
 ἔσχατος ἦν worst, furthest,  
 last  
 θυγάτηρ (θυγατ(ε)ρ-), ἡ

daughter (3a)  
 καθίστημι (καταστήσ-) set  
 up, make, place, put X (acc.)  
 in (εἰς) Y  
 καθίσταμαι (καταστα-) be  
 placed, be put, be made

οἶός τ' εἰμί be able to (+ inf.)	πρότερον (adv.) previously	ψευδής ἐς false, lying
παρά (+ acc.) against; to; compared with; except; along, beside	τιμάω fine (+ dat.)	ψηφισμα (ψηφισματ-), τό decree (3b)
πενία, ἡ poverty (1b)	τίμημα (τιμηματ-), τό a fine (3b)	
πρότερος α ον first (of two), previous	τοσοῦτος αὐτη οὔτο(ν) so great	

## ○ Grammar for Section Eleven A-D

### Summary:

Aor. pass.

ἴστημι, καθίστημι

### Verbs

Aorist passive ἐπαύ[σ]θην 'I was stopped'

143 The forms of the aorist passive are as follows:

Indicative

Participle

ἐ-παύσθ-ην 'I was stopped' etc. παυσθ-είς -είσα -έν (εντ-) 'stopped'

ἐ-παύσθ-ης

ἐ-παύσθ-η

ἐ-παύσθ-ημεν

ἐ-παύσθ-ητε

ἐ-παύσθ-ησαν

### Notes

(i) The aorist passive means 'I was -ed', regarded simply as an event, not a process (cf. the imperfect passive, which regards the action as a process - 'I was being -ed').

(ii) Note the augment, to show the past tense, and the stem/ending in -θην-. Not all verbs have the θ in the aorist passive, but the -η- will give the clue, e.g. γράφω → ἐγράφ-η-ν.

(iii) Note that the form of the aorist passive is impossible to predict, though it is usually easy to recognise (the θ-η gives the clue), e.g. παύω → ἐπαύθην or ἐπαύσθην; κελεύω → ἐκελεύσθην; κωλύω → ἐκωλύθην.

(iv) Note the change of the final consonant of the stem before -θ in:

πέμπ-ω (ἐπέμπ-θην) → ἐπέμφ-θην

διώκω (ἐδιώκ-θην) → ἐδιώχ-θην

φυλάττω (uncontr. aor. ἐφυλακ-σα) → ἐφυλάχ-θην

For verbs which use the aorist passive form, but are active in meanings, see 206.

(v) Note the aor. pass. of δίδωμι: ἐ-δόθ-ην.

ἴστημι 'I set up'

144 You have already met ἀνίσταμαι 'I get (myself) up and go' 98: here now are the details of the verb of which it is a compound.

Remember two things:

(a) the basic meaning is 'I am in the act of setting something up';

(b) (i) one set of forms, the active ones, carry the meaning 'I am setting something up', and will always have an object in the accusative so that you know what it is that the person is setting up;

(ii) another set of forms, called 'quasi-passive', mean 'I am in the act of setting myself up', i.e. 'I am in the act of standing', and need no object;

(iii) the last set of forms, called 'middle', mean 'I am setting x up for myself'. A number of these middle forms are the same as the quasi-passive.

Here are the principal forms and meanings of ἴστημι divided according to meaning:

(a) Active (taking a direct object)

Present indicative	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
'I am setting x up': present stem ἴστα-				
ἴστη-μι	ἰστά-ς	ἰστά-ναι	ἴστ-η	ἴστα-ίην
ἴστη-ς	ἰστά-σα		ἰστά-τω	ἴστα-ίης
ἴστη-σι(ν)	ἰστά-ν		ἴστα-τε	ἴστα-ίη
ἴστα-μεν	(ἰσταντ-)		ἰστά-ντων	ἴστα-ίμεν
ἴστα-τε				ἴστα-ίτε
ἰστά-σι(ν)				ἴστα-ίεν

Imperfect indicative

'I was setting x up'

ἴστη-ν  
ἴστη-ς  
ἴστη  
ἴστα-μεν  
ἴστα-τε  
ἴστα-σαν

Aorist indicative	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
'I (did) set x up': aorist stem στησ(α)-				
ἔ-στησ-α	στήσ-ας -ασα -αν	στήσ-αι	στήσ-ον	στήσ-αιμι
(etc., like ἔπαυσα)				



*Future indicative*

'I will set x up'

στήσ-ω

(etc., like παύσ-ω)

*Notes*

(i) Note similarities with δίδωμι – τίθημι (see 131 and Notes). The present stem is ἵστα-, ἵστη-, and that controls the shape of all present and imperfect forms: where δίδω-/διδω- occur, observe now ἵστα-/ἵστη-. The future and aorist stem is στησ-, and gives absolutely regular weak aorist and future forms.

(b) *Quasi-passive (taking no direct object)*

<i>Present indicative</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
'I am in the act of standing up': present stem ἵστα-				
ἵστα-μαι	ἱστά-μεν-ος	ἵστα-σθαι	ἵστα-σο	ἵστα-ίμην
ἵστα-σαι	-η		ἱστά-σθω	ἵστα-ίο
ἵστα-ται	-ον		ἵστα-σθε	ἵστα-ίτο
ἱστά-μεθα			ἱστά-σθων	ἵστα-ίμεθα
ἵστα-σθε				ἵστα-ίσθε
ἵστα-νται				ἵστα-ίντο

*Imperfect indicative*

'I was in the act of standing up'

ἱστά-μην

ἵστα-σο

ἵστα-το

ἱστά-μεθα

ἵστα-σθε

ἵστα-ντο

<i>Aorist indicative</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
'I did stand up, I stood up': aorist stem στη-/στα-				
ἔ-στη-ν	στά-ς	στή-ναι	στή-θι	στα-ίην
ἔ-στη-ς	στά-σα		στή-τω	στα-ίης
ἔ-στη	στά-ν		στή-τε	στα-ίη
ἔ-στη-μεν	(σταντ-)		στά-ντων	στα-ίμεν
ἔ-στη-τε				στα-ίτε
ἔ-στη-σαν				στα-ίεν

*Future indicative*

‘I shall stand up’

στήσ-ομαι

(etc., like παύσ-ομαι)

*(c) Middle (taking a direct object)*

Forms are the same in the present and imperfect as for the quasi-passive. Note the middle aorist: ‘I set up x for myself’.

*Aorist indicative*

ἐ-στησ-άμην

ἐ-στήσ-ω

ἐ-στήσ-ατο

ἐ-στησ-άμεθα

ἐ-στήσ-ασθε

ἐ-στήσ-αντο

Cf. the aorist indicative active.

*Notes*

(i) This is all absolutely predictable in the present, imperfect and future – the forms are the regular middle forms based on the active. The single oddity is the aorist ἔστην (στα-, στη-) (cf. the root aorist ἔβην 126).

(ii) Interestingly, you are not yet in a position to be able to say in Greek ‘I am standing.’ You can say ‘I am in the process of standing’, but not actually ‘here I stand’. To say that, you will have to use the (as yet unmet) perfect tense in the form which means ‘I have set myself up’ – and consequently am standing.

(iii) If you note nothing else, hold on to the vital difference in form and meaning between the aorists (since you will tend to meet these most of all in reading):

ἔστησα (στησ-) ‘I did set (someone) up’ (needing an object)

ἔστην (στα-, στη-) ‘I stood’ (no object needed)

(iv) The ‘true’ aorist passive is ἐ-στάθ-ην ‘I was set up’.

145 The most important compound of ἵστημι is καθίστημι. In its active forms (καθίστημι, καθίστην, κατέστησα, καταστήσω) it means ‘I put someone in (usually εἰς) a certain position’; in its middle forms (καθίσταμαι, καθιστάμην, κατέστην, καταστήσομαι), it means ‘I am put into a certain position’, or ‘I am elected, I am made, I become’, e.g.:

κατέστην εἰς πενίαν ‘I was placed in poverty, I became poor’

κατέστησε ἡμᾶς εἰς ἀπορίαν ‘he placed us in despair, he made us despair, he reduced us to despair’

---

## Exercises for Section Eleven A–D

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate the passage, choosing the form of the verb which fits the context:
 

Ἄπολλόδωρος ἐμὲ ἠδίκησε μεγάλα καὶ (κατέστη/κατέστησεν) ἡμᾶς πάντας εἰς πολλὴν ἀπορίαν. μάρτυρας γὰρ ψευδεῖς (ἀναστὰς/ἀναστήσας) ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ εἶλεν ἐμὲ καὶ τίμημα ἤτησε μέγα. ἐγὼ οὖν ὀφείλων τὸ τίμημα τῇ πόλει καὶ εἰς ἀτιμίαν (καταστὰς/καταστήσας), ἐκ τῆς πόλεως (ἐξανέστησα/ἐξανέστην)· ἔπειτα δέ, ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος (ἀναστὰς/ἀναστήσας) εἰς Μέγαρα ἀπήλθον, οὐ εἰς πενίαν (καταστὰς/καταστήσας) ἔμενον δύο ἔτη.
2. Translate each sentence, then change present tense to aorist:
  - a. ἡ γὰρ ἐμῆ θυγάτηρ εἰς πενίαν καθίσταται διὰ ταύτην τὴν δίκην.
  - b. Ἀθηναῖοι οὖν ἀνίστασιν ἐκ τῆς Αἰγίνης τοὺς Αἰγινήτας.
  - c. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί, καθίστατε εἰς πολλὴν ἀπορίαν τὰς ἐμὰς θυγατέρας καταδικάσαντες ἐμοῦ.
  - d. ὁ δὲ κατήγορος οὐτοσὶ ἀνίσταται ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ καὶ τὸν φεύγοντα εἰς φόβον καθίστησιν.
3. Translate these aorist passives, then pair with their present forms:
 

ἐκλήθησαν, ἐλήφθη, ἠπορήθη, κατεδικάσθητε, ἐξηλέγχθης (convict), ἐξεδόθημεν (give in marriage), ὑβρίσθη (do violence to), διηλλάχθησαν (be reconciled to), ἐγράφη, ὠργίσθητε (be made angry), ἐλέχθη, ἐβιάσθημεν, κατηγορήθη, ἀπελύθη, ἀπεπέμφθησαν (send away), ἐξηπατήθη, ἐπίεσθη

πείθω, λέγω, καλέω, λαμβάνω, βιάζομαι, ἐκδίδωμι, ὀργίζομαι, ὑβρίζω, ἐξαπατάω, ἀποπέμπω, ἐξελέγχω, διαλλάττομαι, γράφομαι, κατηγορέω, ἀπορέω, ἀπολύω, καταδικάζω
4. Translate these sentences, then change the aorist passive verbs, with their subjects if necessary, to singular or plural as appropriate:
  - a. οἱ μὲν γὰρ δικασταὶ ὑπὸ τῆς ἀπολογίας οὐκ ἐπίεσθησαν, ἐγὼ δὲ κατεδικάσθη.
  - b. ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐ διαφέρει μοι εἰ οὐκ ἀπελύθη, ἀλλὰ κατεδικάσθη.
  - c. καὶ γὰρ οὗτος ὁ λόγος ἐλέχθη ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀντιδίκου
  - d. ὑμεῖς δὲ ἠδικήθητε ὑπὸ τούτου μεγάλα.
5. Translate these sentences, filling in the correct form of the aorist passive participle:
  - a. ἐγὼ εὖνοιαν ἔχω εἰς τὸν ἄνδρα τὸν ὑπὸ Στεφάνου ἀδικηθ- .
  - b. ἡμεῖς δὲ πεισθ- ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀντιδίκου δίκην ἐλάβομεν

- c. τῆς δὲ γυναικὸς ἔξαπατηθ- ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀτίμου κατεφρόνησεν ὁ ἀνὴρ.  
 d. βιασθ- δ' ἐμοῦ εἰσάγειν τὸ παιδίον εἰς τοὺς φράτερας, ἢ θυγάτηρ εἰς ἔχθραν κατέστη.  
 e. ἐμοὶ δὲ ἀτίμῳ ὄντι καὶ ἀπορηθ- οἱ φίλοι ἐβοήθησαν.  
 f. τοῖς δὲ γερούσι τοῖς ὑπὸ Κλέωνος ἔξαπατηθ- πολλὰς δραχμὰς ἔδομεν.

## (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. Apollodoros was grievously wronged by Stephanos and Neaira.
2. A big fine was asked for by Stephanos.
3. Apollodoros faced the prospect of getting into terrible trouble.
4. Stephanos put Apollodoros in great danger.
5. Apollodoros was persuaded to take vengeance against Stephanos.

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven E

αἰσχύν-ομαι feel shame, be  
ashamed

ἀνέκδοτ-ος-ον unmarried

ἄρχ-ω begin (+ gen.)

ἀτιμί-α, ἡ loss of rights (1b)

γαμέ-ω marry

εἰκός right(ly)

ἐκδίδω-μι (ἐκδο-) give in  
marriage

καταφρονέ-ω despise (+ gen.)

πᾶς τις everyone

προίξ (προικ-), ἡ dowry (3a)

σπουδάξ-ω be concerned

σπουδαῖ-ος-α-ον important,  
serious

τεκμήρι-ον, τό evidence (2b)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

αἰσχύνομαι be ashamed, feel  
shame

ἄρχω begin (+ gen.); rule  
(+ gen.)

ἀτιμία, ἡ loss of citizen rights  
(1b)

εἰκός likely, probable,  
reasonable, fair

καταφρονέω despise, look  
down on (+ gen.)

σπουδάξω be concerned,  
serious; do seriously

σπουδαῖος α ο ν important,  
serious

## O Grammar for Section Eleven E

## Summary:

Acc. (nom.) and inf.

## Accusative and infinitives

146 You have already met words which take an infinitive (e.g. βούλομαι ἵνα 'I wish to go') and words which can take an accusative and infinitive (e.g. δεῖ με ἵνα 'I must go'; βούλομαί σε ἵνα 'I want you to go'). Here are some more, but of a different type. They all introduce some sort of

*indirect speech* (i.e. words, thoughts, feelings etc. not directly quoted, but *reported* as taking place), and it is this indirect speech which goes into the accusative and infinitive:

- οἶομαι 'I think that . . . ' (but not necessarily very strongly)  
 φημί 'I say that . . . '  
 νομίζω 'I consider that . . . '  
 ἠγοῦμαι 'I think that . . . ' (of a firmly held opinion)  
 φάσκω 'I allege that . . . '

**147** The subject of the 'that' clause appears in the ACCUSATIVE, and the verb in the INFINITIVE. Remember to start your translation with the word 'that', e.g.

νομίζω σε μῶρον εἶναι 'I consider *that* you are foolish' (cf. English 'I consider you to be foolish')

ἔφη Νέαιραν καταφρονεῖν τῶν θεῶν 'he said *that* Neaira despised the gods'

**148** Observe that the tense of the infinitive tells you what was actually said. If the speaker said originally 'we will knock', this becomes ἔφη ἡμᾶς κόψειν 'he said that we would knock' (*future* infinitive).

**149** If the subject of the 'that' clause is the same as that of the main verb, it will either not appear, or else will appear as a *nominative*, e.g.

ἔφην ἀφίξασθαι 'I said that I would come'

ἔφην ἐκεῖνον ἀφίξασθαι 'I said that he would come'

ἠγείτο αὐτὸς σοφὸς εἶναι 'he considered that he was himself wise'

ἠγείτο αὐτὸν σοφὸν εἶναι 'he considered that he (i.e. *someone else*) was wise' ○

---

## Exercises for Section Eleven E

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate each statement, then, using the verbs given, turn them into indirect statements. How is the translation altered if you use the past form of the verb?

1. ὁ κατήγορος σπουδαιότατός ἐστιν ἀνθρώπων. (φημί/ἔφην)

2. ἐγὼ εἰς μέγαν κίνδυνον κατέστην. (φασί/ἔφη)

3. αἰεὶ λέγουσί τι δεινὸν οἱ ἀντίδικοι. (ἠγοῦμαι/ἠγούμην)

4. ὁ Στέφανος εἰσήγαγεν εἰς τοὺς φράτερας τοὺς ἀλλοτρίους παῖδας.  
(φασί/ἔφασαν)

5. ἡ Νέαιρα οὐκ αἰσχύνεται καταφρονεῖσα τῶν νόμων. (τίς οὐκ ἂν οἶοιτο;|τίς οὐκ οἶεται;)

6. ἐβουλόμεθα τότε τιμωρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐχθρούς. (φαμέν/ἔφαμεν)

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven F

Ἀθήναζε to Athens	ἤθε-ος, ὁ bachelor (2a)	συνέρχ-ομαι (συνελθ-) come together
ἄστ-ή, ἡ female citizen (1a)	καταθεῖναι to put down (κατατίθημι καταθε-)	σῶμα (σωματ-), τό body (3b)
ἄστ-ός, ὁ male citizen (2a)	Κόρινθ-ος, ἡ Corinth (2a)	τεκμήρι-ον, τό evidence, proof (2b)
ἔθηκεν he put down (τίθημι θε-)	Λυσί-ας, ὁ Lysias (1d) (lover of Metancira)	τιθέναι to be putting down (τίθημι)
ἐλήφθησαν aor. pass. of λαμβάνω	Μετάνειρ-α, ἡ Metancira (1a) (slave of Nikarete)	τοῖνον well now (resuming a narrative)
ἑορτ-ή, ἡ festival (1a)	μικρ-ός -ά -όν small	τρέφ-ω rear, raise
ἐπιδείκνυ-μι (ἐπιδειξ-) show, prove	μυστήρι-α, τά the Mysteries (2b)	φανερ-ός -ά -όν clear, obvious
ἔραστ-ής, ὁ lover (1d)	Νικαρέτ-η, ἡ Nikarete (1a) (slave-owner)	Φιλόστρατ-ος, ὁ Philostratos (2a) (Lysias' friend)
ἐργάζ-ομαι work, earn a living	παιδοποιέ-ομαι have children	ὡς (+acc.) to (the house of), with
ἑταίρ-α, ἡ whore, prostitute (1b)		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

Ἀθήναζε to Athens	(σ)μικρός ἄ ὄν small, short, little	τίθημι (θε-) put, place, make
ἄστῆ, ἡ female citizen (1a)	παιδοποιέομαι have children	φανερός ἄ ὄν clear, obvious
ἄστός, ὁ male citizen (2a)	συνέρχομαι (συνελθ-) come together	ὡς (+acc.) towards, to the house of
ἑταίρα, ἡ whore, prostitute (1b)	τεκμήριον, τό evidence, proof (2b)	
ἑταῖρος, ὁ (male) companion (2a)		

## ○ Grammar for Section Eleven F

### Summary:

τίθημι

### Verbs

τίθημι 'I place, put'

150 You have already been alerted to the similarities between τίθημι 'I put, place' and δίδωμι (see 131 (ii)). Here are the forms in full:

Present indicative active	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
Stem: τιθε-				
τίθη-μι	τιθε-ίς	τιθέ-ναι	τίθε-ι	τιθε-ίην
τίθη-ς	τιθε-ῖσα		τιθέ-τω	τιθε-ίης

	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>
τίθη-σι(ν)	τιθέ-ν		τίθε-τε	τιθε-ίη
τίθε-μεν	(τιθεντ-)		τιθέ-ντων	τιθε-ίμεν
τίθε-τε				τιθε-ίτε
τιθέ-ασι(ν)				τιθε-ίεν

*Present indicative middle/  
passive*

τίθε-μαι	τιθέ-μεν-ος	τίθε-σθαι	τίθε-σο	τιθε-ίμην
τίθε-σαι	-η		τιθέ-σθω	τιθε-ίω
τίθε-ται	-ον		τίθε-σθε	τιθε-ίτο
τιθέ-μεθα			τιθέ-σθων	τιθε-ίμεθα
τίθε-σθε				τιθε-ίσθε
τίθε-νται				τιθε-ίντο

*Imperfect indicative active*

ἐ-τίθη-ν
ἐ-τίθε-ις
ἐ-τίθε-ι
ἐ-τίθε-μεν
ἐ-τίθε-τε
ἐ-τίθε-σαν

*Imperfect indicative middle/  
passive*

ἐ-τιθέ-μην
ἐ-τίθε-σο
ἐ-τίθε-το
ἐ-τιθέ-μεθα
ἐ-τίθε-σθε
ἐ-τίθε-ντο

*Aorist indicative active*

Stem: θε-

ἔ-θη-κα	θε-ίς	θε-ῖναι	θέ-ς	θε-ίην
ἔ-θη-κας	θε-ῖσα		θέ-τω	θε-ίης
ἔ-θη-κε	θε-ν		θέ-τε	θε-ίη
ἔ-θε-μεν	(θεντ-)		θέ-ντων	θε-ίμεν
ἔ-θε-τε				θε-ίτε
ἔ-θε-σαν (ἔ-θη-καν)				θε-ίεν

Aorist indicative middle	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
ἔ-θέ-μην	θέ-μεν-ος	θέ-σθαι	θ-οῦ	θε-ίμην
ἔ-θ-ου	-η		θέ-σθω	θε-ίο
ἔ-θε-το	-ον		θέ-σθε	θε-ίτο
ἔ-θέ-μεθα			θέ-σθων	θε-ίμεθα
ἔ-θε-σθε				θε-ίσθε
ἔ-θε-ντο				θε-ίντο

## Aorist indicative passive

Stem: τεθ-

ἔ-τέθ-ην	τεθ-είς	τεθ-ῆναι	τέθ-ητι	τεθ-είην
ἔ-τέθ-ης				
ἔ-τέθ-η				
ἔ-τέθ-ημεν				
ἔ-τέθ-ητε				
ἔ-τέθ-ησαν				

(All quite regular, like ἔ-παύσθ-ην)

## Future indicative active

θήσ-ω

(etc., like παύσ-ω)

## Future indicative middle

θήσ-ομαι

(etc., like παύσ-ομαι)

## Notes

(i) Remember the stems τιθε-, θε-.

(ii) Note the aorist active ἔθηκα (cf. ἔδωκα).

(iii) Remember that κείμει 'lie' can also mean 'be placed, be made' and as such is often used as the passive of τίθημι.

(iv) Observe the morphology of verbs ending in -υμι, e.g. δείκν-υμι. These tend to have fut. and aor. stems in -ξ-, and as such are quite regular (e.g. fut. δείξω aor. ἔδειξα). They follow the δίδω-μι|τίθη-μι pattern in the present and imperfect (except for the optative, cf. δίδω-ίην 131), e.g.

Present active:	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
δείκνυ-μι	δείκνυ-ς -σα -ν	δεικνύ-ναι	δείκνυ	δεικνύ-οιμι
δείκνυ-ς				
δείκνυ-σι(ν) etc.				



Present middle:	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
δείκνυ-μαι etc.	δεικνύ-μενος -η -ον	δείκνυ-σθαι	δείκνυ-σο	δεικνυ-οίμην
Imperfect active:				
ἔδεικνυ-ν				
ἔδεικν-υς				
ἔδεικ-υ etc				
Imperfect middle:				
ἔδεικνύ-μην etc.				

---

## Exercises for Section Eleven F

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate the following sentences, then change the tense or aspect of the verbs as indicated:
  - a. ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς Μεταναίρας ὁ σοφιστὴς πολλὰς δραχμὰς τίθησιν (aor.).
  - b. τιθέντος (aor.) δὲ τοῦ σοφιστοῦ τὰ χρήματα ὑπὲρ Μεταναίρας, ἡ Νικαρέτη οὐκ ἐδίδου (pres.) αὐτῇ οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ καθίστη (aor.) εἰς ἀπορίαν τὴν παῖδα.
  - c. ἔπειτα δέ, τῆς παιδὸς εἰς ἀπορίαν καταστάσης (pres.), ἔδοξε τῷ σοφιστῇ τιθέναι (aor.) πολλὰς δραχμὰς εἰς τὰ μυστήρια.
  - d. ἔγὼ δέ, ἔφη, οὕτω ποιῶν τὰ χρήματα ταῦτα ὑπὲρ Μεταναίρας θήσω (aor.) αὐτῆς.
  - e. ἔλθων δ' Ἀθήναζε ὁ Λυσίας καὶ πολλὰς δραχμὰς θείς (pres.), καθίστησι (aor.) τὴν Νικαρέτην καὶ Μεταναίραν ὡς Φιλόστρατον.

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. Stephanos will say that Apollodoros began their enmity.
2. Apollodoros said that he wanted to avenge himself on Stephanos.
3. Apollodoros will say that he did not wrong Stephanos.
4. Many men put down a lot of money on Neaira's account.
5. Apollodoros says that Stephanos is living with a slave as his wife.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven G

---

ἄν (+opt.) 'would'  
 ἄν (+impt.) 'would'  
 ἄπαξ once

ἄρχων (ἄρχοντ-), ὁ archon  
 (3.1)  
 διακρίν-ω determine, judge

εἶ (+opt.) 'if . . . were to'  
 εἶ (+impt.) 'if . . . were -ing'  
 εἶδείην optative of οἶδα

εἶθε (+opt.) I wish that! would that!	μαρτυρί-α, ἡ evidence, witness (1b)	πεντήκοντα fifty
εἶκει it seems (reasonable)	μέν-αν = μέντοι ἄν	πλούσι-ος -α -ον rich, wealthy
ἐπικαλύπτ-ω conceal, hide	μνεί-α, ἡ mention (1b)	Σόλων (Σολων-), ὁ Solon (3a) (famous statesman)
ἐπιλανθάν-ομαι (ἐπιλαθ-) forget (+gen.)	μνημονεύ-ω remember	συγγίγν-ομαι (συγγεν-) be with (+dat.)
Ἴππιδ-ας, ὁ Hippias (1d) (a sophist)	ὅπως (+ fut. ind.) see to it that	φύσ-ις, ἡ nature (3e)
καταλέγ-ω recite, list	πένης (πενητ-), ὁ poor man (3a)	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄν (use of, in conditionals, see Grammar 151-2)	καταλέγω (κατεῖπ-) recite, list	πένης (πενητ-), ὁ poor man (3a) (or adj. poor)
εἶθε (+opt.) I wish that! would that!	μαρτυρία, ἡ evidence, witness (1b)	πλούσιος α ον rich, wealthy
ἐπιλανθάνομαι (ἐπιλαθ-) forget (+gen.)	μνεία, ἡ mention (1b)	συγγίγνομαι (συγγεν-) be with, have intercourse with (+dat.)
	μνημονεύω remember	
	ὅπως (+fut. ind.) see to it that	

## ○ Grammar for Section Eleven G

### Summary:

Fut. remote, pres. unfulf. cond.

Wishes for fut.

ὅπως + fut. ind.

Opt. εἶμί, εἶμι, οἶδα

### Conditional sentences (with ἄν)

151 So far, you have met ἄν + optative in the sense 'would you . . . would you like to . . .', expressing a polite request or agreement (cf. 95 and 129).

If however you find ἄν + optative linked with (usually preceded by) εἰ ('if') + optative, the sentence will express something like: 'If x were to happen, y would result', e.g.

εἴ με πείθοις πείσειας, λέγοιμι εἴποιμι ἄν σοι 'if you were to persuade me, I would tell you'

εἰ φεύγοιεν φύγοιεν, διώκοιμεν διώξαιμεν ἄν 'if they were to flee, we would pursue'

### Note

The difference in meaning between present and aorist optative will, as usual, be one not of time but of aspect.

This construction is called a 'future remote or improbable condition'.

152 If, however, you replace the optatives in the above sentences with *imperfect indicatives*, the meaning will now be altered to the formula: 'If x were the case now, y would now be resulting', e.g.

εἴ με ἔπειθες, ἔλεγον ἂν 'if you persuaded (were persuading) me, I would tell (be telling)'

εἰ ἔφευγον, ἐδιώκομεν ἂν 'if they were fleeing, we would be pursuing'

In other words, the action is being referred not to the future, but to the present.

*Note*

(i) This construction is called a 'present unfulfilled condition'.

(ii) The negative in the 'if' clause is μή. Observe that μή, where one might expect οὐ, gives a conditional 'colouring' to utterances which do not appear to be conditions, e.g. πῶς ἂν τιθεῖτό τις τὴν ψῆφον, μὴ μνημονεύσας τοὺς λόγους; 'How can one vote, not remembering (i.e. if one does not remember) the speeches?' Watch out for μή with this force in participle and relative clauses.

**Wishes for the future**

153 You have already met ἀπολοίμην 'may I be killed', expressing a wish for the future (cf. 130). Such wishes are more often expressed by εἶθε or εἰ γάρ + optative (although the plain optative is found), e.g.

εἰ γὰρ εἶθε γενοίμην γιγνοίμην σοφώτερος 'Would that I were to become more clever!'

*Note*

Wishes for the past are often expressed by (εἰ γὰρ εἶθε) ὄφελον + infinitive, e.g. (εἰ γὰρ εἶθε) ὄφέλομεν ἐλθεῖν 'Would that we had gone!'

Note also that ἂν is NOT used in wishes. (Cf. Language Survey (4), p. 312.)

ὅπως + future indicative 'see to it that . . .'

154 This means 'see to it that . . .', e.g.

ὅπως σώφρων ἔσει 'see to it that you are sensible'

ὅπως μὴ παύση 'see to it that you do not stop'

**Verbs**

*Three optatives*

155 See to it that you do not forget the following optatives:

εἶμι 'I am'    οἶδα 'I know'    εἶμι 'I go'

εἶην            εἶδείην            ἴοιμι

εἶης            εἶδείης            ἴοις

εἶη	εἶδείη	ἴοι
εἶμεν	εἶδείμεν	ἴοιμεν
εἴτε	εἶδείτε	ἴοιτε
εἴειν	εἶδείειν	ἴοιεν

---

## Exercises for Section Eleven G

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

- Translate the following statements; then change them into wishes for the future (make a free choice of construction and aspect of the verb).
  - βούλομαι δικαστῆς καθίστασθαι καὶ τίθεσθαι τὴν ψῆφον.
  - ἑθέλω σοφιστῆς γενέσθαι.
  - βούλομαι σὲ εἰς ἐμὲ χρήματα θείναι.
  - οὐκ ἑθέλω ἀπολέσθαι.
  - βούλομαι ὑμᾶς εἰδέναι ταῦτα.
  - ἑθέλω σοφιστὴν ποιεῖν τὸν παῖδα.
  - βούλομαι αὐτὸν μνημονεῦσαι τὴν μαρτυρίαν.
  - ἑθέλω αὐτοὺς ἐπιλαθέσθαι τούτων τῶν λόγων.
    - βούλομαι πλούσιος εἶναι.
    - ἑθέλω τοὺς οἰκείους εἶναι πλουσίους.
- Translate each pair of statements (omitting εἰ), then link them by making them future remote conditions or present unfulfilled conditions (see Grammar 151–2).
  - (εἰ) τιμῶ τίμημα μέγα, δίκην λαμβάνει ὁ ἀντίδικος.
  - (εἰ) οἱ δικασταὶ πείθονται ὑπὸ τοῦ κατηγοροῦ τοῦ φεύγοντος καταδικάζουσιν.
  - (εἰ) ὑπάρχετε τῆς ἔχθρας, τὰ τεκμήριά ἐστι φανερὰ.
  - (εἰ) μνείαν ποιεῖς τῶν ἀστῶν, οὐκ ἐπιλανθάνεται ὁ κατήγορος.
  - (εἰ) οἱ ἀστοὶ ἐξ ἑταιρῶν παιδοποιοῦνται ἴσμεν σαφῶς.
  - (εἰ μὴ) οἱ πλούσιοι ταῖς ἑταίραις συγγίγονται τοὺς πένητας ἀσπάζονται ἐκεῖναι.
- Translate these commands. Turn each into an exhortation using ὅπως or ὅπως μὴ + fut. ind.
  - πρόσεχε τὸν νοῦν καὶ ἄκουε.
  - μὴ θωπεύετε τοὺς δικαστάς.
  - μὴ ἐπιλανθάνου τῶν λόγων.
  - κάτειπε τὸν τοῦ δράματος λόγον.
  - μνημόνευε τοὺς λόγους.

- f. μὴ παιδοποιεῖσθε ἐκ τῶν ἐταίρων.  
 g. εὖ τίθει τὸ πρᾶγμα.  
 h. μὴ καταφρόνει τοῦ ἐταίρου.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven H

---

ἀγαπά-ω love	εὐπορί-α, ἡ resources (1b)	πανταχοῖ everywhere
ἀποδιδράσκ-ω run off	θεράπειν-α, ἡ slave girl (1c)	προίστα-μαι make x (acc.)
ἀργύρι-ον, τό silver, money (2b)	Θραττ-α, ἡ Thratta (1c) (one of Neaira's slaves)	σπonsor of γ (gen.)
ἀσελγῶς disgracefully	ἰκαν-ός -ῆ -όν sufficient	προπηλακίζ-ω treat like dirt, insult
δείπν-ον, τό dinner-party (2b)	κατάγ-ομαι lodge	σοβαρ-ός -ά -όν pompous
διατρίβ-ω spend time	κατατίθη-μι (καταθε-) pay	συσκευάζ-ομαι gather up, collect
διηγέ-ομαι reveal, describe, explain	Κοκκαλίν-η, ἡ Kokkalinē (1a) (slave of Neaira)	τοίνυν well then (resuming argument)
διοίκησ-ις, ἡ management (3c)	κωμάζ-ω revel	τρόπ-ος, ὁ manner, way (2a)
ἐπί (+dat.) for the purpose of	Μέγαρ-α, τά Megara (2b) (a town on the isthmus)	Φρυγίων (Φρυγιων-), ὁ Phrygion (3a) (owner of Neaira)
ἐπιδημέ-ω come into town, live	οἶχ-ομαι go	χρυσί-ον, τό gold (trinkets or money) (2b)
ἐπιθυμέ-ω desire (+gen.)	ὀλίγωρ-ος -ον contemptuous	
ἔτ-ος, τό year (3c)	ὀργίζ-ομαι grow angry with (+dat.)	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀργύριον, τό silver, money (2b)	τοίνυν well then (resuming and pushing argument on further)
διατρίβω pass time, waste time	τρόπος, ὁ way, manner (2a)
ὀργίζομαι grow angry with (+dat.)	

---

## Vocabulary for Section Eleven I

---

ἀδικηθῆσθαι 'would be harmed' (ἀδικέω)	δυοῖν two (sc. 'reasons')	Ἑρμ-ῆς, ὁ Hermes (1d)
Ἀθήνησι at Athens	Δωρόθε-ος, ὁ Dorotheos (2a) (Athenian householder)	θρεψ- = fut./3or. stem of τρέφω
ἅπτ-ομαι touch (+gen.)	εἰσαχθῆσθαι 'would be introduced' (εἰσάγω)	κατατίθη-μι (καταθε-) pay
Ἀρίστων ('Αριστων-), ὁ Ariston (3a) (Neaira's son)	Ἐλευσίνοι-ος -α -ον of Eleusis	κατεγγυά-ω compel x (acc.) to give securities
ἀτέλει-α, ἡ exemption, immunity (ἔξ ἀτελείας = free) (1b)	ἐλπ-ίς (ἐλπίδ-), ἡ hope (3a)	Κλεινόμαχ-ος, ὁ Kleionomakhos (2a) (Athenian householder)
ἄψεσθαι fut. inf. of ἅπτομαι	ἐξ- = fut. stem of ἔχω	κομπάζ-ω boast
	ἐπιδημέ-ω be in town	
	ἐργάζ-ομαι work	

κόρη, ἡ girl, maiden (1a)  
 Μέγαρα, τὰ Megara (2b)  
 μεταξύ (+ gen.) between  
 οἰκίδιον, τό house, small  
 house (2b)  
 παραλαμβάνω  
 (παραλαβ-) take  
 πολέμαρχος, ὁ Polemarch  
 (2a) (state official)  
 Πρόξενος, ὁ Proxenos (2a)  
 (son of Neaira)

πρός (+ dat.) before  
 πρόσοδος, ἡ income (2a)  
 πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-) learn,  
 hear, discover  
 συκοφαντία, ἡ informing  
 (1b)  
 τρέφω (θρεψ-) maintain,  
 keep  
 Φανώ, ἡ Phano (Neaira's  
 daughter)

φράτηρ (φρατερ-), ὁ member  
 of phratry (3a) (a group of  
 families, with certain religious  
 and social functions)  
 ψιθυριστής ὁ whisperer (1d)  
 ὡς (+ fut. part.) in order to  
 ὡς ἄξων in order to take  
 ὡς ἔξων in order to have  
 ὡς ἐργασομένην αὐτήν καὶ  
 θρέψουσιν in order for her  
 to work and maintain

### Vocabulary to be learnt

Ἀθήνησι(ν) at Athens  
 ἐλπίς (ἐλπίδ-), ἡ hope,  
 expectation (3a)  
 ἐπιδημέω come to town, be in  
 town

ἐργάζομαι work, perform  
 κατατίθημι (καταθε-) put  
 down, pay, perform  
 οἰκίδιον, τό small house (2b)

παραλαμβάνω  
 (παραλαβ-) take, receive  
 from

## ○ Grammar for Section Eleven H-I

### Summary:

Acc. and part.

Fut. pass.

### Accusative and participle

156 You have already met verbs which take an accusative and infinitive construction (see 146-9). Some verbs, however, prefer an accusative and participle to express their 'that' clauses, e.g.

οἶδα

'I know that . . .'

πυνθάνομαι

'I learn by inquiry that . . ., hear'

μανθάνω

'I learn that . . .'

γινώσκω

'I recognise that . . .'

Precisely the same principles apply to these clauses as to those already described in 146-9. If the 'that' clause has a subject different from the main verb, the subject and its participle will go into the accusative; if subjects are the same, there will be no accusative and the participle will go into the *nominative*. The tense of the participle will point to the tense of what was originally said. Consider:

οἶδα σοφὸς ὢν

'I know I am wise'

οἶδα σε μῶρον ὄντα

'I know you are foolish'

ἐμάθομεν φεύγοντας αὐτούς 'we learnt that they were fleeing'  
 ἐπύθοντο ἡμᾶς παυσαμένους 'they heard that we had stopped'

(On indirect speech in general, see Reference Grammar K, p. 301.)

### Verbs

Future passive παυσθήσομαι 'I shall be stopped'

157 The forms of the future passive indicative are as follows:

παυσθ-ήσ-ομαι 'I shall be stopped'

παυσθ-ήσ-ει(η)

παυσθ-ήσ-εται

παυσθ-ησ-όμεθα

παυσθ-ήσ-εσθε

παυσθ-ήσ-ονται

Infinitive: παυσθ-ήσ-εσθαι

### Notes

(i) Once you have the appropriate stem, these endings are entirely regular, being like the endings for the present middle/passive.

(ii) The stem is always based upon the stem of the aorist passive, less augment plus σ. Thus:

ἐπαύσθην → παυσθήσ-ομαι

ἡδικήθην → ἀδικηθήσ-ομαι N.B. loss of augment

εἰσήχθην → εἰσαχθήσ-ομαι

Look for the -θη- of the aorist passive followed by a -σ-, the give-away clue to the future, and translate 'will/shall be -ed' (cf. aor. pass. 143).

### Revise

Dat. case 103-4, Language Survey (10)-(11)

○

## Exercises for Section Eleven I

### (b/c) Morphology and syntax

1. Translate these future passives. Then pair each with its present form: εἰσαχθήσομαι, ἐξελεγχθησόμεθα (convict), ἀναγκασθήσει, ὀργισθήσεται, ζημιωθήσασθαι (fine), ἀδικηθήσονται ἀναγκάζω, εἰσάγω, ἀδικέω, ἐξελέγχω, ὀργίζομαι, ζημιόω
2. Translate each statement, then, using the present tense verbs given, turn them into indirect statements. What difference does the use of the past introductory verb make to your translation?

- a. ἡ γυνὴ ἀδικηθήσεται ὑπ' οὐδενός. (φαμέν/ἔφαμεν)  
 b. οἱ τῆς ἐταίρας παῖδες πολῖται γενήσονται. (οἶεται/ᾤετο)  
 c. ἀφίξονται Στέφανος καὶ Νέαιρα ἐκ τῶν Μεγάρων Ἀθήναζε.  
 (ἡγείται/ἡγήσατο)  
 d. ἀναγκασθήσομαι παρὰ Φρυνίωνος τὴν Νέαιραν ἀφαιρεῖσθαι.  
 (φησίν/ἔφη)
3. Translate each statement, then, using present tense verbs given, turn into indirect statements. What difference does the use of the past introductory verb make to your translation?
- a. ὁ Φρυνίων ἠδίκηθη ὑπ' ἐμοῦ καὶ ὠργίσθη ἐμοί. (οἶδα/ᾔδη)  
 b. ἡ Νέαιρα ἐπεδήμει καὶ ἦλθεν ὡς Στέφανον. (ὄρα/εἶδεν)  
 c. ἠδίκηθημεν ὑπὸ τοῦ κατηγοροῦ καὶ κατεδικάσθημεν ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν.  
 (αἰσθάνονται/ᾔσθηοντο)  
 d. ἠδικήσατε τὴν πόλιν καὶ τῶν νόμων κατεφρονεῖτε καὶ ἠσεβεῖτε εἰς τοὺς θεούς. (γιγνώσκετε/ἔγνωτε)  
 e. ἐταίρα εἶ καὶ παιδοποιεῖ ἐξ ἀστῶν. (οἶσθα/ᾔδεισθα)

#### (d) English into Greek

##### 1 Sentences

Translate into Greek:

1. If only I could remember the arguments of the prosecutor!
2. If I were a sophist, I would be remembering these arguments.
3. If I could remember the evidence, I would cast my vote justly.
4. Phrynion knew that Neaira was in town and had the money.
5. Stephanos says that Neaira will be wronged by nobody.

##### 2. Prose

Translate into Greek:

Apollodoros, wronged and put into a dangerous position by Stephanos, is contesting this suit. For the laws do not allow a citizen to live with a prostitute as his wife. Apollodoros says that he will give clear evidence that Stephanos is doing this very thing. If Stephanos were doing this, it would clearly be a very serious matter. Consequently, I hope that Apollodoros will win the suit. If he were to win it, it would be a good thing for the city.

#### Test Exercise Eleven

Translate into English:

*The prosecutor describes how the man Timarkhos, on trial for immoral behaviour, left Antikles to live with the slave Pittalakos. Timarkhos soon deserted Pittalakos to live with Hegesandros.*

(From Aiskhines *Timarkhos*, 53-62)



ἀλλὰ τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα ἔρω. ὅπως ἀκούσεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί. ὡς γὰρ ἀπηλλάγη παρὰ τοῦ Ἀντικλέους Τίμαρχος οὐτοσί, διημέρευει ἐν τῷ κυβείῳ. τῶν δὲ κυβευτῶν ἐστὶ τις Πιπτάλακος, οἰκέτης τῆς πόλεως. οὗτος ἰδὼν Τίμαρχον ἐν τῷ κυβείῳ ἀνέλαβεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἔσχε παρ' ἑαυτῷ.

καὶ τὰς ὕβρεις ἃς ἐγὼ οἶδα σαφῶς γενομένας ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τούτου εἰς Τίμαρχον, ἐγὼ μὰ τὸν Δία τὸν Ὀλύμπιον οὐκ ἂν τολμήσαιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς εἰπεῖν. νῆ Δία, κάκιστ' ἀπολοίμην εἰ μείαν ποιούμαι τῶν τοιούτων. ἐγὼ γάρ, εἰ ἐν ὑμῖν εἶποιμι ἃ οὐτοσί ἐπραξεν, οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην ἔτι ζῆν.

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ καταπλεῖ δεῦρο ἐξ Ἑλλησπόντου Ἡγήσανδρος, οὗ τῶν τρόπων ἄδικοι ὄντα καὶ ὀλίγων ὑμεῖς ἴστε κάλλιον ἢ ἐγώ. εἰσφοιτῶν δ' οὗτος ὡς τὸν Πιπτάλακον συγκυβευτὴν ὄντα, καὶ Τίμαρχον ἐκεῖ πρῶτον ἰδὼν, ἐβούλετο ὡς αὐτὸν ἀναλαβεῖν. καὶ γὰρ ἠγήσατο αὐτὸν ἐγγυς εἶναι τῆς αὐτοῦ φύσεως.

The jilted Pitalakos, trying to get Timarkhos back, is beaten up for his pains and next day takes refuge at an altar, where Timarkhos appeases him ὡς δ' ἀπηλλάγη μὲν παρὰ τοῦ Πιπταλάκου, ἀνελήφθη δὲ ὑπὸ Ἡγησάνδρου, ὠργίσθη ὁ Πιπτάλακος, γνούς τοσοῦτον ἀργῦριον μίτην ὑπὲρ Τιμάρχου καταθείς, καὶ ἐφοῖτα ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν Ἡγησάνδρου πολλάκις. ὅτε δ' αὐτῷ ὠργίζοντο φοιτῶντι Ἡγήσανδρος καὶ Τίμαρχος, εἰσπηδήσαντες νύκτωρ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν οὗ ὤκει ὁ Πιπτάλακος, πρῶτον μὲν συνέτριβον τὰ σκεύη, τέλος δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν Πιπτάλακον ἔτυπτοι πολὺν χρόνον. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία, ὀργισθεὶς τῷ πράγματι ὁ Πιπτάλακος ἔρχεται γυμνὸς εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν καὶ καθίζει ἐπὶ τὸν βωμὸν τὸν τῆς μητρὸς τῶν θεῶν. ὄχλου δὲ συνδραμόντος, ὅτε Ἡγήσανδρος καὶ ὁ Τίμαρχος τρέχουσι πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν καὶ περιστάντες ἐδέοντο τοῦ Πιπταλάκου ἀναστήναι, φάσκοντες τὸ ὅλον πρᾶγμα παροιμίαν γενέσθαι. καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Τίμαρχος ἔφασκε πάνταπραχθήσεσθαι ὑφ' αὐτοῦ, τοῦ Πιπταλάκου ἀναστάντος. τέλος πείθουσιν αὐτὸν ἀναστήναι ἀπὸ τοῦ βωμοῦ.

### Vocabulary

ἀπηλλάγη 1st. pass. of ἀπαλλάττω release	μίτη το πο ποροσε φοιτάω (f. εἰσφοιτάω)
διημερεύω spend one's days	νύκτωρ at night
κυβείον, τό casino, gambling-den (2b)	συνετριβῶ smash up
κυβευτής, ὁ gambler (1d)	ὑστεραία, ἡ next day (1b)
ζῆν 1st. of ζάω live	γυμνὸς ἢ ὄν naked
ὀλίγωρος οὐ disdantul	ὄχλος, ὁ crowd (2a)
εἰσφοιτάω go into	φάσκω expect
συγκυβευτής (f. κυβευτής)	παροιμία, ἡ drunken behaviour (1b)
φύσις, ἡ nature (1c)	

## Section Twelve

### Vocabulary for Section Twelve A

Αἰγίλ-εύς, ὁ of the deme Aigileia (3g)	ἐνιαυτ-ός, ὁ year (2a)	περιπίπτ-ω (περιπεσ-) meet with (+dat.)
ἀκολασί-α, ἡ extravagance (1b)	ἐξαπατηθῆναι 'had been deceived' (ἐξαπατάω)	πολέμαρχ-ος, ὁ the Polemarch (2a) ( <i>magistrate dealing with lawsuits involving aliens</i> )
ἂν (+aor. indic.) 'would have ...'	ἐξεδόθη aor. pass. of ἐκδίδωμι	πρίν before (+inf.)
ἀναιρέ-ομαι (ἀνελ-) take away	ἐξελέγχ-ω convict	προίξ (προικ-), ἡ dowry (3a)
ἀπέδρα 3rd s. aor. of ἀποδιδράσκω	ἐπιδείκνυ-μι (ἐπιδειξ-) show, demonstrate	πρός (+dat.) before
ἀποδιδράσκ-ω (ἀποδρα-) run off	ἐργάτ-ης, ὁ working man (1d)	πυνθάν-ομαι (πυθ-) learn, hear
ἀποδίδω-μι (ἀποδο-) return, give back	ζημί-α, ἡ penalty (1b)	Στρυβήλ-η, ἡ Strybele (1a) (Phano's former name)
ἀποπέμπ-ω send away, divorce	ἠπίστατο impf. of ἐπίσταμαι know how to (+inf.)	συλλέγ-ομαι make, collect
ἀφίστα-μαι give up any claim to (+gen.)	καὶ δῆ and really, and as a matter of fact	τριάκοντα thirty (indecl.)
γαμέ-ω (γημ-) marry	καταμαρτυρέ-ω give evidence against (+gen.)	ὕβριζ-ω treat disgracefully
γνήσι-ος -α -ον legitimate	κατεγγυά-ω demand securities from	ὕβρισθῆναι 'had been treated disgracefully' (aor. pass. inf. of ὕβριζω)
διαλλάττ-ομαι πρὸς be reconciled with	κινδυνεύ-ω run a risk of (+inf.)	Φανοῦς Phano (gen. s.) ( <i>see List of Proper Names for full declension</i> )
ἐγγυά-ω engage, promise	κόρ-η, ἡ maiden, girl (1a)	Φανῶ Phano (acc. s.) ( <i>see List of Proper Names for full declension</i> )
εἰ (+aor. ind.) 'if ... had -ed ...'	κόσμι-ος -α -ον well-behaved	Φράστορ (Φραστορ-), ὁ Phrastor (3a) (Phano's husband)
ἐκβάλλ-ω (ἐκβαλ-) divorce	κυέ-ω be pregnant	φύσ-ις, ἡ nature, temperament (3c)
ἐκδίδω-μι (ἐκδο-) give in marriage	λαγχάν-ω (λαχ-) bring (suit) against (+dat.)	
ἐκπίπτ-ω (ἐκπεσ-) be divorced	Μέγαρα, τὰ Megara (2b)	
	μν-ᾶ, ἡ mina (=60 drachmas) (1b)	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀποδίδωμι (ἀποδο-) give back, return	ἐκπίπτω (ἐκπεσ-) be thrown out, divorced	κατεγγυάω demand securities from (+acc.)
ἀποπέμπω send away, divorce	ἐξελέγχω convict, refute, expose	κόρη, ἡ maiden, girl (1a)
ἀφίσταμαι (ἀποστα-) relinquish claim to; revolt from	ζημία, ἡ fine (1b)	μνᾶ, ἡ mina (60 drachmas) (1b)
ἐγγυάω engage, promise	ἠπιστάμην imperf. of ἐπισταμαι know how to (+inj.)	προίξ (προικ-), ἡ dowry (3a)
ἐκβάλλω (ἐκβαλ-) throw out; divorce	καὶ δὴ and really; as a matter of fact; let us suppose; there! look!	ὕβριζω treat violently, disgracefully
ἐκδίδωμι (ἐκδο-) give in marriage		φύσις, ἡ nature, temperament, character (3c)

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve B

ἄν (+aor. ind.) 'would have ...'	ἐοικ-ώς (ἐοικот-) reasonable	πρίν before (+inf.)
ἀναλαμβάνω take back	ἐπιμελέ-ομαι take care of (+gen.)	προθύμως readily, actively
ἀνθρώπων-ος -η -ον human, mortal	ἐπισκοπέ-ομαι visit	πρόσφορ-ος -ον useful for (+dat.)
ἄπαις (ἀπαιδ-) childless	ἐρήμος -ον lacking in (+gen.)	τίκτ-ω (τεκ-) bear
ἀπέθανεν aor. of ἀποθνήσκω (ἀποθαν-) die	ἔτεκε see τίκτω	τῶν θεραπευσόντων 'of those who would look after him'
ἀσθενέ-ω fall ill	ἔχ-ω (+adv.) be (in x condition)	ὕγιαίν-ω be healthy, well
γεννήτ-ης, ὁ member of γένος (a smaller grouping of families within the phratry) (1d)	θεραπεύ-ω look after	ὑπισχνέ-ομαι (ὑποσχ-) promise (to) (+fut. inf.)
γνήσι-ος -α -ον legitimate	κάμν-ω be ill	φράτηρ (φρατερ-), ὁ member of phratry (family group) (3a)
διατίθε-μαι be put in x (adv.) state	κνέ-ω be pregnant	ψυχαγωγέ-ω win over
διαφορ-ά, ἡ disagreement, differences (1b)	λογισμ-ός, ὁ calculation (2a)	ὡς (+fut. part.) in order to ὡς θεραπεύσουσαι καὶ ... ἐπιμελησόμεναι 'to look after and take care of' (nom. pl. f.)
εἰ (+aor. ind.) 'if... had -ed'	μίσ-ος, τό hatred (3c)	
ἐκπέμπ-ω divorce	οἰκεί-ος, ὁ relative (2a)	
	ὀργ-ή, ἡ anger (1a)	
	παλαι-ός -ά -όν of old	
	παρούσα being with (+d.it.) (part. of πάρεμι)	
	περιγίγν-ομαι survive	
	πονηρῶς poorly	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναλαμβάνω (ἀναλαβ-) take back, take up	λογισμός, ὁ calculation (2a)	πρόθυμος -ον ready, eager, willing, active
ἄπαις (ἀπαιδ-) childless	μίσος, τό hatred (3c)	φράτηρ (φρατερ-), ὁ member of a phratry (a group of families with certain religious and social functions) (3a)
ἐκπέμπω send out, divorce	οἰκείος, ὁ relative (2a)	
ἐπιμελέομαι care for (+gen.)	οἰκείος α ον related, domestic, family	
ἐρήμος ον empty, deserted; devoid of (+gen.)	ὀργή, ἡ anger (1a)	
ἔχω (+adv.) be (in X condition)	παλαιός ἄ ὄν ancient, old, of old	ὡς (+fut. part.) in order to
	πρίν (+inf.) before	

---

 ○ Grammar for Section Twelve A–B
 

---

*Summary:*

Aor. inf. pass.

Fut. part.

ὡς + fut. part.

πρὶ + inf.

**Verbs**

Aorist infinitive passive παυσθῆναι 'to be stopped'

158 The form of the aorist passive infinitive is as follows:

παυσθῆ-ναι 'to be stopped'

*Note**The formation depends on the aorist passive stem + (η)ναι. Cf.*

ἡδικήθην ἀδικηθῆναι

ἔγραψην γραφῆναι.

Cf. aor. pass. at 143.

*Future participle active, middle, passive: παύσων 'about to stop' etc.*

159 The forms of the future participles are as follows:

Active:	παύσ-ων -ουσα -ον (-οντ-)	'about to stop'
Middle:	παυσ-όμεν-ος -η -ον	'about to stop'
Passive:	παυσθη-σόμεν-ος -η -ον	'about to be stopped'

*Notes*(i) *The meanings of the future participle are 'about to . . . , on the point of . . . , intending to . . . '.*(ii) *The future active and middle are based on the future stem, to which present participle endings (active or middle) are added.**The future passive participle, like the infinitive and indicative (see 157), is based on the future passive stem, e.g.*

παύω (ἐπαύσθην) → παυσθήσομαι → παυσθησόμενος

ὡς + future participle 'in order to'

160 Observe the use of ὡς + future participle to denote *purpose* (lit. 'as on the point of ') 'with the intention of . . . in order to -'. As you have already met in accusative and infinitive/participle constructions (146, 156), if the subject of the ὡς clause is the same as the main verb, the participle will go into the nominative; if different, into the accusative, e.g.

ἦλθον ὡς ἄξων Νέαιραν 'I came with the intention of taking Neaira'

Note

From now on, the Greek practice of changing the subject in certain clauses to the accusative if it is different from the subject of the main verb (or leaving it in the nominative (or not quoting it at all) if it is the same) will be referred to as 'Change of subject in the accusative'.

πρὶν 'before'

161 πρὶν means 'before' and takes an infinitive, e.g. πρὶν ἀπελθεῖν 'before departing'. The tense of the infinitive has no temporal, only aspectual, force. Change of subject in the accusative, e.g.

πρὶν ἀπελθεῖν εὗξαντο 'before they left, they prayed'

ἀφικόμην πρὶν Νέαιραν Ἀθήναζε ἐλθεῖν 'I arrived before Neaira went to Athens'

○

## Exercises for Section Twelve B

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Pick out from the following list the future participles. Give their 1st s. pres. ind. form and its meaning:  
 ἐκβαλοῦντι, λαβούσης, ἐντευξομένη, εἰσαχθησόμενος, θωπεύσαντος, ὑπαρξάσας, καταστήσονται, παρέξοντες, τιμῶσα, ἐκδώσοντα, ἀδικηθεῖσι, ἐρῶν, θησόντων, καταφρονούντες, ἀφαιρησόμενος, ἀγωνισαμέναις, γνωσομένην, ὀλέσασι, λήσουσαν, ἐλόν, ἐσόμενον, ἀναγκασθησομένῳ, ἐπιδειξουσῶν, πευσομένων, γραψαμένῳ, ἀποθανουμένη, παραληψομένη, ἐργασαμένους, ἐκπεσοῦμενοι, ἐκπέμποντι
2. Pick out from this list aorist passive infs. Give their pres. ind. form. What verbs do the other infs. in the list belong to?  
 εἶναι, πεισθῆναι, ἐκπεμφθῆναι, εἶδέναι, ἀποδιδόναι, ἐξαπατηθῆναι, θεῖναι, ἐξελεγχθῆναι, δεικνύναι, ἀπολλύναι, ὑβρισθῆναι, ἐκβληθῆναι, ἀποδοῦναι, ἀφιστάναι, διατεθῆναι, τιθέναι
3. Translate these sentences, changing the form of the bracketed word to fut. part., to complete the sense:
  - a. ἦλθον ἐκεῖνοι ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν Στεφάνου ὡς (ἄγω) τὴν Νέαιραν.
  - b. ἀπῆλθον αἱ γυναῖκες Ἀθήναζε ὡς (διατρίβω) ἐν τῇ Στεφάνου οἰκίᾳ καὶ (ἐργάζομαι).

- c. βαδίζω οὖν πρὸς αὐτὸν ὡς (λέγω) ἀληθῆ καὶ (ἀκούω) ψευδῆ.  
 d. εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον ὁ ἀνὴρ ὡς (ἀπολογέομαι) καὶ (ἀπολύομαι).  
 4. Translate the introductory statement and each of the bracketed sentences; then change the bracketed sentences into πρίν + inf. clauses, dependent upon the introductory statement. Translate your answers:
- a. ὁ Στέφανος εἰσήγαγεν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον τὸν Φράστορα  
 (i) (ὁ Φράστωρ ἐγράψατο γραφὴν)  
 (ii) (τὸ τῆς Φανοῦς παιδίον ἐγένετο)  
 (iii) (τὸ παιδίον ἀνελήφθη ὑπὸ Φράστορος)  
 (iv) (ἔγνω ὅτι ἐξελεγχθήσεται ἀδικῶν)
- b. ὁ Φράστωρ ἀνείλετο τὴν γραφὴν  
 (i) (εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον)  
 (ii) (ἔξέπεμπε τὴν Φανώ)  
 (iii) (ὑπισχνεῖται ἀναλήψεσθαι τὸ παιδίον)  
 (iv) (ἐλέχθησαν οὗτοι οἱ λόγοι ὑπὸ τῆς Νεαίρας)

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve C

ἀδελφ-ή, ἡ sister (1a)	ἐγγράφ-ω enlist, register	νοσέ-ω be sick
ἂν (+ aor. ind.) 'would have'	ἐγγυητ-ός -ή -όν legally married	ὄμνυ-μι (ὄμοσ-) swear
ἀποψηφίζ-ομαι vote against, reject (+ gen.)	εἰ (+ aor. ind.) 'if . . . had -ed'	περιφαν-ής -ές very evident
ἀσθενεί-α, ἡ illness (1b)	ἐκ-ών -ούσα -όν willing(ly)	πράττ-ω (πραξ-) do
ἀσθενέ-ω be ill	ἐπιδείκνυ-μι (ἐπιδειξ-) show, prove	προκαλέ-ομαι challenge
Βρυτίδ-αι, οἱ the Brytidai (3a) (name of genos to which Phrastor belonged)	ἤ μὴν indeed, truly	Σάτυρ-ος, ὁ Satyros (2a) (father of Phrastor's new wife)
γεννήτ-ης, ὁ member of genos (1d)	θεραπεύ-ω tend, look after	τέλει-ος -α -ον perfect, unblemished
γέν-ος, τό genos (a smaller group of families within the phratry) (3c)	ἱερ-ά, τά sacrifices (2b)	τό + inf. = noun
γνήσι-ος -α -ον legitimate	κατά (+ gen.) by, in name of	τό ἄπαις εἶναι childlessness
Δίφιλ-ος, ὁ Diphilos (2a) (the brother of Phrastor's new wife)	λαγχάν-ω (λαχ-) bring (suit) against (+ dat.)	τό ἀσθενεῖν illness
	λείπ-ω (λιπ-) leave, abandon	τό θεραπεύειν care, looking after
	Μελιτ-εύς, ὁ of the deme Melite (3g)	τό μισεῖν hating, hatred
		τό νοσεῖν being sick, illness
		ὡς τάχιστα as soon as

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀσθενεία ἡ illness, weakness (1b)	within the phratry) (3c)	λαγχάνω (δίκτην) (λαχ-) bring (suit) against, obtain by lot, run as candidate for office
ἀσθενέω be ill, fall ill	γνήσιος α ον legitimate, genuine	λείπω (λιπ-) leave, abandon
γεννήτης, ὁ member of genos (1d)	ἐγγράφω enrol, enlist, register	νοσέω be sick
γένος, τό genos (smaller groupings of families	ἐκών οὔσα ὄν willing(ly)	ὄμνυμι (ὄμοσ-) swear
	ἐπιδείκνυμι (ἐπιδειξ-) prove, show, demonstrate	
	θεραπεύω look after, tend	

---

○ Grammar for Section Twelve C

---

*Summary.*

Past unfulf. cond.

**Conditional sentences with ἄν**

162 You have already met 'future remote conditions' (151) and 'present unfulfilled conditions' (152), the former indicated by an optative in both clauses, the latter by an imperfect in both clauses, and both showing ἄν in the main clause.

Past unfulfilled conditions show an AORIST INDICATIVE in both clauses, with ἄν in the main clause, and take the form 'If x had -, y would have resulted' e.g.

εἰ ἡμᾶς ἔπεισας, ἠκούσαμεν ἄν 'if you had persuaded us, we would have listened'.

*Notes*

(i) That completes unfulfilled conditions. Note that one can have mixed conditions, e.g. 'If I had done this, I would now be happy', and in these cases Greek follows the individual rules for each clause separately – in this case, the 'if' clause would be aorist, the main clause imperfect.

(ii) Where no ἄν appears, translate normally, without using 'would', 'should', etc., e.g.

εἰ σοφός εἰμι ἐγώ, σὺ μῶπος εἶ 'if I am wise, you are foolish'

(On conditionals in general, Reference Grammar O; and Language Survey (6).)

○

---

Exercises for Section Twelve C

---

1. Translate each pair of statements (omitting εἰ), then link the two statements by making them into past conditions with ἄν:
  - a. (εἰ) ἄπαις ἀποθνήσκει Φράστῳ οἱ οἰκείοι λαμβάνουσι τὰ αὐτοῦ
  - b. (εἰ) ἀστῆς θυγάτηρ ἐστὶ Φανῶ οὐκ ὀργίζεται Στέφανος
  - c. (εἰ) οἶδε Φανῶ Νεαίρας οὖσαν θυγατέρα ὃ Φράστῳ ἐκβάλλει ὡς τάχιστα αὐτήν
  - d. (εἰ) Φανῶ ξείνης θυγάτηρ καλεῖται Φράστῳ οὐκ ἔξαπατᾶται
  - e. (εἰ) οὐ λαγχάνει Στέφανος τὴν δίκην ταύτην οὐ γράφεται Φράστῳ αὐτὸν γραφήν

---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve D

---

ἀποψηφίζ-ομαι reject, vote  
against (+ gen.)

γαμέ-ω (γῆμ-) marry

ἐπιδεικνύ-ω = ἐπιδείκνυ-μι

καταμαρτυρέ-ω give  
evidence against (+ gen.)

μαρτυρέ-ω give evidence,  
bear witness

περιφαν-ής -ές very clear

πράξ-ις, ἡ deed, action, fact  
(3c)

τό + inf. = noun

τὸ ἄπαις εἶναι childlessness

τὸ ἀποψηφίζεσθαι rejection

τὸ μὴ ἐθέλειν; ἐθελῆσαι not  
wanting, refusal

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀποψηφίζομαι reject (+ gen.)

γαμέω (γῆμ-) marry

καταμαρτυρέω give evidence  
against (+ gen.)

μαρτυρέω give evidence, bear  
witness

περιφανής ἐς very clear

---

## ○ Grammar for Section Twelve D

---

*Summary:*

τό + inf.

### Infinitives as nouns

163 τό + infinitive fulfils the function of a noun, e.g.

τὸ φιλεῖν, or τὸ φιλῆσαι 'loving, love'

τὸ μισεῖν 'hatred, hating'

They are used exactly as nouns are in Greek, e.g.

διὰ τὸ μισεῖν 'because of his hatred'

τῷ μὴ ἀδικεῖν 'by not committing a crime'

τοῦ ἀπολογεῖσθαι ἔνεκα 'for the sake of his defence'

τὸ πλούσιον εἶναι 'wealth'

164 Observe that, since the infinitive is a *verb*-form, it can have a subject; and the change of subject in the accusative rule applies, e.g.

Νέαιρα ἀπῆλθε διὰ τὸ κακοδαίμων εἶναι 'Neaira left because she was unlucky'

Νέαιρα ἀπῆλθε διὰ τὸ Φράστορα μισεῖν αὐτήν 'Neaira left because Phrastor hated her'

*Note*

Pay attention, as far as is possible, to the aspectual sense of the verb. Thus τὸ φιλεῖν means 'loving' (permanently), while τὸ φιλῆσαι means demonstrating *φιλία* by an act, e.g. 'kissing'. By using the article with the infinitive, it was possible to indicate differences of aspect which nouns could not indicate.



---

## Exercises for Section Twelve D

---

### (b c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate each sentence, then convert the underlined words or clauses into expressions using *τό, τοῦ, τῷ + inf.*:
  - a. κακόν ἐστιν ἡ ἀσθενεία
  - b. Φράστωρ ἀνέλαβε τὸ παιδίον διὰ τὴν νόσον καὶ τὸ μίσος τὸ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους καὶ τὴν ἀπαιδίαν.
  - c. Στέφανος δῆλος ἦν ἀδικῶν, διότι οὐκ ᾔμοσεν.
  - d. φάνερὸν ἐστὶ τὸ παιδίον ξένης ὄν, διότι οἱ γεννήται ἀπεψηφίσαντο αὐτοῦ καὶ οὐκ ἐνέγραψαν εἰς τὸ γένος.
  - e. οἱ δὲ γεννήται ἐβιάσθησαν ἀποψηφίσασθαι τοῦ παιδίου, διότι ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν οὐ γνήσιον ὄντα.
  - f. ἀγαθόν ἐστιν ἡ θεραπεία.
  - g. καὶ μείαν ἐποίησατο τούτων, ὅτι ἡσθένει καὶ εἰς ἀπορίαν κατέστη καὶ ὅτι ὑπὸ Νεαίρας ἐθεραπεύετο.
  - h. μέγα γὰρ κακόν ἐστιν ἡ ἀσέβεια.
  - i. ἠναγκάσθη εἰσελθεῖν βιαζόμενος.

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. Stephanos went to Phrastor, intending to promise him Phano in marriage.
2. Phrastor married Phano before he knew she was Neaira's daughter.
3. If Phano had not looked after Phrastor, he would not have taken back the child.
4. Phrastor took back Phano's child because of his being ill and because of Phano's looking after him.
5. If the child had been legitimate, Phrastor would have sworn the oath.

---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve E

---

ἅγι-ος -α -ον holy

ἄκυρ-ος -ον invalid

ἀναιδέει -α, ἡ shamelessness

(1b)

ἄπειρ-ος -ον inexperienced in

(+ gen.)

ἀπόρητ-ος -ον forbidden

ἄρητ-ος -οι secret,

mysterious

ἀρχ-ή, ἡ office, position (1a)

ἀσεβ-ής -ές unholy, impious

βασιλ-εύς, ὁ basileus archon

(3g) (state officer, in charge of certain important religious rites)

βασιλεύ-ω be basileus

δεδήλωκ-α I have shown

(δηλό-ω)

διηγέ-ομαι explain	ιερ-ά, τά rites, sacrifice (2b)	πεποίηκ-ε(ν) (she) has done (ποιέω)
Διόνυσ-ος, ὁ Dionysos (2a) (god of nature, especially of wine)	καταπεφρόνηκ-ε(ν) he has despised (καταφρονέω)	πράξ-ις, ἡ fact, action (3c)
ἔθ-ος, τό manner, habits (3c)	λαγχάν-ω (λαχ-) run as (candidate for office)	πράττ-ω (πραξ-) do, act
ἐμφαν-ής -ές open	μετέχ-ω take part in (+ gen.)	προσῆκ-ει it is fitting, right (for. + dat.)
εὐγεν-ής -ές well-born, aristocratic	οἷ (to) where	τέθυκ-ε(ν) (she) has sacrificed (θύω)
εὐλάβει-α, ἡ respect (1b)	ὅποι-ος -α -ον of what sort	φάσκ-ω allege, claim
Θεογέν-ης, ὁ Theogenes (3d) (Phano's husband for a short while)	ότου=οὔτινος (όστις)	
	πάρεδρ-ος, ὁ assistant (2a)	
	πάτρι-α, τά ancestral rites (2b)	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄπειρος ον inexperienced m (+ gen.)	βασιλεύω be king, be king archon	ὅποιος α ον of what kind
ἀρχή, ἡ position, office; start; rule (1a)	ἐμφανής ές open, obvious	πράξις, ἡ fact, action (3c)
ἀσεβής ές unholy	ἔθος, τό manner, habit (3c)	πράττω (πραξ-) do, perform, fare
βασιλεύς, ὁ king, king archon (3g)	ιέρά, τά rites, sacrifices (2b)	
	οἷ (to) where	

## ○ Grammar for Section Twelve E

### Summary:

Perf. ind. act.

### Verbs

The perfect indicative active πέπαυκα 'I have stopped'

165 The forms of the perfect indicative active are as follows:

πέπαυκ-α 'I have stopped'

πέπαυκ-ας

πέπαυκ-ε(ν)

πεπαύκ-αμεν

πεπαύκ-ατε

πεπαύκ-ασι(ν)

### Notes

(i) At an early stage of the language, the perfect meant 'I am in the position of having -ed', i.e. there is a strong present force to it, e.g.

τέθνηκα (θνήσκω) 'I am dead' cf. ὄλωλα (perfect of ὄλλυμι) meaning 'I am done for, ruined'

ἔστηκα (ἵσταμαι) 'I am standing' (cf. 144 (ii))

In Classical Greek, it also acquired the meaning 'I have -ed' (a meaning often associated, though not exclusively, with the -κα suffix). Sometimes the same perfect form can have both forces. It is important to bear the early meaning in mind.

(ii) The mark of the perfect is the reduplicated stem. This is in fact a feature you have already met with the -μι verbs (e.g. δο, διδο; θε, τιθε), so it is not wholly new. This reduplication is maintained throughout all the forms (participle, infinitive, etc.) and is not dropped as, for example, the augment is for non-indicative forms of the aorist. Verbs reduplicate after prefixes (cf. on augments 59 note (iv)).

(iii) Observe the following patterns of reduplication:

(a) normal:

παύω - πέπαυκα 'I have stopped'

λύω - λέλυκα 'I have released'

(b) θ, φ, χ reduplicate with τ, π, κ, e.g.

θύω - τέθυκα 'I have sacrificed'

φαίνω - πέφηνα 'I have revealed'

χαίρω - κεχάρηκα 'I have rejoiced'

(iv) Note the perfect of δίδωμι → δέδωκα 'I have given', of τίθημι → τέθηκα 'I have placed', and of δείκνυμι → δέδειχα 'I have shown'. Their forms in the perfect are entirely regular. ○

## Exercises for Section Twelve E

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Write down the perfect reduplication of the following verbs, going no further than the first three letters (e.g. for θύω, write τεθ-: do not count prefixes):

τιμάω, θωπεύω, μαρτυρέω, γίγνομαι, φαίνομαι, πυνθάνομαι, επιδημέω, επιδείκνυμι, καλέω, τίθημι, πείθω, εκβάλλω, γράφω, εκπέμπω, πράττω, βιάζομαι, λείπω, λύω, νικάω, χράομαι, φύω, γαμέω

2. Translate and give the 1st s. pres. ind. act. form of each of these regular perfects (consulting the Greek-English vocabulary where necessary). Change singulars to plural and vice-versa:

λελύκασι, μεμαρτυρήκατε, νενίκηκε, τετιμήκαμεν, επιδεδήμηκας, γέγραφα, βεβοήκατε, κεκέλευκε, πεπράχαμεν, πεφίληκα, κεχώρηκας, πεφροντίκασι

---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve F

---

<p>ἀκακί-α, ἡ innocence (1b)          ἄκακ-ος -ον innocent          ἄνθρωπ-ος, ἡ woman (2a)          ἀντιβολέ-ω entreat          ἀπελαύν-ω exclude, reject          Ἄρεοπαγίτ-ης, ὁ member of          the Areopagos council (1d)          Ἄρε-ος πάγ-ος, ὁ Areopagos          hill (2a) (<i>where the council          met</i>)          ἄρηρτ-ος -ον secret,          mysterious          ἄρχων (ἄρχοντ-), ὁ archon (3a)          βουλ-ή, ἡ council (1a)</p>	<p>διοικέ-ω administer          ἐλέε-ω pity          ἐνέα nine (indecl.)          ἐξαπατηθεῖν he was deceived          (ἐξαπατάω)          ἐπέχ-ω (ἐπισχ-) hold off          ζημιό-ω fine          ἱκετεύ-ω beg          κηδεύ-ω ally oneself by          marriage to (+ dat.)          κρίν-ω judge, accuse          πάρεδρ-ος, ὁ assistant (2a)          πρόνοιαν ποιέ-ομαι show          concern</p>	<p>πυνθάν-ομαι (πυθ-) learn,          hear, discover          συνέδρι-ον, τό council board          (2b)          ὑπισχνέ-ομαι          (ὑποσχ-) promise          φαίν-ομαι (+ inf.) seem          to – (but not in fact to –)          χαλεπῶς φέρ-ω be angry,          displeased          ψεύδ-ομαι lie</p>
--	---	--

### Vocabulary to be learnt

<p>ἄνθρωπος, ἡ woman (2a)          ἄρχων (ἄρχοντ-), ὁ archon          (3a)          βουλή, ἡ council (1a)          διοικέω administer, run</p>	<p>ἱκετεύω beg, supplicate          κρίνω (κριν-) judge, decide          πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-) learn, hear          by inquiry</p>	<p>φαίνομαι (+ inf.) seem          to (but not in fact to –)          χαλεπῶς φέρω be angry at,          displeased with          ψεύδομαι lie, tell lies</p>
--	--	---

---

## ○ Grammar for Section Twelve F

---

### Summary:

Aor. opt. pass.

Opt. in indir. sp.

Fut. opt.

### Verbs

*The aorist optative passive παυσθείην*

166 The forms of the aorist passive optative are as follows:

παυσθ-είην

παυσθ-είης

παυσθ-είη

παυσθ-είμεν

παυσθ-είτε

παυσθ-είεν

Note

Look for these by the presence of the aorist passive stem in -θ- with the endings dominated by -ει-.

Use of the optative in indirect speech

167 Indirect speech which uses the indicative after (for example) ὅτι 'that' can use the *optative* in place of the indicative (*without altering the meaning at all*) when the verb introducing the indirect speech is imperfect or aorist. The optative will adopt the same tense as the indicative and will, like the indicative, indicate what the speaker himself actually said, e.g.

Indicative:	ἔλεξεν ὅτι ἐπαύσατο	} 'he said that he had stopped'
Optative:	ἔλεξεν ὅτι παύσαιτο	
Indicative:	ἤδη ὅτι παύσεται	} 'I knew that he would stop'
Optative:	ἤδη ὅτι παύσοιτο	

Note

From now on we will use the term 'secondary sequence' to mean that the main verb of the sentence is imperfect or aorist, and the term 'primary sequence' to mean that the main verb of the sentence is present, future or perfect. (Cf. also Reference Grammar K, p. 301.)

Future optative παύσοιμι, παυσοίμην

168 The forms of the future optative are, in the active and middle, the same as for the present, but based on the future stem, e.g.

Active:	παύσ-οιμι, παύσ-οις, etc.	} Cf. 95
Middle:	παυσ-οίμην, παύσ-οιο, etc.	

For the passive, they are like the present middle but based on the future passive stem, i.e.

Passive: παυσθησ-οίμην, παυσθήσ-οιο, etc.

Note

The future optative is used only in indirect speech as indicated in 167. Distinguish carefully παύοιμι (pres.), παύσοιμι (fut.) and παύσαιμι (aor.). ○

## Exercises for Section Twelve F

(b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate these sentences, then change the subordinate verbs from indicative to optative:
  - a. οἱ δίκασται ἤροντο ὅτι ἐπραξεν ὁ Στέφανος καὶ ὅποια ἦν ἡ ἀσέβεια ἢ τῆς Νεαίρας καὶ ὅπως τὴν πόλιν ἠδίκησεν.

- b. οὐ γὰρ ἤδει ὁ Θεογένης ὅτου θυγάτηρ ἐστὶ οὐδὲ ὅτι ἠργάζετο τῷ σώματι.
- c. Θεογένης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐκ ἤδει ὅποιοι ἦσαν οἱ τῆς Φανούς τρόποι καὶ ὅτι ἐπέισθη ὑπὸ Στεφάνου ποιεῖν τοῦτο.
- d. ἡ βουλὴ χαλεπῶς ἔφερεν τὸ πρᾶγμα, ὅτι Φανὼ ἐξεδόθη τῷ Φράστορι καὶ ὡς τὰ ἱερὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως ἐπράχθη ὑπὸ ξένης.
- e. ἀρ' οὐκ ἤκουες ὡς εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον εἰσήλθομεν καὶ ὡς ἐκείνοι οἱ ἄνδρες κατεδικάσθησαν καὶ ἄττα ἐλέχθη ἐν τῇ κατηγορίᾳ;

### Vocabulary

ἄττα = ἄτινα

2. Translate the following questions, then turn them into indirect questions, using ἠρόμην as the introductory verb, and altering direct question words to indirect (see 66 and 136), and indicative verbs to optative e.g:

τί ἔπραξεν ὁ Στέφανος; = ἠρόμην ὅ τι πράξειεν ὁ Στέφανος.

- a. τίς ταῦτα ἐποίησεν;
- b. πῶς ἔπραξεν οἱ ἄρχοντες;
- c. τίς ἦν ἡ γυνὴ ἡ Θεογένους;
- d. ποία γυνὴ ἦν ἡ Φανώ;
- e. πόθεν ἐξέβαλε τὴν γυναῖκα ὁ Θεογένης;

---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve G

---

αἰσχρ-ός -ά -όν base,  
shameful

ἀποφαίνωσι (they) display  
(ἀποφαίνω)

γεγένημαι I have become,  
been (γίγνομαι)

διαπράττ-ομαι do  
διαπεπραγμένον having done  
(διαπράττομαι)

διαπεπράχθαι to have done  
(διαπράττομαι)

εἰκότως reasonably  
εὐεργεσί-α, ἡ good service,  
public service (1b)

καβεστώτα having been  
made (καθίσταμαι)

καταπεφρονηκέναι to have  
despised (καταφρονέω)

λειτουργέ-ω perform (a state  
duty)

λειτουργί-α, ἡ a state duty  
(1b)

λελειουργηκέναι to have  
performed (λειτουργέω)

νενικηκέναι to have won  
(νικάω)

οἷάν who(ever)

πολιτεί-α, ἡ state,  
constitution (1b)

πεπολίτευμαι I have  
governed (πολιτεύομαι)

πολιτεύ-ομαι govern

πρόγον-ος, ὁ forebear,  
ancestor (2a)

συμφορ-ά, ἡ disaster (1b)

σφέτερο-ος -α -ον their own

τετρηραρχικότα having  
served as trierarch

(τριηραρχέω)

τριηραρχέ-ω serve as  
trierarch

φάσκ-ω allege

φιλότιμ-ος -ον ambitious

χορηγ-ός, ὁ chorus-financier  
(2a) (a duty which the state  
imposed on the rich)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

αἰσχρὸς ἄ ὄν base, shameful; ugly (of people) (comp. αἰσχίων; sup. αἰσχιστος)	act, perform εἰκότως reasonably, rightly πολιτεία, ἡ state, constitution (1b)	πολιτεύομαι be a citizen πρόγονος, ὁ forebear, ancestor (2a) φάσκω allege, claim, assert
---	--	---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve H

ἁμαρτάν-ω make a mistake ἀπόλωλεν he is done for (ἀπόλλυμι) γεγενημένην having been (γίγνομαι) εἴληφε he has taken (λαμβάνω) εἴρηται (it) has been spoken (λέγω) εἰσηγμένος having been	introduced (εἰσάγω) ἰσχυρ-ός -ά -όν strong, powerful καταμεμαρτύρηται he has had evidence brought against him (καταμαρτυρέω) κεχρήται he has used (χράομαι) παλλακ-ή, ἡ kept slave, concubine (1a)	πέπρακται (it) has been done (πράττω) πεφύκασιν (they) are born to (φύομαι) (+ inf.) πεφυκυῖαν born (acc. s. f.) (φύομαι) φαίν-ω reveal, declare φύ-ω bear; mid., grow (ἔφυν = I am naturally) ὥστε so that; and &c)
--	---	---

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἁμαρτάνω (ἁμαρτ-) err; do wrong, make a mistake ἀπόλωλα (perf. of ἀπόλλυμαι) I am lost γεγένημαι (perf. of γίγνομαι) I have been	ἰσχυρὸς ἄ ὄν strong, powerful εἴρημαι (perf. of λέγω) I have been said καθέστηκα (perf. pass. of καθίσταμαι) I have been made, put	εἴληφα (perf. of λαμβάνω) I have taken φύω bear; mid., grow; aor. mid. ἔφυν, perf. πέφυκα be naturally φαίνω reveal, declare, indict
---	---	---

## Vocabulary for Section Twelve I

ἀκηκόατε you have heard (ἀκούω) δίκην δίδωμι (δο-) pay penalty, be punished εἴργασται he has done (ἐργάζομαι) ἐλάττων (ἐλαττον-) smaller εὐσεβέ-ω act righteously ἡδίκηκός τις having committed crimes against (acc. pl. m.)	ἡδίκημένοι having been injured (nom. pl. m.) (ἀδικέω) ἡσεβηκέναι to have been impious (ἀσεβέω) ἡσεβηκότων having been impious (gen. pl. m.) (ἀσεβέω) ἡσεβηκυῖαν having been impious (acc. s. f.) (ἀσεβέω)	καταπεφρονηκέναι to have despised (καταφρονέω) μᾶλλον ἢ rather than, more than πεφυκότας inclined by nature (acc. pl. m.) (φύομαι) τιμωρίαν ποιέ-ομαι take revenge on (+ gen.) ὕβρισμένοι having been violently treated (nom. pl. m.) (ὕβριζω)
--	---	--

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἀκήκοα (perf. of ἀκούω) I have heard	ἐλάττων (ἐλαττον-) smaller, less, fewer
δίκην δίδωμι (δο-) he punished, pay penalty	εὐσεβέω act righteously μᾶλλον ἢ rather than; more than

○ **Grammar for Section Twelve G–I***Summary:*

Perf. ind. mid./pass.

Perf. inf., part.

Irr. perf.

**Verbs**

*Perfect indicative middle and passive πέπαυμαι 'I have stopped, been stopped'*

169 The forms of the perfect indicative middle and passive are as follows:

πέπαυ-μαι 'I have stopped' or 'I have been stopped'

πέπαυ-σαι

πέπαυ-ται

πεπαύ-μεθα

πέπαυ-σθε

πέπαυ-νται (or πεπαυ- μέν-οι -αι εἰσίν)

*Notes*

(i) Since the middle and passive forms are the same, we shall distinguish passive meaning to start with by the use of ὑπό 'by' or a dative of instrument, 'by, with'.

(ii) There is an alternative third person plural form to -νται- that is, -μένοι εἰσί(ν) (i.e. perfect participle + εἰμί).

(iii) Note that, after a perfect, 'by a person' can be expressed by the *DATIVE*, e.g. πάνθ' ἡμῖν πεποιήται 'everything has been done by us'.

*Perfect infinitives and participles*

170 The forms of the perfect infinitives and participles are as follows:

*Infinitives*

*Active:* πεπαυκ-έναι 'to have stopped'

*Middle/Passive:* πεπαύ-σθαι 'to have stopped/been stopped'



*Note*

Look for a perfect reduplicated stem + *-έναι* or *-οθαι*.

*Participles*

Active: πεπαυκ-ώς -υῖα -ός (-οτ-) 'having stopped'

Middle/Passive: πεπαυ-μέν-ος -η -ον (n.b. accent) 'having stopped, having been stopped'

*Notes*

(i) The active participle is of mixed declension, with the m. and n. declining like 3a nouns on the stem -οτ- and the f. declining like 1b nouns.

(ii) The middle/passive declines like καλός.

*Regular and irregular perfects*

171 Note the following perfect forms and changes involved:

*(a) Regular changes*

ἀσεβέω	→ ἠσέβηκα	'I have acted impiously'
ἀδικέω	→ ἠδίκηκα	'I have done wrong'
ὕβριζω	→ ὕβρικα	'I have acted aggressively'
ἀγγέλλω	→ ἠγγελα	'I have announced'
ζητέω	→ ἐζήτηκα	'I have sought'
στερέω	→ ἐστέρηκα	'I have deprived'
ρίπτω	→ ἔρριφα	'I have hurled'

*(b) Irregular changes*

ἔρχομαι	→ ἐλήλυθα	'I have come'
λαμβάνω	→ εἵληφα	'I have taken'
λέγω	→ εἶρηκα	'I have said' (from stem ἐρ – cf. 106)
φέρω	→ ἐνήνοχα	'I have carried, endured'
πάσχω	→ πέπονθα	'I have suffered'
ἵσταμαι	→ ἔστηκα	'I stand' (participle ἐστ-ώς 'standing, established')

(Cf. *Language Survey* (8), p. 318.)

*Note*

Cf. perfect ἔστηκα and aorists ἔθηκα, ἔδωκα.

**Revise:**

Aor. opt. 129 Reference Grammar N

δίδωμι 131

ἀμελής|γλυκός 133

Rel. 134-6

---

## Exercises for Section Twelve I

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate the sentences, then change singular verbs to plural and vice-versa:
  - a. εὖ πεπολίτευσαι.
  - b. ἡδίκημέθα μεγάλα ὑπὸ Στεφάνου.
  - c. οὗτοι οἱ λόγοι ὑπὸ τῆς Νεαίρας εἴρηνται.
  - d. τεκμηρίῳ φανερω̄ κέχρησθε, ὦ ἄνδρες.
  - e. ἐγὼ αὐτὸς καταμεμαρτύρημαι ὑπ' ἑμαυτοῦ.
  - f. ἐκεῖνοι δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες ταῦτα διαπεπραγμένοι εἰσίν.
  - g. ὁ Φανὸς παῖς εἴσηκται ὑπὸ Στεφάνου εἰς τοὺς φράτερας.
  - h. οὗτοι αἴτιοι γεγενημένοι εἰσὶ πολλῶν κακῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει.
  - i. μεγάλα, ὦνδρες, ὕβρισθε καὶ ἡδίκησθε.
  - j. τοῦτο δ' εἴργασται ὁ κατήγορος.
2. Use (a) οἶδα (b) φάσκω to change the above sentences into indirect statements using nom./acc. + part. with οἶδα and nom./acc. + inf. with φάσκω (use verbs in 1st s.).
3. Do the same as in 2 with the following sentences:
  - a. (ἴσμεν/φαιμέν) Στέφανος οὐδέποτε δίκην δέδωκεν.
  - b. (εὖ οἶδα/φημί) Φανὼ ξένη πέφυκεν.
  - c. (ἤδεισθα/ἔφασκες) ἡ Νεαίρα ἡσέβηκεν εἰς τοὺς θεούς.
  - d. (ἴστε/φατέ) δικασταὶ καθεστήκατε.
  - e. (οἶσθα/φῆς) ὡς τὴν αὐτοῦ θυγατέρα τὴν Φανὼ ἐκδέδωκεν ὁ Στέφανος.

### (d) English into Greek

#### 1. Sentences

Translate into Greek:

1. I have shown that Phano has made sacrifices on behalf of the city.
2. The council asked what sort of wife the king archon had married.
3. Theogenes said that he had been deceived by Stephanos.
4. Stephanos has governed well and performed many noble deeds.
5. We all know that nothing noble has ever been said or done by Stephanos.

#### 2. Prose

Translate into Greek:

Once Phano was proved to be Neaira's daughter, Phrastor divorced her. She, divorced, waited for a short time, intending that Phrastor

should take back her child. And, not long afterwards, Phrastor fell ill. And, because he hated his family and did not want them to get his property, he took back the child before he recovered, not wishing to die childless. Clearly, Phrastor would never have taken back the child had he not fallen ill; for when he recovered, he married a legitimate wife, according to the laws.

### Test Exercise Twelve

Translate into English:

*Menekles put away his wife, since he could not give her children. But, being childless and aging, he wished to adopt a son. He opted for one of his ex-wife's two brothers. The adopted brother here describes how Menekles made this choice.*

(From Isaios, *Menekles*, 10-13, 46-7)

μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐσκόπει ὁ Μενεκλῆς ὅπως μὴ ἔσοιτο ἄπαις, ἀλλ' ἔσοιτο αὐτῷ παῖς, ὅς τις θεραπεύσοι αὐτὸν πρὶν ἀποθανεῖν καὶ τελευτήσαντα θάψοι καὶ εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον τὰ νομιζόμενα αὐτῷ ποιήσοι.

ἐπειδὴ οὖν ἠῦρισκεν οὐδένα ἄλλον οἰκειότερον ἡμῶν ὄνθ' ἑαυτῷ, λόγους πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐποιεῖτο, καὶ ἡ τύχη, ἔφη, 'οὐκ εἶασε ἐκ τῆς ἀδελφῆς τῆς ὑμετέρας παιδάς ἐμαυτῷ γενέσθαι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ἐκ ταύτης τῆς οἰκίας ἐπαιδοποιησάμην ἄν, εἰ οἴός τ' ἦ. ὑμῶν οὖν βούλομαι τὸν ἕτερον ποιήσασθαι υἱόν.' καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς ἐμὸς ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐπήνεσέ τε τοὺς λόγους αὐτοῦ καὶ εἶπεν ὅτι ὁ Μενεκλῆς διὰ τό τε γέρων εἶναι καὶ τὸ ἐρήμος εἶναι δέοιτο ἐμοῦ ὡς θεραπεύσοντος αὐτόν. 'ἐγὼ μὲν γάρ', ἔφη, 'αἰὲ ἀποδημῶ, ὡς σὺ οἴσθα· ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς οὐτοσί', ἐμὲ λέγων, 'ὅς αἰὲ ἐπιδημεῖ, τῶν τε σῶν ἐπιμελήσεται καὶ τῶν ἐμῶν. τοῦτον οὖν ποιήσαι υἱόν.' καὶ ὁ Μενεκλῆς καλῶς ἔφη αὐτὸν λέγειν, καὶ οὕτως ἐποιεῖτό με. *The brother, who claims to have looked after Menekles from then until his death, ends his case with a plea to the jurors not to allow his opponent, who is challenging his right to Menekles' property, to take away his estate and leave Menekles without heirs.*

ὁ δ' ἀντίδικος οὗτος νυνὶ ἄκληρον μὲν ἐμὲ ποιεῖν, ἄπαιδα δὲ τὸν τελευτήσαντα καὶ ἀνώνυμον βούλεται καταστήσαι. μὴ οὖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, πεισθέντες ὑπὸ τούτου ἀφαιρεῖσθέ μου τὸ ὄνομα. ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰς ὑμᾶς ἀφίκται καὶ ὑμεῖς κύριοι γεγένησθε, βοηθήσατε καὶ ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἐν Ἰαίδου ὄντι, καὶ μεμνημένοι τοῦ νόμου καὶ τοῦ ὄρκου ὃν ὀμωμόκατε καὶ τῶν εἰρημένων ὑπὲρ τοῦ πράγματος, τὰ δίκαια κατὰ τοὺς νόμους ψηφίσασθε.

## Vocabulary

τελευτάω die

θάπτω bury

νομιζόμενα, τὰ customary  
rites (2b)

ἀδελφή, ἡ sister (1a)

ἀδελφός, ὁ brother (2a)

ἀποδημέω go abroad

ἄκληρος οὐν disinherited

ἄνωνυμος οὐν nameless

κύριος α οὐν responsible (for

making the decision)

ἐν Ἅιδου in Hades

μεμνημένος perf. part. of  
μιμνήσκομαι

ὀμώμοκα perf. of ὀμνυμι

## Section Thirteen

### Vocabulary for Section Thirteen A

ἀδίκημα (ἀδικηματ-), τό crime (3b)	ἐλήλυθεν she has gone (ἔρχομαι)	κύρι-ος -α -ον able, empowered
ἀμέλει-α, ἡ indifference (1b)	Ἑλλάς ('Ελλαδ-), ἡ Greece (3a)	μισθ-ός, ὁ pay (2a)
ἀτιμώρητ-ος -ον unavenged	ἐπί (+ dat.) for the purpose of	ὀλίγωρ-ος -ον contemptuous
γραφῆναι aor. inf. pass. of γράφω	καθ' ἡμέρας daily, day by day	πέπυσθε you have learnt (πυνθάνομαι)
ἐὰν if	καταλείπ-ω	πολίτις (πολιτιδ-), ἡ female citizen (3a: but acc. s. πολίτῳ)
ἐγνωσμένην known (γιγνώσκω)	(καταλιπ-) bequeath, leave by right	πορνέυ-ομαι prostitute oneself
εἵργασται she has worked (ἐργάζομαι)	κολάσητε you punish (κολάζω)	σῶμα (σωματ-), τό body, person (3b)

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀδίκημα (ἀδικηματ-), τό crime (3b)	ἐπί (+ dat.) for the purpose of, at, near	κύριος α ον able, with power, by right, sovereign
ἐλήλυθα presf. of ἔρχομαι I have come	ἡμέρα, ἡ day (1b)	μισθός, ὁ pay (2a)
Ἑλλάς ('Ελλαδ-), ἡ Greece (3a)	καταλείπω (καταλιπ-) leave behind, bequeath	σῶμα (σωματ-), τό body, person (3b)

### Vocabulary for Section Thirteen B

ἄδει-α, ἡ freedom, carte-blanche (1b)	ἄρρητ-ος -ον secret, mysterious	Διόνυσ-ος, ὁ Dionysos (2a) (god of nature, and especially of wine)
ἀνόητ-ος -ον foolish, thoughtless	βούλωνται they wish (βούλομαι)	ἕκαστ-ος -η -ον each
ἀποψηφίζ-ομαι acquit (+ gen.)	διηγέ-ομαι explain, go through	εἶπητε you say (εἶπον) ἐπειδὴν when (ever)

ἐπιμελ-ής -ές careful  
 ἔρηται she asks (ἠρόμην)  
 καταξιό-ω think it right  
 μετέχ-ω share in (+ gen.)  
 μνημονικῶς indelibly

δλίγωρ-ος -ον contemptuous  
 ὁμογνώμων (ὁμογνωμον-) in  
 agreement with, content  
 with, acquiescent in  
 (+ dat.)

ὁμοίως equally with (+ dat.)  
 πύθωνται they learn  
 (ἐπυθόμην)  
 σώφρων (σωφρον-) sensible,  
 law-abiding  
 ὅ τι ἂν whatever

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀποψηφίζομαι acquit (+ gen.);  
 reject (+ gen.)  
 διηγέομαι explain, relate, go  
 through  
 ἕκαστος η ον each  
 ἐπιμελής ἐς careful  
 μετέχω share in (+ gen.)  
 δλίγωρος ον contemptuous

## Vocabulary for Section Thirteen C

ἄκυρ-ος -ον invalid  
 ἀποψηφισώμεθα we acquit  
 (ἀποψηφίζομαι)  
 βούλωνται they wish  
 (βούλομαι)  
 γε δήπου of course  
 εἰάν if

ἐλέγχ-ω refute, argue against  
 ἐπειδάν when (ever)  
 λέγει (he) speaks (λέγω)  
 μέλει x (dat.) is concerned  
 about y (gen.)  
 οἷς ἂν with whomever  
 ὅ τι ἂν whatever

οὗ ἂν of whomever  
 πολίτ-ις (πολιτιδ-), ἡ female  
 citizen (3a)  
 πόρν-η, ἡ prostitute (1a)  
 συνεπαίν-ω join in praising  
 τύχῳσιν they happen upon  
 (ἔτυχον)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄκυρος ον invalid  
 εἰάν if (ever)  
 ἐλέγχω refute, argue against  
 ἐπειδάν when (ever)  
 μέλει X (dat.) is concerned  
 about Y (gen.)  
 πολίτις (πολιτιδ-), ἡ female  
 citizen (3a: but acc. s.  
 πολίτιν)

## Vocabulary for Section Thirteen D

ἀνέκδοτ-ος -ον unmarried  
 ἀξίωμα (ἄξιωματ-), τό  
 reputation (3b)  
 ἀποδίδῳ (it) gives  
 (ἀποδίδωμι)  
 ἀπολυθῆ (she) is acquitted  
 (ἀπολύω)  
 ἀπορηθῆ (she) is in dire straits  
 (ἀπορέω)  
 βούληται (he) wishes  
 (βούλομαι)

βούλωνται they wish  
 (βούλομαι)  
 γαμῳσιν (they) marry  
 (γαμέω)  
 διακρίν-ω differentiate  
 between  
 δύνηται he is able (δύναμαι)  
 δυνώμεθα we are able  
 (δύναμαι)  
 ἐργασί-α, ἡ function, work  
 (1b)

ἤντινα ἂν whomever  
 ἱκαν-ός -ή -όν adequate,  
 sufficient  
 καθεστήκη he is placed  
 (καθέστηκα)  
 κάλλιον better  
 μέτρι-ος -α -ον reasonable,  
 acceptable  
 νομοθέτ-ης, ὁ lawgiver (1d)  
 ὄψ-ις, ἡ face, looks (3c)



παιδοποιῶνται (they) have children (παιδοποιέομαι) παντελῶς completely, outright	πόρν-η, ἡ prostitute (1a) σκοπέω ὅπως see to it that (+ fut. ind.) τελετ-ή, ἡ rite (1a)	τιμ-ή, ἡ privilege, honour (1a) τρέφ-ω rear, raise ὡς ἄν in whatever way
--	---	--

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

διακρίνω decide, judge between ικανός ἢ ὄν sufficient, able παντελῶς completely, outright πόρνη, ἡ prostitute (1a)	τιμῆ, ἡ honour, privilege, right (1a) τρέφω (θρεψ-) rear, raise, feed, nourish
---	---

**Vocabulary for Section Thirteen E**

ἀποβλέπτε you gaze at (ἀποβλέπω) ἀσελγ-ής -ές disgusting γένησθε you are (ἐγενόμην) ἔλεγχ-ος, ὁ examination, refutation	ἐπί (+ gen.) on, concerned with ἐπιμέλει-α, ἡ care, concern (1b) ἦτε you are (εἶμι) ὀμωμόκατε you have sworn (ὄμνυμι)	ὅταν when (ever) συγγίγν-ομαι (συγγει-) have intercourse with (+ dat.) σωφροσύν-η, ἡ discipline, sense of right and wrong (1a)
--	--	--

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἔλεγχος, ὁ examination, refutation (2a) ἐπιμέλεια, ἡ care, concern (1b) ὅταν whenever
---

**Vocabulary for Section Thirteen F**

ἀπολυθῆ (she) is acquitted (ἀπολύω) ἀσπάζωνται (they) greet (ἀσπάζομαι) ἔδρ-α, ἡ seat (1b) ἔοικε it seems, it is reasonable ἔρωνται (they) ask (ἠρώμηγιέρωτάω)	θώμεθα we cast (τίθημι θε-) ἴω I go (subj. of εἶμι) καταδικασθῆ (she) is condemned (καταδικάζω) κύκλ-ος, ὁ circle (2a) λέγει (he) says (λέγω) περιέλκ-ω drag round προθυμέ-ομαι be eager.	willing στόμα (στοματ-), τό mouth (3b) τριώβολ-ον, τό three obols (dikast's pay) (2b) φλαταρέ-ω talk nonsense
--	---	--

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἔοικε it seems, it is reasonable, it resembles (+ dat)
--

## ○ Grammar for Section Thirteen

*Summary:*

Subj.

Indef. with ἄν

### Verbs

#### *The subjunctive*

172 The forms of almost all subjunctives in all aspects depend upon the following endings attached to the appropriate stems:

<i>Active (and aorist passive)</i>	<i>Middle and passive</i>
stem + -ω	stem + -ωμαι
-ης	-η
-η	-ηται
-ωμεν	-ωμεθα
-ητε	-ησθε
-ωσι(ν)	-ωνται

Consider the following subjunctives:

#### *Present active*

παύ-ω -ης -η etc.

#### *Aorist active*

παύσ-ω, παύσ-ης etc.

#### *Aorist passive*

παυσθ-ῶ, παυσθ-ῆς etc.

#### *Perfect active*

πεπαύκ-ω, πεπαύκ-ης etc.

or: πεπαυκῶς ὦ

πεπαυκῶς ῆς etc.

#### *Present middle/passive*

παύ-ωμαι etc.

#### *Aorist middle*

παύσ-ωμαι etc.

#### *Perfect middle/passive*

πεπαυμένος ὦ, πεπαυμένος ῆς etc.

### Notes

(i) While the subjunctive does have a special meaning when used on its own, you will not be meeting this usage for some time. For the moment, translate the subjunctive as if it were indicative.

(ii) The difference between present and aorist subjunctives is aspectual, not temporal.



## Contr. subjunctives, εἰμί and εἶμι

## Active

ποιέ-ω		τιμά-ω		δηλό-ω	
ποι-ῶ	(έ-ω)	τιμ-ῶ	(ά-ω)	δηλ-ῶ	(ό-ω)
ποι-ῆς	(έ-ης)	τιμ-ᾶς	(ά-ης)	δηλ-οῖς	(ό-ης)
ποι-ῆ	(έ-η)	τιμ-ᾶ	(ά-η)	δηλ-οῖ	(ό-η)
ποι-ῶμεν	(έ-ωμεν)	τιμ-ῶμεν	(ά-ωμεν)	δηλ-ῶμεν	(ό-ωμεν)
ποι-ῆτε	(έ-ητε)	τιμ-ᾶτε	(ά-ητε)	δηλ-ῶτε	(ό-ητε)
ποι-ῶσι(ν)	(έ-ωσι)	τιμ-ῶσι(ν)	(ά-ωσι)	δηλ-ῶσι(ν)	(ό-ωσι)

## Middle/Passive

ποιέ-ομαι		τιμά-ομαι		δηλό-ομαι	
ποι-ῶμαι	(έ-ωμαι)	τιμ-ῶμαι	(ά-ωμαι)	δηλ-ῶμαι	(ό-ωμαι)
ποι-ῆ	(έ-η)	τιμ-ᾶ	(ά-η)	δηλ-οῖ	(ό-η)
ποι-ῆται	(έ-ηται)	τιμ-ᾶται	(ά-ηται)	δηλ-ῶται	(ό-ηται)
ποι-ώμεθα	(ε-ώμεθα)	τιμ-ώμεθα	(α-ώμεθα)	δηλ-ώμεθα	(ο-ώμεθα)
ποι-ῆσθε	(έ-ησθε)	τιμ-ᾶσθε	(ά-ησθε)	δηλ-ῶσθε	(ό-ησθε)
ποι-ῶνται	(έ-ωνται)	τιμ-ῶνται	(ά-ωνται)	δηλ-ῶνται	(ό-ωνται)

173 Note the subjunctives of εἰμί 'I am' and εἶμι 'I shall go'

ῶ	ἶω
ῆς	ἶης
ῆ	ἶη
ῶμεν	ἶωμεν
ῆτε	ἶητε
ῶσι(ν)	ἶωσι(ν)

## Subjunctive of δίδωμι

174 A very few verbs keep the -ω- all the way through the conjugation of the subjunctive, e.g. δίδωμι.

## Present active      Present middle/passive

διδῶ	διδῶμαι
διδῶς	διδῶ
διδῶ	διδῶται
διδῶμεν	διδῶμεθα
διδῶτε	διδῶσθε
διδῶσι(ν)	διδῶνται

Aorist active      Aorist middle

δῶ, δῶς, δῶ etc.    δῶμαι, δῶ, δῶται etc.

Cf. ἔγνω (132), with aor. subj. γνῶ, γνῶς, γνῶ etc.

ἄν again

175 So far, the force of ἄν in a sentence has been to impart the idea of English 'would' in a variety of what were called 'unfulfilled conditions'. In these cases, ἄν took the optative or indicative.

ἄν attached to a conjunction or relative, followed by a subjunctive, makes a statement 'indefinite' in application – a force best brought out by the English 'ever', e.g.

ὅστις ἄν τοῦτο ποιῇ|ποιήσῃ . . . 'whoever does this . . .'

τρόπῳ ᾧ ἄν βούλωνται      'in whatever way they will'

ὅταν ἔλθωσι|ἴωσι      'whenever they go'

176 Note that ἄν need not be translated by 'ever' when it refers specifically to the future (especially when the main verb is future), e.g.

ἐὰν ποιῶμεν|ποιήσωμεν τοῦτο, παύσομεν τοὺς πολεμίους 'if we do this, we shall stop the enemy'

ἐὰν οἰκάδε ἐπανίη|ἐπανεέλθῃ, ὄψεται τὴν γυναῖκα 'if he returns home, he will see his wife'

Note

ἄν combines with conjunctions as follows:

εἰ + ἄν = ἐάν, ἤν and sometimes ἄν

ὅτε + ἄν = ὅταν

ἐπειδή + ἄν = ἐπειδάν

Revise

Pres. and impf. pass. 137–8

Gen. abs. 139

## Exercises for Section Thirteen

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate these sentences, changing the verbs underlined into the subjunctive requested to make the Greek grammatical:
  - a. ὅτι ἄν μαρτυροῦσι (pres.) καὶ λέγουσιν (pres.) οἱ μάρτυρες, ἀεὶ ἐπιμελῶς διακρίνομεν.

- b. ἐπειδὴν λέγει (pres.) καὶ πείθει (pres.) ἡμᾶς ὁ κατήγορος, καταδικάζομεν.
- c. ἐπειδὴν ἢ ἀστὸς τις ἀγωνίζεται (aor.) ἢ οἱ γεννῆται ἀποψηφίζονται (aor.) παιδίου ἐκ ξένης τινὸς γενομένου, οἱ νόμοι σώζονται.
- d. ὃς ἂν μὴ καταδικάζεται (aor.), ἀλλ' ἀπολύεται (aor.) ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν, τοῦτον ἀναίτιον εἶναι οἴομεθα.
- e. ἐὰν εἰς ἀτιμίαν καθίσταται (aor.) πονηρὸς τις, πάντες οἱ πολῖται ἡδονται.
- f. ὅταν βούλει (pres.) λέγειν τι δεινὸν καὶ δηλοῖς (pres.) τὰληθῆ, αἰεὶ τιμωρῆσονται σὲ οἱ ἐχθροί.
- g. ὃ ἂν δίκαιον ἠγείσθε (pres.) καὶ τιμᾶτε (pres.), τοῦτο τὸ τίμημα, ὦ δικασταί, ὃ καταδικασθεὶς ὀφείλει τῇ πόλει.
- h. ἦτινι ἂν ὁ πατὴρ προίκα μὴ δίδωσι (aor.), ταύτῃ ἰκανὴν τὴν προίκα παρέχει ὁ νόμος.
- i. ἐὰν ἐπιμελῶς προσέχετε (aor.) τὸν νοῦν πρὸς τὴν κατηγορίαν καὶ προθυμείσθε (pres.), καταψηφιεῖσθε τῆς Νεαίρας.
- j. ἐπειδὴν εἰσέρχῃ (pres.) εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν καὶ ἐντυγχάνει (aor.) σοι ἡ γυνή, ὅπως θωπεύσεις αὐτήν.

#### (d) English into Greek

##### 1. Sentences

Translate into Greek:

1. When the dikasts go home, their wives greet them.
2. When a woman gets hold of money, she becomes difficult.
3. If you pay attention to the defence speech, you will acquit the defendant.
4. When prosecutors speak, they always say the same thing.
5. If you are loved by your daughters, they will give you whatever you want.

##### 2. Prose

Translate into Greek:

When Stephanos makes his defence speech, what will he say? Obviously he will claim that he has been a good governor and has performed many noble deeds. And yet we all know that nothing noble or good has ever been done by him. Or have you ever heard of any such thing at all? You have not; for neither he nor his forefathers are naturally inclined to piety, but to impiety.

## Test Exercise Thirteen

Translate into English:

In Lokris, because of a singular method of treating the legislator, only one new law has been passed in a very long time. The story involves a one-eyed man's search for justice.

(From Demosthenes, Timokrates, 139-41)

βούλομαι δ' ὑμῖν διηγήσασθαι ὡς ἐν Λοκροῖς νομοθετοῦσι. ἐκεῖ γὰρ οἴονται τοὺς πολίτας δεῖν τοῖς πάλαι κειμένοις νόμοις χρῆσθαι καὶ τὰ πατρία φυλάττειν. ὥστε εἴαν τις βούληται νόμον καινὸν τιθέναι, ἐν βρόχῳ τὸν τράχηλον ἔχων νομοθετεῖ. καὶ εἴαν μὲν δόξη καλὸς καὶ χρήσιμος εἶναι ὁ νόμος, ζῆ ὁ τιθεὶς καὶ ἀπέρχεται. εἰ δὲ μή, τέθνηκεν ἐπισπασθέντος τοῦ βρόχου. καὶ γὰρ τοὶ καινοὺς μὲν οὐ τολμῶσι τιθέναι νόμους, τοῖς δὲ πάλαι κειμένοις ἀκριβῶς χρῶνται. ἐν πολλοῖς δὲ πάνυ ἔτεσι εἰς λέγεται νόμος καινὸς τεθῆναι. νόμος μὲν γὰρ ἐν Λοκροῖς κείται ὅτι, εἴαν τις ὀφθαλμὸν ἐκκόψῃ, δεῖ τὸν ἐκκόψαντα παρασχεῖν τὸν ἑαυτοῦ ὀφθαλμὸν ἀντεκκόψαι. ἐχθρὸς δὲ τις λέγεται ἀπειλῆσαι ἐχθρῷ ὅς ἐνα ὀφθαλμὸν ἔτυχεν ἔχων, ὅτι ἐκκόψοι τοῦτον τὸν ἑνα ὀφθαλμὸν. γενομένης δὲ ταύτης τῆς ἀπειλῆς, χαλεπῶς ἐνεγκὼν ὁ ἑτερόφθαλμος, καὶ ἠγούμενος ἀβίωτον εἶναι τὸν βίον ἑαυτῷ τοῦτο παθόντι, λέγεται τολμῆσαι νόμον τοιόνδε εἰσενεγκεῖν· εἴαν τις ἑτεροφθάλμου τινὸς τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν ἐκκόψῃ, δεήσει αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἀντεκκόψαι παρασχεῖν. οὕτω γὰρ τὸ αὐτὸ πάθος ἀμφοτέροι πάθοιεν ἂν. καὶ τοῦτον μόνον λέγονται Λοκροὶ θέσθαι τὸν νόμον ἐν πλείον ἢ διακοσίσι ἔτεσιν.

## Vocabulary

νομοθετέω frame laws  
 παλαι long ago  
 κείμεαι be established  
 ὥστε and so  
 καινός ἢ ὄν new  
 βρόχος, ὁ ποσὴ (2a)  
 τράχηλος, ὁ neck (2a)

ζάω live  
 ἐπισπασθέντος aor. part. pass.  
 οἱ ἐπισπάω draw tight  
 ἔτος, τό year (3c)  
 ὀφθαλμός, ὁ eye (2a)  
 ἀντεκκόπτω knock out in  
 return

ἀπειλέω threaten (+ dat.)  
 εἷς (έν-) one  
 ἑτερόφθαλμος, ὁ one-eyed  
 man (2a)  
 ἀβίωτος οἶον unlivable  
 ἀμφω both  
 διακοσίοιαι a two hundred

## Section Fourteen

### Vocabulary for Section Fourteen A

αἰτέ-ομαι beg, ask	children (do not) die'	ποτάμι -ος -α -ον from a river
ἄλοχ-ος, ἡ wife (2a)	θέλουσα=ἐθέλουσα	πρόσθεν (+ gen.) in front of
ἄσκέ-ομαι adorn oneself	θεράπειν-α, ἡ female servant	προσπίτν-ω=προσπίπτ-ω fall
ἄωρ-ος -ον untimely, before	(of Alkestis) (1c)	upon, embrace
time	θνήσκ-ω (θαν-) die	προτιμά-ω hold in honour
γενναῖ-ος -α -ον noble, fine	ἴστα-μαι (στα-) stand	συζεύγνυ-μι (συζευξ-) join in
δέσποινα-α, ἡ mistress (1c)	ἴστω γυνή 'let the woman	marriage
δόμοι, οἶ house, home; (with	know (that she)'	τέκν-ον, τό child (2b)
κέδριν-ος) chest, box (2a)	κατά (+ gen.) beneath	τεκούσα, ἡ mother (τίκτω
ἐκ . . . ἐλοῦσα taking out from	καταθνήσκ-ω die away (fut.	(τεκ-) bear)
ἐκπίμπλη-μι	κατθανοῦμαι)	τερπν-ός -ή -όν joyful,
(ἐκπλησ-) complete	κατεύχ-ομαι pray earnestly	pleasant
ἐναντιό-ομαι deny, disagree	κατθανουμένη αε καταθνήσκω	ἕδωρ (ὔδατ-), τό water (3b)
ἐνδείκνυ-μαι	κέδρι-ος -η -ον of cedar	ὑπερβεβλημένην 'who
(ἐνδειξ-) declare oneself as	κλύ-ω hear	survives' (sc. Alkestis)
(+ part.)	κόσμ-ος, ὁ decoration (2a)	(ὑπερβάλλομαι)
ἔσθης (ἔσθητ-), ἡ clothes (3a)	λευκ-ός -ή -όν white	ὑπερθνήσκ-ω (ὑπερθαν-) die
'Ἔστί-α, ἡ household hearth	λού-ω wash	for another
(1b)	μακρῶ by far	ὑπό (+ dat.) under
εὐκλε-ής -ές glorious, of	ὀρφανεύ-ω look after as	χθών (χθον-), ἡ earth (3a)
good reputation	orphans	χορ-ός, ὁ chorus (of
εὐπρεπ-ής -ές becoming,	παύστατ-ος -η -ον for the	townsmen) (2a)
proper	very last time	χρῶς (χρωτ-), ὁ skin, flesh
ἦσθεθ' = ἦσθετο (αοτ. οἶ	πατρῶ-ος -α -ον father's,	(3a) (acc. χροῶ)
αἰσθάνομαι)	ancestral	
θανεῖν . . . παῖδας 'that my	πόσ-ις, ὁ husband (3c)	

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

γενναῖος α ον noble, fine  
 δέσποινα, ἡ mistress (1c)  
 δόμοι, οἶ house, home (2a)

εὐπρεπής ἐς seemly, proper,  
 becoming  
 θνήσκω (θαν-) die

ἴστημι ἴσταμαι set up, stand,  
 raise  
 κατά (+ gen.) below

καταβλήσκω (καταβαν-) die away	πανύστατος η ον for the very last time	τέκνον, τό child (2b)
κλύω hear	πατρῶος α ον of one's father, ancestral	τίκτω (τεκ-) bear, give birth to
κόσμος, ὁ decoration, ornament; order; universe (2a)	πόσις, ὁ husband, spouse (3e)	ὔδωρ (ὔδατ-), τό water (3b)
μακρός ἄ ὄν large, big, long	προσπίτνω fall upon, embrace	ὑπό (+ dat.) under, beneath
		χρῶς (χρωτ-), ὁ flesh, skin (acc. χροά) (3a)

## Vocabulary for Section Fourteen B

Ἄδμητ-ος, ὁ Admetos (2a)	ἐχθαίρ-ω hate	μεθίστη-μι change, alter
ἄκλαυτ-ος -ον unweeping	θάλαμ-ος, ὁ bedroom (2a)	ὀκνέ-ω shrink from (+ mf.)
ἀστένακτ-ος -ον without lamentation	κάξέστεψε = καὶ ἐξέστεψε κάπειτα = καὶ ἔπειτα	παρθένει-ος -α -ον maiden, virgin
δακρύ-ω weep	κατά (+ acc.) throughout	προδίδω-μι (προδο-) betray
ἐσπίπτ-ω (ἐσπεσ-) fall into, on	κορεύματ-α, τά maidenhood (3b)	προσεύχ-ομαι address in prayer
ἐκστέφ-ω garland, crown	κεκτηῆσεται (she) will have gained (κτάομαι)	σώφρων (σωφρον-) modest, chaste
ἐνθα there	λέκτρ-ον, τό bed (2b)	τουπιόν = τὸ ἐπιόν (pres. part. n. of ἐπέρχομαι)
εὐειδ-ῆς -ές graceful, pleasant	λέχ-ος, τό bed (3c)	
εὐτυχ-ῆς -ές fortunate		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

δακρύω weep	εὐτυχῆς ἐς fortunate, lucky
εἰσπίπτω (εἰσπεσ-) fall into, on	θάλαμος, ὁ bedchamber (2a)
ἐνθα there	κτάομαι acquire, get, gain
	προδίδωμι (προδο-) betray

σώφρων (σωφρον-) modest, chaste, discreet, sensible, law-abiding, prudent, disciplined, temperate

## Vocabulary for Section Fourteen C

ἄγκυλ-η, ἡ arm (1a)	δάκρυ-ον, τό tear (2b)	κλαί-ω weep
ἄθλι-ος α -ον pathetic, miserable	δέμνι-ον, τό bed, bedding (usu. pl.) (2b)	κοίτ-η, ἡ bed (1a)
ἄκοιτ-ις, ἡ wife (3e)	δεύ-ω wet, bedew, besprinkle	κόρ-ος, ὁ sufficiency, enough, fill (2a)
ἄλγ-ος, τό pain, agony (3c)	ἐμπνέ-ω breathe	κυνέ-ω kiss
ἄλλοτ' ἄλλον now one, now the other	ἐξηρητημέν-ος clinging to (+ gen.)	λελήσεται he will have forgotten (λανθάνομαι)
ἀμήχαν-ος -ον hopeless, impossible	ἐπεστράφη she turned back (ἐπιστρέφω)	λίσο-ομαι beg
αὐγ-ῆ, ἡ ray (1a)	ἐσθλ-ός -ῆ -όν noble, fine	μαραίν-ομαι die away (pass.)
βάρ-ος, τό weight, burden (3c)	ἤ που no doubt	οἶκ-ος, ὁ household (often pl.) (2a)
	κἄρριψεν = καὶ ἔρριψεν	οὔποτε never

οὔτις (οὔτιν-) no one	προσλέγ-ω (προσειπ-) address (20r pass. προσερρήθην)	σφέ he (= Admetos)
ὀφθαλμότεγκτ-ος -ον welling from the eyes	προτείν-ω stretch out	τάμηχανα = τὰ ἀμήχανα
παρειμέν-ος -η -ον exhausted	σ μικρ-ός -ά -όν = μικρός	τᾶν = τοι ᾄν 'truly, he would have ...'
πέπλ-ος, ὁ robe (2a)	στέγ-αι, αἱ house (1c)	τοισίδ' = τοῖσδε
πλημμυρίς (πλημμυριδ-), ἡ flood (3a)	στείχ-ω go	φθίν-ω die, waste away
προνωπ-ής -ές forward, headlong	στενάζ-ω weep, lament	χειρός i.e. on Admetos' hand
	στερέ-ω deprive of (+ gen.)	χεροῖν 'in both hands' (dual form)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄθλιος α ον pathetic, miserable, wretched	οἶκος, ὁ household, house (2a)
βάρος, τό weight, burden (3c)	οὔποτε never
δάκρυον, τό tear (2b)	οὔτις no one
ἑσθλός ἡ ὄν noble, fine, good	προσλέγω address
κλαίω weep	στείχω go, come

## ○ Grammar for Section Fourteen

### Summary:

Fut. perf.

Tragic usages and iambic trimeters

### Verbs

#### The future perfect

177 There is only one form of the future perfect. This is the middle/passive form, as follows:

*Indicative:* πεπαύ-σομαι 'I shall have stopped (been stopped)' etc.

πεπαύ-ση

πεπαύ-σεται

πεπαυ-σόμεθα

πεπαύ-σεσθε

πεπαύ-σονται

*Infinitive:* πεπαύ-σεσθαι

*Participle:* πεπαυ-σόμενος

*Optative:* πεπαυ-σοίμην

### Notes

(i) This is a rare form many verbs do not appear in this form, and most prefer either the passive meaning (most usual) or the middle meaning.

Look for a perfect middle/passive stem (no -κ-, but reduplication), with future middle endings i.e. -σομαι -ση -σεται etc. e.g.

λελύσομαι (λύω) 'I shall have been released'  
 (λύομαι) 'I shall have ransomed'  
 πεπράξεται (πράσσω) 'it will have been done'  
 πεπαύσομαι (παύομαι) 'I shall have ceased'

As usual the middle verbs will carry an active meaning:

κεκτήσομαι (κτάομαι) 'I shall have obtained'

(ii) In meaning, particularly in poetry, it can be used as an emphatic future, e.g.

κεκτήσεται 'she will possess'  
 φράζε καὶ πεπράξεται 'speak, and it shall be done'

(iii) The active 'I shall have -ed' is supplied by the perfect active participle and the future of the verb 'to be' e.g.

λελυκότες ἔσομεθα 'we shall have released'

The passive may also be formed with the passive participle:

λελυμένος ἔσομαι (= λελύσομαι) 'I shall have been released'

### Tragic usages

178 Note the following tragic usages:

(i) Observe the elision or crasis displayed by the following phrases:

- l. 25 κάπειτα (καὶ ἔπειτα)
- l. 16 τὰμά (τὰ ἐμά)
- l. 38 κᾶρριψεν (καὶ ἔρριψεν)
- l. 47 τᾶν (τοὶ ἄν)
- l. 9 ἦσθεθ' ἡμέραν (ἦσθετο ἡμέραν)

Verse displays far more features of this type than prose, though doubtless crasis and elision occurred in spoken language, even if they were not indicated in writing.

(ii) Note the prefixes to:

- l. 1 καταθνήσκω
- l. 13 κατεύχομαι
- l. 22 προσεύχομαι
- l. 45 προσλέγω

The basic meaning of the word is retained, but the prefix shades its meaning differently. This subtlety is one you should try to take into account when translating.

(iii) Word order in verse can be far more flexible than in prose; again, utterances can be far more oblique and tightly packed with meaning. Since this is a matter of the individual author's style, only wide reading in an author will accustom you to his particular quirks.





◡ — ◡ — — — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ —  
 ποσιν προτιμωσ' ἢ θελουσ' ὑπερθανειν;  
 — — ◡ — — — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ —  
 και ταυτα μεν | δη πασ' ἐπισταται πολισ.

*Note*

*The last syllable counts LONG for the purpose of scansion, whatever its composition.*

**Revise**

Aor. and fut. pass. 143, 157 Language Survey (2)

ἴστημι 144 Language Survey (7)

τίθημι 150

Acc. + inf./part. 146–9, 156 Reference Grammar K, p. 301.

# PART FIVE

## Section Fifteen

### Vocabulary for Section Fifteen A

ἀθυμῶς ἔχ-ω be gloomy, disheartened	ἐξηγητ-ῆς, ὁ Adviser (1d)	κάθαρος-ις, ἡ purification (3c)
ἀπελευθέρ-α, ἡ freedwoman (1b)	ἔξω (+gen.) outside	πύλ-η, ἡ gate (1a)
*Ἀπολλόδωρ-ος, ὁ Apollodoros (2a) ( <i>friend of Aristarkhos</i> )	ἔοικ-α seem	συμφορ-ά, ἡ disaster, occurrence (1b)
*Ἀρίσταρχ-ος, ὁ Aristarkhos (2a) ( <i>whose story is told</i> )	ἐπεποιήκει he had done (ποιέω)	συντυχάιν-ω (συντυχ-) meet with (+dat.)
*Ἀρίστων, ὁ Ariston (3a) ( <i>father of Aristarkhos</i> )	ἐπεπόνθη I had suffered (πάσχω)	ταφ-ή, ἡ burial (1a)
διεξέρχ-ομαι (διεξελθ-) tell, go through in detail	εὐθύς (+gen.) straight towards	ὕβριστ-ῆς, ὁ violent, criminal character (1d)
διεπέπρακτο (he) had done (διαπράττομαι)	ἠδικήκει (he) had wronged (ἀδικέω)	ὑπό (+acc.) up under, along under
ἐνθυμέ-ομαι take to heart	Θεόφημ-ος, ὁ Theophemos (2a) ( <i>enemy of Aristarkhos and responsible for the death of a freedwoman</i> )	φονεύ-ω kill, murder
	*Ἴλιος-ός, ὁ River Ilisos (2a)	χωρί-ον, τό farm (2b)

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀπελευθέρ-ος, ὁ freedman (2a)	εὐθύς (+gen.) straight towards	ὕβριστῆς, ὁ violent, criminal person (1d)
ἀπελευθέρ-α, ἡ freedwoman (1b)	πύλ-η, ἡ gate (1a)	ὑπό (+acc.) under, along under, up under
διεξέρχομαι (διεξελθ-) go through, relate	συμφορ-ά, ἡ disaster, mishap, occurrence (1b)	χωρί-ον, τό farm: place, space, region (2b)
ἔξω (+gen.) outside	συντυχάινω (συντυχ-) meet with (+dat.)	
ἔοικα seem, resemble		

### Vocabulary for Section Fifteen B

ἀθυμέ-ω be gloomy, disheartened, downhearted	gloomy	however that might be
ἀθυμητέον (you) should be	ἀκο-ή, ἡ hearing (1a)	ἀποκρύπτ-ω conceal, hide
	ἀλλ' οὖν well, anyway;	βραχ-ύς -εῖα -ύ brief, short

γεγενημένα, τά events  
 διηγητέον I (dat.) must  
 tell/relate  
 διπλ-ούς -ή -οὖν double  
 εἶσομαι fut. of οἶδα  
 ἐπέχ-ω (ἐπισχ-) hold on,  
 hold back  
 ἐπιεικῶς pretty, fairly  
 ἐπιθυμέ-ω desire  
 ἐπιτήδει-ος -α -ον suitable  
 ἵνα (+subj.) in order that  
 κάθη-μαι be seated

Μεγαράδε to Megara  
 μή (+aor. subj.) don't  
 παντῶς in every way, wholly  
 πάνυ μὲν οὖν certainly  
 περίπατ-ος, ὁ walk, stroll (2a)  
 πνίγ-ος, τό midday heat,  
 stifling heat (3c)  
 προθυμέ-ομαι be eager, ready  
 προθυμητέον (you) should be  
 ready (for action)  
 προσήκ-ων -ουσα -ον fitting  
 for (+dat.)

σκέπτ-ομαι consider  
 σκεπτέον we (dat.) must  
 consider  
 συμβουλευ-ομαι debate with,  
 take counsel with  
 σχολ-ή, ἡ leisure (1a)  
 φοβέ-ομαι μή I am afraid  
 that/lest (+subj.)  
 χάρις (χαριτ-), ἡ thanks (3a)  
 χάριν οἶδα feel grateful to  
 (+dat.)  
 ὥστε so that, and so

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀθυμέω be downhearted,  
 gloomy

ἀκοή, ἡ hearing (1a)

ἀλλ' οὖν well anyway; however  
 that may be

βραχύς εἰς ὄ short, brief

γεγενημένα, τά events,  
 occurrences (2b)

ἐπέχω (ἐπισχ-) hold on

restrain, check

ἐπιθυμέω desire, yearn for  
 (+gen.)

ἐπιτήδειος αὐτῶν suitable, useful  
 for

κάθημαι be seated

μή (+aor. subj.) don't

πάνυ μὲν οὖν certainly, of course

προθυμέομαι be ready, eager

σκέπτομαι examine, look  
 carefully at

σχολή, ἡ leisure (1a)

φοβέομαι μή fear that/lest  
 (+subj.)

χάριν οἶδα be grateful to  
 (+dat.)

χάρις (χαριτ-), ἡ thanks, grace  
 (3a)

## ○ Grammar for Section Fifteen A–B

### Summary:

Plur.

μή + aor. subj.

φοβοῦμαι μή

-τέος verb-forms

### Verbs

Pluperfects (very rare) ἐπεπαύκη, ἐπεπαύμην 'I had stopped, been stopped'

180 The forms of the pluperfect are as follows:

#### Active

ἐπεπαύκ-η 'I had stopped'

ἐπεπαύκ-ης

ἐπεπαύκ-ει

ἐπεπαύκ-εμεν

ἐπεπαύκ-ετε

ἐπεπαύκ-εσαν

#### Middle/Passive

ἐπεπαύ-μην

ἐπέπαυ-σο

ἐπέπαυ-το

ἐπεπαύ-μεθα

ἐπέπαυ-σθε

ἐπέπαυ-ντο

'I had (been) stopped'

Notes

- (i) The pluperfect means 'I had -'. It is very rare.  
 (ii) Spot the pluperfect by the presence of the augment before the reduplication. In other words, the pluperfect pushes the perfect one step further back in time (cf. present, and augmented aorist/imperfect).

Imperatives

181 You have already met μή + present imperative to mean 'don't', e.g. μή ἄκουε 'don't listen'. (Cf. 6.)

μή + aorist subjunctive also means 'don't'. The phrase has an aoristic aspect and it may imply 'don't do it just this once', e.g.

- μή ἄκούσης 'don't listen' (s.)  
 μή ἔλθητε 'don't go' (pl.)

Verbs of fearing

182 φοβοῦμαι means

- (i) 'I fear, am afraid of' (+object)  
 (ii) 'I am afraid to' (+infinitive)  
 (iii) 'I am afraid that/lest'. In this sense it takes μή + subjunctive if the fear refers to the future; otherwise, the natural tense of the indicative, e.g.

- φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἔλθῃ 'I am afraid that he will come'  
 φοβοῦμαι μὴ ἦλθεν 'I am afraid that he came'

Verb-forms in -τέος

183 These forms are based upon the verb-stem e.g.

- ἀθυμέω → ἀθυμητέος 'to be disheartened'  
 πράττω → πρακτέος 'to be done'  
 πείθω → πειστέος 'to be persuaded'

Observe particularly οἰστέος (φέρω) 'to be carried'  
 ἰτέος (εἶμι) 'to be journeyed'

These carry the idea of necessity, i.e. that something *must* take place or be done. They are used in two ways:

(i) as straight adjectives, meaning 'to be -ed', e.g. πειστέοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι εἰσιν 'the men are to be persuaded, must be persuaded'.

(ii) in the form -τέον [ἐστί] as if = δεῖ + infinitive. The subject can go into the accusative or dative; the -τέον form remains (usually) quite unchanged (if there is a change, it will be to the neuter plural, -τέα), e.g.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| ἡμῖν } ποιητέον [ἐστί] ταῦτα       | 'we must do this' (δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιεῖν ταῦτα)                         |
| ἡμᾶς }                             |   |
| γραπτέον ἦν τὴν ἐπιστολὴν { αὐτοῖς | 'they had to write the letter' (ἔδει αὐτοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν γράψαι) |
| { αὐτοῦς                           |   |

---

## Exercises for Section Fifteen A–B

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate these commands, then change into negative commands using μή + aorist subjunctive:
  - a. κωλύσατε τὸν ἄνδρα.
  - b. τιμωρήσασθε τοὺς φίλους.
  - c. καταφρόνησον τῶν θεῶν.
  - d. θοῦ τὴν ψῆφον.
  - e. ἐπιλάβεσθε τούτου τοῦ πράγματος.
  - f. κάτειπε τὸν τῆς ἀπολογίας λόγον.
  - g. μνημονεύσατε πάντα τοὺς λόγους.
  - h. παράλαβε νεανίσκους.
  - i. ἐπίσχεσ.
  - j. ἐπιθυμήσατε.
  - k. ἀθύμησον.
2. Translate the following sentences:
  - a. φοβοῦμεθα μὴ ταῦτ' ἀκούσας ἀθυμήσῃ ὁ ἀνὴρ.
  - b. δεινῶς ἀθυμῶ μὴ οὐ ποιῆ τοῦτο ὁ ἑταῖρος.
  - c. ὄρα μὴ ψευδῆ λέγῃς πρὸς τοὺς δικαστὰς περὶ τῶν γεγενημένων.
  - d. φοβοῦμαι μὴ τοὺς ἄνδρας οὐκ ἔσωσεν ὁ Δημοσθένης.
3. Translate these statements, then using the pool of -τέος verb-forms, convert them as follows:
 

c.g. δεῖ ἐμὲ ποιεῖν ταῦτα → ἐμοὶ ἐμὲ ποιητέον ταῦτα οἱ ταῦτα ποιητέα μοι.

  - a. δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀκριβῶς σκοπεῖσθαι περὶ ταῦτα.
  - b. δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι οἴκαδε.
  - c. δεῖ αὐτοὺς βοηθεῖν.
  - d. δεῖ τὸν ἄνδρα φέρειν τὴν συμφορὰν.
  - e. δεῖ ὑμᾶς πολεμεῖν.
  - f. δεῖ οἴκαδε πέμπειν σέ.

σκεπτέος, οἰστέος, ἰτέος, πολεμητέος, βοηθητέος, πεμπτέος

---

## Vocabulary for Section Fifteen C

---

ἀποστέλλ-ω send out

ἄφθον-ος -ον unlimited

βοήθει-α, ἡ rescue operation

(1b)

γράφ-ω propose (a decree)

δέον it being necessary (δεῖ)

διὰ τάχους with all speed

ἐξέρχ-ομαι end, finish

ἐξόν it being possible (ἔξεστι)

ἵνα (+subj./opt.) in order that, to	πριάσθαι to buy (aor. inf. of ὠνόομαι)	σχοινί-ον, τό rope (2b)
κομίζ-ομαι collect	πρός (+dat.) in addition to	τριηραρχέ-ω serve as trierarch
νεώρι-ον, τό dockyard (2b)	προστάττ-ω (προσταξ-) instruct, order	ὑπάρχ-ω be in supply
ὄθεν from where	σκεύ-η, τά ship's gear (pl.)	Χαιρέδημ-ος, ὁ Khairedemos (2a) (proposer of a decree about ship's gear in 357)
οἰθόνη-ον, τό sail-cloth (2b)	(3c)	ὡς τάχιστα as quickly as possible
παραδίδω-μι (παραδο-) hand over	στάσ-ις, ἡ revolution (3c)	ὥστε consequently, so that, and so
παρασκευάζ-ω equip, prepare	στυπεί-ον, τό tow, coarse flax (2b)	
Πειραι-εύς, ὁ Piraeus (3g)	σύμμαχ-ος, ὁ ally (2a)	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

βοήθεια, ἡ help, rescue operation (1b)	παραδίδωμι (παραδο-) hand over	σύμμαχος, ὁ ally (2a)
γράφω propose (a decree); write	παρασκευάζω prepare, equip	τριηραρχέω serve as trierarch
δέον it being necessary	πρός (+dat.) in addition to, near	ὠνόομαι (πρια-) buy
ἔξον it being permitted, possible	σκεύη, τά ship's gear; gear, furniture (3c)	ὡς(+sup.) as – as possible
ὄθεν from where		ὥστε so that, with the result that, consequently

## ○ Grammar for Section Fifteen C

### Summary:

Acc. abs.

ὡς + sup.

### Accusative absolute δέον 'it being necessary', ἔξον 'it being permitted'

184 δέον, ἔξον (neuter accusative participle) are the forms adopted by δεῖ, ἔξεστί when they are being used absolutely (cf. 139), e.g.

δέον ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν, ἴωμεν 'it being necessary for us to go, let us go' (or 'since we must go . . .')

ἔξον ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν, ἐμείναμεν 'it being permitted for us to go, we remained' (or 'although we could go . . .')

### ὡς + superlative

185 Note the use of ὡς + superlative to mean 'as – as possible', e.g.

ὡς τάχιστα 'as fast as possible'

ὡς μάλιστα 'as much as can be'

○

---

## Exercise for Section Fifteen C

---

### (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate the following pairs of statements, then join into one sentence by the use of acc. absolute:
    - a. δεῖ τὸν ὀφείλοντα τῇ πόλει τὰ σκεύη παραδιδόναι τῷ τριηραρχήσονται ἐγὼ ὡς τὸν Θεόφημον προσῆλθον.
    - b. εἶτα οὐκ ἔξεστί μοι τὴν τριήρη παρασκευάζειν προσῆλθον πρὸς τὴν βουλήν.
    - c. ἔδει ἡμᾶς παρασκευάζειν ὡς τάχιστα τὰς ναῦς! γράφει Χαιρέδημος ψήφισμα.
    - d. οὐκ ἔξην ἐν τῷ Πειραιεῖ οὐδὲν πριάσθαι ὧν ἔδει, οἱ τριήραρχοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο παρασκευάζειν τὰς ναῦς.
- 

## Vocabulary for Section Fifteen D

---

ἀδελφ-ός, ὁ brother (2a)  
 ἀλλοθεν from elsewhere  
 ἀπαιτέ-ω demand x (acc.)  
 from v (acc.)  
 ἀπειμι be absent  
 ἀρχ-ή, ἡ board of officials  
 (1a)  
 διαλείπ-ω (διαλιπ-) leave

Εὐεργ-ος, ὁ Euergos (2a)  
 (Theophemos' brother)  
 ἵνα (+opt.) in order that, to  
 κακὰ λέγ-ω curse, insult  
 (+acc.)  
 κοιν-ός -ή -όν common,  
 shared  
 κομίζ-ομαι collect

ὁπότεν whenever  
 οὐ where (at)  
 οὐσί-α, ἡ property (1b)  
 πλείστ-ος -η -ον very many,  
 most (sup. of πολὺς)  
 φράζ-ω mention, talk  
 χωρίς separately, apart

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀδελφός, ὁ brother (2a)  
 ἀπαιτέω demand X (acc.) from  
 Y (acc.)  
 ἀπειμι be absent  
 διαλείπω (διαλιπ-) leave  
 ἵνα (+subj., opt.) in order to,  
 that

κοινός ἢ ὄν common, shared  
 κομίζομαι collect  
 ὁπότεν whenever  
 οὐ where (at)  
 οὐσία, ἡ property, wealth (1b)  
 πλείστος ἢ ὄν very much, most  
 (sup. of πολὺς)

φράζω utter, mention, talk  
 χωρίς apart; separately; (prep.)  
 apart/separately from  
 (+gen.)

---

## ○ Grammar for Section Fifteen D

---

### Summary:

ἵνα +subj./opt.

ἵνα 'in order that'

186 When followed by a subjunctive (in primary sequence – see note



to 167), or by an optative (in secondary sequence), *ἵνα* means 'in order that, in order to, to, so that'. e.g.

ἔρχεται ἵνα	πειθῆ πεισῆ	} τοὺς ἄνδρας 'he is coming to persuade the men'
ἦλθεν ἵνα	πειθοί πείσειε	

Notes

- (i) ὅπως and ὡς can be used instead of ἵνα in such clauses.  
 (ii) Cf. ὡς + future participle (160).

○

## Exercise for Section Fifteen D

### (d) English into Greek

Translate into Greek:

1. Don't be downhearted, my friend.
2. Are you afraid that you will suffer again at the hands of these rogues?
3. Although Theophemos is obliged to hand over the gear, I cannot force him to do this.
4. I shall go to the council, so that they may draft a decree.
5. I went to a friend's house, to find out where Theophemos lived.

## Vocabulary for Section Fifteen E

ἀκολουθέ-ω follow,  
accompany

δείκνυ-μι (δειξ-) show

διάγραμμα (διαγραμμάτ-), τό  
register (3b)

ἐνέχυρ-ον, τό security, pledge  
(2b)

μετέρχ-ομαι (μετελθ-) send  
for

όπότε when

(+opt. = whenever)

ύπακού-ω reply, answer

### Vocabulary to be learnt

δείκνυμι (δειξ-) show

όπότε when

(+opt. = whenever)

ύπακούω reply, answer; obey

(+dat.)

---

 ○ Grammar for Section Fifteen E
 

---

*Summary:*

Indef. in sec. seq.

**'Indefinites' in secondary sequence**

187 You have already met  $\alpha\upsilon$  + subjunctive to denote the idea 'ever', e.g.  $\acute{\omicron}\pi\acute{\omicron}\tau\alpha\nu$  'whenever',  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\alpha}\nu$  'if ever',  $\acute{\omicron}\sigma\tau\iota\varsigma$   $\alpha\upsilon$  'whoever' (cf. 175, 176).

In secondary sequence, however, the idea of 'ever' is expressed not by  $\alpha\upsilon$  + subjunctive, but by the plain optative, with *no*  $\alpha\upsilon$  at all, e.g.

$\acute{\omicron}\pi\acute{\omicron}\tau\epsilon$   $\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\theta\omicron\iota\iota\zeta\omicron\iota$  'whenever he came'

$\acute{\omicron}\sigma\tau\iota\varsigma$   $\tau\omicron\upsilon\tau\omicron$   $\pi\omicron\iota\omicron\iota\eta\mid\pi\omicron\iota\iota\eta\sigma\epsilon\iota\epsilon$  'whoever did this'

So whenever you meet a word like  $\acute{\omicron}\pi\acute{\omicron}\tau\epsilon$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\epsilon\iota$ ,  $\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$  ( $\tau\iota\varsigma$ ), consider translating with 'ever' if the verb is optative.

188 Do not confuse the above construction with the use of the optative in secondary sequence in indirect speech. In 187 the optative is being used in a sub-clause, prefaced by, e.g., 'when(ever)', 'who(ever)' etc. An optative in indirect speech will be used in place of the indicative for a *main* verb, and will not alter the meaning at all, e.g.

$\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\epsilon\chi\epsilon\nu$   $\acute{\omicron}\tau\iota$   $\pi\epsilon\iota\theta\omicron\iota$  'he said that he was persuading'

$\eta\delta\epsilon\iota$   $\acute{\omicron}\tau\iota$   $\pi\epsilon\iota\sigma\epsilon\iota\epsilon$  'he knew that he had persuaded'

$\eta\delta\epsilon\iota$   $\acute{\omicron}\tau\iota$   $\pi\epsilon\iota\sigma\omicron\iota$  'he knew that he would persuade'

189 Revise the forms of the future optative as laid out at 168.

○

---

 Exercise for Section Fifteen E
 

---

**(b/c) Morphology and Syntax**

1. Translate the following sentences, then change from primary to past sequence or vice-versa (remember to change both introductory and subordinate verbs):
  - a.  $\acute{\epsilon}\beta\upsilon\lambda\omicron\mu\eta\nu$   $\kappa\omicron\mu\iota\zeta\epsilon\sigma\theta\alpha\iota$   $\tau\acute{\alpha}$   $\sigma\kappa\epsilon\upsilon\eta$ ,  $\iota\upsilon\alpha$   $\tau\eta\nu$   $\tau\tau\iota\eta\eta$   $\pi\alpha\rho\alpha\sigma\kappa\epsilon\nu\acute{\alpha}\zeta\omicron\mu\iota$ .
  - b.  $\phi\omicron\beta\omicron\upsilon\mu\alpha\iota$   $\mu\grave{\eta}$   $\acute{\epsilon}\upsilon\epsilon\rho\gamma\omicron\varsigma$   $\omicron\upsilon$   $\delta\epsilon\iota\zeta\eta$  (*use opt.*)  $\tau\acute{\omicron}$   $\pi\rho\acute{\alpha}\gamma\mu\alpha$   $\tau\acute{\omega}$   $\Theta\epsilon\omicron\phi\grave{\eta}\mu\omega$ .
  - c.  $\acute{\epsilon}\kappa\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\epsilon\nu\omicron\nu$   $\tau\omicron\nu$   $\pi\alpha\iota\delta\alpha$   $\kappa\alpha\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\sigma\alpha\iota$   $\tau\omicron\upsilon\varsigma$   $\pi\omicron\lambda\iota\tau\alpha\varsigma$ ,  $\iota\upsilon\alpha$   $\mu\acute{\alpha}\rho\tau\upsilon\rho\acute{\epsilon}\varsigma$   $\mu\omicron\iota$   $\acute{\epsilon}\iota\epsilon\nu$   $\tau\acute{\omega}\nu$   $\lambda\epsilon\chi\theta\acute{\epsilon}\nu\tau\omega\nu$ .
  - d.  $\omicron\upsilon$   $\pi\alpha\upsilon\omicron\mu\alpha\iota$   $\acute{\epsilon}\pi\acute{\omicron}\mu\epsilon\nu\omicron\varsigma$ ,  $\iota\upsilon\alpha$   $\tau\acute{\alpha}$   $\gamma\epsilon\gamma\epsilon\nu\eta\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\alpha$   $\mu\alpha\theta\acute{\omega}$ .
2. Translate the following pairs of sentences:
  - a. (i)  $\acute{\omicron}\tau\epsilon$   $\acute{\epsilon}\iota\sigma\acute{\epsilon}\lambda\theta\omicron\iota$ ,  $\acute{\epsilon}\acute{\omega}\rho\alpha$   $\kappa\alpha\theta\iota\zeta\omicron\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\eta\nu$   $\tau\eta\nu$   $\gamma\upsilon\nu\alpha\iota\kappa\alpha$ .

- (ii) ὅτε εἰσῆλθεν, εἶδε τὴν γυναῖκα ἐπὶ τοῦ βωμοῦ καθιζομένην
- b. (i) ἠρόμην τὸν παῖδα, ὅπου εἶη ὁ δεσπότης.  
(ii) ἐκέλευον τὴν ἄνθρωπον μετελθεῖν τὸν δεσπότην, ὅπου εἶη.
- c. (i) ἤδη ἐπεπύσμη ἐγώ, ὅτι τύχοι γεγαμηκώς.  
(ii) ὁ δεσπότης ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν ἀποδιδόναι τῇ πόλει, ὃ τι τύχοι ἔχωι.
- d. (i) ὁ παῖς ἐκάλεσεν ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ πάντας τοὺς πολίτας, οὓς εἶδεν, ὡς μαρτυρήσοντας.  
(ii) ἐκελεύσθη ὁ παῖς καλέσαι ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ πολίτας ὡς μαρτυρήσοντας, εἴ τινας ἴδοι.
- e. (i) ἡμῖν ἔδοξεν χρῆναι ἕκαστον λόγον περὶ Ἑρωτος εἰπεῖν ὡς δύναίτο κάλλιστον. (Plato abridged)  
(ii) Λύσανδρος δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς Αἰγίναν ἀπέδωκε τὴν πόλιν Αἰγινηταῖς, ὅσους ἐδύνατο πλείστους αὐτῶν ἀθροίσας. (Xenophon)

## Vocabulary

χρῆναι inf. of χρή

ἀθροίζω collect, gather

## Vocabulary for Section Fifteen F

ἀγανακτέ-ω be angry	διάκει-μαι be in x (adv.) state	μέτρι-ος -α -ον reasonable,
ἀλίσκ-ομαι ((έ)αλ-) be	διακωλύ-ω prevent	ταῖ
convicted, caught (aor.	ἐάλω see ἀλίσκομαι	παί-ω strike
ἐάλων)	εἴκοσι twenty (indecl)	πειτακόσι-οι -αι -α five
ἀλώναι to be convicted	εἰσαγγέλλ-ω	ἑκατό
(ἀλίσκομαι)	(εἰσαγγειλ-) impeach	πέντε five
ἀλώσεται he will be	ἐπέχυρ-ον, τό security, pledge	πεποιθώς ἢ 'I had suffered'
convicted (ἀλίσκομαι)	(2b)	(πάσχω)
ἀμύν-ομαι defend oneself	ἐπεπόνθη I had suffered	πληγ-η, ἡ blow (1a)
ἀνεωγμένη open (perf. part.	(πάσχω)	πέξ with the fist
pass. of ἀνοίγνυμι)	ἐπεπύσμη I had ascertained	στόμα (στοματ-), τό mouth
ἀπόστολ-ος, ὁ sailing, mission	(πυνθάνομαι)	(3b)
(2a)	ἐπί (+ dat.) at, on	συγκόπτ-ω hit, strike (aor
ἀφή-κα I released (ἀφήμι)	ἐπιεικ-ής -ές fair, moderate	pass. συνεκόπ-ην)
βουλευτ-ής, ὁ member of	ἐπιμαρτύρ-ομαι call as	συγχωρε-ω agree with, to
council (1d)	witnesses	(+ dat.)
γεγαμηκώς εἶη he was	ζημιό-ω fine, punish	
married (perf. opt. of	κρίσ-ις, ἡ judgment (3c)	
γαμέω)	μετέρχ-ομαι (μετελθ-) send for	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀλίσκομαι (άλ-) be caught, convicted (aor. ἔάλων)	ἐνέχυρον, τό security, pledge (2b)	μέτριος α ον fair, moderate reasonable
βουλευτής, ὁ member of council (1d)	ἐπί (+ dat.) at, on; for the purpose of	στόμα (στοματ-), τό mouth (3b)
διακωλύω prevent	ζημιώω fine, penalise, punish	συγχωρέω agree with, to (+ dat.); yield to
εἴκοσι twenty	κρίσις, ἡ judgment, dispute, trial, decision (3c)	
εἰσαγγέλλω (εἰσαγγελ-) impeach	μετέρχομαι (μετελλθ-) send for, chase after	

## ○ Grammar for Section Fifteen F

## Summary:

Perf. opt.

ἀλίσκομαι

## Verbs

Perfect optatives πεπαύκοιμι, πεπαυμένος εἶην

190 The forms of the perfect optatives are as follows:

## Active

πεπαύκ-οιμι οἱ πεπαυκῶς εἶην

-οις πεπαυκῶς εἶης

-οι etc. πεπαυκῶς εἶη etc.

## Middle/passive

πεπαυμένος εἶην

πεπαυμένος εἶης

πεπαυμένος εἶη etc.

## ἀλίσκομαι

191 Note the principal parts of ἀλίσκομαι 'be captured, found guilty':

ἀλίσκομαι 'I am captured'

ἀλώσομαι (fut.) 'I will be captured'

ἔάλω-ν (άλ-) (aor.) 'I was captured' (root aorist, cf. 126, 132)

ἔάλων keeps its ω all the way through the indicative and subjunctive (cf. ἔγνω, 132), and has

Participle: ἀλούς (cf. γνούς)

Infinitive: ἀλῶναι (cf. γνῶναι)

Optative: ἀλοίην (cf. γνοίην)

Subjunctive: ἀλῶ, ἀλῶς, ἀλῶ etc. (cf. γνῶ).

**Revise**

Conditions with ἄν 151-2, 162, Reference Grammar O p. 305, Language Survey (6)

τό + inf. 163-4 Reference Grammar J

Perf. 165-6, 169-71 Language Survey (8)



**Vocabulary for Section Fifteen G**

ἀθυμία-α, ἡ lack of spirit,  
depression (1b)

ἀλλὰ μὴν . . . γε but naturally

ἀναπαύ-ομαι rest, take a  
breather

διάκει-μαι be in x (adv.)  
condition

διατελέ-ω finish, complete

εἰσαγγελία-α, ἡ impeachment  
(1b)

ἐκεῖ there

ἐπιεικ-ής -ές fair, moderate

ἕως ἄν (+subj.) until

ἥπι-ος -α -ον mild

Ἥρα-α, ἡ Hera (1b) (wife of  
Zeus)

ἴωμεν let us go

καθιζώμεθα let us sit

καταγωγ-ή, ἡ place, spot (1a)

κατέχ-ω restrain, hold

μένωμεν let us stay

παυώμεθα let us stop

περιπατέ-ω walk, stroll

πλάταν-ος, ἡ plane-tree (2a)

πλέον (any) more

πνεῦμα (πνευματ-), τό breeze  
(3a)

πνίγ-ος, τό stifling heat (3c)

πο-ά, ἡ grass (1c)

προάγ-ω lead on

σκι-ά, ἡ shade (1b)

σκόπωμεν let us survey,  
consider

συλλέγ-ω gather, collect

τεκμαίρ-ομαι conclude, infer  
τί μὴν; of course (so what  
follows?)

ὑψηλ-ός -ή -όν high, tall

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἀθυμία, ἡ lack of spirit,  
depression (1b)

διάκειμαι be in X (adv.) state,  
mood

εἰσαγγελία, ἡ impeachment  
(1b)

ἐκεῖ there

ἐπιεικῆς ἐς fair, reasonable,  
moderate

ἕως ἄν (+subj.)

until

πλέον more (adv.)

προάγω lead on

συλλέγω collect, gather

τεκμαίρομαι conclude, infer

○ **Grammar for Section Fifteen G**

*Summary:*

1st person orders

ἕως ἄν

**Subjunctive orders 'let us'**

192 The subjunctive, used on its own in the 1st person plural, means 'let us', e.g. μένωμεν 'let us wait', πυθώμεθα 'let us inquire'.

**ἕως 'until'**

193 ἕως ἄν means 'until such time as', and the verb goes into the subjunctive. The implication behind this sense of 'until' is that the time of the



event awaited in the 'until' clause is viewed as being not entirely certain, or as lying in the indefinite future (cf. on indefinite use of *ἄν*, 175-6), e.g.

μένωμεν ἕως ἄν ἐπανεέλθῃ ὁ δεσπότης 'let us wait till such time as the master returns' (whenever *that* may be).



## Vocabulary for Section Fifteen H

αἰκεί-α, ἡ assault (1b)	ἥκιστα least of all, not	ὑπισχιέ-ομαι
ἀκολουθέ-ω follow	καταδίκ-η, ἡ fine (1a)	(ὑποσχ-) promise (to)
ἀναίτι-ος -ον innocent	κηδεστ-ής, ὁ cousin (1d)	(+ fut. inf.)
ἀντί (+ gen.) instead of	μάλα virtually, quite, very	φοβέ-ομαι μή fear that/lest
ἀπολαμβάν-ω (ἀπολαβ-) take	Μνησίβουλ-ος, ὁ Mnesiboulos	(+ opt.)
αὐτίκα at once, directly	(2a) (Theophrastos' cousin)	
ἐνθυμέ-ομαι take to heart	τράπεζ-α, ἡ bank (1c)	

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναίτιος ον innocent	ἥκιστα least of all, no, not	(ὑποσχ-) promise (to)
ἀντί (+ gen.) instead of, for	καταδίκη, ἡ fine (1a)	(+ fut. inf.)
ἀπολαμβάνω (ἀπολαβ-) take	μάλα very, quite, virtually (cf.	φοβέομαι μή fear that/lest
ἐνθυμέομαι take to heart, be	μᾶλλον, μάλιστα)	(+ opt.)
angry at	ὑπισχιέομαι	



## Grammar for Section Fifteen H

### Summary

φοβοῦμαι μή + opt.

### φοβοῦμαι again

194 You have already met φοβοῦμαι μή + subjunctive to mean 'fear that something will/may happen'. When the verb of fearing is in secondary sequence, the μή clause will take the optative, e.g.

ἐφοβεῖτο μή οὐκ ἀφίκοιτο ἡ στρατιά 'he was afraid the army might not come'

### Note

You have now met three constructions in which the verbs are in the subjunctive in primary sequence, and optative in secondary sequence, i.e. ἵνα (186), indefinites (187) and here with verbs of fearing. You should bear this principle in mind, but be aware that Greek usage in this respect is very flexible and you will find the subjunctive used in places where you would expect the optative.



---

## Exercises for Section Fifteen F-H

---

### English into Greek

#### 1. Sentences

Translate into Greek:

1. The decree demanded that the trierarchs get back the gear in whatever way was most easy for them.
2. Whenever the trierarchs came across someone not handing over the gear, they went back to the council.
3. Let us stop travelling and sit down.
4. We shall stay here until we feel better.
5. Before returning home, let us sit down over there until the sun becomes more tolerable.

#### 2. Prose

Translate into Greek:

Since it was impossible to get the gear, the city was in great danger. So the council had to do something, so that we might equip a rescue-force of triremes as soon as possible. I had gone to Theophemos' house, but he was not in. I was afraid that he would not hand over the gear. So Khairedemos drafted a decree. And the trierarchs, whenever they came across someone who would not give back the gear, showed him the decree.

### Test Exercise Fifteen

Translate into English:

*Apollodoros claims that the defendant Polykles would not take over a trireme from him, although he had been appointed as its joint-trierarch for the next year, and that he himself served several months overtime with the boat as a consequence. Apollodoros relates what happened when he tackled Polykles the first time in Thasos.*

(From Demosthenes, *Polykles*, 29-37)

ἐπειδὴ οὗτος ἀφίκετο εἰς Θάσον, παραλαβὼν ἐγὼ μάρτυρας τῶν τε πολιτῶν ὡς ἐδυνάμην πλείστους καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας, προσέρχομαι αὐτῷ ἐν Θάσῳ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ, καὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν τὴν τε ναῦν παραλαμβάνειν παρ' ἐμοῦ ὡς διάδοχον ὄντα, καὶ τοῦ ἐπιτετριηραρχημένου χρόνου ἀποδιδόναι μοι τὰ ἀναλώματα. λογίσασθαι δ' ἤθελον αὐτῷ καθ' ἕκαστον, ἕως μοι μάρτυρες παρήσαι τῶν ἀνηλωμένων, ἵνα, εἴ τι ἀντιλέγοι, εὐθὺς ἐξελέγχοιμι. ἐγγράπτο γὰρ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀκριβῶς τὰ

ἀναλώματα. προκαλουμένου δέ μου ταῦτα, ἀπεκρίνατό μοι Πολυκλῆς ὅτι οὐδὲν αὐτῷ μέλοι ὧν λέγοιμι.

*Apollodoros gets no further on the next occasion either. Returning from a voyage ordered by the general Timomakhos to Thasos, he decides to go direct to the top and have the general there when he tries to hand over the vessel formally to Polykles for the second time.*

καταλαμβάνω οὖν καὶ Πολυκλέα ἐκεῖ καὶ τοὺς τριηράρχους καὶ τοὺς διαδόχους καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς τῶν πολιτῶν, καὶ εἰσελθὼν εὐθύς ἐναντίον τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγους πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐποιούμην, καὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν τὴν τε ναῦν παραλαμβάνειν παρ' ἐμοῦ, καὶ τοῦ ἐπιτετριηραρχημένου χρόνου ἀποδιδόναι μοι τὰ ἀναλώματα. ταῦτα δέ μου προκαλουμένου αὐτόν, 'τίς ἂν δύναιτ'', ἔφη, 'τὴν σὴν μανίαν καὶ πολυτέλειαν ὑπομείναι, ὅς σκεύη ἴδια μόνος ἔχεις τῶν τριηράρχων καὶ ἀργύριον πολὺ δίδως τοῖς ναύταις; κακῶν γὰρ διδάσκαλος γέγονας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι, διαφθείρας τοὺς ναύτας καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας, δέον σε τὰ αὐτὰ ποιεῖν τοῖς ἄλλοις τριηράρχοις.' λέγοντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ταῦτα, ἀπεκρινάμην αὐτῷ, 'περὶ μὲν τῶν ναυτῶν καὶ τῶν ἐπιβατῶν, εἰ φῆς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ αὐτοὺς διεφθάρθαι, παραλαβὼν τὴν τριήρη αὐτὸς σαυτῷ κατασκεύασαι καὶ ναύτας καὶ ἐπιβάτας, οἵτινές σοι μηδὲν ἀργύριον λαβόντες συμπλεύσονται. τὴν δὲ ναῦν παράλαβε· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι μοι προσῆκει τριηραρχεῖν.' λέγοντος δέ μου ταῦτα, ἀποκρίνεταιί μοι ὅτι ὁ συντριήραρχος αὐτῷ οὐχ ἦκοι ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν· 'οὐκ οὐκ παραλήψομαι μόνος τὴν τριήρη.'

### Vocabulary

ἐπιβάτης, ὁ marine (1d)  
 διάδοχος, ὁ successor (2a)  
 ἐπιτριηραρχέω verb (3a  
 trierarch) over one's time  
 ἀνάλωμα (ἀναλωματ-), τό  
 expense (3b)  
 ἕως (+ indic.) while  
 ἀνηλωμένος perf. part. pass.  
 of ἀναλίσκω spend

ἀντιλέγω object  
 προκαλέομαι challenge  
 μανία, ἡ madness (1b)  
 πολυτέλεια, ἡ extravagance  
 (1b)  
 ὑπομένω (ὑπομειν-) endure  
 ἴδιος a on private  
 στρατεύμα (στρατευματ-), τό  
 army (3b)

ὁ αὐτός (+ dat.) the same as  
 κατασκευάζομαι provide  
 συμπλέω (fut.  
 συμπλεύσομαι) sail with  
 προσῆκει it is the business of  
 (dat.)  
 συντριήραρχος, ὁ  
 joint-trierarch (2a)



## Section Sixteen

### Vocabulary for Section Sixteen A

ἀκόλουθ-ος -ον

accompanying (+ dat.)

ἀναγκαῖ-ος -α -ον necessary

ἀποφέρ-ω carry back, return

ἀριστά-ω have breakfast

ἀρπάζ-ω seize, plunder

ᾄσσ-ω dart, dash

αὐλή-η, ἡ courtyard (1a)

ἀφείθη she was let go (aor.

pass. of ἀφήμι)

ἀφειμένη let go, released

(perf. pass. of ἀφήμι)

ἀφήκε (he) let go (aor. of

ἀφήμι)

γεωργέ-ω farm

δαιτά-ομαι live

διάκον-ος, ὁ servant (2a)

διαφεύγ-ω (διαφυγ-) get

away from

ἐκ-βάλλ-ω (ἐκβαλ-)

break open

ἐκτίν-ω (ἐκτεισ-) pay

ἐκφορέ-ω carry off

ἐπισέρχ-ομαι

(ἐπισελθ-) invade

ἕως (+opt.) until

ἔξαν κίσσω

θεράπειν-α, ἡ servant (1c)

ἵπποδρομ-ος, ὁ race-course,

downs (2a)

κῆπ-ος, ὁ garden (2a)

κλεί-ω close

κραυγ-ή, ἡ shouting, tumult

(1a)

μαλακ-ός -ή -όν soft-fleeced

μειράκι-ον, τό youth (2b)

ἐκ μαιρακίου from a young

boy

οἶχ-ομαι be off, be gone

ὀρμά-ομαι charge

οὐπερ where

πεντήκοντα fifty

πιστ-ός -ή -όν trustworthy,

reliable

ποιμαίν-ω tend

ποιμήν (ποιμεν-), ὁ shepherd

(3a)

ποιμν-η, ἡ flock of sheep (1a)

πρεσβύτερ-ος -α -ον older,

rather old

πρόβατ-ον, τό sheep (2b)

πρός (+ dat.) near; in addition

πύργ-ος, ὁ tower (2a) [to

τίθ-η, ἡ nurse (1a)

ὑδρί-α, ἡ hydria, large vessel

(1b)

ὑπόλοιπ-ος -ον remaining,

left over

φέρ-ω lead

χαλκ-ούς -ή -οὖν bronze

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀναγκαῖος α ον necessary

ἀποφέρω (ἀπενεγκ-) carry  
back

αὐλή, ἡ courtyard (1a)

ἀφήμι (ἀφε-) release, let go

διαφεύγω (διαφυγ-) get away,  
flee

ἐκβάλλω (ἐκβαλ-) break open;  
throw out

ἐπισέρχομαι

(ἐπισελθ-) attack

ἕως (+opt.) until

θεράπεινα, ἡ maidservant (1c)

κλείω close, shut

ὀρμάομαι charge, set off, make

a move

οὐπερ where

πιστός ἢ ὄν faithful,

trustworthy, reliable

ποιμήν (ποιμεν-), ὁ shepherd  
(3a)

πρεσβύτερος α ον older, rather  
old

πρός (+ dat.) near, in addition  
to

φέρω (ἐνεγκ-) lead

χαλκοῦς ἢ οὖν bronze

## ○ Grammar for Section Sixteen A

### Summary:

ἕως + opt.

(ἀφ)ῖημι

### ἕως 'until'

195 In secondary sequence ἕως when it means 'until such time as' takes the optative (cf. 193). E.g.,

ἐμένομεν ἕως ἔλθοι 'we waited until he should come'

### Verb

(ἀφ)ῖημι 'release, let go, shoot'

196 You have already met -μι verbs δίδωμι (131), τίθημι (150), ἵστημι (144), and have seen how their forms are related. ῖημι is no exception, and follows most closely the pattern of τίθημι. ἀφίημι, the common compound, is used here.

### Present indicative

active	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
Stem: ἀφιε-					
ἀφίη-μι	ἀφιε-ίς	ἀφιέ-ναι	ἀφιε-ι	ἀφιε-ίην	ἀφι-ῶ
ἀφίη-ς	ἀφιε-ῖσα		ἀφιε-τω	ἀφιε-ίης	ἀφι-ῆς
ἀφίη-σι(ν)	ἀφιε-ν		ἀφιε-τε	ἀφιε-ίη	ἀφι-ῆ
ἀφιε-μεν	(ἀφιεντ-)		ἀφιε-ντων	ἀφιε-ίμεν	ἀφι-ῶμεν
ἀφιε-τε				ἀφιε-ίτε	ἀφι-ῆτε
ἀφι-ᾶσι(ν)				ἀφιε-ίεν	ἀφι-ῶσι(ν)

### Present indicative

middle/passive	Participle	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
ἀφιε-μαι	ἀφιε-μεν-ος	ἀφιε-σθαι	ἀφιε-σο	ἀφιε-ίμην	ἀφι-ῶμαι
ἀφιε-σαι	-η		ἀφιε-σθω	ἀφιε-ίο	ἀφι-ῆ
ἀφιε-ται	-ον		ἀφιε-σθε	ἀφιε-ίτο	ἀφι-ῆται
ἀφιε-μεθα			ἀφιε-σθων	ἀφιε-ίμεθα	ἀφι-ῶμεθα
ἀφιε-σθε				ἀφιε-ίσθε	ἀφι-ῆσθε
ἀφιε-νται				ἀφιε-ίντο	ἀφι-ῶνται

*Imperfect indicative*

*active*

ἀφίη-ν  
 ἀφίε-ις  
 ἀφίε-ι  
 ἀφίε-μεν  
 ἀφίε-τε  
 ἀφίε-σαν

*Imperfect indicative*

*middle/passive*

ἀφίε-μην  
 ἀφίε-σο  
 ἀφίε-το  
 ἀφίε-μεθα  
 ἀφίε-σθε  
 ἀφίε-ντο

*Aorist indicative*

*active*

*Participle*

*Infinitive*

*Imperative*

*Optative*

*Subjunctive*

*Stem: ἀφε- (note augmented form is ἀφη- or ἀφει-)*

ἀφή-κα	ἀφε-ίς	ἀφε-ῖναι	ἄφε-ς	ἀφε-ίην	ἀφ-ῶ
ἀφή-κας	ἀφε-ῖσα		ἀφέ-τω	ἀφε-ίης	ἀφ-ῆς
ἀφή-κε	ἀφέ-ν		ἄφε-τε	ἀφε-ίη	ἀφ-ῆ
ἀφει-μεν	(ἀφεντ-)		ἀφέ-ντων	ἀφε-ίμεν	ἀφ-ῶμεν
ἀφει-τε				ἀφε-ίτε	ἀφ-ῆτε
ἀφει-σαν (ἀφή-καν)				ἀφε-ίεν	ἀφ-ῶσι(ν)

*Aorist indicative*

*middle*

*Participle*

*Infinitive*

*Imperative*

*Optative*

*Subjunctive*

ἀφει-μην	ἀφέ-μεν-ος	ἀφέ-σθαι	ἀφ-ου	ἀφε-ίμην	ἀφ-ῶμαι
ἀφει-σο	-η		ἀφέ-σθω	ἀφε-ίο	ἀφ-ῆ
ἀφει-το	-ον		ἄφε-σθε	ἀφε-ίτο	ἀφ-ῆται
ἀφει-μεθα			ἀφέ-σθωι	ἀφε-ίμεθα	ἀφ-ῶμεθα
ἀφει-σθε				ἀφε-ίσθε	ἀφ-ῆσθε
ἀφει-ντο				ἀφε-ίντο	ἀφ-ῶνται

## Aorist indicative

passive

Participle    Infinitive    Imperative    Optative    Subjunctive

Stem: ἀφείθ-

ἀφείθ-ην

ἀφείθ-εις    ἀφείθ-ῆναι    ἀφείθ-ητι    ἀφείθ-είην    ἀφείθ-ῶ

ἀφείθ-ης

ἀφείθ-η

ἀφείθ-ημεν

ἀφείθ-ητε

ἀφείθ-ησαν

## Future indicative active

ἀφήσ-ω (regular, like παύσ-ω)

## Future indicative middle

ἀφήσ-ομαι (regular, like παύσ-ομαι)

## Future indicative passive

ἀφείθ-ῆ-σομαι (regular, like παύσθ-ῆ-σομαι)

## Perfect indicative active

ἀφείκ-α (regular, like πέπαυκ-α)

## Perfect indicative middle/passive

ἀφεί-μαι (regular, like πέπαυ-μαι)

## Notes

(i) Common compounds of ἵημι are συνίημι 'understand' and μεθίημι 'let go of'.

(ii) Main stems of ἵημι are ἰε-, ἐ- or εἰ-. For τιθε- in the present and imperfect forms of τίθημι, you will find ἰε- in ἵημι. For θε- in the aorist, you will find ἐ-; but remember that for augmented forms, you will find the ἐθε- of τίθημι replaced by ἦ- or εἰ-, e.g. ἔθηκα-ῆκα, ἐθέμην-εἴμην.

(iii) On -μι verbs in general, see Language Survey (7). ○

## Exercise for Section Sixteen A

## (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate these sentences. Say what each of the other choices of verb would mean:
2. ἡ θεραπεία ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀφείται ἐλευθέρᾳ.  
(ἀφείθη/ἀφεθήσεται/ἀφίεται/ἀφίετο)

- b. ὁ δὲ πατὴρ ὁ ἐμὸς ἀφῆκε τὴν θεραπείαν.  
(ἀφίησι/ἀφεῖκε/ἀφίει/ἀφήσει)
- c. ἡ γὰρ θεραπεία, ἀφειμένη ἐλευθέρα ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρός, συνώκησεν ἀνδρὶ ἀφειμένῳ καὶ ἐκείνῳ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου.  
(ἀφεθεῖσα/ἀφεθέντι: ἀφειμένη/ἀφειμένῳ: ἀφεθησομένη/ἀφεθησομένῳ)
- d. τοὺς γὰρ δούλους τοὺς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ ναυμαχήσαντας ἀφείσαν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι.  
(ἀφείκασιν/ἀφίασιν/ἀφήσουσιν/ἀφίεσαν)

## Vocabulary for Section Sixteen B

Ἀγνόφιλος, ὁ Hagnophilos  
(2a) (a friend of Aristarkhos)  
ἄγχ-ω throttle, strangle  
ἄλλως τε καὶ especially  
ἄμυχ-ή, ἡ scratching, tearing  
(1a)  
Ἄνθεμιών (Ἄνθεμιων-), ὁ  
Anthemion (3a) (a  
neighbour of Aristarkhos)  
ἀπαγγέλλ-ω announce,  
report  
ἀπαγορεύ-ω (ἀπειπ-) forbid  
ἀπαντᾶ-ω meet (+dat.)  
ἀπέιπε see ἀπαγορεύ-ω  
ἀποστρέφ-ω twist back  
βραχίων (βραχιον-), ὁ arm  
(3a)  
διατίθη-μι (διαθε-) dispose  
ἔλκ-ω drag  
ἐντίθη-μι (ἐνθε-) insert, put in

Ἑρμογένης, ὁ Hermogenes  
(3d)  
ἔώρα impf. of ὁράω (3rd s.)  
ἕως (+ind.) until  
ἡκηκόει plur. of ἀκούω (3rd  
s.)  
θεράπων (θεραποντ-), ὁ  
servant (3a)  
καρπ-ός, ὁ wrist (2a)  
κεί-μαι lie  
κόλπ-ος, ὁ bosom, lap (2a)  
κραυγ-ή, ἡ shout, cry (1a)  
κυμβί-ον, τό cup (2b)  
λοιπ-ός -ῆ -όν left, remaining  
οἶχ-ομαι go, depart  
παραγίν-ομαι (παραγεν-) be  
present, turn up  
παράκει-μαι lie beside  
(+dat.)

παρίοντας part. of  
παρέρχομαι, pass by  
πελι-ός -ά -όν bruised  
πεντήκοντα fifty  
πίν-ω (πι-) drink  
πορθέ-ω ransack  
πρίν ἄν (+subj.) until  
πρίν (+opt.) until  
πρόβατ-ον, τό sheep (2b)  
προσκαλέ-ω summon (aor  
part. pass. προσκληθείς)  
στήθ-ος, τό chest (3c)  
τέγ-ος, τό roof (3c)  
τιμά-ω value, reckon  
τίτθ-η, ἡ nurse (1a)  
τράπεζ-α, ἡ bank (1c)  
τράχηλ-ος, ὁ throat (2a)  
ὑφαιμ-ος -ον bloody

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀπαγγέλλω  
(ἀπαγγειλ-) announce,  
report  
ἀπαγορεύω (ἀπειπ-) forbid  
διατίθημι (διαθε-) dispose, put  
X in Y (adv.) state  
ἐντίθημι (ἐνθε-) place in, put  
in  
θεράπων (θεραποντ-), ὁ

servant (3a)  
κείμαι lie, be placed, be made  
λοιπός ἢ ὄν left, remaining  
οἶχομαι be off, depart  
παραγίνομαι (παραγεν-) be  
present, turn up at (+dat.)  
παράκειμαι lie beside, be placed  
beside (+dat.)  
πεντήκοντα fifty

πίνω (πι-) drink  
πρίν ἄν (+subj.) until  
πρίν (+opt.) until  
πρόβατον, τό sheep (2b)  
προσκαλέω summon, call (aor  
part. pass. προσκληθείς)  
τιμάω value, reckon; honour  
τίτθη, ἡ nurse (1a)  
τράπεζα, ἡ bank; table (1c)

## ○ Grammar for Section Sixteen B

### Summary:

ἕως + ind.

πρὶν ἄν + subj., πρὶν + opt.

διατίθημι, διάκειμαι

### ἕως 'while, until'

197 You have already met ἕως meaning 'until' (193, 195), and it has been explained that, when it takes a subjunctive + ἄν or an optative, there is uncertainty or indefiniteness about the time of the 'until' clause. When it takes the *indicative*, it means either 'until' (and the action of the 'until' is *known* to be completed), or 'while'. Only the context will tell you which is correct, e.g.

ἐβόησε ἕως ἐκέλευον παύσασθαι 'he shouted, until I told him to stop'  
μένωμεν ἕως ἔξεστιν 'let us wait while it is possible'

### πρὶν 'until'

198 You have already met πρὶν + infinitive, when it means 'before' (161). When πρὶν is followed by ἄν + subjunctive (primary sequence) or optative (secondary sequence – cf. 194 note), it means 'until'; and, like ἕως, it can also be followed by the indicative, when it will still mean 'until' but the action of the 'until' clause will have been completed, e.g.

οὐκ ἀπήλθον πρὶν ἔδειξα τὴν ὁδὸν 'they did not leave till I showed them the road'

οὐ χρή με ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἄν ἴδω τὴν γυναῖκα 'I must not go till I see my wife'

### Note

You will find that, as with ἕως, ἄν sometimes drops out of the construction with the subjunctive, especially in poetry. (In general, see *Language Survey* (6), p. 315, and *Reference Grammar L*, p. 303.)

### Verb

διατίθημι|διάκειμαι 'treat, be treated'

199 διατίθημι means 'I dispose, I treat' someone in a certain way; to express its passive form Greek normally uses διάκειμαι 'I am treated, disposed' in a certain way (cf. 150 note (iii)).

The main parts of κείμαι are:

Present: κεί-μαι, (part.) κείμενος, (inf.) κείσθαι, (imper.) κείσο!

Imperfect: ἐ-κεί-μην

Future: κείσ-ομαι

## Exercise for Section Sixteen B

### (b,c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate the following sentences:

- αἱ μὲν θεράπαινοι ἔμειναν ἐν τῷ πυργῷ ἕως ἀπῆλθον οἱ ἄνδρες.
- ἡ δὲ γυνὴ ἤτει τὸν Θεόφημον μὴ λαβεῖν τὰ σκεύη πρὶν ἐπανίῃ ὁ ἀνὴρ.
- ἄλλα μὴ αἶτει μηδὲ τοῦτο, ἡ δ' ὅς ὁ γείτων. ὕβρισται γὰρ ὄντες οἱ ἄνδρες οὗτοι οὐ παύσσονται ἀρπάζοντες τὴν οἰκίαν πρὶν ἂν ἀφαιρῶνται πάντα.
- ἐγὼ δ' ἦν ἐν Πειραιεῖ, ἕως ἡ οἰκία ἡ ἐμὴ ἐπορθεῖτο, καὶ οὐκ ἄπῃα οἴκαδε πρὶν ἀπηγγέλλθῃ μοι ἐκεῖσε τὰ γεγενημένα.
- πρὶν ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας, εἰρήκη τῇ γυναικὶ ὡς τὸ ἀργύριον κέοιτο ἐπὶ τῇ τραπεζῇ.

2. Complete these sentences by inserting the correct word from the brackets. Then translate:

- ἡ γραῦς κακῶς (ἔκειτο/διέκειτο) διὰ τὸ συγκοπῆναι.
- Θεόφημος καὶ Εὐεργος οὕτω (ἔθεσαν/διέθεσαν) τὴν γραῦν ὥστε ὕφαιμοι ἐγένοντο οἱ βραχίονες.
- ἡ γυνὴ εἶπε τῷ Θεοφῆμῳ ὅτι τὸ ἀργύριον (διάκειται/κεῖται) ἐπὶ τῇ τραπεζῇ.
- ἡ γραῦς (ἐνέθηκεν/διέθηκεν) εἰς τὸν κόλπον τὸ κυμβίον ὃ (παρέκειτο/διέκειτο) αὐτῇ.

## Vocabulary for Section Sixteen C

ἄγγελ-ος, ὁ messenger (2a)

ἀκολουθέ-ω follow,

accompany

ἀνδράποδ-ον, τό slave (2b)

ἀπόκρισ-ις, ἡ reply (3c)

ἀρπάζ-ω seize, plunder

αὐτίκα at once

δέκα ten

διαμαρτύρ-ομαι beg earnestly

διατριβ-ή, ἡ delay (1a)

δίκ-η, ἡ time (1a)

ἐδυνήθην 1st aor. of δύναμαι

ἐκτίν-ω (ἐκτεῖσ-) pay

ἐκφορέ-ω carry off

ἐμποιέ-ω engender, cause

ἔωθεν at dawn

ἰατρ-ός, ὁ doctor (2a)

κακά . . . πολλά λέγω curse

vehemently

καταφέρ-ω carry down

κατηνέχθη 1st aor. pass of

καταφέρω

κινδυνεύ-ω be in danger, run

a risk

λιθοκόπ-ος, ὁ stone-mason (2a)	προτεραί-ος -α -ον previous, of previous day	hundred
μνήμα (μνηματ-), τό memorial, monument (3b)	τῇ προτεραία on the previous day	ὑπόλοιπ-ος -ον remaining, left
μόλις scarcely, reluctantly	πύργ-ος, ὁ tower (2a)	ὑστεραῖ-ος -α -ον next, of next day
ὀβολ-ός, ὁ obol (2a) (one-sixth of a drachma)	συγκόπτ-ω beat up (aor. pass. συνεκόπη)	τῇ ὑστεραία on the next day
Πειραι-εύς, ὁ Piraeus (3g)	σφόδρα very much, exceedingly	χίλι-οι -αι -α thousand
πλεονεκτέ-ω be greedy	τριακόσι-οι -αι -α three	χρεί-α, ἡ need, necessity (2b)
πλησί-ος -α -ον nearby		ψυχ-ή, ἡ life, soul (1a)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄγγελος, ὁ messenger (2a)	ἐκφορέω carry off	συγκόπτω beat up, strike (aor. pass. συνεκόπη)
ἀκολουθέω follow, accompany	καταφέρω (κατενεγκ-) carry down	σφόδρα very much, exceedingly
ἀπόκρισις, ἡ reply, answer (3e)	κινδυνεύω be in danger, run risk, be likely to	ὑπόλοιπος on remaining
ἄρπάζω seize, plunder, snatch	πλησίος α on nearby	ὑστεραῖος α on next day
δέκα ten	προτεραίος α on previous, of previous day	χίλιοι αι α thousand
διατριβή, ἡ delay; pastime; discussion; way of life (1a)	πύργος, ὁ tower (2a)	ψυχή, ἡ soul, life (1a)
δίκη, ἡ fine; case; justice (1a)		
ἐκτίω (ἐκτεισ-) pay		

## O Grammar for Section Sixteen C

### Summary:

ὥστε + ind./inf.

Numerals

οὕτως . . . ὥστε 'so . . . that'

200 You have already met ὥστε at the start of a sentence, meaning 'consequently, as a result'. It can also introduce a clause on its own, when it means 'so as to' (and will be followed by an infinitive – change of subject in the accusative rule), or 'so that' (when it will be followed by an indicative), e.g.

μηχανὴν εὐρίσκουσιν ὥστε ἐκφυγεῖν 'they find a plan so as to escape'  
(or 'an escape-plan') (but do they escape?)

μηχανὴν ηὔρον ὥστε ἐξέφυγον 'they found a plan so that they escaped'

201 Frequently, ὥστε is preceded by οὕτω(ς) 'so' (or by words such as τοσοῦτος 'so great', τοιοῦτος 'of such a sort', τόσος 'so many'), to form what is called a 'result' or 'consecutive' clause, of the form 'so . . . that'. The ὥστε clause will still take an indicative or infinitive, e.g.

οὕτως ἀνόητός ἐστιν ὥστε ἐλπίζει ἐκφεύεσθαι 'he is so foolish that he hopes to escape'



οὕτως ἀνόητός ἐστιν ὥστε ἐλπίζειν ἐκφεύξεσθαι 'he is so foolish as to hope to escape' (but does he actually hope to escape?)

(On infinitives in general, see Reference Grammar J, p. 299.)

202 There is sometimes a very fine distinction between the force of the clauses taking an infinitive or an indicative, and it is often not possible to make as clear a distinction as we have done.

### Numerals

203	Cardinals	Ordinals	Adverbs
	('one, two' etc.)	('first, second' etc.)	('once, twice' etc.)
1	εἷς μία ἓν	πρῶτ-ος -η -ον	ἅπαξ
2	δύο	δεύτερ-ος -α -ον	δῖς
3	τρεῖς τρία	τρίτ-ος -η -ον	τρίς
4	τέτταρες τέτταρα	τέταρτ-ος (etc.)	τετράκις
5	πέντε	πέμπτος	πεντάκις
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος	ἑξάκις
7	ἐπτά	ἑβδομος	ἐπτάκις
8	ὀκτώ	ὀγδοος	ὀκτάκις
9	ἐννέα	ἕνατος	ἐνάκις
10	δέκα	δέκατος	δεκάκις
11	ἕνδεκα	ἐνδέκατος	ἐνδεκάκις
12	δώδεκα	δωδέκατος	δωδεκάκις
13	τρεῖς καὶ δέκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος	τρισκαϊδεκάκις
14	τέτταρες καὶ δέκα	τέταρτος καὶ δέκατος	τετταρακαϊδεκάκις
15	πεντεκαῖδεκα	πέμπτος καὶ δέκατος	πεντεκαϊδεκάκις
16	ἑκκαῖδεκα	ἕκτος καὶ δέκατος	ἑκκαϊδεκάκις
17	ἐπτακαῖδεκα	ἑβδομος καὶ δέκατος	ἐπτακαϊδεκάκις
18	ὀκτωκαῖδεκα	ὀγδοος καὶ δέκατος	ὀκτωκαϊδεκάκις
19	ἐννεακαῖδεκα	ἕνατος καὶ δέκατος	ἐννεακαϊδεκάκις
20	εἴκοσι(ν)	εἰκοστός	εἰκοσάκις
30–90	-κοντα	-κοστός	-κοντάκις
100	ἐκατόν	ἐκατοστός	ἐκατοντάκις
200–900	-κόσιοι-αι -α	-κοσιοστός	-κοσιάκις
1,000	χίλιοι-αι -α	χιλιοστός	χιλιάκις
10,000	μύριοι-αι -α	μυριοστός	μυριάκις

### Notes

(i) All ordinals, and cardinals in the 100's and above, decline in full like καλ-ός -ή -όν, οἱ ἡμέτερ-ος -α -ον.

## The declension of 'one', 'two', 'three', 'four'

εἷς 'one'				δύο 'two'					
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.		nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	εἷς	ἕνα	ένός	ένί					
f.	μία	μίαν	μιᾶς	μιᾷ	m./f./n.	δύο	δύο	δυοῖν	δυοῖν
n.	ἓν	ἓν	ένός	ένί					

τρεις 'three'				τέτταρες 'four'					
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.		nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m./f.	τρεις	τρεις	τριῶν	τρισί(ν)	m./f.	τέτταρες	τέτταρας	τεττάρων	τέτταροι(ν)
n.	τρία	τρία	τριῶν	τρισί(ν)	n.	τέτταρα	τέτταρα	τεττάρων	τέτταροι(ν)

## Exercise for Sixteen C

## (b/c) Morphology and Syntax

1. Translate these sentences, then convert indicative to infinitive in the ὥστε clauses and translate the new versions:
  - a. οὕτω πονηροὶ ἦσαν οἱ ἄνδρες ἐκεῖνοι ὥστε ἔτυπτον τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ ἀφείλοντο ἀπ' αὐτῆς τὸ κυμβίον.
  - b. ἀλλ' οὕτω αἰσχροὶ ἦσαν ἐκεῖνοι ὥστε οὐκ ἤσχύνοντο εἰς τὴν γυναῖκα εἰσιόντες.
  - c. πᾶν ποιούσιν ὥστε δίκην οὐ διδόασιν.
  - d. εἰς τοῦτο ἀσεβείας ἦλθεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὥστε εἰσελθὼν εἰς τὸ ἱερόν ἰκέτην ἀφείλκυσε ἀπὸ τοῦ βωμοῦ.

## Vocabulary for Section Sixteen D

αἰσχυνθῆναι aor. inf. of  
αἰσχύνομαι

ἄλλη in some other way  
ἀσέλγει-α, ἡ disreputable  
behaviour (1b)

αὐτίκα at once

ἀφοσιό-ομαι purify oneself

ἐβουλήθη aor. of βούλομαι

ἐδυνήθη aor. of δύναμαι

εἰ μὴ τι ἄλλο if nothing else

εἰς τοῦτο (gen.) ἔρχομαι teach  
such a pitch of . . .

ἐμνήσθην aor. of μιμνήσκομαι

ἐγγένοι σοι related to you

ἐξηγητ-ῆς, ὁ Adviser (1d)

ἕκτ-ος -η -ον sixth

ἐπαγγέλλ-ω

(ἐπαγγειλ-) order

ἔτ-ος, τό year (3c)

εὐλαβέ-ομαι μὴ take care not  
to (+subj.)

εὐλαβήθητι aor. imper. s. of  
εὐλαβέομαι

ἐφάνησαν aor. of φαίνομαι

ἰατρ-ός, ὁ doctor (2a)

κυμβί-ον, τό cup (2b)

μιμνήσκ-ομαι remember

ὀνομαστί by name

ὀρμηθῆναι aor. of ὀρμάομαι

παραινέ-ω advise

πη in any way	πρῶ early	φέρ-ω (ένεγκ-) bear, endure
προαγορεύ-ω make a public denunciation against (+dat.)	ῥᾶστα most easily (sup. adv.) οἱ ῥᾷδιος	φόν-ος, ὁ murder (2a)
	τελευτά-ω die	χθές yesterday
		ῥμύθησαν aor. of ὀρμάομαι

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

αὐτίκα at once	μιμνήσκομαι	φέρω (ένεγκ-) bear, endure;
ἐπαγγέλλω (ἐπαγγελι-) order	(μνησθ-) remember,	lead; carry
ἔτος, τό year (31)	mention	φόνος, ὁ murder (2a)
ιατρός, ὁ doctor (2a)	ῥᾶστος η on very easy	χθές yesterday
	τελευτάω die, end, finish	

○ Grammar for Section Sixteen D

*Summary:*

Aor. pass. imper.  
Mids. with pass. forms in aor.

**Verbs**

*Aorist passive imperatives (and others) παύσθητι 'be stopped!'*

204 The forms of the aorist passive imperative are as follows:

2nd s.	παύσθ-ητι 'be stopped!' (and -ηθι, e.g. κατακλίθητι 'lie down!')
3rd s.	-ήτω 'may he be stopped!' etc.
2nd pl.	-ητε
3rd pl.	-έντων

205 Observe the similarities with the active imperative of the root aorists:

	ἔγνων		ἔβην		ἔστην
2nd s.	γνώ-θι 'know!'		βῆ-θι 'go!'		στή-θι 'stand!'
3rd s.	γνώ-τω		βή-τω		στή-τω
2nd pl.	γνώ-τε		βῆ-τε		στή-τε
3rd pl.	γνό-ντων		βά-ντων		στά-ντων

Learn the imperative of φημί 'I say':

- φά-θι 'say!' etc.
- φά-τω
- φά-τε
- φά-ντων

Revise aorist imperatives as a whole (110-12).

*Middles which adopt aorist passive forms*

206 Many middles become passive in FORM (not in meaning) in the aorist. Check the following list:

βούλομαι → ἐβουλήθην	'I wished'
δύναμαι → ἐδυνήθην	'I was able'
δέομαι → ἐδεήθην	'I begged'
ἐπίσταμαι → ἤπιστήθην	'I knew'
ἡδομαι → ἡσθην	'I found pleasure in'
μιμνήσκομαι → ἐμνήσθην	'I remembered'
διαλέγομαι → διελέχθην	'I conversed'
οἶομαι → ᾤήθην	'I thought'
φοβέομαι → ἐφοβήθην	'I feared'
χαίρω → ἐχάρην	'I rejoiced'
ὀργίζομαι → ὠργίσθην	'I grew angry'

## Revise

Subj. morphology 172-4 Language Survey (5)

## Vocabulary for Section Sixteen E

ἄλλως otherwise	πλανά-ομαι wander, roam	enthusiasm of (+ dat.)
ἀνόητ-ος -ον foolish	about	τί γένωμαι; what will become of me?
βουλεύ-ομαι discuss	ποῖ τράπωμαι; where am I to turn?	τί δρώμεν; what are we to do?
ἔωθεν daybreak	συμβουλευ-ομαι discuss with (+ dat.)	τί ποιήσω; what am I to do?
κοινῇ together, in common	συμπροθυμέ-ομαι share	ὔει it is raining
ὅτι χρώμαι ἑμαυτῷ; what I am to do with myself?		

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄλλως otherwise; in vain	(+ dat.)
ἀνόητος ον foolish	συμπροθυμέομαι share
βουλεύομαι discuss, take advice	enthusiasm of (+ dat.)
συμβουλευομαι discuss with	

## ○ Grammar for Section Sixteen E

## Summary:

Dels.

χράομαι

Correlatives

**‘What am I to do?’**

207 A question-word followed by a subjunctive (nearly always in the first person) turns the question into an appeal, best translated into English by the form ‘What *am I to/are we to* –?’, e.g.

ποῖ τράπωμαι; ‘Where am I to turn?’

τί γένωμαι; ‘What is to become of me?’

τί τις λέγῃ; ‘What is one to say?’ (where ‘one’ really = ‘I’)

This is called the ‘deliberative’ subjunctive.

208 This construction sometimes appears after βούλομαι, e.g.

βούλη εἶπω τοῦτο; ‘Do you wish me to say this?’ (lit. ‘that I should say this’)

βούλη ποιήσω τοῦτο; ‘Do you wish that I should do this?’

(N.b. ποιήσω is 1st person aor. subj., NOT future!)

(Cf. in general *Reference Grammar Q, R, p. 306.*)

**Verbs**

χράομαι ‘I use, have to do with’

209 This word means basically ‘I use’ or ‘I have to do with’. It is used quite often in deliberatives to mean ‘what am I to do with . . .?’ e.g.

τί χρῶμαι ἑμαυτῷ; ‘What am I to do with myself?’

**Correlatives**

210 You have already met the sentence:

οὐ γὰρ τούτους οὕτως μισῶ ὡς ἑμαυτὸν φιλῶ ‘I do not hate these as (so) much as I like myself’

Note the parallel of οὕτως ‘as/so much’ with ὡς ‘as’. In the same way, Greek parallels such words as τοιοῦτος ‘of such a sort’ with οἷος ‘as’; τοσοῦτος ‘so great’ with ὅσος ‘as’, e.g.

οὐκ ἐστὶ μοι τοιαύτη ἐπιστολὴ οἷα (ἐστὶ) σοι ‘I do not have a letter of the sort that you have’

οὐκ ἔλεγε τοσοῦτους λόγους ὅσους σὺ (ἔλεγες) ‘he did not speak as many words (make as many speeches) as you’ ○

**Exercises for Section Sixteen**

**(d) English into Greek**

1. Sentences

Translate into Greek:

1. The maidservants did not wait until they were caught.

2. They didn't stop carrying furniture out of the house until they had grabbed everything.
  3. They were taking off my son, until a neighbour told them that he was the child of a citizen, and not a slave.
  4. I was angry that the rogues had put my nurse into such poor condition that she was actually in danger of her life.
  5. They were disdainful enough to enter my house and carry out my furniture.
2. Prose

Translate into Greek:

My wife got angry and said, 'Do not seize this furniture. Have you not already got fifty sheep? Wait for a while; you must not go off till my husband returns.' They took no notice of my wife's words, but took everything and left. A messenger came to the Piraeus to tell me what had happened. When I heard the news, I risked being angry enough to strike Theophemos myself. But I went to him the next day and ordered him to follow me to the bank, to collect the money which was deposited.

### Text Exercise Sixteen

Translate into English:

*Socrates and Phaidros are taking a walk at midday, when most people take a snooze. Socrates tells the story of the cicadas and their close connection with the Muses to explain his reasons for feeling that philosophic discussion should be the order of the day.*

(From Plato, *Phaidros* 258c-259d)

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ διαλεγόμεθα οὖν, ὦ φίλε Φαίδρε· σχολή μὲν δὴ, ὡς ἔοικε.  
καὶ ἅμα μοι δοκοῦσιν οἱ τέττιγες ἡμᾶς καθορᾶν, ἄδοντες καὶ ἀλλήλοις  
διαλεγόμενοι. εἰ οὖν ἴδοιεν καὶ ἡμᾶς ὡσπερ τοὺς πολλοὺς ἐν μεσημβρία  
μὴ διαλεγόμενους, ἀλλὰ καθεύδοντας καὶ κηλουμένους ὑφ' αὐτῶν δι'  
ἀργίαν τῆς διανοίας, δικαίως ἂν καταγελῶεν, ἡγούμενοι δούλους τινὰς  
ὡσπερ πρόβατα περὶ τὴν κρήνην εὔδειν. εἰ δὲ ὀρώσιν ἡμᾶς  
διαλεγόμενους καὶ ἀκηλήτους παραπλέοντάς σφας ὡσπερ Σειρήνας,  
τάχ' ἂν δοίεν ἡμῖν ἡσθέντες ἐκεῖνο τὸ δῶρον, ὃ παρὰ θεῶν ἔχουσι  
ἀνθρώποις διδόναι.

ΦΑΙΔΡΟΣ τί τὸ δῶρον; μὴ ἀποκρύψης. ἀνήκοος γάρ, ὡς ἔοικε, τυγχάνω ὢν.

ΣΩΚ τί δρῶ; δῆλον ὅτι ἐμὲ δεῖ σοι λέγειν· πρέπον γὰρ φιλόμουσον καλεῖσθαι  
σέ, φοβούμαι μὴ ἄμουσος εἶναι δόκης, τῶν τοιούτων ἀνήκοος ὢν.  
λέγεται δ' ὡς ποτ' ἦσαν οἱ τέττιγες ἀνθρωποι, πρὶν τὰς Μούσας

γεγονέναι. γενομένων δὲ Μουσῶν καὶ φανείσης ᾠδῆς οὕτως ἄρα τινὲς τῶν τότε ἀνθρώπων ἐξεπλάγησαν ὑφ' ἠδοιῆς ἀκούοντες, ὥστε ἄδοντες ἠμέλησαν σίτων τε καὶ ποτῶν, καὶ ἔλαθον αὐτοὺς τελευτήσαντες. καὶ ἐκ τούτων τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὸ τῶν τεττίγων γένος μετ' ἐκείνο φύεται, δῶρον τοῦτο παρὰ Μουσῶν λαβόν, μηδὲν τροφῆς δεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἄσιτόν τε καὶ ἄποτον ὃν ἄδειν, ἕως ἂν τελευτήσῃ, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐλθὼν παρὰ Μουσᾶς ἀπαγγέλλειν, τίς τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὰς Μούσας τιμᾶ. πολλῶν δὴ οὖν ἔνεκα λεκτέον τι καὶ οὐ καθευδητέον ἐν τῇ μεσημβρίᾳ.

ΦΑΙΔ. λεκτέον γὰρ οὖν.

### Vocabulary

τέτιξ (τεττιγ-), ὁ cicada (3a)	σφας them	ᾠδῆ, ἡ song, singing (1a)
μεσημβρία, ἡ midday (1a)	ἀποκρύπτω conceal	ἐξεπλάγησαν aor. pass. of ἐκπλήττω astound
κηλέω bewitch	ἀνήκοος ον unaware (of) (+ gen.)	ἀμελέω neglect (+ gen.)
ἀργία, ἡ laziness (1b)	πρέπει it is fitting	ποτά, τά drunk (2b)
κρήνη, ἡ fountain (1a)	γεγονέναι perf. inf. of γίνομαι	τροφῆ, ἡ nourishment (1a)
ἀκήλητος ον uncharmed		
παραπλέω cf. πλέω		

## Section Seventeen

### Vocabulary for Section Seventeen A

ἀιστό-ω destroy	ἐπισκοπέ-ομαι (ἐπισκεψ-) review	πρέπει it is fitting, suitable
ἀμπίσχ-ω surround, clothe	εὐλάβει-α, ἡ care (1b)	Προμηθεύς, ὁ Prometheus (3g) ('Foresight')
ἄοπλ-ος -ον unarmed	ἰσχ-ύς, ἡ strength (3h)	προσάπτ-ω attach, give
ἀσθεν-ής -ές weak	κατάγει-ος -ον under the earth	προστάττ-ω (προσταξ-) order (+ dat.)
αὐξάν-ω (αὐξ-) make grow, increase	κεράννυ-μι mix	πτην-ός -ή -όν winged
γένεσ-ις, ἡ birth (3ε)	κοσμέ-ω equip	σικρότης (σικροτητ-), ἡ smallness (3a)
δύναμ-ις, ἡ power, faculty (3ε)	μέγεθ-ος, τό size (3ε)	τάχ-ος, τό speed (3ε)
εἰμαρμέν-ος -η -ον allotted	μηχανά-ομαι contrive, devise	τυπέ-ω fashion, shape
ἔνδον (+ gen.) inside, within	μίγνυ-μι (μιξ-) mix	τῶν of those things
ἐπανισό-ω put on a par. make equal	νέμ-ω (νειμ-) allot, distribute, assign	φυγ-ή, ἡ flight (1a)
Ἐπιμηθεύς, ὁ Epimetheus (3g) ('Aftersight')	ὀπλίζ-ω arm	φῶς (φωτ-), τό light (3b)
	παραιτέ-ομαι beg	

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀσθενής weak, ill	(ἐπισκεψ-) review	προστάττω (προσταξ-) order (+ dat.)
γένεσις, ἡ birth (3ε)	μηχανάομαι devise, contrive	τάχος, τό speed (3ε)
δύναμις, ἡ power, ability, faculty (3ε)	νέμω (νειμ-) distribute, allot, assign	φυγή, ἡ flight (1a)
ἐπισκοπέομαι	παραιτέομαι beg	

### Vocabulary for Section Seventeen B

ἀλληλοφθορί-α, ἡ mutual destruction (1b)	ἀμφιέννυ-μι dress, clothe	αὐτοφυ-ής -ές natural
ἀμύν-ω keep off, withstand	ἀναλίσκ-ω kill, consume	βορ-ά, ἡ food, meat (1b)
	ἀναιμ-ος -ον bloodless	βοτάν-η, ἡ grass (1a)



δένδρ-ον, τό tree (2b)	θρίξ (τριχ-), ἡ hair (3a) (dat. pl. θριξί)	πορίζ-ω provide, offer
δέρμα (δερματ-), τό skin (3b)	ικαν-ός -ή -όν sufficient (+ inf. 'το')	προσάπτ-ω give, attach to (+ dat.)
διαφυγ-ή, ἡ means of escape from (1a)	καρπ-ός, ὁ fruit (2a)	πυκν-ός -ή -όν thick
δυνατ-ός -ή -όν able (sc. 'to withstand')	καῦμα (καυματ-), τό heat (3b)	ρίζ-α, ἡ root (1c)
ἐκπορίζ-ω supply	οἰκει-ός -α -ον personal	στερε-ός -ά -όν hard
ἐπαρκέ-ω provide enough (of)	ὀλιγογονί-α, ἡ production of few young (1b)	στρωμν-ή, ἡ bedding (1a)
ἔστι . . . οἷς 'to some'	ὄπλ-ή, ἡ hoof (1a)	τοῦντεῦθεν = τὸ ἐντεῦθεν next
εὐμάρει-α, ἡ comfort (1b)	ὄπως (+ opt.) = ἵνα (+ opt.)	τροφ-ή, ἡ food (1a)
εὖν-ή, ἡ bed (1a)	πολυγονί-α, ἡ fertility (1b)	ὑπάρχ-ω serve as, be
ζῶ-ον, τό animal (2b)		ὑποδέ-ω shoe
		χειμών (χειμων-), ὁ winter, storm (3a)
		ῥα, ἡ season (1b)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀμύνω keep off, withstand	ἐκπορίζω supply, provide	προσάπτω give, attach to (+ dat.)
ἀναλίσκω (ἀναλωσ-) spend; use; kill	ζῶον, τό animal, creature, living thing (2b)	στρωμνή, ἡ bedding (1a)
δένδρον, τό tree (2b)	ικανός ἢ ὄν sufficient, capable, able (+ inf.)	τροφή, ἡ food, nourishment (1a)
δέρμα (δερματ-), τό skin (3b)	ὄπως = ἵνα (+ subj./opt.) in order to	χειμών (χειμων-), ὁ winter, storm (3a)
διαφυγή, ἡ flight, means of escape (1a)	πορίζω provide, offer	
δυνατός ἢ ὄν able, possible		

## Vocabulary for Section Seventeen C

Ἄθην-ᾶ, ἡ Athene (1b)	δωρέ-ω bestow, give as a gift	κτητ-ός -ή -όν possessed
ἀκόσμητ-ος -ον unprovided for	ἐγχωρεῖ it is permitted for x (dat.)	νομ-ή, ἡ distribution (1a)
ἀκρόπολ-ις, ἡ acropolis (3c)	εἰμαρμέν-ος -η -ον allotted, appointed	οἶκημα (οἰκηματ-), τό dwelling (3b)
ἄλογ-ος -ον speechless	ἐμμελῶς ἔχ-ω be well off for (+ gen.)	ὄτι χρήσαιτο what he should make of it
τὰ ἄλογα brute beasts	ἔμπυρ-ος -ον of fire	πολιτικ-ός -ή -όν political
ἀμήχαν-ος -ον impracticable, impossible	ἐντεχν-ος -ον artistic	πρός (adv.) in addition
ἀμήχανον ἦν it was impossible to (inf.)	εὐπορί-α, ἡ abundance, means (1b)	σύν (+ dat.) with, with the help of
ἀνυπόδητ-ος -ον unshod	ἐφιλοτεχνίτην the two of them practised their skills	σχόμεν-ος -η -ον being in (+ dat.) (aor. mid. of ἔχω)
ἀοπλ-ος -ον unarmed	ἥπερ as	ταύτῃ in this way
ἀστρωτ-ος -ον without a bed	Ἡφαιστ-ος, ὁ Hephaistos (2a) (god of fire)	τω = τινι
ἄτε in that, since, seeing that (+ part.)	καταναλίσκ-ω (καταναλωσ-) spend lavishly	φοβερ-ός -ά -όν terrible, awe-inspiring
γυμν-ός -ή -όν naked	κλοπ-ή, ἡ theft (1a)	φυλακ-ή, ἡ sentinel, guard (1a)
δὴ οὖν but		φῶς (φωτ-), τό light (3b)
δίκη μετέρχεται a charge of x (gen.) is brought against x (acc.)		

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀκόσμητος οὐ *unprepared for*  
ἀκρόπολις, ἡ *acropolis, citadel*  
(3c)

ἄλογος οὐ *speechless, without*  
*reason*

ἀμήχανος οὐ *impossible,*  
*impracticable*

ἄοπλος οὐ *unarmed*

δωρέω *bestow, give as a gift*  
εἰμαρμένος η *ον allotted,*  
*appointed*

εὐπορία, ἡ *abundance, means*  
(1b)

κλοπή, ἡ *theft (1a)*

νόμη, ἡ *distribution (1a)*

οἶκημα (οἶκηματ-), τό

*dwelling (3b)*

πολιτικός ἢ ὄν *political*

πρός (adv.) *in addition*

σύν *with, together with (+ dat.)*

φοβερός ἂ ὄν *terrible,*

*frightening*

φυλακή, ἡ *sentinel, guard (1a)*

φῶς (φωτ-), τό *light (3b)*

## Vocabulary for Section Seventeen D

ἄγαλμα (ἄγαλματ-), τό  
*image, statue (3b)*

ἀθροίζ-ω *gather, collect*

ἄτε *since, seeing that (+ part.)*

βοηθ-ός, ὁ *helper, assistant*  
(2a)

δημιουργικ-ός -ῆ -όν *technical*

διαρθρό-ομαι *articulate (i.e.*  
*invent)*

ἴσδε-ής -ές *insufficient.*

*lacking*

ἐπιχειρέ-ω *undertake, set to*  
*work*

ἔσθης (ἔσθητ-), ἡ *clothes (3a)*

θεί-ος -α -ον *divine*

θηρί-ον, τό *beast (2b)*

ἰδρύ-ομαι *erect*

κτίζ-ω *found*

μοῖρ-α, ἡ *portion (1b)*

μόνον *alone among (+ gen.)*

πανταχῆ *in every respect*

παρασκευασμένος *perf. part.*  
*pass. of παρασκευάζω*

*prepare, equip*

πολεμικ-ός -ῆ -όν *military,*  
*martial*

σκεδάσν-μι *scatter*

σποράδην *scattered, in groups*

συγγένει-α, ἡ *kinship (1b)*

ὑπόδεσ-ικ, ἡ *shoe (3c)*

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄγαλμα (ἄγαλματ-), τό *image,*  
*statue (3b)*

ἀθροίζω *gather, collect*

ἄτε *since, seeing that (+ part.)*

ἐπιχειρέω *undertake, set to*  
*work (+ inf.)*

ἔσθης (ἔσθητ-), ἡ *clothing (3a)*

θεῖος α *ον divine*

θηρίον, τό *beast (2b)*

πολεμικός ἢ ὄν *military, of*  
*war, martial*

συγγένεια, ἡ *kinship (1b)*

## Vocabulary for Section Seventeen E

αἰδ-ώς (-ῶ -οῦς -οῖ), ἡ *respect*  
*for others*

ἀνέχ-ομαι *put up with*  
(+ gen.)

δειδ-ω (δεισ-) *fear*

δεσμ-ός, ὁ *bond (2a)*

δημιουργικ-ός -ῆ -όν *technical*

δημιουργ-ός, ὁ *expert (2a)*

δικαιοσύν-η, ἡ *justice (1a)*

εἰς μία ἐν (ἐν-) *one*

ἐκτός (+ gen.) *outside*

ιατρικ-ός -ῆ -όν *medical*

ιδιώτ-ης, ὁ *layman, private*  
*citizen (1d)*

ἵέναι (to) *be conducted, (to)*  
*go along*

κτείν-ω *kill*

μέτεστι x (dat.) *has a share in*  
y (gen.)

περί (+ dat.) *about*

προσῆκει *it is fitting for*  
(+ dat.)

συμβουλ-ή, ἡ *discussion,*  
*advice (1a)*

συναγωγ-ός -όν *uniting,*  
*unifying*

σωφροσύν-η, ἡ *moderation,*  
*good sense (1a)*

τεκτονικ-ός -ῆ -όν  
*architectural*

φιλία, ἡ *friendship (1b)*

ὤδε *thus, so*

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

αἰδῶς, ἡ respect for others (acc. αἰδῶ; gen. αἰδοῦς, dat. αἰδοῖ)	δικαιοσύνη, ἡ justice (1a) εἰς μία ἐν (ἐν-) one	προσῆκει it is fitting (for) (+ dat.)
ἀνέχομαι put up with (+ gen.)	ιατρικός ἡ ὄν medical, of healing	συμβουλή, ἡ discussion, recommendation (1a)
δεσμός, ὁ bond (2a)	ιδιώτης, ὁ layman, private citizen (1d)	σωφροσύνη, ἡ moderation, good sense (1a)
δημιουργικός ἡ ὄν technical, of a workman	κτείνω (κτείν-) kill	φιλία, ἡ friendship (1b)
δημιουργός, ὁ craftsman, workman, expert (2a)	περί (+ dat.) about	ὡδε thus, as follows

○ Grammar for Section Seventeen

*Summary:*

Dels. in sec. seq.

ᾶτε + part.

Duals

**Deliberatives again**

211 When a deliberative question is reported in indirect speech (e.g. 'he wondered what he was to do') the question will be followed by the *optative* in secondary sequence, e.g.

(direct) τίνα μηχανὴν εὔρω; 'What device am I to find?'

(indirect) ἠπόρει ἦν τίνα μηχανὴν εὔροι 'he did not know what device to find'

**ᾶτε + participle 'because, as'**

212 Translate ᾶτε by 'as' or 'because', and make the participle an indicative, e.g.

ᾶτε οὐ πάνυ τι σοφὸς ὤν . . . (lit. 'because (as) not being too smart')  
'because he was not too smart'

(On participles in general, see *Reference Grammar I*, p. 298.)

**Duals**

213 When a verb has two people or things as its subject, or when a noun or adjective represents two people or things, the words can adopt a special form known as the dual.

*Verbs*

Verbs are restricted to duals in the 2nd and 3rd person plural only

Watch out for the following endings attached to the stem + vowel-ending of the part in use:

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Middle/passive</i>
2nd	-τον	-σθον
3rd	-τον ( <i>primary</i> ) -την ( <i>secondary</i> )	-σθον ( <i>primary</i> ) -σθην ( <i>secondary</i> )
e.g.	παύ <u>σε</u> τον 'you two/they both will stop'	
	ἐ <u>παυσά</u> την 'they both stopped'	
	παύ <u>σαι</u> τον 'you two stop' (aor. optative active)	
	παυ <u>σά</u> ισθην 'they both stop themselves' (aor. optative middle)	

#### Note

The dual forms of εἰμί are:

ἔστον (*ind.*)

ἦτον (*subj.*)

εἴτον (*opt.*)

#### Nouns/adjectives

Watch out for endings in accordance with the following chart:

	<i>Nominative/accusative</i>	<i>Genitive/dative</i>
Types 1/2	{ -ω -ᾶ	Types { -οιν 1/2/3 { -αιν
Types 3	{ -ε -ει	
e.g.	τὼ σοφῶ ἀνθρώπω 'the two wise men'	
	ἐν ταῖν ὁδοῖν 'in the two roads'	

#### Definite article in the dual

	<i>nom./acc</i>	<i>gen./dat.</i>
m.	τώ	τοῖν
f.	τά (τώ)	ταῖν (τοῖν)
n.	τώ	τοῖν

#### Revise

μή + aor. subj./subj. orders 181, 192 Reference Grammar Q

Negatives, Language Survey (9)

Indefs. (prim./past seq.) 175-6, 187 Reference Grammar L, Language Survey (6)

Opt. in indir. sp. 167, 188 Reference Grammar K

# PART SIX

## Section Eighteen

### Vocabulary for Section Eighteen A

ἄγ-ομαι bring in marriage	ἐπίστα-μαι (ἐπιστα-) stand near (+dat.)	οἱ to him, her (dat.) (goes with εὐδοντι)
αἶχμ-ή, ἡ point of a spear (1a)	ἐθώς (ἐωθοτ-) accustomed to (+inf.)	ὄλβι-ος -α -ον happy, blest
ἀκόντι-ον, τό javelin (2b)	ἐαυτόν = ἐαυτόν	ὄνειρ-ος, ὁ dream (2a)
ἀληθείη = ἀλήθεια	ἐαυτῶ = ἐαυτῶ	οὐδαμῆ (το) nowhere
ἀνδρεών (ἀνδρων-), ὁ men's apartment (3a)	ἤλιξ (ἡλικ-), ὁ comrade, companion (3a)	οὔνομα = ὄνομα
ἀπολείει = ἀπολεί (fut. of ἀπόλλυμι)	κατά (+acc.) in relation to, concerning	σῦτερος = ὁ ἕτερος
*Ἄτ-υς, ὁ Atys (3c) (Croesus' healthy son)	καταρρωδέ-ω fear	πρήγμα = πράγμα
βάλλ-ω (βαλ-) hit, strike (aor. pass. ἐβλήθην)	κρέμα-μαι hang over (+dat.)	σημαίν-ω tell, announce, point out
βληθέντα aor. part. pass. of βάλλω	Κροῖσ-ος, ὁ Croesus (2a) (king of Lydia)	σιδηρέ-ος -η -ον iron, metal
διέφθαρτο he was disabled (plur. pass. of διαφθείρω)	κωφ-ός -ῆ -όν deaf and dumb	Σόλων (Σολων-), ὁ Solon (3a) (Athenian lawgiver)
δοράτι-ον, τό spear (2b)	λόγον δίδω-μι take counsel with (+dat.)	στρατηγέ-ω lead (as commander) (+gen.)
ἐκκομίζ-ω carry out	Λυδ-οί, οἱ the Lydians (2a) (Croesus' people)	συνέ-ω pile up
ἐξεγείρ-ομαι wake up (aor. ἐξηγέρθην)	μιν him, her (acc.) (goes with (i) βληθέντα l. 3; (ii) ἐωθότα l. 5)	τὰ πάντα in all respects
ἐπεῖτε when	νέμεσ-ις, ἡ retribution (3c)	τοῖσι = οἷς which (relative)
εὐδ-ω sleep		τῶν = ὧν of whom (relative)
		χρέωνται = χρώνται
		ῶν = οὖν
		ὡς εἰκάσαι to make a reasonable guess

#### Vocabulary to be learnt

διεφθάρ-μην I was disabled, ruined (plur. pass. of διαφθείρω)

μιν him, her (acc.) (enclitic)  
οἱ to him, her (dat.) (enclitic)  
ὄνειρος, ὁ dream (2a)

## Vocabulary for Section Eighteen B

ἀδελφεόν = ἀδελφόν	part. pass. ἐξεληλαμέν-ος -η -ον)	νομίζ-ομαι be accustomed
*Ἄδραστ-ος, ὁ Adrastos (2a) (‘Unable to escape’)	ἐπεῖτε when	τὰ νομιζόμενα the customary things (2b)
ἀέκων = ἄκων	ἐπικυρέ-ω receive, partake of (+ gen.)	οἰκί-α, τὰ palace (2b)
ἀμείβ-ομαι answer, reply	ἐπίστι-ος -ον suppliant	ὀκόθεν = ὀπόθεν from where
ἀμηχανέ-ω be in need of (+ gen.)	ἐπιχώρι-ος -η -ον of the land, native	ὀνομάζ-ω name, call
ἀπικνεύεται = ἀπικνεύεται	ἑών = ὦν	παραπλήσι-ος -η -ον similar
βασιλήϊ-ος -η -ον of the king, royal	καθαίρ-ω (καθηρ-) cleanse, purify	Σάρδι-ες, αἱ Sardis (Croesus’ capital)
γενε-ή, ἡ birth (1a)	καθαρ-ός -ή -όν pure, clean	στερέ-ω deprive of (+ gen.) (perf. part. pass. ἐστερημέν-ος -η -ον)
γένεος = γένους (gen. s. of γέν-ος, τό family (3c))	καθάρασι-ον, τό purification (2b)	συμφορῆ = συμφορᾶ
Γορδί-ας, ὁ Gordias (gen. s. Γορδιέω) (1d)	κάθαρσ-ις, ἡ purification (3c)	συμφορῆν = συμφοράν
ἐγένεο = ἐγένου	κερδαίν-ω profit (fut κερδανέω)	τοῖσι = τοῖς
ἐδέετο = ἐδεῖτο	κόθεν = πόθεν	φονεύ-ω kill, murder
ἔκγον-ος, ὁ son (2a)	κουφ-ός -ή -όν light	Φρυγι-ή, ἡ Phrygia (1a)
ἔμεωτου = ἔμαυτοῦ	Λυδοῖσι = Λυδοῖς	Φρύξ (Φρυγ-), ὁ Phrygian (3a)
ἐν ἡμετέρου in our house	Μίδ-ας, ὁ Midas (gen. s. Μιδέω) (1d)	χεῖρας in respect of his hands
ἐνθα where (relative)		χρῆμα (χρηματ-), τό thing (3b)
ἐξελαύν-ω drive out (perf.		

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀέκων = ἄκων	Dropping of aspirates in some verb compounds, e.g.	στερέω deprive of (+ gen.) (perf. part. pass. ἐστερημένος)
ἔμεωτόν = ἔμαυτόν	ἀπικνεύομαι = ἀπικνεύομαι	τοῖσι = τοῖς
ἐν (+ gen.) in the house of	νομίζομαι be accustomed	χρῆμα (χρηματ-), τό thing (3b)
ἑών = ὦν	ὀπόθεν (ὀκόθεν) from where	
ἑωυτόν = ἑαυτόν	οὔνομα = ὄνομα	
ἐπεῖτε when, since		

## Vocabulary for Section Eighteen C

ἀμείβ-ομαι reply	-εσκ- suffix implies continuation, repetition)	οἱ ἔρχομαι)
ἀναφαίν-ομαι (ἀναφαν-) appear	ἐξαιρέ-ω (ἐξελ-) remove	κυνηγέσι-ον, τό dog-pack (2b)
γίνεται = γίγνεται	ἔπ-ος, τό word (3c) (uncontr. pl. ἔπεα)	λογάς (λογαδ-), ὁ picked, chosen (man) (3a)
δαίτ-α, ἡ dwelling (1c)	ἔργ-ον, τό result of work (i.e. tilled field) (2b)	Μύσι-ος -η -ον in Mysia
διακελεύ-ομαι exhort, direct (+ dat.)	ιοῦσι dat pl. m. of ἰών (part.	Μυσ-ός, ὁ a Mysian (2a)
διαφθείρεσκε = διέφθειρε (the		

νεηί-ης, ὁ = νεανίας  
 νεόγαμ-ος -ον newly married  
 Ὀλυμπ-ος, ὁ Mt Olympus  
 (2a)  
 ὄρεος = ὄρους (gen. s. of ὄρος,  
 τό mountain (3c))  
 ποιέεσκον = ἐποίουν (the -εσκ-  
 suffix implies continuation,  
 repetition)

προθυμώμενοι =  
 προθυμούμενοι  
 πρὸς (+ gen.) at the hands of  
 προσδέ-ομαι beg x (gen.) for  
 γ (acc.)  
 σευ = σου  
 συμπέμπ-ω send with  
 (+ dat.)  
 συνέξαιρέ-ω (συνεξελ-) join  
 x (dat.) in destroying

σφι to them (dat.)  
 ὑὸς χρήμα  
 μέγα μέγιστον huge  
 monster of a boar  
 ὄς, ὁ boar (3h)  
 χώρα-η, ἡ country (1a)  
 ὦν = οὖν  
 ὡς ἄν (+ subj.) so that, in  
 order that

## Vocabulary to be learnt

γίνομαι = γίγνομαι  
 ἔπος, τό word (3c) (uncontr. pl.  
 ἔπεα)  
 νεηίης = νεανίας  
 συμπέμπω send with (+ dat.)

χώρα, ἡ land (1a)  
 ὦν = οὖν ω, therefore  
 Note uncontracted -ε- in ὄρεος  
 (= ὄρους), προθυμώμενοι  
 (προθυμούμενοι) etc.

Note η for α in, e.g. χώρα  
 (= χώρα), συμφορῆ  
 (συμφορά) etc.

## Vocabulary for Section Eighteen D

ἄγρ-η, ἡ hunt (1a)  
 αἶχμ-ή, ἡ spear-point (1a)  
 ἀμείβ-ομαι reply, answer  
 ἀποκλή-ω shut x (acc.) off  
 from γ (gen.)  
 ἀποχρέ-ομαι be content with  
 (+ dat.)  
 ἀχαρις ἀχαρι  
 (ἀχαριτ-) disagreeable  
 δειλί-η, ἡ cowardice  
 διακλέπτ-ω steal (i.e. snatch  
 from the jaws of death)  
 ἐνύπνι-ον, τό dream (2b)  
 ἐπί (+ gen.) in the time of  
 ἐστὶ τῆ it is the case that  
 εὐδοκίμ-ε-ω win a glorious  
 reputation  
 ἐφίστα-μαι (ἐπιστα-) stand  
 by (+ dat.)  
 ζό-η, ἡ life (1a)  
 θῆρ-η, ἡ hunt (1a)

κοῖος = ποῖος  
 κότε = ποτε  
 κως = πως  
 μεθ- μετ-ίημι allow; let go  
 μεταγινώσκ-ω change one's  
 mind  
 μούνος = μόνος  
 νεόγαμ-ος -ον newly wed  
 ὀδοῦς (ὀδοντ-), ὁ tusk (3a)  
 οἶκε = ἔοικε resemble, be like  
 (+ dat.)  
 ὄκως = ὄπως  
 ὀλιγοχρόνι-ος -ον short-lived  
 ὄμμα (ὄμματ-), τό eye (3b)  
 ὄνειρ-ον, τό dream (2b)  
 ὄψ-ις, ἡ sight, vision (3c)  
 παραλαμβάν-ω undertake  
 παρορά-ω (παριδ-) notice x  
 (acc.) in γ (dat.)  
 πολιήτῃσι = πολίταις  
 πρὸς (+ acc.) with a mind to

σέοι σευ = σοῦ  
 σιδηρέ-ος -η -ον metal, iron  
 σφι to them (dat.)  
 τὰ = ἃ what (relative)  
 τέοισι = τίσι with what (goes  
 with ὄμμασι)  
 τευ = τινος  
 τήν = ἣν which (relative)  
 το (l. 9) this  
 τοι = σοι  
 τῶν = ὧν what (relative)  
 ὑπν-ος, ὁ sleep (2a)  
 ὄς, ὁ boar (3h)  
 φοβέαι = φοβῆ  
 φοιτέ-ω go  
 φοιτέοντας (understand, e.g.  
 ἀνδρας, i.e. that men  
 should go. )  
 φυλακὴν ἔχω take care  
 χρῆν past of χρῆ

## Vocabulary to be learnt

αἶχμη, ἡ spear-point (1a)  
 ἀμείβομαι answer, reply to  
 (+ acc.)

ἐπί (+ gen.) in the time of  
 μετ- μεθίημι (μεθε-) allow;  
 let go

οἶκε = ἔοικε resemble, be like  
 (+ dat.)  
 ὄψις, ἡ vision, sight (3c)

παραλαμβάνω (παραλαβ-)  
undertake; take from  
παροράω (παριδ-) notice  
σέο|σευ=σοῦ  
σιδηρέος ἦ ον iron, metal  
σφι το them (dat.)  
τευ=τινος

τοί=σοί  
ὑπνος, ὁ sleep (2a)  
ὑς, ὁ boar (3h)  
Νοτε κ for π in e.g. κοτε (ποτε),  
κοῖος (ποιός), κως (πως),  
ὄκοθεν (ὀπόθεν) etc.  
Note the declension of σφέεις

'they':  
Aitlic: σφέεις σφέας σφέων  
σφίσι(ν)  
Ionic: σφέεις σφέας σφέων  
σφί(ν) (σφέα η.)

## Vocabulary for Section Eighteen E

ἄγρ-η, ἡ hunt (1a)  
ἄεθλ-οι, τό contest (2b)  
ἄλλως in other circumstances  
ἀπήμων ἄπημον  
(ἀπημον-) unharmed  
ἀπολαμπρύν-ομαι distinguish  
oneself in (-έαι=-ει|η 2nd s.  
pres. (possibly fut. here))  
ἀπονοστέ-ω return  
ἄχαρις ἄχαρι  
(ἀχαριτ-) unpleasant  
δαπάν-η, ἡ expense, money  
(1a)  
δήλησ-ις, ἡ harm (3c)  
διακελεύ-ομαι exhort, direct  
(-έαι=-ει|η 2nd s. pres.)  
εἵνεκεν=ἔνεκα  
εἶπας=εἶπων (wk. aorist is  
εἶπα 'I said')  
ἔμευ=ἔμοῦ

ἐνθα where (relative)  
ἐπὶ δῆλῃσι bent on mischief  
εὐ πρήσσω=εὐ πράττω  
ἦα=ἦα (past of ἔρχομαι|εἶμι)  
ἴσχω-ω hold back, restrain  
καθαίρ-ω cleanse, purify  
κακοῦργ-ος -ον evil  
κεχρημένον 'for one who has  
met'  
κλώψ (κλωπ-), ὁ thief (3a)  
μεταπέμπ-ομαι send for  
οἰκί-α, τά palace (2a)  
οἰκός=εἰκός likely  
ὀμήλιξ (ὀμηλικ-), ὁ  
companion (3a)  
ὀνειδίζ-ω blame x (acc.) on y  
(dat.)  
πάρα=πάρεστι it is in one's  
power, possible

πλήσσω-ω strike (perf. part.  
pass. πεπληγμένος)  
πολλαχῆ for many reasons  
προποίε-ω do first, do before  
προσδοκά-ω expect  
προσέτι besides  
ῥώμ-η, ἡ strength (1a)  
τοιόσδε τοιήδε τοιόνδε like  
this  
ὑπάρχ-ω be, be sufficient  
ὑποδέκ-ομαι welcome,  
entertain (=ὑποδέχ-ομαι)  
φανέωσι=φανῶσι (3rd pl. aor.  
subj. of φαίνομαι)  
Φρύξ (Φρυγ-), ὁ Phrygian  
(2a)  
χαρίζ-ομαι oblige (+ dat.)  
χρεόν ἐστι=χρή  
χρηίζ-ω desire

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄγρη, ἡ hunt (1a)  
εὐ πράττω fare well, be  
prosperous  
πάρα, πάρεστι it is possible for  
X (dat.)  
τοιόσδε τοιήδε τοιόνδε of this  
kind

ὑπάρχω be, be sufficient; begin  
(+ gen.)  
ὑποδέχομαι welcome, entertain  
χαρίζομαι oblige; please; be  
dear to (+ dat.)  
Note that -εαι is used for -ει or -η  
in the 2nd s. middle, mostly of

ε contr. verbs only, but  
occasionally of other verbs as  
well, e.g. διακελεύεαι,  
ἀπολαμπρυνέαι (where the ε  
may indicate the future tense).

## Vocabulary for Section Eighteen F

ἀγγέλλ-ω announce, report  
(fut. ἀγγελέω)  
ἀκοντιζ-ω throw javelin at

ἁμαρτάν-ω miss (+ gen.)  
ἀπολωλεκώς perf. part. of  
ἀπόλλυμι

βάλλ-ω (βαλ-) hit (aor. pass.  
ἔβληθην)  
βαρυσύμφορ-ος -ον accursed



βιώσιμ-ος -ον worth living  
 βόσκ-ω nurture, feed  
 γέγονα irr. perf. of γίγνομαι  
 (part. γεγονώς or γεγώς)  
 Γορδί-ας, ὁ Gordias (1d)  
 (gen. Γορδιέ-ω)  
 δεινολογέ-ομαι grieve  
 εἰ μὴ ὅσον except in as far as  
 εἰς=εἰ you are  
 ἐκπίμπλη-μι (ἐκπλησ-) fulfil  
 ἐνθα where (tr. 'at this point')  
 ἐξαρτύ-ω equip  
 ἐξεργάζ-ομαι do a deed  
 (ἐξεργάσαο=ἐξηργάσω,  
 2nd s. aor.)  
 ἐπὶ ἐκείνη 'in addition to that  
 (previous tragedy)'  
 ἐπικατασφάζ-ω slay x (acc.)  
 over y (dat.)  
 ἐπίστι-ος -ον (sc. 'Zeus, god')  
 of the hearth  
 ἐσακοντίζ-ω hurl a javelin at  
 ἔταιρήϊ-ος (sc. 'Zeus, god') of  
 friendship

ἦδεε=ἦδει (past of οἶδα)  
 ἦσαν=ἦσαν (part. of  
 ἔρχομαι εἶμι)  
 θάπτ-ω bury  
 θέ-ω run  
 καθαίρ-ω purify, cleanse  
 καθάρσι-ος -ον (sc. 'Zeus,  
 god') of purification  
 κατοικτίρ-ω pity  
 κου=που  
 κύκλ-ος, ὁ circle (2a)  
 λογάς (λογαδ-), ὁ selected  
 μαρτύρ-ομαι invoke  
 Μίδ-ας, ὁ Midas (1d) (gen.  
 Μιδέ-ω)  
 μόρ-ος, ὁ fate (2a)  
 οἰκήϊ-ος -η -ον personal  
 οἰκί-α, τὰ palace (2b)  
 οἰκός=εἰκός  
 Ὀλυμπ-ος, ὁ Olympus (2a)  
 ὀνομάζ-ω name  
 ὀπισθε behind  
 ὄρ-ος, τό mountain (3c)  
 πάλαι long ago

πεπονθώς perf. part. of  
 πάσχω  
 περιημεκτέ-ω be grieved at  
 (+ dat.)  
 περίστα-μαι  
 (περιστα-) stand round  
 πρό (+ gen.) in front of  
 προσημαίν-ω prophesy  
 προτείν-ω stretch out  
 Σάρδι-ες, αἱ Sardis (Croesus'  
 capital)  
 σῆμα (σηματ-), τό mound  
 (3b) (marking a grave)  
 σημαίν-ω tell  
 συγγιγνώσκ-ομαι  
 acknowledge  
 συνταράσσ-ω overwhelm  
 τὸν δὲ 'and on Zeus as  
 ἔταιρήϊος, because ...'  
 τὸν μὲν 'and on Zeus as  
 ἐπίστιος, because ...'  
 τύμβ-ος, ὁ grave (2a)  
 φήμ-η, ἡ prophecy (1a)  
 φον-εύς, ὁ murderer (3g)

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἀγγέλλω (ἀγγελ-; fut.  
 ἀγγελέω) report, announce  
 ἁμαρτάν-ω (ἁμαρτ-) miss;  
 make a mistake  
 βάλλω (βαλ-) hit (aor. pass.  
 ἐβλήθην)  
 γέγον-α irr. perf. of γίγνομαι  
 (part. γεγονώς or γεγώς)

ἐνθα where, there  
 θέω run  
 καθαίρω (καθηρ-) purify,  
 cleanse  
 μαρτύρομαι invoke, call to  
 witness  
 οἰκία, τὰ palace (2b)  
 οἰκός=εἰκός

ὄρ-ος, τό mountain (3c)  
 πάλαι long ago  
 κου=που  
 πρό (+ gen.) before, in front of  
 προτείνω stretch out  
 σημαίνω tell, signal

**Grammar for Section Eighteen**

*Summary:*

Herodotus' dialect

Acc. of respect

οὐ φημί

The main features of Herodotus' Ionic dialect

214 Herodotus may have η where Attic has ᾱ (especially after ρ, ε, ι).

e.g. πρῆγμα (Attic πράγμα).

Give the Attic form for νεηνίης, συμφορῆ

215 Herodotus uses *σσ* for Attic *ττ*, e.g. *θάλασσα* (Attic *θάλαττα*).

Give the Attic form for *πρήσσω*, *φυλάσσω*.

216 Herodotus can have

*ει* for *ε* e.g. *ξείνος* (Attic *ξένος*)

*ου* for *ο* e.g. *οὔνομα* (Attic *ὄνομα*)

*ηι* for *ει* e.g. *ἔταιρήϊος* (Attic *ἔταιρείος*)

Give the Attic form for *μῶνος*, *εἵνεκα*.

217 Herodotus may not contract *ε* verbs, nor nouns with *ε* in the stem, e.g.

*φιλέω* (Attic *φιλῶ*)

*ποιέειν* (Attic *ποιεῖν*)

*ἔδέετο* (Attic *ἔδειτο*)

*ὄρεος* (Attic *ὄρους*)

*σεο* (Attic *σου*)

N.b. *εο* can change to *ευ*, giving e.g.

*σευ* (for *σεο*, Attic *σου*)

*μευ* (for Attic *μου*)

*ποιούμενα* (for *ποιεόμενα*, Attic *ποιούμενα*)

Give the Attic form for *ἔγένεο*, *καλεόμενος*, *ἀπολέει*, *ποιεῖμεν*.

218 Herodotus uses *-εω* for the gen. s. of 1d nouns (e.g. *νεηνίεω*, not *νεηνίου*).

and *-έων* for the gen. pl. of all type 1 nouns, e.g. *θυρέων*, not *θυρών*.

Give the Attic form for *Περσέων*.

219 Herodotus uses *-σι* in the dat. pl. of type 1/2 adjectives and nouns, e.g.

*τούτοισι* (Attic *τούτοις*)

*τοῖσι* (Attic *τοῖς*)

Give the Attic form for *ταύταισι*, *χρηστοῖσι*.

220 Except for *ὄς*, Herodotus uses the form of the definite article in place of the relative, e.g. *παῖς τὸν φυλάσσεις* (Attic *παῖς ὃν φυλάττεις*).

221 Herodotus often omits aspiration in composition (i.e. words with prefixes, etc.), e.g.

*ἀπικνέομαι* (Attic *ἀφικνέομαι*)

*μετήμη* (Attic *μεθήμη*)

222 Note the following important Herodotean forms:

<i>Herodotus</i>		<i>Attic</i>
<i>ὧν</i>	'therefore'	<i>οὔν</i>
<i>ἔών</i>	'being'	<i>ῶν</i>
<i>ἑωυτόν</i>	'himself'	<i>ἑαυτόν</i>
<i>ἑμεωυτόν</i>	'myself'	<i>ἑμαυτόν</i>
<i>κοῖος (ὄκοῖος)</i>	'of what sort'	<i>ποιῖος</i>
<i>κότε (ὄκότε)</i>	'when'	<i>πότε</i>

κῶς (ὅκ.ῶς)	'how'	πῶς
μιν	'him, her' (acc.)	no comparable Attic form
οἱ	'to him, to her' (dat.)	very rare in Attic

**Note**

It should be stressed that these are general rules, applying to most cases; that some of them illustrate simply alternative forms; and that the 'rules' are in fact far more complex than they are made to seem here (which is why you will be able to spot what look like inconsistencies).

**Accusative of respect**

223 You have already met τί in the sense 'why?', when it was explained (73) that the literal meaning in this context was 'in respect of what?' This use of the accusative to mean 'in respect of' is very common, especially after adjectives, and should be carefully looked for, e.g.

οὐ καθαρὸς χεῖρας 'not pure in respect of his hands' (i.e. 'with impure hands')

διεφθαρμένος τὴν ἀκοήν 'disabled in respect of his hearing' (i.e. 'deaf')

This construction is very common in poetry, and Homer is full of examples, e.g.

πόδας ὠκύς Ἀχιλλεύς 'Achilles, swift in respect of his feet' (i.e. 'swift-footed')

οὐ φημί

224 Observe that this means 'I deny that . . .', i.e. 'I say that x is NOT the case' (cf. Latin 'nego'). It does not mean 'I do not say that . . .', e.g.:

Κροῖσος οὐκ ἔφη τὸν παῖδα συμπέμψειν 'Croesus said that he would not send his son' 'C. denied that he would send his son'

**Revise**

ἕως (all uses) 193, 195, 197 Reference Grammar L

πρίν (all uses) 161, 198

ὥστε 200–2 Reference Grammar J

# PART SEVEN

## Section Nineteen

### Vocabulary for Section Nineteen A

ἄγῃσι = ἄγη (3rd s. pres. subj.)	Δύμας (Δυμαντ-), ὁ Dymas (3a)	ἴομεν = ἴωμεν
ἄγ-ομαι lead in marriage	ἔδ-ος, τό seat (3c)	καθεύδει = ἐκάθευδε
Ἀθήν-η, ἡ Athene (1a)	ἑισιάμεν-ος -η -ον likening x (acc.) το υ (dat.)	κάλλιον (understand ἔστί) it is better
αἴγλ-η, ἡ light, radiance (1a)	ἔην = ἦν	κάματ-ος, ὁ weariness (2a)
αἰεῖ = αἰεῖ	εἰδόμεν-ος -η -ον making oneself like (+dat.)	κε = ἄν
αἴθρ-η, ἡ clear sky (1a)	εἶματα, τά clothes (3b)	κεχάριστο 3rd s. perf. of χαρίζομαι
ἀκηδ-ῆς -ές uncared for	ἔμμεναι = εἶναι	κλυτ-ός -ῆ -όν famous
ἅμα (+dat.) at the same time as	ἐνί = ἐν	κούρ-η, ἡ maiden (1a)
ἄμαξ-α, ἡ wagon (1c)	ἐννυ-μαι put on	λευκ-ός -ῆ -όν white
ἄνεμ-ος, ὁ wind (2a)	ἐντύν-ομαι get oneself ready (ἐντυνέαι = 2nd s. subj.)	μάκαρ (μακαρ-), ὁ blessed
ἀνέφελ-ος -ον unclouded	ἐπιδέδρομεν (it) is spread over (perf. of ἐπιτρέχω)	μεθῆμων μέθημον (μεθημον-) lax, careless
ἀπό . . . εἰμί be distant from (+gen.)	ἐπιπίνα-μαι come near	μνά-ομαι woo, court
ἄρα straightaway, then	ἐπισεύ-ομαι hurry to (+acc.)	μῦθ-ος, ὁ word (2a)
ἀρημέν-ος -η -ον overcome	ἐποτρύν-ω urge, persuade	Ναυσικά-α, ἡ Nausikaa (1b) (daughter of Alkinoos, king of the Phaiakians)
ἄριστ-εύς, ὁ nobleman (3g)	ἔς = εἰς	ναυσικλειτ-ός -ῆ -όν famous for ships
ἄσφαλ-ῆς -ές safe, secure	ἔσσιαι ἴσσει (2nd s. fut. of εἶναι)	νυ = νυν
αὐτάρ but	ἐφοπλίζ-ω get ready	Ὀδυσσ-εύς, ὁ Odysseus (3g)
βῆ = ἔβη	ζώστρ-ον, τό belt, girdle (2b)	ὅθι where; in which place
γείνατο = ἐγείνατο	ἡέ = ἡ	ὄμβρ-ος, ὁ shower, rain (2a)
γείν-ομαι (γειν-) bear	ἡμαρ (ἡματ-), τό day (3b)	ὀμηλικί-η of same age as (+dat.)
γλαυκῶπις (γλαυκωπιδ-), ἡ grey-eyed	ἡῶθι πρό before dawn	Οὐλυμπόνδε to Olympos
δέμνι-α, τά bed (2b)	ἡώς, ἡ dawn (dat. ἡοῖ)	ὄφρα = ἵνα (+subj.) in order to
δεύ-ω besprinkle, bedew	θυμ-ός, ὁ heart, soul (2a)	
δὴν for a long time	ἵνα (+ind.) where, when	
διεπέφραδε aor. of διαφράζω speak to		
δι-ός -α -ον godlike		



παρθέν-ος, ἡ maiden,  
unwedded girl (2a)  
πέπλ-ος, ὁ robe, mantle (2a)  
πετάννυ-μι spread out (perf.  
pass. πέπταμαι)  
πλυν-ός, ὁ washing place (2a)  
πλύν-ω wash (fut. πλυνέω)  
ποι-ή, ἡ breath (1a)  
ποδέσαι(ν) = ποσί(ν) on foot  
(πούς)  
πόληος = πόλειος  
πολλόν far, a long way  
πολύτλας long-suffering

πότνια lady (nom. s. f.)  
πρὸς . . . εἶπει addressed x  
(acc.) τῷ (acc.)  
πρόσφημι speak to  
ῤῆγ-ος, τό rug, blanket (3c)  
σιγαλό-εις -εσσα -εν  
(σιγαλοεντ-) shining  
στη = ἔστη  
συνέριθ-ος, ἡ fellow-worker,  
companion (2a)  
τά = αὐτά 'things'  
τέρπ-ομαι enjoy oneself  
τῆ = αὐτῆ (i.e. Dymas'

daughter)  
τινάσσ-ω shake  
τοὶ 'let me tell you look here'  
τοῖσι . . . οἱ = αὐτοῖς οἱ 'for  
those who'  
τῷ = αὐτῷ  
ὑπέρ (+ gen.) above  
Φαιήκες, οἱ Phaiakians (3a)  
φαινομένηφι = φαινομένη  
φάτ-ις, ἡ reputation (3c)  
χαίρ-ω rejoice  
χίων (χιον-), ἡ snow (3a)  
ὥς thus, so

## Vocabulary to be learnt

αἰεὶ = αἰεί  
ἄρα αἰσιχθισμῶς  
ἀσφαλῆς ἐς safe, secure  
δέμνια, τὰ bed, bedding (2b)  
κε (κεν) (enclitic) = ἄν

κούρη = κόρη, ἡ daughter, girl  
(1a)  
χαίρω rejoice  
ὥς thus, so

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen B

ἀγαυ-ός -ῆ -όν noble  
ἄγ-ομαι bring for oneself  
ἄγχι close  
αἰδ-ομαι feel reticence about  
(+ inf.)  
ἀλιπόρφυρ-ος -ον purple  
Ἄλκίνο-ος, ὁ Alkinoos (2a)  
(king of the Phaiakians,  
Nausikaa's father)  
ἀμφίπολ-ος, ἡ servant,  
handmaiden (2a)  
ἀπήν-η, ἡ wagon (1a)  
ἀποθαυμάζ-ω wonder at  
ἀραρυῖαν fitted (acc. s. f. perf.  
part. of ἀραρίσκω)  
ἄφαρ at once  
γεγάασιν 3rd pl. perf. of  
γίγνομαι  
διὰ (+ acc.) through  
δμῶς (δμω-), ὁ slave (3a)  
(dat. pl. δμώεσσι)  
δώματ-α, τὰ house, palace  
(3b)

ἐγείρ-ω rouse  
ἐγειρε = ἤγειρε  
εἵματ-α, τὰ clothes (3b)  
ἐνί = ἐν  
ἐξονομαίν-ω (ἐξονομη-)  
mention  
ἔοικε it is right for (+ dat.)  
ἐόντα l. 31 take with σοὶ l. 31  
ἐόντας l. 22 understand 'parents'  
ἔρχου = ἔρχου  
ἐς = εἰς  
ἐσχάρ-η, ἡ hearth (1a)  
εὖθροτ-ος -ον lovely,  
fair-throned  
εὐκυκλ-ος -ον with fine  
wheels  
εὐπεπλ-ος -ον fair-robed  
ἐφοπλίζ-ω get ready (fut.  
ἐφοπλίσω)  
ἔχοντα l. 32 take with σοὶ l. 31  
ἠῖθε-ος, ὁ bachelor (2a)  
ἠλάκατ-α, τὰ wool (on the  
distaff) (2b)

ἦμαι be wated (ἦστο 3rd s.  
pass.)  
ἠμὲν i.e. her mother  
ἠώς, ἡ dawn  
θαλέθ-ω thrive  
θαλερ-ός -ῆ -όν fruitful  
θύραζε to the outside, out  
ἴμεναι = ἴεται  
ἴνα (+ ind.) where  
καθαρ-ός -ῆ -όν clean  
κάλεον = ἐκάλου  
κέλ-ομαι command (+ dat.)  
(ἐκέλετο 3rd s. aor.)  
κιχάν-ω (κιχησ-) meet  
κλειτ-ός -ῆ -όν famous  
κλυτ-ός -ῆ -όν splendid,  
lovely  
μέγαρ-α, τὰ house, palace  
(2b)  
μέμηλεν perf. of μέλει  
μετά (+ acc.) among  
(+ dat.) among, in company  
with

μῦθ-ος, ὁ word (2a)  
 νεόπλυτ-ος -ον newly washed  
 ξύμβλητο = ξυνέβλητο (3rd s.  
 aor. mid. of  
 ξυμβάλλομαι meet  
 (+ dat.))  
 ὄπι-ω be married  
 πάππας, ὁ father (voc.  
 πάππα)

πέντε five  
 πλύν-ω wash (fut. πλυνέω)  
 προσέειπε = προσείπε spoke  
 ἰο  
 ῥερυπωμέν-ος -η -ον dirty  
 στρωφά-ω twist, spin  
 τέκ-ος, τό child (3c uncontr.)  
 τοκ-εύς, ὁ parent (3g)  
 τῶ = αὐτῶ (i.e. father)

ὑπερτερί-η, ἡ covering,  
 canopy (1a)  
 ὑψηλ-ός -ή -όν high  
 φθον-έω begrudge (+ gen.)  
 φρήν (φρεν-), ἡ heart, mind  
 (3a)  
 χορός, ὁ dance (2a)  
 χρώς, ὁ body, flesh (dat. χροῖ)

### Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄγομαι (ἀγαγ-) bring (for  
 oneself), lead, marry  
 εἴματα, τά clothes (3b)  
 εἶοικε it is right for (+ dat.)  
 ἐνί = ἐν  
 εἶς = εἰς  
 ἐφοπλίζω equip, get ready (fut.)

ἐφοπλίσσω  
 ἠώς, ἡ dawn (= Attic ἔως)  
 (acc. ἧῶ; gen. ἠοῦς; dat. ἠοῖ)  
 μετά (+ dat.) among, in  
 company with  
 μῦθος, ὁ word, story (2a)

πλύνω wash (fut. πλυνέω)  
 προσείπον (προσείεπον) spoke  
 X (acc.) to Y (acc.)  
 Lack of augment on past tenses  
 e.g. στή = ἔστη,  
 κάλεον = ἐκάλουν etc.

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen C

ἄγρι-ος -η -ον wild  
 αἰπειν-ός -ή -όν steep  
 ἀμφέρχ-ομαι (aor.  
 ἀμφήλυθ-ον) surround  
 (+ acc.)  
 ἀμφίπολ-ος, ἡ handmaiden  
 (2a)  
 αὐδή-εις -εσσα -εν  
 (αὐδηεντ-) speaking with  
 human voices  
 αὐτε again, on the contrary,  
 this time  
 αὐτ-ή, ἡ cry, shriek (1a)  
 αὐ-ω scream  
 βασίλει-α, ἡ princess (1b)  
 βροτ-ός, ὁ mortal (2a)  
 γαί-α, ἡ (1c) = γῆ  
 γλαυκῶπις (γλαυκωπιδ-), ἡ  
 grey-eyed  
 δίν-η, ἡ eddy (1a)  
 δι-ος -α -ον god-like

ἐγείρ-ομαι (aor.  
 ἐγρό-μην) wake up  
 ἐγών = ἐγώ  
 ἕζ-ομαι sit  
 ἐμβάλλ-ω (ἐμβαλ-) throw in  
 (+ dat.)  
 εὐῶπις (εὐωπιδ-), ἡ beautiful  
 ζεύγνυ-μι (ζευξ-) yoke  
 ἦ = ? (dir. or indir.)  
 ἦ . . . ἦε double question  
 ἠδέ and  
 θεουδ-ής -ές god-fearing  
 θήλ-υς -εἰα -υ female  
 θυμ-ός, ὁ heart (2a)  
 ἰκάν-ω come  
 κάρην-ον, τό peak (2b)  
 μετά (+ acc.) to  
 νέ-ομαι return  
 νοέ-ω plan  
 νό-ος, ὁ = νοῦς, ὁ  
 νυ = νυν

νύμφ-η, ἡ nymph (1a)  
 οἰκόνδε home, homewards  
 ὀρμαίν-ω debate, consider  
 πειρήσομαι let me try (aor.  
 subj. of πειράομαι)  
 πηγ-ή, ἡ source (1a)  
 πίσα-α, τά meadows (3c  
 uncontr.)  
 ποιή-εις -εσσα -εν  
 (ποιηεντ-) grassy  
 που somewhere, anywhere  
 (enclitic)  
 πτύσσ-ω (πτυξ-) fold  
 ῥά = ἄρα  
 σφαίρ-α, ἡ ball (1b)  
 σχεδόν (+ gen.) near  
 τέων = τίνων  
 φιλόξειν-ος -ον loving  
 strangers, hospitable  
 φρήν (φρεν-), ἡ mind (3a)  
 ὡς = ἵνα (+ subj./opt.) in  
 order that

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἀμφέρχομαι surround (+acc.) (aor. ἀμφήλυθον)	νοέω plan, devise; notice νυ=νυν (enclitic)
ἀμφίπολος, ἡ handmaiden (2a)	φρήν (φρεν-), ἡ heart, mind (3a)
γλαυκῶπις (γλαυκωπιδ-), ἡ grey-eyed (used of Athena)	ὡς (+subj./opt.)=ἵνα in order to/that
δῖος αὐτῶν godlike	
θυμός, ὁ heart, anger (2a)	

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen D

ἀγρότερ-ος -η -οι wild	ground	ὄρεσίτροφ-ος -ον mountain-bred
ἀη-μι blow upon (of wind)	ἢ . . . ἢέ either . . . or	ὄσσε both eyes (nom.)
ἀλκί strength, prowess (dat.)	ἢ . . . ἢ whether . . . or	παχ-ύς -εῖα -ύ thick, clenched
ἄλλυδις (ἄλλη) in different directions	ἡίων (ἡιον-), ἡ shore, strand (3a)	πειρά-ω test (+gen.)
ἄλμ-η, ἡ brine (1a)	θάμν-ος, ὁ bush (2a)	πεποιθώς trusting in (+dat.) (perf. part. of πείθ-ω)
ἄντα face to face	θάρο-ος, τό courage, boldness (3c)	περ=καίπερ
ἀποσταδά at a distance	ἰκάν-ω come to, come upon	περί (+dat.) around, about
αὐτάρ but, now	ἴμεν=ἰέναι	προέχ-ω jut out
αὐτως simply	κακό-ω disfigure	πτόρθ-ος, ὁ branch (2a)
γαστήρ (γαστερ-), ἡ stomach, hungry (3a)	κέλ-ομαι order	πυκιν-ός -ῆ -όν dense, thick-foliaged
γούν-α, τά knees (2b) (take γούνων after λαβών 'taking hold of')	κερδαλέ-ος -η -ον cunning	ῥύ-ομαι protect, hide
γυί-α, τά limbs (2b)	κέρδιον more profitable	σμερδαλέ-ος -η -ον frightful, terrible
γυμν-ός -ῆ -όν naked	κλάζ-ω break	τη=αὐτή
δαί-ομαι blaze	λίσα-ομαι beseech	τρέ-ω tremble, flee
δέ-ος, τό fear (3c)	μειλίχι-ος -η -ον winning, soothing	ῥύλ-η, ἡ bush, tree (1a)
δοάσσατο it seemed to x (dat.)	μερμηρίζ-ω consider, debate	ὑποδύ-ομαι emerge from (+gen.)
ἐ=αὐτόν	μετέρχ-ομαι attack (+dat., or +μετά+acc.)	ὑ-ω rain (upon)
ἐκ . . . εἴλετο (aor. of ἐξαιρέομαι) remove from (+gen.)	μήδε-α, τά genitals (3c uncontr.)	φρονέ-ω consider
ἐλαφ-ος, ἡ hind (2a)	μῆλ-ον, τό sheep (2b)	φύλλ-ον, τό leaf (2b)
εὐπλόκαμ-ος -ον with pretty hair	μίγνυ-μαι meet with (+dat.) (fut μίξομαι)	φώς (φωτ-), ὁ mortal (3a)
εὐώπις (εὐωπιδ-), ἡ beautiful	οἶεσσιν dat pl. of οἶς	χολό-ομαι be angry with (+dat.)
ἔχ-ομαι (σχ-) hold one's	οἶ-ος -η -ον alone	χρεῖω, ἡ need
	οἶς, ὁ, ἡ sheep	χρῶς, ὁ flesh, body (dat. χροί)

## Vocabulary to be learnt

γούνα, τά knees (2b) (sometimes γούνατα (3b))	ἴμεν=ἰέναι	χρῶς, ὁ flesh (Attic χρωτ- 3a) (Ionic/Epic aor. χροά; gen. χροός; dat. χροί)
ἰκάνω come, come to/upon (+acc.)	λίσομαι beseech	
	ὁ ἢ τό he, she, it	
	φρονέω think, consider	

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen E

ἀγα-μαι admire, look at in awe	ἔρι-ος, τό young stem (3c) έσσι=εί you (s.) are	ὁμοφρονέ-ω be in agreement, compatible
ἀγχιστα most closely	εὐμένετ-ης, ὁ friend (1d)	ὁμοφρονέοιτε nom. part. dual
αἰέν=αεί	εὐρ-ύς -εία -ύ broad, wide	ὁμοφροσύν-η, ἡ compatibility (1a)
αἰνῶς terribly	εὐφροσύν-η, ἡ pleasure (1a)	ὀπάζ-ω grant
ἀλγ-ος, τό source of grief (3c uncontr.) ( <i>understand</i> 'these things are . . .')	ἔχες=είχες	ὀφθαλμ-ός, ὁ eye (2a)
ἀμφιβάλλ-ομαι (ἀμφιβαλ-) put on	ἔχτηον 'the two of them keep' (3rd dual)	ὀφρα=ὄφα (+subj.) in order that
ἀνασσ-α, ἡ princess (1c)	ἦ οἱ	πάρουθεν before then
ἀνέρχ-ομαι (ἀνηλυθ-) come up	ἦδέ and	πένθ-ος, τό grief (3c)
ἄπτ-ομαι touch (+gen.)	ἡμαρ (ἡματ-), τό day (3b)	περί (+dat.) in
ἄρειον better	θάλλ-ος, τό budding branch (3c)	πόντ-ος, ὁ sea (2a)
Ἄρτεμις (Ἄρτεμιδ-), ἡ Artemis (3a) ( <i>goddess of hunting and chastity</i> )	θύελλ-α, ἡ storm (1c)	πόττι-α lady (nom. s. f.)
βρίθ-ω load down	ιαίν-ω warm	που somewhere, anywhere (enclitic)
βροτ-ός, ὁ mortal (2a)	ικνέ-ομαι (ικ-) come to	πω yet (enclitic)
γαί-α, ἡ (1c)=γῆ	κάββαλε=κατέβαλε	ράκ-ος, τό tattered garment (3c)
γουνό-ομαι beseech	κασίγνητ-ος, ὁ brother (2a)	σέβας, τό respect (3c)
δεΐδια I fear	καταβάλλ-ω (καταβαλ-) cast down	σεῖο=σοῦ
Δήλ-ος, ἡ Delos (2a) ( <i>island birthplace and sanctuary of Apollo</i> )	κεῖν-ος=ἐκεῖν-ος	σπεῖρ-ον, τό garment (2b)
δῆν for a long time	κεῖσε=ἐκεῖσε	σφισι=σφι
δῶρυ (δωρατ-), τό piece of wood, shaft (3b)	κήδε-α, τά troubles (3c uncontr.)	τέθηπα be astonished (perf.) (past ἐτεθήπεα)
δυσμεν-ής, ὁ enemy	κῆρ (κηρ-), τό heart (3a)	τελέ-ω complete, bring to pass (fut. τελέ-ω)
ἔεδν-α, τά bridal gifts (2b)	κλύ-ω be respected	τῆδε here
εἰκοστ-ός -ῆ -όν twentieth	κραιπν-ός -ῆ -όν swift	τοί=οἱ
εἶδ-ος, τό looks, appearance (3c)	κύμα (κυματ-), τό wave (3b)	τοῖ-ος=τοιούτος
εἶλυμα, τό wrapping (3b)	λα-ός, ὁ people (2a)	τόσ-ος -η -ον as many ( <i>take with ὅσος</i> 'as many as')
εἶνεκα=εἵτεκα	λεύσσω-ω see ( <i>take</i> λευσαόντων with σφισι)	τού=τούτου (gen. of comparison)
εἴσκ-ω liken x (acc.) to y (dat.) in z (acc.)	μάκαρ (μακαρ-) blessed (μακάρτατ-ος -η -ον is the sup.)	τόφρα for so long
εἴσοιχνέ-ω enter	μέγεθ-ος, τό size (3c)	τρισμακάρ (τρισμακαρ-) thrice-blessed
εἴσορά-ω behold, look upon	μενοιά-ω desire	φοίνιξ (φουικ-), ὁ, ἡ date-palm
ἐκ l. 26 goes with γαίης	μογέ-ω suffer	φορέ-ω carry
ἐλταίρ-ω show mercy	ναιετά-ω dwell	φυ-ή, ἡ stature (1a)
ἐξοχον (+gen.) above, more than	νόημα (νοηματ-), τό thought (3b)	χάρμα (χαρματ-), τό source of joy (3b)
	οἰκόνδε home, homewards	
	οἶνοψ (οἶνοπ-) wine-faced (wine-dark)	
	οἶ-ω think	



χθιζ-ός -ή -όν yesterday's (tr. 'yesterday')	Ἦγυγι-η, ἡ Ogygia (1a) (island of Kalypso)
χθών (χθον-), ἡ earth (3a)	ὡς δ' αὐτως in the same way
χορ-ός, ὁ dance (2a)	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄνασσα, ἡ princess, queen (1c)	ἦ or	ὄφθαλμός, ὁ eye (2a)
ἄπτομαι touch (+ gen.)	ἡμαρ (ἡματ-), τό day (3b)	περί (+ dat.) in, on
βροτός, ὁ mortal (2a)	ἰκνέομαι (ἰκ-) come to, arrive	που somewhere, anywhere
γαῖα, ἡ=γῆ	αι	(enclitic)
εἰσοράω (εἰσιδ-) behold, look	κεῖνος=ἐκεῖνος	πω yet (enclitic)
αι	μέγεθος, τό size (3c)	τοί=οἱ (relative)
έσσι=εἶ γου (s.) are	οἰκόνδε home, homewards	χορός, ὁ dance; chorus (2a)

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen F

ἀλά-ομαι wander	δυσμεν-ής -ές hostile	λευκώλεν-ος -ον white-armed
Ἄλκινόοιο=Ἄλκινόου	δύστην-ος -ον wretched	λού-ω wash
ἄμμι=ἡμῖν	ἐθέλησω=ἐθέλη (3rd s. pres. subj.)	μεγαλήτωρ (μεγαλητορ-) great-hearted
ἀνέμοιο=ἀνέμου	ἐκ (l. 25) governs τοῦ	ὄλβ-ος, ὁ happiness, wealth (2a)
ἄνεμος, ὁ wind (2a)	ἔμμεναι=εἶναι	πολύκλυστ-ος -ον
ἀντιά-ω meet, encounter	ἔμπης doubtless, at any rate	loud-roaring
ἀντίον in reply	ἐπέοικε it befits, it is right for (+ dat.)	πόντ-ος, ὁ sea (2a)
ἀπάνευθε far away	ἐπί . . . ἔστ' is, is found	πόσει; (to) where?
αὐδά-ω speak, say	ἐπιμίση-ομαι have to do with (+ dat.)	πόσις, ἡ drink (3c)
ἄφρων ἄφρον (ἄφρον-) stupid, thoughtless	εὐπλόκαμ-ος -ον with pretty hair	πρός (+ gen.) under the protection of
βί-η, ἡ dominion (1a)	ἔχ-ομαι (ἐκ) depend (on)	πτωχ-ός, ὁ beggar (2a)
βρῶσ-ις, ἡ meat, food (3c)	ἦ (l. 26) she spoke	σκέπας, τό cover, shelter (sc. 'from')
γένηται (l. 29) '(he) will ever be' (subj. in general statement)	ἦ μή surely you don't	ταλαπεῖρι-ος -ον weary
δεύ-ομαι lack (+ gen.) (fut. δευήσομαι)	ἦδέ and	τετλάμεν to endure (perf. inf. οἱ τλάω)
δηϊότης (δηϊότητ-), ἡ slaughter (3a)	κάρτ-ος, τό power (3c)	φώς (φωτ-), ὁ mortal, man (3a)
διερ-ός -ά -όν living	κομέ-ω look after, care for	
δός-ις, ἡ gift, giving (3c)	λα-ός, ὁ people, inhabitant (2a)	

## Vocabulary to be learnt

ἄνεμος, ὁ wind (2a)	ἦδέ and	πόντος, ὁ sea (2a)
ἔμμεναι=εἶναι	λαός, ὁ people, inhabitant (2a)	φώς (φωτ-), ὁ man, mortal (1a)
εὐπλόκαμος ον with pretty hair	λούω wash (mid. wash oneself)	

## Vocabulary for Section Nineteen G

ἀδμής (ἀδμητ-), ἡ unwed	δηρόν for a long time	νίζ-ομαι wash x (acc.) from x
ἀεικέλι-ος -η -ον wretched	ἐδητύς, ἡ food (3h)	(acc.)
ἀέκητι against the will of	ἔζ-ομαι sit	νωτ-ον, τό back (2b)
(+ gen.)	ἐκγεγαυία horn of (+ gen.)	Ὀλυμπ-ος, ὁ Olympus (2a)
αἰ γάρ=εἰ γάρ	(nom. v. f.)	οὐλ-ος -η -ον thick, bushy
αἰδέ-ομαι feel shame at	ἔλαι-ον, τό olive oil (2b)	ὄφρα=ἵνα (+ subj.) in order
(+ inf.)	ἐπιμίση-ομαι meet with	that
ἀλείφ-ω anoint	(+ dat.)	Πάλλας (Παλλαδ-), ἡ Pallas
ἄλμ-η, ἡ brine (1a)	εὐρ-ύς -εῖα -ύ broad	(3a)
ἀλοιφ-ή, ἡ ointment (1a)	ἤ indeed	παντοῖ-ος -η -ον of all kinds
ἄλς (άλ-), ὁ sea (3a)	ἦεν=ἦν	πάρ=παρά beside (adv.)
ἀμπέχ-ω cover, lie thick	ἦνωγον they ordered	παρθέν-ος, ἡ maiden (2a)
υρον	ἦσθε=ἦσθιε (he) etc	πάσσων -οι
ἀμφί round about (adv.)	ἦ τοι then indeed	(πασσον-) broader
ἀμφί . . . ἐννυμαι put on (aor.	βηέ-ομαι look at admiringly	περιχεύ-ομαι inlay, gild x
ἐσάμην)	θίς (θιν-), ὁ shore (3a)	(acc.) on y (dat.)
ἀνδάν-ω (ἀδ-) please (+ dat.)	ἔδρις skilful, cunning (nom.)	πολύτλας ὁ long-enduring
ἄνθ-ος, τό flower (3c)	ἴσαν=ἦσαν they went	πόρε (she) provided, gave
ἄντην face to face, in front of	κάδ=κατά	(3rd s. of ἔπορον)
(sc. 'you')	κάδ (=κατά) . . . ἔζ-ω το	πόσ-ις, ἡ drink (3c)
ἀντίθε-ος -η -ον god-like	καί (aor. εἶσα)	πρόσθεν previously
ἀπάνευθεν afar off	κάλλ-ος, τό beauty (3c)	ρο-ή, ἡ stream, current (1a)
ἄπαστ-ος -οι not having	κάρη (καρητ-), τό head (3b)	σκέπας, τό cover, shelter
tasted (+ gen.)	καταχέυ-ω pour down x	σμήχ-ω wipe
ἀπό . . . ἐστίν has been absent	(acc.) on y (dat.) over /	στίλβ-ω shine
(from + gen.)	(acc.)	τελεῖ-ω complete
ἀπολούσομαι 1st s. aor. subj.	κί-ω go	ὑακίνθιν-ος -η -ον of a wild
of ἀπολού-ομαι wash off	κόμ-η, ἡ hair (1a)	hyacinth
oneself	λευκώλεν-ος -ον white-armed	ὑγρ-ός -ή -όν moist
ἀπόπροθεν far off	λήκυθ-ος, ἡ oil-jar (2a)	φᾶρ-ος, τό cloak (3c)
ἄργυρ-ος, ὁ silver (2a)	λίπα richly	χαρί-εις -εσσα -ει
ἄρπαλέως greedily	λοέσσατο 3rd s. aor. mid. of	(χαριετ-) graceful
ἀτρυγέτοιο=ἀτρυγέτου	λούω	χιτών (χιτων-), ὁ tunic (3a)
ἀτρύγετ-ος -ον unharvested	λοέσσομαι fut. mid. of λούω	χνό-ος, ὁ scum, scurf (2a)
αὐτᾶρ then, but	μεγαλήτωρ (μεγαλητορ-)	χρί-ομαι anoint oneself
αὐτόθι here	great-hearted	χρυσέ-ος -η -ον golden
βρώσ-ις, ἡ meat, food (3c)	μεταυδά-ω say (to)	ὤμοιιν 'from my two
γυμνό-ομαι strip	μετέρχ-ομαι (μετελθ-) go	'shoulders' (gen. dual of
δέατο he seemed	among (+ dat.)	ὤμος)
δέδαεν 3rd s. perf. of	μίμν-ω=μένω	ὤμ-ος, ὁ shoulder (2a)
δι-δά-σκω	ραιετά-ω dwell, live	

**Vocabulary to be learnt**

ἀπάνευθεν <i>afar off</i>	(κρατ- (3b); Attic) <i>head</i>	παρθένος, ἡ <i>maiden (2a)</i>
αὐδάω <i>speak, say</i>	μεταυδάω <i>speak to</i>	πρόσθεν (+gen.) <i>previously, before</i>
αὐτάρ <i>then, but</i>	μετέρχομαι (μετελθ-) <i>go among (+dat.); attack (+dat. or μετά); send for</i>	χρυσέος ἡ ον <i>golden (Attic χρυσοῦς ἡ οὖν)</i>
εὐρύς εἰα ὑ <i>broad, wide</i>	ᾄφρα = ἵνα + subj./opt. <i>in order to/that</i>	ὤμος, ὁ <i>shoulder (2a)</i>
κάδ = κατά	πάρ = παρά	<i>Genitive s. of type 2 nouns (-οιο for -ου)</i>
κατά (+gen.) <i>down from, against; below</i>		
κάρη (καρητ-), τό = κάρα		

○ **Grammar for Section Nineteen**

*Summary:*

Homeric dialect, syntax and respelling

Homeric hexameters

Verse quantity

**Some vital features of Homeric dialect and syntax**

225 The Reference Grammar (A.4) contains a fuller list of features of Homeric dialect. Meanwhile, note the following highly characteristic features:

- (i) lack of augment – βάλον = ἔβαλον; ἔμβαλε = ἐνέβαλε;
- (ii) dative plurals in -σι, -εσσι e.g. δώροισι, πόδεσσι;
- (iii) dative plural ταῖς appears as τῆς, τῆσι; so all type 1a b c nouns (e.g. θύρησι);
- (iv) genitive singular in -οιο – δώροιο; and in -αο, -εω, in place of -ου of 1d types;
- (v) infinitives in -μεν, -μεναι, -εναί (ἔμεν, ἔμμεν, ἔμεναι, ἔμμεναι = εἶναι; ἴμεν(αι) = ἰέναι; ἀκουέμεναι = ἀκούειν);
- (vi) use of οἱ to mean 'to him, her', and τοι meaning 'to you' (2nd s.);
- (vii) definite articles οἱ, αἱ appear also as τοί, ταί;
- (viii) presence of ἡ where Attic has α or ε, e.g. χώρη = χώρα: βασιλῆας = βασιλέας;
- (ix) use of definite article to mean 'he', 'she', 'it', 'they';
- (x) 'tmesis', i.e. the splitting of the prefix of a verb from the verb with which it is (in Attic) normally joined, e.g. πρὸς μῦθον ἔειπεν = μῦθον προσέειπεν 'he addressed a word';
- (xi) κεν (κε, κ') is used in place of ἄν.

## Note

It should be stressed that the above list does not represent a series of hard-and-fast rules, which will always apply; the examples given are the most important alternative forms that Homer uses. (Cf. Reference Grammar A.4, p. 267.)

## Homeric hexameters

226 A hexameter is made up of six feet, each foot being either a *dactyl* or a *spondee*.

A dactyl scans: — ∪ ∪ (long–short–short, ‘tum-ti-ti’)

A spondee scans: — — (long–long, ‘tum-tum’).

In Homer, the FIRST FOUR FEET can be either dactyl or spondee;

the FIFTH FOOT is usually a DACTYL;

the SIXTH FOOT is always a SPONDEE if we assume a final syllable is always treated as long.

Thus a Homeric hexameter looks like:

1	2	3	4	5	6
— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— —
or	or	or	or		
— —	— —	— —	— —	(— —)	

## Notes

There are a number of peculiar features of Homeric scansion, of which the three most important are as follows:

(i) ‘correction’ — that is, that a naturally long vowel/diphthong at the end of a word becomes short if the next word begins with a vowel, e.g.

∪ — —  
καὶ ἡμῖν

(ii) the influence of ‘digamma’ (Ϝ) on the scansion. By classical times, digamma as a letter had dropped out of the alphabet, but its influence was felt so strongly that in Homer the scansion reacted to it as if it were still there. It was originally pronounced like English ‘w’. E.g.

— ∪ ∪ — — — ∪ ∪ — — — ∪ ∪ — —  
τῷ οἱ ἐπεκλώσαντο θεοὶ οἰκόνδε νέεσθαι · him the gods fated to return home’

The rule of correction makes οἱ short before ἐπεκλώσαντο, but why then is not τῷ short before οἱ, and θεοὶ short before οἰκόνδε? The answer is that οἱ was once φοι and οἰκόνδε was once φοἰκόνδε. Consequently the words do not really start with a vowel and the rule of correction cannot apply.

(iii) effects of metre on the language:

The pattern of the dactyl–spondee rhythm of the Homeric hexameter imposes certain

limitations and makes some words unusable. Homer gets round this by a number of devices:

(i) words which are naturally long–short–long are scanned long–long long, e.g.

— — — — —  
 ἴστυη is scanned ἴστυη.

(ii) words which are naturally short–short–short have the first element lengthened, e.g.

— — — — — — — — —  
 ἀκαματος – ἀκαματος ‘unwearied’

— — — — — — — — —  
 ἀνερα – ἀνερα ‘man’ (acc.)

(iii) by the use of alternative forms, e.g. dative in –εσσι rather than –εσι e.g. ἔπεσσι  
 or ἔπεσι, etc.

Finally, observe that in some cases one is given a choice whether to scan dactyl or spondee, e.g.

— — — — — — — — —  
 Ἄργειφοντης or Ἀργεῖφοντης ‘slayer of Argos’ (epithet for Hermes)

Here are the first five lines of the Homer extract scanned:

—  
 ὡς ὁ μὲν ἐνθά καθευδε πολυτλας | διος Ὀδυσσευς,  
 —  
 ὑπνω | και καματῶ ἀρημενο|ς. αὐταρ Ἀθηνῆ  
 —  
 βηρ’ ἐς | Φαιη|κων ἀνδρων δη|μον τε πολιν τε  
 —  
 ἦ δ’ ἀνε|μου ὡς | πνοιῆ ἐ|πεσσυτο | δεμνια | κουρης  
 —  
 στη δ’ ἄρ’ ὑ|περ κεφα|λης, και | μιν προς | μυθον εἶειπεν

### Homeric respelling

227 The text of Homer as we have it is based on a third-century Hellenistic edition. We do not know what earlier texts would have been like, but it does appear that some modernisation of the text took place. This has sometimes produced artificial forms in the text, such as εἶως for what must have been ἦος.

### Greek metre

228 Greek verse is made up of regular sequences of syllables, each of which counts as long or short for the purpose of the metre. Every syllable counts. In order therefore to determine what any metre is, we must decide the

quantity of each syllable – whether long or short. The quantity of the syllable is determined by the vowel(s) and consonant(s) which make it up.

### *Basic rules*

Syllables containing  $\eta$ ,  $\omega$  and diphthongs, and  $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ ,  $\bar{\upsilon}$  (these last three have to be known, or adduced from context) are always LONG in verse, no matter what. (N.b. the note on Homeric correction at 226 (i).)

Syllables containing  $\epsilon$ ,  $o$  and  $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ ,  $\bar{\upsilon}$  are always SHORT in verse, UNLESS they are followed by two consonants (including  $\zeta$  ( $\sigma\delta$ ),  $\xi$  ( $\kappa\varsigma$ ) and  $\psi$  ( $\pi\varsigma$ )) when, for the purpose of the scansion, they will count as long. There is one major exception to this rule – any combination of  $\pi \tau \kappa \phi \theta \chi \beta \delta \gamma + \lambda \mu \nu \rho$  need not necessarily make the preceding syllable long for scansion purposes. Thus,  $\pi\alpha\tau\rho\acute{o}\varsigma$  can scan  $\text{—} \cup$  or  $\cup \cup$ .

### *Notes*

(i) Ignore word-division for the purpose of scansion. Thus the  $o$  of  $\acute{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\acute{o}\varsigma$   $\tau\iota\varsigma$  scans LONG, because it is followed by two consonants,  $\sigma\tau$ .

(ii) Watch out for elision of short vowels at the end of a word (cf. 57, 178). This should not cause problems since your texts will usually elide out such vowels for you anyway.

(iii) This is a highly simplified account of a complex subject. Its main weakness is to confuse vowels which are pronounced long or short, with syllables which count as (but were certainly not pronounced as) long or short for metrical purposes. Consider  $\acute{\epsilon}\rho\chi\omicron\upsilon\tau\alpha\iota$ . The first two vowels are short by pronunciation, and would certainly have been pronounced short in all circumstances. But for the purpose of scansion, they count as long, because they are followed by two consonants. ○

# B REFERENCE GRAMMAR

---

## ○ A.1 Preliminaries

---

### Some definitions

#### (i) Aspect

This refers to the way in which a *verb*-form suggests that the reader should look at the action under consideration. The clearest example of aspect can perhaps be best seen in Greek's use of the imperfect and aorist to refer to action in the past: the imperfect suggests that the action should be viewed as continuing, as a process, the aorist suggests that it simply took place as an event. Participles, infinitives, imperatives, optatives and subjunctives are virtually always differentiated in their present and aorist forms by *aspect*, not by time (necessarily). Their present forms suggest that the action should be viewed as continuing, their aorist forms suggest that the action should be viewed as simply happening.

#### (ii) Change of subject in the accusative

In clauses which take a verb in the infinitive or participle, the subject is placed in the *accusative* if it is different from that of the main verb, e.g.

οἶδα σε μῶρον ὄντα 'I know that you are foolish'

ἐνομίζομεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας παῖδας εἶναι 'we used to consider that the Greeks were children'

#### (iii) Sequence

'Primary sequence' means that the main verb is present, future or perfect. 'secondary sequence' means that the main verb is aorist, imperfect or pluperfect. Sequence plays an important part in determining whether the subjunctive or optative is to be used in certain constructions.

## ○ A.2 The Greek alphabet

Before the fourth century there were many forms of the Greek alphabet in use in different cities. After 403 Athens and eventually most other cities adopted the so-called Ionic form of the alphabet, which is the one in use today.

One important letter which does not appear in the Ionic alphabet is the digamma ( $\epsilon$ ). This was originally the sixth letter of the alphabet (cf. English fF), and had the value of English 'w'. The Attic and Ionic dialects lost the sound at prehistoric date, and consequently the letter was not used in their alphabets. Other dialects maintained the sound, and the letter continued in use in these dialects down to the adoption of the Ionic alphabet in the fourth century. After this, traces of digamma are found, sometimes represented by Greek  $\beta$ , e.g. a Hellenistic text writes  $\rho\acute{\iota}\zeta\alpha$  'root' in Sapphic dialect as  $\beta\rho\acute{\iota}\sigma\delta\alpha$ , using the  $\beta$  to represent the digamma which Sappho used ( $\epsilon\rho\acute{\iota}\sigma\delta\alpha$ ).

The importance of the digamma lies in the fact that Homeric scansion may react to it *as if it were still there*. Thus one would expect, for example,  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\iota\ \omicron\acute{\iota}\kappa\omega$  in Homer to elide into  $\acute{\epsilon}\nu\ \omicron\acute{\iota}\kappa\omega$ ; but no, for it was originally  $\epsilon\omicron\acute{\iota}\kappa\omega\varsigma$ , starting with a consonant. (See further notes on Homeric metre in the Running Grammar 226.)

### Alphabet and pronunciation

Greek capital	Greek minuscule	English transcription used in this course*	Pronunciation (recommended)	Phonetic transcription**
Α (when long)	α (alpha)	a	English 'cup' (Italian 'amare')	[a]
	ᾶ		English 'calm' (Italian 'amare')	[a:]
	ᾱ		as ᾶ (more correctly, with -ι at the end)	[a:i]
	αι		English 'high'	[ai]
	αυ		English 'how'	[au]
Β	ᾶυ		as αυ (with first element long)	[a:u]
	β (beta)	b	as English 'b'	[b]
Γ	γ (gamma)	g	English 'got'; before κ, χ, γ, as 'ink' or 'song'	[g: ŋ]
Δ	δ (delta)	d	French 'd' (with tongue on teeth, not gums)	[d]
Ε	ε (epsilon)	e	English 'pet'	[e]
	ει		English 'fiancée' (German 'Beet')	[e:]
	ευ		Cockney 'belt' (Italian 'eulogia')	[eu]



Greek capital	Greek minuscule	English transcription used in this course*	Pronunciation (recommended)	Phonetic transcription**
Z	ζ (zeta)	sd	English 'wisdom'	[zd]
H	η (eta)	e	English 'hairy' (French 'tête')	[ɛ:]
	ἦ		as ἦ (more correctly, with -ι at the end)	[ɛ:i]
	ἦν		as εῦ (with first element long)	[ɛ:u]
Θ	θ (theta)	th	English 'top' (emphatically pronounced; later, as in 'thin')	[th]
I	ι (iota)	i	English 'bit' (French 'vitesse')	[i]
	ῖ (when long)		English 'bead'	[i:]
K	κ (kappa)	k	English 'skin'	[k]
Λ	λ (lambda)	l	English 'left'	[l]
M	μ (mu)	m	English 'man'	[m]
N	ν (nu)	n	English 'net'	[n]
Ξ	ξ (xi)	x	English 'box'	[ks]
O	ο (omicron)	o	English 'pot' (or German 'Gott')	[o]
	οι		English 'boy'	[oi]
	ου		English 'too'	[u:]
Π	π (pi)	p	English 'spin'	[p]
P	ρ (rho)	r	Scottish 'rolled' r	[r]
Σ	σ, ς (sigma)	s	English 'sing', 'lesson'	[s]
T	τ (tau)	t	t (with tongue on teeth, not gums)	[t]
Y	υ (upsilon)	u, y	u, as in French 'lune' (German 'Müller')	[y]
	ῦ (when long)		u, as in French 'ruse' (German 'Mühle')	[y:]
	υι		close to French 'huit'	[yi]
Φ	φ (phi)	ph	English 'pot' (emphatically pronounced; later, as in 'fear')	[ph]
X	χ (khi)	kh	English 'cat' (emphatically pronounced; later, as in 'loch')	[kh]
Ψ	ψ (psi)	ps	English 'lapse'	[ps]
Ω	ω (omega)	o	English 'saw'	[ɔ:]
	ω		As ω (more correctly, with -ι at the end)	[ɔ:i]

\* See also notes on p. 332.

\*\* IPA system, in which  $\bar{\iota}$  adds length; th, ph, kh mean aspirated t, p, k

Notes

(i) Most Greek texts use two forms of minuscule sigma:  $\varsigma$  at the end of the word,  $\sigma$  elsewhere (e.g.  $\delta\sigma\sigma\sigma$ ). Some Greek texts print a 'lunate' sigma,  $\sigma$ , which is used in all positions (e.g.  $\delta\sigma\sigma\sigma$ ).

(ii) For the principles of transcription of names from Greek into English, see Notes to the Text, p. xv.

Use the following poem by the fifth-century poet Kallias to memorise the alphabet:

α β γ δ ε  
 ἔστ' ἄλφα, βῆτα, γάμμα, δέλτα καὶ τὸ εἴ,  
 ζ η θ ι κ λ μ  
 ζῆτα, ἦτα, θῆτα, ἰῶτα, κάππα, λάβδα, μῦ,  
 ν ξ ο π ρ σ,ς τ υ  
 νῦ, ξεῖ, τὸ οὔ, πεῖ, ῥῶ, τὸ σίγμα, ταῦ, τὸ ῦ  
 φ χ ψ ω  
 φεῖ, χεῖ τε καὶ ψεῖ καὶ τελευταῖον τὸ ὦ.

### Notes

(i) ζ, ξ, and ψ indicate a double consonant:

ζ is written for σδ

ξ is written for κς

ψ is written for πς

(ii) Vowels do not always indicate a distinction of length (or quantity):

ε, ο always indicate a short vowel

η, ω always indicate a long vowel

α, ι, υ are used for both long and short vowels.

(iii) All double consonants are given their full value in pronunciation, e.g.

ππ is pronounced as in 'hip-pocket'

ττ is pronounced as in 'rat-trap'

σσ is pronounced as in 'disservice'

λλ is pronounced as in 'wholly' (cf. 'holy').

The exception is γγ, which is pronounced as in 'finger' (and so too γκ (as in 'ink'), γξ (as in 'lynx') and γχ (as in 'ink-horn')).

(iv) Words beginning with a vowel show a 'breathing' mark over the first (sometimes the second) letter, either ' or ', e.g.

ὄρος ('oros')

ὅρος ('horos')

The 'rough' breathing, ' , denotes the presence of 'h'.

The 'smooth' breathing, ' , is merely a convention to denote the absence of 'h'.

Note that all words beginning with ρ take a rough breathing, e.g. ῥήτωρ ('rhetor'). This may have indicated a special pronunciation.

(v) You will already have noticed that Greek words have accent marks, i.e. ' (acute), ` (grave), ^ (circumflex). These denote the musical pitch at which the accented syllable was pronounced – high pitch (´), low pitch (`), high pitch falling to low (˘: originally written as a combination of acute + grave, ˘). This accent is only found on long vowels,

and diphthongs). There is no reason why you should not attempt to 'pitch' the accent, but you will find it fairly difficult to do without constant care and attention. English speakers naturally 'stress' syllables. If you cannot 'pitch', then you must 'stress' the accented syllable, even though this may obscure the accent which is being used (whether ' , ' or ^). Learn the word with its accent as part of its pronunciation. That is why the accent is there.

For a fuller, though by no means complete, account of Greek methods of accentuation, see the Reference Grammar A.3.

(vi) There are four punctuation marks in Greek, though we have used some English ones in places to ease reading. The four Greek marks are:

- full stop, as in English
- , comma, as in English
- colon or semi-colon (note that · is placed slightly above the line)
- ; question-mark (?)

(vii) Now the truth must be told that a fifth-century Greek would hardly have recognised a single one of all these conventions you have just learnt. Fifth-century Greeks wrote in CAPITAL LETTERS, with NO GAPS BETWEEN WORDS, with NO ACCENTS, with NO SMOOTH BREATHINGS and virtually NO PUNCTUATION.\* All these conventions sprang up later, some very much later indeed. Modern Greek continues to use most of them.

(viii) Greeks generally liked their language to run smoothly, and to achieve this they regularly ran words together, or modified their endings (as we do too, e.g. 'isn't' for 'is not', 'we're' for 'we are', 'Tom 'n' Jerry' for 'Tom and Jerry'). We shall not do this until Section Four, but in the meantime, notice the changes that the Greek for 'no(t)' undergoes in response to its environment:

\* Consequently the act of reading for an ancient Greek must have required a high level of intelligence and concentration, especially since the endings of the words are so crucial for meaning. It is bad enough in English: here is a translated extract from Plato's Republic:

FARLESS I AGREE SO WE CAN'T HAVE HOMERS SAYING  
OF THE GODS AND A FIT OF HELPLESS LAUGHTER  
SEIZED THE HAPPY GODS AS THEY WATCHED HEPHAESTUS  
BUSTLING UP AND DOWN THE HALL YOUR ARGUMENT  
WOULDN'T ALLOW THAT CALL IT MY ARGUMENT IF YOU  
LIKE HERE PLIED IN ANY EVENT WE CAN'T ALLOW IT  
AND SURELY WE MUST VALUE TRUTHFULNESS HIGHLY,  
and so on.

The Greek looked roughly as follows:

ΠΟΛΥ ΜΕΝ ΤΟΙΗΔΙ-ΟΣΟΥ ΚΟΥΝΗ ΟΜΗΡΟΥ ΟΥΔΕ ΤΑ  
ΤΟΙΑΥΤΑ ΙΙΟΔΕΞΟΜΕΘΑ ΠΕΡΙΘΕΩΝΑΣ ΒΕΣΤΟΣ  
ΔΑΡΕΝΩΡΤΟ ΓΕΛΩΣ ΜΑΚΑΡΕΣ ΣΙΘΕΟΙ ΣΙΝΦΩΣΙΔΟΝ  
ΙΗΦΑΙΣ ΤΟΝ ΔΙΑΔΩΜΑΤΑ ΠΟΙΗΝΥΟΝΤΑ ΟΥΚΑΙ ΙΟΚΕΚ  
ΤΕ ΟΝ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΟΝ ΣΕΟΝ ΛΟΓΟΝ ΕΙΣΥΕΦΗΒΟΥ. ΙΕΙΕ ΜΟΝΤΙ  
ΘΕΝΑΙ ΟΥΓΑΡ ΟΥΝΑ ΙΙΟΔΕΚ ΤΕ ΟΝΑΛΛΑ ΜΗΝ ΚΑΙ ΑΛΗΘΕΙΑΝ  
Γ' ΕΙ ΠΕΡΙ ΠΟΛΛΟΥ ΠΟΙΗΤΕΟΝ . . .



N.b. each of these accents has a technical name, by which you may find it denoted:

	<i>Third-last</i>	<i>Second-last</i>	<i>Last</i>
Acute:	' proparoxytone	' paroxytone	' oxytone
Grave:			` barytone
Circumflex:		˘ properispomenon	˘ perispomenon

(i) *The acute* ' *acute*

This can fall on any of the last three syllables. If the last syllable has a long vowel or diphthong, the accent can only fall on the last two, e.g.

ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου.

If the acute falls on the last syllable, it will become grave when followed by another word in the same sentence (unless a comma intervenes, or the following word is an enclitic, q.v.), e.g.

πῶθεν ἡ βοή; ἡ βοή τοῦ ἀνθρώπου . . .

(ii) *The circumflex* ˘ *circumflex*

This can only fall on the last two syllables; it can only stand on a long vowel or a diphthong.

If the last syllable is *long*, a circumflex cannot stand on the second last, e.g.

οὗτος, αὕτη.

(iii) *The grave* ` *grave*

This can only stand on the last syllable, and will only do so when the word is followed directly by another word in the same sentence which is not an enclitic (see (i) above). Observe the change of accent on the last syllable in:

καλή ἡ γυνή. ἡ γυνή βαίνει. ἡ γυνή καλή.

*Enclitics*

Not all words have an accent of their own. Those which do not are distinguished into two types:

(i) *Proclitics*

These are accentually linked to the word which follows them, and only show an accent when the word which follows is an enclitic. The commonest proclitics are *ὄ, ἡ, οί, αί, ἐν, εἰς, οὐ, εἰ*.

(ii) *Enclitics*

These are accentually linked to the preceding word, and sometimes change the accentuation of the preceding word. The principal enclitics are: *τε*,

τις ('a certain', and all indefinite words, e.g. που 'somewhere'), unemphatic με, μου, μοι, σε, σου, σοι, εἰμί ('I am') and φημί ('I say') in the PRESENT INDICATIVE (though not the 2nd s.), γε.

*Note*

An enclitic cannot stand first in a clause. Observe that there are other words which cannot stand first in a clause, but these are not necessarily enclitics, e.g. γάρ, δέ, οὖν.

(a) Acute on the last remains acute if the following word is enclitic, e.g.

ἀνὴρ βαίνει, ἀνὴρ τις βαίνει.

(b) If the preceding word has an acute on the third last syllable, or a circumflex on the second last, that word will take *as well as its normal accent* an acute on its last syllable, e.g.

ἄνθρωπός τις

πλοῖόν τι

(c) If the preceding word has a circumflex on the last syllable, the enclitic simply loses any accent, e.g. οὖν ἔστι

(d) Strings of enclitics will throw accents back onto each other, e.g.

ἄνθρωπός τις ποτέ μοι ἔλεγε . . . 'a certain man once said to me . . .'

(do not confuse *τίς* here with *τίς*; = 'who, what?')

(e) Forms of *τις* with two syllables will accent the *last* if they follow a paroxytone word, e.g.

πρὸς οἰκίαν τινά 'to a certain house'

(*τινά* cannot throw its accent back onto *οἰκίαν* because *οἰκίαν* does not have an acute on the third-last or a circumflex on the second-last. Note that the accent on *τίς*; falls on the *first* syllable in all its forms, e.g.

πρὸς τίνα οἰκίαν βαίνεις; 'to what house are you going?')

*Some general hints*

(a) Nouns, pronouns, adjectives

(i) For the purposes of accentuation (NOT METRE), -οι and -αι of nom. pl. count SHORT at the end of these words. Thus ἄνθρωποι, διάνοιαι.

(ii) Words of 1st and 2nd declension with an acute on the last syllable of nom. s. take circumflex in the genitives and datives, e.g. ἀγαθός - ἀγαθοῦ ἀγαθῶ ἀγαθῆς ἀγαθῇ ἀγαθῶν ἀγαθοῖς ἀγαθαῖς.

(iii) ALL 1st declension nouns have a circumflex on the -ῶν of the genitive plural (no matter where the accent was originally), e.g. νίκη gen. pl. νικῶν; so with 3rd declension nouns in -ος (σκευῶν), if contracted (cf. σκευέων).

(iv) Note especially πῶλεως, πῶλεων, breaking the rule of 4 (i).

(v) Monosyllables of the 3rd declension are accented on the final syllable of

the genitive and dative; e.g. πούς; gen. s. ποδός; dat. s. ποδί; gen. pl. ποδῶν; dat. pl. ποσί.

(vi) Noms. and accs. accented on the final syllable are acute, unless contracted; e.g. ὁ Παρθενῶν but ὁ Περικλῆς (Περικλέ-ης).

(b) Verbs

(i) The accent normally goes back as far as it can, and is nearly always acute (but see under contracted verbs later on).

(ii) For the purposes of accentuation (NOT METRE), -αι counts short (except in the optative, in which both -αι and -οι count long), e.g.

ἀποκρίνεται, λύεσθαι but νομίζοι

(iii) If the infinitive ends in -ναι, the infinitive will be accented on the second last (acute or circumflex), and its nom. s. m. participle on the last syllable:

λελυκέναι – λελυκώς (gen. m./n. λελυκότος)

διδόναι – διδούς (f. διδοῦσα; gen. m./n. διδόντος)

λυθῆναι – λυθείς (f. λυθείσα; gen. m./n. λυθέντος)

(iv) Strong aorists accent on the last syllable in infinitive and participle active, e.g.

φυγεῖν, φυγῶν (contrast φεύγειν, φεύγων of the present)

(v) For contracted verbs, examine the *uncontracted* form and determine where the accent would come on that. If an accented syllable is involved in the contraction, the accent will be circumflex on the resulting contraction, if the rule under 4 (ii) does not apply. If 4 (ii) does apply, the accent will be acute. e.g.

ποιέ-ει – ποιεῖ

ἐποίε-ε – ἐποίηι

ὄρα-οίην – ὄρώην

○ A.4 Homeric dialect – the main features

Nouns

First declension

Types 1a b c (f.)

Nom. s: ends in η, even after ρ, ε, ι e.g. χώρη, not χώρα.

Some nouns end in ᾶ.

Gen. pl.: usually ends in -αων, -εων, e.g. νυμφάων, not νυμφῶν.

Dat. pl.: nearly always ends

Second declension

Gen. s.: ends in -οιο as well as -ου, e.g. πεδίοιο and πεδίου.

Gen. + dat. dual: ends in -οῖν, so ἵπποῖν, not ἵπποιν

Dat. pl. ends in -οισι and -οις, e.g. φύλλοισι and φύλλοις.

Third declension

Acc. s.: ends in -ιν as well as -ιδα, e.g. γλαυκῶπιν and γλαυκῶπιδα.

Endings in -ηα correspond to -εᾶ, e.g. βασιλῆα = βασιλέα.

Gen. s. endings in -ηος and -ιος correspond to -εως, e.g. βασιλῆος = βασιλέως;

## First declension

## Types 1a b c (f.)

m -ησι(ν), οἱ -ης, e.g.

πύλῃσι = πύλαις.

## Type 1d (m.)

Nom. s.: may end in *ā*, not

-ης, e.g. ἵππότᾱ, not

ἵππότης.

Gen. s.: ends in -αο, -εω,

not ου, e.g. Ἀτρείδαο, not

Ἀτρείδου.

## Second declension

## Third declension

πόλιος = πόλεως.

Acc. pl.: endings in -ηας  
correspond to -εας, e.g.

βασιλῆας = βασιλέας.

Gen. pl.: endings in -ηων  
correspond to -εων, e.g.

βασιλῆων = βασιλέων.

Dat. pl.: ends in -εσσι and  
-σι, e.g. πόδεσσι, ἔπεσσι.

## Pronouns

ἐγώ, σύ 'I', 'you'

Gen. s.: ἐμεῖο, ἐμέο, ἐμεῦ,

μεν, ἐμέθεν. So with

σύ - σεῖο, σέο, etc.

ἡμεῖς, ὑμεῖς 'we', 'you'

Acc.: ἡμέας, ἄμμε.

Gen.: ἡμείων, ἡμέων.

Dat.: ἄμμι(ν). So with

ὑμῖς.

ἔ 'him'

Gen.: εἶο, εἶο, εὔ, ἔθεν.

Dat.: εἰοῖ, οἰ.

σφε 'them'

Acc.: σφε, σφέας, σφας.

Gen.: σφείων, σφέων.

Dat.: σφι, σφισί.

τίς 'who, what, which'

Is declined:

τίς

τίνα

τέο τεῦ

τέω

Gen. pl.: τέων.

ὁ ἢ τό 'he, she, it' or  
'the'

Nom. pl.: οἱ, αἱ, οἱ τοί, ταί.

Dat. pl.: τοῖς, τοῖσι, τῆς,

τῆσι as well as ταῖς.

## Note

(i) Observe the Homeric alternation between -σ- and -σσ- (which can be metrically useful), e.g. τόσος → τόσσος, μέσος → μέσσος, ποσί → ποσσί.

(ii) The termination -φι (-οφι) may be used for the dat. s. and pl. of nouns and adjectives (and sometimes the gen. s. and pl. too), e.g.

βιῆφι 'by force', δακρύοφιν 'with tears', ὄρέσφιν 'in the mountains'.

## Verbs

## Person endings

-ν for -σαν, e.g. ἔσταν for ἔστησαν in 3rd pl. act.

3rd pl. mid./pass. often ends in -αται, -ατο, e.g. ἦατο = ἦντο.

## Tenses

Future: generally uncontracted, e.g. ἐρέω (ἐρῶ), τελέω (τελέσω).

Present/Imperfect: sometimes reinforced by a form in -σκ- implying repetition, e.g.

φύγεσκον 'they kept on running away'.



*Aorist/Imperfect*: in both the augment may be missing e.g. βάλον (ἔβαλον): observe the necessary adjustments in compounds, e.g. ἔμβαλε (ἐνέβαλε).

### Moods

#### Subjunctive:

(i) appears with a short vowel, e.g. ἴομεν = ἰώμεν

(ii) has 2nd s. mid. in -ηαι, -εαι

(iii) has 3rd s. act. in -σι, e.g. φορεῖσσι = φορῆ

(iv) is used in place of the future; and can be used in general remarks.

### Infinitive

It appears with the endings -μεν, -μεναι, -ναι for -ειν, -ναι e.g. δόμεναι = δοῦναι; ἴμεν = ἰέναι; ἔμεν, ἔμμεν, ἔμμεναι = εἶναι; ἀκουέμεν(αι) = ἀκούειν.

### Contracted verbs

In contracted verbs, where Attic has -ω-, we can find -οω-, -ωω- in place of -αο-, e.g. ὀρόωντες for Attic ὀρώντες.

Similarly, where Attic would contract αε to α, and αει to α, Homeric Greek can show αα, αα.

### Adverbs

Note the way the following suffixes are used to create adverbs:

-δε 'whither', as in πόλεμόνδε 'to the war' N.b. -δε here is attached to the acc.; in all the rest, the suffix is attached to stem.

-δον 'how', as in κλαγγηδόν 'with cries'

-θεν 'whence', as in ὑψόθεν 'from above'

-θι 'where', as in ὑψόθι 'on high'

Cf. Language Survey (13) (iii).

### Particles

Note particularly the use and force of the following particles:

ἄρα (ἄρ, ῥά) 'so, next' (showing transition)

δή 'indeed' (emphasising)

ἦ 'surely' (emphasising)

περ 'just, even' (emphasising)

τε 'and' (or to show a general remark)

τοι 'I tell you' (assertion) (But it may also = σοι,

'to you, for you'.)

Cf. Reference Grammar G.

## B. Nouns

Here is a summary chart of the noun-types which have been met:

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
1a βο-ή, ἡ	βο-ήν	βο-ῆς	βο-ῆ	βο-αί	βο-άς	βο-ῶν	βο-αῖς
1b ἀπορί-α, ἡ	ἀπορί-αν	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορί-ᾱ	ἀπορί-αι	ἀπορί-ας	ἀπορι-ῶν	ἀπορί-αις
1c τόλμ-α, ἡ	τόλμ-αν	τόλμ-ης	τόλμ-η	τόλμ-αι	τόλμ-ας	τολμ-ῶν	τόλμ-αις
1d ναύτ-ης, ὁ νεανί-ας, ὁ	ναύτ-ην νεανί-αν	ναύτ-ου	ναύτ-η νεανί-ᾱ	ναύτ-αι	ναύτ-ας	ναυτ-ῶν	ναύτ-αις
2a ἄνθρωπ-ος, ὁ	ἄνθρωπ-ον	ἀνθρώπ-ου	ἀνθρώπ-ω	ἄνθρωπ-οι	ἀνθρώπ-ους	ἀνθρώπ-ων	ἀνθρώπ-οις
2b ἔργ-ον, τό	ἔργ-ον	ἔργ-ου	ἔργ-ω	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-α	ἔργ-ων	ἔργ-οις
3a λιμήν, ὁ	λιμέν-α	λιμέν-ος	λιμέν-ι	λιμέν-ες	λιμέν-ας	λιμέν-ων	λιμέ-σι(ν)
3b πράγμα, τό	πράγμα	πράγματ-ος	πράγματ-ι	πράγματ-α	πράγματ-α	πραγμάτων	πράγμα-σι(ν)
3c πλῆθ-ος, τό	πλῆθ-ος	πλήθ-ους	πλήθ-ει	πλήθ-η	πλήθ-η	πληθ-ῶν	πλήθ-εσι(ν)
3d τριήρ-ης, ἡ	τριήρ-η	τριήρ-ους	τριήρ-ει	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-εις	τριήρ-ων	τριήρ-εσι(ν)
3e πόλ-ις, ἡ πρέσβ-υς, ὁ	πόλ-ιν πρέσβ-υν	πόλ-εως	πόλ-ει	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εις	πόλ-εων	πόλ-εσι(ν)
3f ἄστ-υ, τό	ἄστ-υ	ἄστ-εως	ἄστ-ει	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-η	ἄστ-εων	ἄστ-εσι(ν)
3g βασιλ-εύς, ὁ	βασιλ-έα	βασιλ-έως	βασιλ-εῖ	βασιλ-εῖς βασιλ-ῆς	βασιλ-έας	βασιλ-έων	βασιλ-εῦσι(ν)
3h ὄφρῦ-ς, ἡ	ὄφρῦ-ν	ὄφρῦ-ος	ὄφρῦ-ι	ὄφρῦ-ες	ὄφρῦ-ς	ὄφρῦ-ων	ὄφρῦ-σι(ν)

## Note

A number of nouns are contracted, e.g. πλοῦς 'voyage', contracted from πλόος, νοῦς 'mind' contracted from νόος, ὀστοῦν 'bone' contracted from ὀστέον.

For contract rules see Reference Grammar E.2 note (ii).

## Irregular nouns

s.				pl.			
nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
ναῦς, ἡ	ναῦν	νεώς	νηί	νηες	ναῦς	νεῶν	ναυσί(ν)
γραῦς, ἡ	γραῦν	γραῶς	γραῖ	γραῖες	γραῦς	γραῶν	γραυσί(ν)
Ζεὺς, ὁ	Δία	Διός	Δί				

Personal pronouns

ἐγώ	(ἐ)μέ	(ἐ)μοῦ	(ἐ)μοί	ἡμεῖς	ἡμᾶς	ἡμῶν	ἡμῖν
σύ	σέ	σοῦ	σοί	ὕμεῖς	ὕμᾶς	ὕμῶν	ὕμῖν

Vocatives

The form of the vocative is the same as the nominative in most instances in the singular and all instances in the plural. Forms of the vocative different from the nominative are:

- 1d ναῦτα, νεανία
- 2a ἄνθρωπε
- 3d Σώκρατες, Περικλείς
- 3c πόλι, πρέσβυ
- 3g βασιλεῦ
- 3h ὄφρῦ

Note

Observe the shortening in the following vocatives:

- λέων (λεοντ-) → λέον
- ἐλπίς (ἐλπιδ-) → ἐλπί
- σωτήρ (σωτηρ-) → σῶτερ
- δαίμων (δαιμον-) → δαίμον
- ἄνῆρ (ἄνδρ-) → ἄνερ

On morphology, see Language Survey (10); on noun-formation see Language Survey (13) (i); on use of cases, see Index and Language Survey (11).

## C.1 Adjectives/pronouns

Here is a summary of all the adjective/pronoun types you have met, including participles:

s.				pl.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	καλ-ός	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῷ	καλ-οῖ	καλ-ούς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
f.	καλ-ή	καλ-ήν	καλ-ῆς	καλ-ῇ	καλ-αῖ	καλ-ᾶς	καλ-ῶν	καλ-αῖς
n.	καλ-όν	καλ-όν	καλ-οῦ	καλ-ῷ	καλ-ά	καλ-ά	καλ-ῶν	καλ-οῖς
m.	ἡμέτερ-ος	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτέρ-ου	ἡμέτέρ-ω	ἡμέτερ-οι	ἡμέτέρ-ους	ἡμέτέρ-ων	ἡμέτέρ-οις
f.	ἡμέτέρᾱ	ἡμέτέρ-ᾱν	ἡμέτέρ-ᾶς	ἡμέτέρ-ᾳ	ἡμέτερ-αι	ἡμέτέρ-ᾶς	ἡμέτέρ-ων	ἡμέτέρ-αις
n.	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτερ-ον	ἡμέτέρ-ου	ἡμέτέρ-ω	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτερ-α	ἡμέτέρ-ων	ἡμέτέρ-οις

s.				pl.				
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
m.	οὗτ-ος	τούτ-ον	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ω	οὗτ-οι	τούτ-ους	τούτ-ων	τούτ-οις
f.	αὐτ-η	ταύτ-ην	ταύτ-ης	ταύτ-ῃ	αὐτ-αι	ταύτ-ᾶς	τούτ-ων	ταύτ-αις
n.	τούτ-ο	τούτ-ο	τούτ-ου	τούτ-ω	ταύτ-α	ταύτ-α	τούτ-ων	τούτ-οις
m.	ἐκεῖν-ος	ἐκεῖν-ον	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-οι	ἐκεῖν-ους	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οις
f.	ἐκεῖν-η	ἐκεῖν-ην	ἐκεῖν-ης	ἐκεῖν-ῃ	ἐκεῖν-αι	ἐκεῖν-ᾶς	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-αις
n.	ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ο	ἐκεῖν-ου	ἐκεῖν-ω	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-α	ἐκεῖν-ων	ἐκεῖν-οις
m.	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτῶ	αὐτ-οί	αὐτ-ούς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
f.	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-ῇ	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-ᾶς	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-αῖς
n.	αὐτ-ό	αὐτ-ό	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτ-ῷ	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ά	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-οῖς
m.	πολ-ύς	πολ-ύν	πολλ-αῦ	πολλ-ῶ	πολλ-οί	πολλ-ούς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
f.	πολλ-ή	πολλ-ήν	πολλ-ῆς	πολλ-ῇ	πολλ-αί	πολλ-ᾶς	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-αῖς
n.	πολ-ύ	πολ-ύ	πολλ-οῦ	πολλ-ῷ	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ά	πολλ-ῶν	πολλ-οῖς
m./f.	εὐφρων	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-ες	εὐφρον-ας	εὐφρόν-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
n.	εὐφρον	εὐφρον	εὐφρον-ος	εὐφρον-ι	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρον-α	εὐφρόν-ων	εὐφρο-σι(ν)
m./f.	τις	τιν-α	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-ες	τιν-ας	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
n.	τι	τι	τιν-ος	τιν-ι	τιν-α	τιν-α	τιν-ων	τι-σι(ν)
m.	οὐδ-εῖς	οὐδ-έν-α	οὐδ-ει-ός	οὐδ-εν-ί				
f.	οὐδε-μί-α	οὐδε-μί-αν	οὐδε-μί-ᾶς	οὐδε-μί-ᾳ				
n.	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-έν	οὐδ-εν-ός	οὐδ-εν-ί				
m.	ὄν	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-ες	ὄντ-ας	ὄντ-ων	οὐ-σι(ν)
f.	οὐσ-α	οὐσ-αν	οὐσ-ης	οὐσ-ῃ	οὐσ-αι	οὐσ-ᾶς	οὐσ-ῶν	οὐσ-αις
n.	ὄν	ὄν	ὄντ-ος	ὄντ-ι	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-α	ὄντ-ων	οὐ-σι(ν)
m.	παύσ-ᾶς	-αντ-α	-αιτ-ος	-αντ-ι	-αντ-ες	-αντ-ας	-άντ-ων	-ᾶ-σι(ν)
f.	παύσ-ᾶσ-α	-ᾶσ-αν	-ᾶσ-ης	-ᾶσ-ῃ	-ᾶσ-αι	-ᾶσ-ᾶς	-ασ-ῶν	-ᾶσ-αις
n.	παύσ-αν	-αν	-αντ-ος	-αντ-ι	-αντ-α	-αντ-α	-άντ-ων	-ᾶ-σι(ν)
m.	παυσθ-εῖς	-έντ-α	-έντ-ος	-έντ-ι	-έντ-ες	-έντ-ας	-έντ-ων	-εῖ-σι(ν)
f.	παυσθ-εῖσ-α	-εῖσ-αν	-εῖσ-ης	-εῖσ-ῃ	-εῖσ-αι	-εῖσ-ᾶς	-εισ-ῶν	-εῖσ-αις
n.	παυσθ-έν	-έν	-έντ-ος	-έντ-ι	-έντ-α	-έντ-α	-έντ-ων	-εῖ-σι(ν)
m.	πεπαυκ-ῶς	-ότ-α	-ότ-ος	ότ-ι	-ότ-ες	-ότ-ας	-ότ-ων	-ό-σι(ν)
f.	πεπαυκ-υῖ-α	-υῖ-αν	-υῖ-ᾶς	-υῖ-ᾳ	-υῖ-αι	-υῖ-ᾶς	-υι-ῶν	-υῖ-αις
n.	πεπαυκ-ός	-ός	-ότ-ος	-ότ-ι	-ότ-α	-ότ-α	-ότ-ων	-ό-σι(ν)
m./f.	ἄμελ-ῆς	ἄμελ-ῆ	ἄμελ-οῦς	ἄμελ-εῖ	ἄμελ-εῖς	ἄμελ-εῖς	ἄμελ-ῶν	ἄμελ-έσι(ν)
n.	ἄμελ-ές	ἄμελ-ές	ἄμελ-οῦς	ἄμελ-εῖ	ἄμελῆ	ἄμελ-ῆ	ἄμελ-ῶν	ἄμελ-έσι(ν)
m.	γλυκ-ύς	γλυκ-ύν	γλυκ-έος	γλυκ-εῖ	γλυκ-εῖς	γλυκ-εῖς	γλυκ-έων	γλυκ-έσι(ν)
f.	γλυκ-εῖ-α	γλυκ-εῖ-αν	γλυκ-εῖ-ᾶς	γλυκ-εῖ-ᾳ	γλυκ-εῖ-αι	γλυκ-εῖ-ᾶς	γλυκ-ει-ῶν	γλυκ-εῖ-αις
n.	γλυκ-ύ	γλυκ-ύ	γλυκ-έος	γλυκ-εῖ	γλυκ-εἶα	γλυκ-εἶα	γλυκ-έων	γλυκ-έσι(ν)

Cf. Language Survey (13) (iii).

Note

A number of adjectives are contracted e.g. χρυσούς χρυσή χρυσοῦν 'of gold' are the contracted forms of χρυσεός χρυσέα χρυσεόν. Cf. χαλκοῦς 'of bronze', ἀργυροῦς 'of silver'.

Among ο-contrast adjectives is διπλοῦς διπλή διπλοῦν 'double', contracted from διπλόος διπλόη διπλόον.

For contract rules see Reference Grammar E.2 note (ii)

○ C.2 Comparison of adjectives

Most comparatives end in -τερ-ος -α -ον (some irregulars end in (ι)ων).

Most superlatives end in -τατ-ος -η -ον (some irregulars end in (ι)στος).

Regular comparative forms

δεινός	'clever'	δεινότερος	δεινότατος
σοφός	'wise'	σοφώτερος	σοφώτατος
γλυκύς	'sweet'	γλυκύτερος	γλυκύτατος
ἀμελής	'careless'	ἀμελέστερος	ἀμελέστατος
εὐφρων	'pleasant'	εὐφρονέστερος	εὐφρονέστατος

Irregular comparative forms

ἀγαθός	'good'	ἀμείων	ἄριστος
		βελτίων	βέλτιστος
αἰσχρός	'disgraceful'	αἰσχίων	αἰσχιστος
ἡδύς	'sweet'	ἡδίων	ἡδιστος
κακός	'bad'	κακίων	κάκιστος
		χείρων	χείριστος
καλός	'fine'	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
μέγας	'great'	μείζων	μέγιστος
ὀλίγος	'little, few'	ἐλάττων	ἐλάχιστος
πολύς	'much'	πλείων	πλείστος
ῥάδιος	'easy'	ῥάων	ῥᾶστος
ταχύς	'swift'	θάττων	τάχιστος

Observe that comparatives basically mean 'more -, er', but can also mean 'quite -, fairly -, rather -'.

Superlatives basically mean 'est, most -, very -, extremely -'.

### Construction with comparatives

When two things are being compared (using English 'than'), Greek either:

(i) uses ἤ = 'than', and puts the two things being compared in the same case, e.g. *Σωκράτης σοφώτερός ἐστιν ἢ Κρίτων* 'Socrates is wiser than Kriton'; or (ii) puts the thing compared into the genitive (no ἤ), e.g. *Σωκράτης σοφώτερός ἐστι Κρίτωνος* 'Socrates is wiser than Kriton'.

#### Notes

(i) Comparatives in *-ων* decline like *εὐφρων*.

(ii) Comparatives declining like *εὐφρων* can drop the final *ν* and contract in the nominative and accusative, e.g.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{βελτίο(ν)α} \quad \rightarrow \text{βελτίω} \\ \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{βελτίο(ν)-ες} \\ \text{-ας} \end{array} \right\} \rightarrow \text{βελτίους} \end{array}$$

## O C.3 Noun/adjective endings – a summary

The following chart summarises the endings of the noun and adjective types you have met:

	s.				pl.											
	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.								
Type 1 nouns (and adj. like <i>καλή, ἡμέτερα, οὔσα</i> )	f. (a, b, c)	-η -α	-ης -ας	-αν	-η -α	-αι	-ᾶς	-ῶν	-αις							
	m. (d)	-ης -ας								-ου						
Type 2 nouns (and adj. like <i>καλός, ἡμέτερος</i> ) (and adj. like <i>καλόν, ἡμέτερον</i> )	m. (a)	-ος	-ου	-ων	-ω	-οι	-ους	-ων	-οις							
	n. (b)	-ον								-α	-α					
Type 3 nouns m./f. (and adj. like <i>κακοδαίμων, ἄληθής, γλυκὺς</i> )	(a)		-α	-ως -ους (adj.)	-(ε)ι	-εις	-εις	-(ε)ων	-(α'ε)οι							
	(d)	-ης	-η							-ους	-εις	-εις	-εις			
	(e)	-ις -υς	-ι -υι											-εις	-εις	-εις
	(g)	-εϋς	-εα													
(h)	-υς	-υι	-ους	-υι	-υς	-υς	-υων	-υσι								

		s.				pl.			
		nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.	nom.	acc.	gen.	dat.
Type 3 nouns n.	(b)	-α	-ον -αν	-α	-ον -αν	-α	-α		
(and adj. like		(adj.)	(adj.)						
κακόδαιμον,	(c)	-ος -ες	-ος -ες	-ους	-(ε)ι	-η	-η	-(ε)ων	-(α.ε)σι
ἀληθές, γλυκύ)		(adj.)	(adj.)						
	(f)	-υ	-υ	-εως -εος		-εα	-εα		
				(adj.)					

Cf. Language Survey (10).

## ○ D. Adverbs

Most adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ως* to the stem of the adjective, e.g.

σοφός	'wise'	σοφ-ώς	'wisely'
βαθ-ύς (βαθε-)	'deep'	βαθέ-ως	'deeply'
σώφρων (σωφρον-)	'sensible'	σωφρόν-ως	'sensibly'

Comparative and superlative adverbs are formed by using the neuter singular comparative of the adjective (for comparative adverbs) and the neuter plural superlative of the adjective (for superlative adverbs), e.g.

σοφῶς	'wisely'	σοφώτερον	'more wisely'	σοφώτατα	'most wisely'
κακῶς	'badly'	κάκιον	'worse, more evilly'	κάκιστα	'very evilly'
ταχέως	'quickly'	θᾶπτον	'more quickly'	τάχιστα	'very quickly'

Note:

εὖ	'well'	ἄμεινον	'more well, better'	ἄριστα	'best'
μάλα	'much'	μᾶλλον	'rather, more'	μάλιστα	'very much'

Cf. Language Survey (13) (iii).

## ○ E.1 The verb – synopsis

Here is a complete picture of *παύω|παύομαι* in all forms:

Present active (stem *παυ-*) 'I stop'

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
1st s.	παύ-ω	παύ-ειν	παύ-ων		παύ-οιμι	παύ-ω
2nd s.	παύ-εις		παύ-ουσ-α	παῦ-ε	παύ-οις	παύ-ῃς
3rd s.	παύ-ει		παῦ-ον	παυ-έτω	παύ-οι	παύ-ῃ
1st pl.	παύ-ομεν		(παυοντ-)		παύ-οιμεν	παύ-ωμεν
2nd pl.	παύ-ετε			παύ-ετε	παύ-οιτε	παύ-ῃτε
3rd pl.	παύ-ουσι(ν)			παυ-όντων	παύ-οιεν	παύ-ωσι(ν)

## Present middle and passive (stem παυ-) 'I stop (myself), am stopped'

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
1st s.	παύ-ομαι	παύ-εσθαι	παυ-όμεν-ος		παυ-οίμην	παύ-ωμαι
2nd s.	παύ-ει(η)		-η	παύ-ου	παύ-οιο	παύ-ῃ
3rd s.	παύ-εται		-ον	παυ-έσθω	παύ-οιτο	παύ-ῆται
1st pl.	παυ-όμεθα				παυ-οίμεθα	παυ-ώμεθα
2nd pl.	παύ-εσθε			παύ-εσθε	παύ-οισθε	παύ-ῆσθε
3rd pl.	παύ-ονται			παυ-έσθων	παύ-οιντο	παύ-ωνται

## Imperfect active (stem παυ-) 'I was stopping'

1st s.	ἔ-παυ-ον
2nd s.	ἔ-παυ-εις
3rd s.	ἔ-παυ-ει(ν)
1st pl.	ἔ-παύ-ομεν
2nd pl.	ἔ-παύ-ετε
3rd pl.	ἔ-παυ-ον

## Imperfect middle and passive (stem παυ-) 'I was stopping (myself), was stopped'

1st s.	ἔ-παυ-όμην
2nd s.	ἔ-παύ-ου
3rd s.	ἔ-παύ-ετο
1st pl.	ἔ-παυ-όμεθα
2nd pl.	ἔ-παύ-εσθε
3rd pl.	ἔ-παύ-οντο

## Aorist active (stem παυσ-(α)), 'I stopped'

1st s.	ἔ-παυσ-α	παύσ-αι	παύσ-ᾱς		παύσ-αιμι	παύσ-ω
2nd s.	ἔ-παυσ-ας		παύσ-ᾱσ-α	παύσ-ον	παύσ-εας (-αις)	παύσ-ῃς
3rd s.	ἔ-παυσ-ει(ν)		παύσ-αν	παυσ-άτω	παύσ-ειε(ν) (-αι)	παύσ-ῃ
1st pl.	ἔ-παύσ-αμεν		(παυσαντ-)		παύσ-αιμεν	παύσ-ωμεν
2nd pl.	ἔ-παύσ-ατε			παύσ-ατε	παύσ-αίτε	παύσ-ῆτε
3rd pl.	ἔ-παυσ-αν			παυσ-άντων	παύσ-εσαν (-αιεν)	παύσ-ωσι(ν)

## Aorist middle (stem παυσ-(α)) 'I stopped myself'

1st s.	ἔ-παυσ-άμην	παύσ-ασθαι	παυσ-άμεν-ος		παυσ-αίμην	παύσ-ωμαι
2nd s.	ἔ-παύσ-ω		-η	παύσ-αι	παύσ-αιο	παύσ-ῃ
3rd s.	ἔ-παύσ-ατο		-ον	παυσ-άσθω	παύσ-αιτο	παύσ-ῆται
1st pl.	ἔ-παυσ-άμεθα				παυσ-αίμεθα	παυσ-ώμεθα
2nd pl.	ἔ-παύσ-ασθε			παύσ-ασθε	παύσ-αίσθε	παύσ-ῆσθε
3rd pl.	ἔ-παύσ-αντο			παυσ-άσθων	παύσ-αιντο	παύσ-ωσι(ν)



**Aorist passive (stem παυσθ-)** 'I was stopped'

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
1st s.	ἐ-παύσθ-ην	παυσθ-ῆναι	παυσθ-εῖς		παυσθ-εῖην	παυσθ-ῶ
2nd s.	ἐπαύσθ-ης		παυσθ-εῖς-α	παύσθ-ητι	παυσθ-εῖης	παυσθ-ῆς
3rd s.	ἐ-παύσθ-η		παυσθ-έν	παυσθ-ήτω	παυσθ-εῖη	παυσθ-ῆ
1st pl.	ἐ-παύσθ-ημεν		(παυσθεντ-)		παυσθ-εῖμεν	παυσθ-ῶμεν
2nd pl.	ἐ-παύσθ-ητε			παύσθ-ητε	παυσθ-εῖτε	παυσθ-ήτε
3rd pl.	ἐ-παύσθ-ησαν			παυσθ-έντων	παυσθ-εῖεν	παυσθ-ῶσι(ν)

**Future active (stem παυσ-)** 'I shall stop'

1st s.	παύσ-ω	παύσ-ειν	παύσ-ων	παύσ-οιμι
2nd s.	παύσ-εις			

etc., exactly like the present active, on the stem παυσ-

**Future middle (stem παυσ-)** 'I shall stop (myself)'

1st s.	παύσ-ομαι	παύσ-εσθαι	παυσ-όμενος	παυσ-οίμην
2nd s.	παύσ-ει (or -η)			

etc., exactly like the present middle, on the stem παυσ-

**Future passive (stem παυσθη(σ)- based on aorist passive)**  
'I shall be stopped'

1st s.	παυσθήσ-ομαι	παυσθήσ-εσθαι	παυσθησ-όμενος	παυσθησ-οίμην
2nd s.	παυσθήσ-η			

etc., exactly like the present middlepassive on the stem παυσθησ-

**Perfect active (stem πεπαυκ-)** 'I have stopped'

1st s.	πέπαυκ-α	πεπαυκ-έναι	πεπαυκ-ώς	πέπαυκ-ε*	πεπαύκ-οιμι	πεπαύκ-ω
2nd s.	πέπαυκ-ας		πεπαυκ-υί-α	πέπαυκ-έτω	πεπαύκ-οις	πεπαύκ-ῆς
3rd s.	πέπαυκ-ε(ν)		πεπαυκ-ός		πεπαύκ-οι	πεπαύκ-η
1st pl.	πεπαύκ-αμεν		(πεπαυκοτ-)	πεπαύκ-ετε	πεπαύκ-οιμεν	πεπαύκ-ωμεν
2nd pl.	πεπαύκ-ατε			πεπαυκ-έτωσαν	πεπαύκ-οιτε	πεπαύκ-ητε
3rd pl.	πεπαύκ-ᾶσι(ν)				πεπαύκ-οιεν	πεπαύκ-ωσι(ν)

\* Only in verbs where the perfect has a present meaning (very rare).

**Perfect middle/passive (stem πεπαυ-)** 'I have stopped (myself), have been stopped'

1st s.	πέπαυ-μαι	πεπαύ-σθαι	πεπαυ-μέν-ος	πέπαυ-σο	πεπαυμένος εἶην	πεπαυμένος ὦ
2nd s.	πέπαυ-σαι		-η	πεπαύ-σθω	εἶης	ῆς
3rd s.	πέπαυ-ται		-ον		εἶη	ῆ
1st pl.	πεπαύ-μεθα			πέπαυ-σθε	πεπαυμένοι εἶμεν	πεπαυμένοι ὦμεν
2nd pl.	πέπαυ-σθε			πεπαύ-σθω	εἶτε	ῆτε
3rd pl.	πέπαυ-νται				εἶεν	ῶσι(ν)

(πεπαυμένοι εἰσὶ)



*Future perfect middle/passive (stem πεπαυ-) 'I shall have stopped (myself), been stopped'*

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
1st s.	πεπαύ-σομαι	πεπαύ-σεσθαι	πεπαυ-σόμεν-ος		πεπαυ-σοίμην	
2nd s.	πεπαύ-σει (σι -η)			-η		
3rd s.	πεπαύ-σεται			-ον		
1st pl.	πεπαυ-σόμεθα					
2nd pl.	πεπαύ-σεσθε					
3rd pl.	πεπαύ-σονται					

*Pluperfect active (stem ἔπεπαυκ-) 'I had stopped'*

1st s.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-η (-ειν)
2nd s.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-ης (-εις)
3rd s.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-ει(ν)
1st pl.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-εμεν
2nd pl.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-ετε
3rd pl.	ἔ-πεπαύκ-εσαν

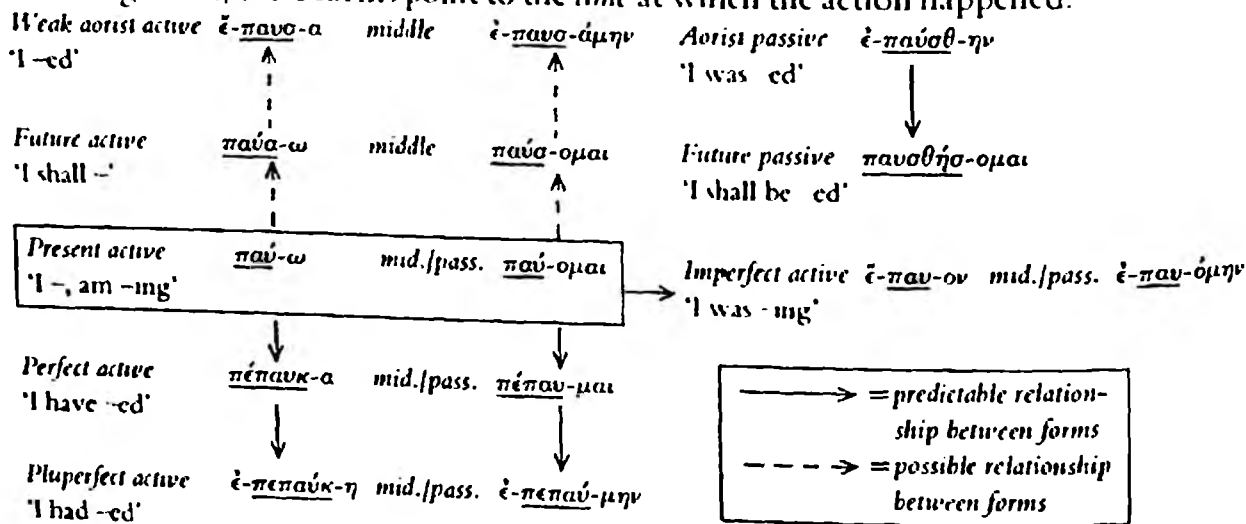
*Pluperfect middle/passive (stem ἔπεπαυ-) 'I had stopped (myself), had been stopped'*

1st s.	ἔ-πεπαύ-μην
2nd s.	ἔ-πέπαυ-σο
3rd s.	ἔ-πέπαυ-το
1st pl.	ἔ-πεπαύ-μεθα
2nd pl.	ἔ-πέπαυ-σθε
3rd pl.	ἔ-πέπαυ-ντο

○ E.2 Verb summary chart (uncontracted, weak aorist)

*Indicative forms (temporal)*

In general, these forms point to the time at which the action happened.



*Non-indicative forms (aspectual)*

In general, these forms point to the *aspect* of the action (see Reference Grammar A1 (i)).

The endings are added to the appropriate *unaugmented* stem of the verb.

*Infinitive:*

Present, Future	active	-ειν
	middle/passive	-εσθαι
Aorist	active	-αι
	middle	-ασθαι
	passive	-ῆναι
Perfect	active	-έναι
	middle/passive	-σθαι

*Participle:*

Present, Future	active	-ων -ουσα -ον (-οντ-)
	middle/passive	-όμεν-ος -η -ον
Aorist	active	-ᾶς -ᾶσα -αν (-αντ-)
	middle	-άμεν-ος -η -ον
	passive	-είς -είσα -έν (-εντ-)
Perfect	active	-ώς -υῖα -ός (-οτ-)
	middle/passive	-μέν-ος -η -ον

*Imperative:*

Present	active	-ε -έτω -ετε -όντων
	middle/passive	-ου -έσθω -εσθε -έσθων
Aorist	active	-ον -άτω -ατε -άντων
	middle	-αι -άσθω -ασθε -άσθων
	passive	-ητι -ήτω -ητε -έντων

*Optative:*

Present, Future, Perfect active	$\left. \begin{array}{l} -οιμι -οις -οι \\ ορ ορ ορ \\ -οίην -οίης -οίη \end{array} \right\}$	-οιμεν -οιτε -οιεν
		-οίμεην -οίο -οίτο -οίμεθα -οισθε -οιντο
Present, Future, Perfect middle/passive	$\left. \begin{array}{l} -αιμι -ειας (αις) -ειε(αι) -αιμεν -αιτε -ειαν (-αιεν) \\ -αίμην -αίο -αίτο -αίμεθα -αισθε -αιντο \\ -είην -είης -είη -εῖμεν -εῖτε -εῖεν \end{array} \right\}$	

## Subjunctive:

Active (and Aorist passive)	-ω -ης -η -ωμεν -ητε -ωσι(ν)
Middle/passive	-ωμαι -η -ηται -ώμεθα -ησθε -ωνται

In general, see Language Survey (3).

## Notes

(i) Strong aorists, in their active and middle forms, have

(a) INDICATIVE ENDINGS like the IMPERFECT

(b) ALL OTHER ENDINGS like the PRESENT, e.g.:

	Aorist indicative active	Aorist indicative middle
	ἔ-λαβ-ον	ἔ-λαβ-όμεν
	ἔ-λαβ-ες	ἔ-λάβ-ου
	ἔ-λαβ-ε	ἔ-λάβ-ετο
	ἔ-λάβ-ομεν	ἔ-λαβ-όμεθα
	ἔ-λάβ-ετε	ἔ-λάβ-εσθε
	ἔ-λαβ-ον	ἔ-λάβ-οντο
Infinitive:	λαβ-εῖν	λαβ-έσθαι
Participle:	λαβ-ών	λαβ-όμενος
Imperative:	λαβ-έ	λαβ-οῦ
Optative:	λάβ-οιμι	λάβ-οίμην
Subjunctive:	λάβ-ω	λάβ-ωμαι

N.b. the aor. pass. ἐλήφθ-ην is regular in endings.

(ii) Contracted verbs form different endings, owing to the contraction of their final vowel with the ending. Rules of contraction are, in summary form:

	α	ε	ει	ι	η	η	ο	ου	οι	ω	ω
α	α	α	αι	α	α	ω	ω	ω	ω	ω	ω
ε	η	ει	ει	η	η	ου	ου	οι	ω	ω	ω
ο	ω	ου	οι	οι	ω	οι	ου	ου	οι	ω	ω

The first vowel is in the LEFT-HAND column, the second in the TOP ROW; read off the resultant contraction where they intersect, e.g. α + ι = αι.

(iii) It is only in indirect speech that participles, infinitives and optatives can take on a specifically temporal function. In all other cases, their function is aspectual – i.e. they give a particular view about the way in which the action is taking place, not when it is taking place.

(iv) For -μι verbs, see Running Grammar: δίδωμι 131; τίθημι 150; ἵστημι 144; ἀφίημι 196; Reference Grammar E.3 and Language Survey (7).

## ○ E.3 Irregular verbs

εἰμί 'I am'

*Present*

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Optative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
1st s.	εἰμί	εἶναι	ῶν		εἶην	ῶ
2nd s.	εἶ		οὔσ-α	ἴσθι	εἶης	ῆς
3rd s.	ἐστί(ν)		ὄν	ἔστω	εἶη	ῆ
1st pl.	ἐσμέν		(ὄντ-)		εἶμεν	ῶμεν
2nd pl.	ἐστέ			ἔστε	εἶτε	ῆτε
3rd pl.	εἰσί(ν)			ὄντων	εἶεν	ῶσι(ν)

*Imperfect 'I was'*

1st s.	ἦ(ν)
2nd s.	ἦσθα
3rd s.	ἦν
1st pl.	ἦμεν
2nd pl.	ἦτε
3rd pl.	ἦσαν

*Future 'I shall be'*

1st s.	ἔσομαι	ἔσ-εσθαι	ἔσ-όμεν-ος	ἔσ-οίμην
2nd s.	ἔσει		-η	ἔσ-οιο εἰς.
3rd s.	ἔσται		-ον	
1st pl.	ἔσόμεθα			
2nd pl.	ἔσεσθε			
3rd pl.	ἔσονται			

## εἶμι 'I shall go'

	Future		Present		
	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative Subjunctive
1st s.	εἶμι	ἰέναι 'to go'	ἰών 'going'		ἴοιμι ἴω
2nd s.	εἶ		ἰούσ-α	ἴθι	ἴοις ἴῃς
3rd s.	εἶσι(ν)		ἰόν	ἴτω	ἴοι ἴῃ
1st pl.	ἴμεν		(ἰοντ-)		ἴοιμεν ἴωμεν
2nd pl.	ἴτε			ἴτε	ἴοιτε ἴῃτε
3rd pl.	ἴασι(ν)			ἰόντων	ἴοιεν ἴωσι(ν)

## Imperfect 'I went'

1st s.	ἦα (ἦειν)
2nd s.	ἦισθα (ἦεις)
3rd s.	ἦει(ν)
1st pl.	ἦμεν
2nd pl.	ἦτε
3rd pl.	ἦσαν (ἦδεσαν)

## οἶδα 'I know'

## Present

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative Subjunctive
1st s.	οἶδα	εἰδέναι	εἰδ-ώς		εἰδείην εἰδῶ
2nd s.	οἶσθα		-υῖ-α	ἴσθι	εἰδείης εἰδῆς
3rd s.	οἶδε		-ός	ἴστω	εἰδείῃ etc. εἰδῆ etc.
1st pl.	ἴσμεν		(εἰδοτ-)		
2nd pl.	ἴστε			ἴστε	
3rd pl.	ἴσασι(ν)			ἴστων	

## Past 'I knew'

1st s.	ἦδη (ἦδειν)
2nd s.	ἦδησθα (ἦδεις)
3rd s.	ἦδει(ν)
1st pl.	ἦσμεν
2nd pl.	ἦστε
3rd pl.	ἦσαν

Future 'I shall know'

- 1st s. εἶσομαι or εἰδήσω  
2nd s. εἶσει etc. εἰδήσεις etc.

φημί 'I say'

Present

	Indicative	Infinitive	Participle	Imperative	Optative	Subjunctive
1st s.	φημί	φάναι	φάσκ-ων		φαίην	φῶ
2nd s.	φῆς		-ουσ-α φαθί		φαίης	φῆς
3rd s.	φησί(ν)		-ον φάτω		φαίη etc.	φῆ etc.
1st pl.	φαμέν		(φασκοντ-)			
2nd pl.	φατέ			φάτε		
3rd pl.	φᾶσί(ν)			φάντων		

Note

The form φάς, φᾶσα, φάν (φαντ-) for participle is found: also φάμενος -η -ον often in Homer. Both have the same meaning as φάσκων

Imperfect 'I said'

- 1st s. ἔφην  
2nd s. ἔφησθα or ἔφης  
3rd s. ἔφη  
1st pl. ἔφαμεν  
2nd pl. ἔφατε  
3rd pl. ἔφασαν

Note

In Homer middle forms often occur, e.g. ἔφατο for ἔφη.

Aorist 'I said'

- 1st s. ἔφησ-α  
2nd s. ἔφησ-ας etc. (regular)

Future 'I shall say'

- 1st s. φήσ-ω  
2nd s. φήσ-εις etc. (regular)

## ○ E.4 Important principal parts

The following list gives the main principal parts of verbs learnt in the first half of the Course which may be said to be difficult. A few other verbs are also included for reference, and should be learnt as well.

Verb	Main stem (no aug.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
ἀγγέλλ-ω 'announce'	ἀγγειλ-	ἀγγελέ-ω	ἤγγειλ-α	ἤγγελκ-α	ἤγγέλθ-ην
ἄγ-ω 'lead'	ἄγαγ-	ἄξ-ω	ἤγαγ-ον	ἤχ-α	ἤχθ-ην
ᾄδω (ἀείδ-ω) 'sing'	ᾄσ- ἀεισ-	ᾄσ-ομαι	ᾄσ-α		ᾄσθ-ην
αἰνέ-ω 'praise'	αἰνεσ-	αἰνέσ-ω	ᾄνεσ-α	ᾄνεκ-α	ᾄνέθ-ην
αἰρέ-ω 'take' (mid. 'choose')	ἔλ-	αἰρήσ-ω	εἶλ-ον	ἤρηκ-α	ἤρέθ-ην
αἶρ-ω (ἀείρ-ω) 'lift, remove'	ἄρ- ἀειρ-	ἄρέ-ω	ἤρ-α	ἤρκ-α	ἤρθ-ην
αἰσθάν-ομαι 'perceive'	αἰσθ-	αἰσθήσ-ομαι	ἤσθ-όμην	ἤσθη-μαι	
αἰσχύν-ω 'disgrace' (pass. 'be ashamed')	αἰσχυν-(θ)-	αἰσχυνέ-ω	ἤσχυν-α		ἤσχύνθ-ην
ἀκού-ω 'hear'	ἀκουσ-	ἀκούσ-ομαι	ἤκουσ-α	ἀκήκο-α	ἤκούσθ-ην
ἄλίσκ-ομαι 'be caught'	ἄλ-	ἄλώσ-ομαι	ἔάλω-ν	ἔάλωκ-α	
ἀλλάττ-ω 'change, exchange'	ἀλλάξ-	ἀλλάξ-ω	ἤλλαξ-α	ἤλλαχ-α	ἤλλάχθ-ην } ἤλλάγ-ην }
ἄμαρτάν-ω 'err, miss'	ἄμαρτ-	ἄμαρτήσ-ομαι	ἤμαρτ-ον	ἤμάρτηκ-α	ἤμαρτήθ-ην
ἄμύν-ω 'ward off' (mid. 'defend oneself')	ἄμυν-	ἄμυνέ-ω	ἤμυν-α		
ἀναλίσκ-ω 'spend'	ἀναλωσ-	ἀναλώσ-ω	ἀνάλωσ-α } ἀνήλωσ-α }	ἀνάλωκ-α } ἀνήλωκ-α }	ἀναλώθ-ην } ἀνηλώθ-ην }
ἀνέχ-ομαι 'put up with'	ἀνασχ-	ἀνέξ-ομαι	ἤνεσχ-όμην		
ἀνοίγνυ-μι 'open'	ἀνοιξ-	ἀνοιξέ-ω	ἀνέωξ-α	ἀνέωγ-μαι (pass.)	ἀνεώχθ-ην
ἄπτ-ω 'fasten, light' (mid. 'touch')	ἄψ- ἄφθ-	ἄψ-ω	ἤψ-α	ἤμ-μαι (mid., pass.)	ἤφθ-ην
ἄρέσκ-ω 'please'	ἄρεσ-(θ)-	ἄρέσ-ω	ἤρεσ-α		ἤρέσθ-ην
ἄρπάζ-ω 'seize'	ἄρπασ-	ἄρπάσ-ω	ἤρπασ-α	ἤρπηκ-α	ἤρπάσθ-ην



Verb	Main stem (no aug.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
ἀρχ-ω 'rule: begin' (usu. mid.)	ἀρχ- 'ἀρξ-	ἀρξ-ω	ἤρξ-α	ἤρξ-μαι (mid.)	ἤρξθ-ην
ἀφικνέ-ομαι 'arrive'	ἀφικ-	ἀφίξ-ομαι	ἀφικ-όμεν	ἀφίγ-μαι	
βαίν-ω 'go'	βη- βα-	βήσ-ομαι	ἔβη-ν	βέβηκ-α	
βάλλ-ω 'throw, pelt'	βαλ- βληθ-	βαλέ-ω	ἔβαλ-ον	βέβληκ-α	ἔβληθ-ην
βλάπτ-ω 'harm'	βλάψ- βλαβ-	βλάψ-ω	ἔβλαψ-α	βέβλαφ-α	{ ἐβλάβ-ην ἐβλάφθ-ην
βούλ-ομαι 'wish'	βουλ- βουληθ-	βουλήσ-ομαι		βεβούλη-μαι	ἐβουλήθ-ην 'I wished'
γαμέ-ω 'marry'	γημ-	γαμέ-ω	ἔγημ-α	γεγάμηκ-α	
γελά-ω 'laugh'	γελασ-	γελάσ-ομαι	ἐγέλασ-α		ἐγελάσθ-ην
γίγν-ομαι 'become'	γεν-	γενήσ-ομαι	ἐγεν-όμεν	γεγένη-μαι } γέγον-α }	
γιγνώσκ-ω 'recognize'	γνω- γνω-	γνώσ-ομαι	ἔγνω-ν	ἔγνωκ-α	ἐγνώσθ-ην
γράφ-ω 'write'	γραψ-	γράψ-ω	ἔγραψ-α	γέγραφ-α	ἐγράφ-ην
δάκν-ω 'bite'	δακ- δηχθ-	δήξ-ομαι	ἔδακ-ον	δέδηγ-μαι (pass.)	ἐδήχθ-ην
δέδοικ-α 'fear'	δεισ- δεδοικ- δειδ-	δείσ-ομαι	ἔδεισ-α		
δείκνυ-μι 'show'	δειξ-	δείξ-ω	ἔδειξ-α	δέδειχ-α	ἐδείχθ-ην
δέχ-ομαι 'receive'	δεξ- δεγ-	δέξ-ομαι	ἔδεξ-άμεν	δέδεγ-μαι	ἐδέχθ-ην
δέ-ω 'want, need' (mid. 'ask'; δεῖ 'it is necessary')	δεησ-	δεήσ-ω	ἔδεησ-α	δεδέηκ-α	ἔδεηθ-ην (mid.)
διδάσκ-ω 'teach'	διδαξ-	διδάξ-ω	ἔδίδαξ-α	δεδίδαχ-α	ἔδιδάχθ-ην
δίδω-μι 'give'	διδω- δο-	δώσ-ω	ἔδω-κα ἔδό-μεν (mid.)	δέδωκ-α	ἔδόθ-ην
δρά-ω 'do, act'	δρασ-	δράσ-ω	ἔδρασ-α	δέδρακ-α	ἔδράσθ-ην
δύνα-μαι 'be able'	δυνα- δυνηθ-	δυνήσ-ομαι		δεδύνη-μαι	ἔδυνήθ-ην 'I was able'
εἰά-ω 'allow'	εἰασ-	εἰάσ-ω	εἶασ-α	εἶακ-α	εἶάθ-ην
ἐγείρ-ω 'arouse'	ἐγειρ-	ἐγερé-ω	ἤγειρ-α	ἐγρήγορ-α 'I am awake'	ἤγέρθ-ην
ἐθελ-ω 'wish'	ἐθειησ-	ἐθειήσ-ω	ἤθειησ-α	ἤθειηκ-α	

<i>V</i> erb	Main stem (no aux.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
εἶμι 'be'	ὄντ- εἰ-	ἔσ-ομαι	ἦ(ν) (impf.)		
εἶμι 'shall go'	ἰ-	εἶμι	ἦα (impf.)		
ἐκπλήττω 'terrify'	ἐκπληξ-	ἐκπλήξ-ω	ἐξέπληξ-α	ἐκπέπληγ-μαι (pass.)	ἐξεπλάγ-ην
ἐλαύνω 'drive'	ἐλασ- ἐλα-	ἐλά-ω	ἤλασ-α	ἐλήλακ-α	ἤλάβ-ην
ἔλκω 'drag'	ἔλκυσ-	ἔλξ-ω ἐλκύσ-ω	εἶλκυσ-α	εἰλκυκ-α	εἰλκύσθ-ην
ἐλπίζω 'hope, expect'	ἐλπισ-	ἐλπιέ-ω	ἤλπισ-α		
ἐπίσταμαι 'know, understand'	ἐπιστα- η-	ἐπιστήσ-ομαι			ἠπιστήθ-ην 'I knew'
ἑπ-ομαι 'follow'	σπ-	ἑψ-ομαι	ἑσπ-όμην		
ἐργάζομαι 'work' (pass. 'be made')	ἐργασ-	ἐργάσ-ομαι	εἰργασά-μην	εἰργασ-μαι	εἰργάσθ-ην
ἔρχομαι 'go'	ἔλθ-	ἐλεύσ-ομαι εἶμι	ἦλθ-ον	ἐλήλυθ-α	
ἐρωτάω 'ask'	ἐρ- ἐρωτησ-	ἐρήσ-ομαι ἐρωτήσ-ω	ἦρ-όμην ἠρώτησ-α	ἠρώτηκ-α	ἠρωτήθ-ην
ἐσθίω 'eat'	ἐδ- φαγ-	ἔδ-ομαι	ἔφαγ-ον	ἔδηδοκ-α	ἠδέσθ-ην
εὐρίσκω 'find'	εὐρ-	εὐρήσ-ω	ἠῦρ-ον	ἠῦρηκ-α	ἠῦρέθ-ην
ἔχω 'have, hold'	σχ-	ἔξ-ω σχήσ-ω	ἔσχ-ον	ἔσχηκ-α	ἔσχέθ-ην
ζάω 'live'	ζήσ- ζω-	ζήσ-ω	ἔζων ἔζην } (impf.)		
ἡδ-ομαι 'be pleased, enjoy'	ἡσθ-	ἡσθήσομαι			ἡσθ-ην 'I enjoyed'
-ἡμαι(καθ-) 'be seated'	ἡμ-		ἡμην·ἐκαθήμην		
ἡμί 'say'	-----		ἦν δ' ἐγώ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἦ 'I said' 'he said'	-----	-----
θάπτω 'bury'	θαψ-	θάψ-ω	ἔθαψ-α	τέθαμ-μαι (pass.)	ἐτάφ-ην
-θνήσκω(ἀπο) 'die'	θαν-	θανέ-ομαι	ἔθαν-ον	τέθνηκ-α	
ἔημι 'shoot, let go, send'	ἔε- εἰ-	ἦσ-ω	ἦ-κα	εἶκ-α	εἶθ-ην
ἵστημι 'set up' (mid. 'stand')	στησ- στα- στη-	στήσ-ω	ἕστησ-α	ἕστηκ-α (mid.)	ἕστάθ-ην
καίω 'burn'	καυσ-	καύσ-ω	ἕκαυσ-α	κέκαυκ-α	ἐκαύθ-ην

Verb	Main stem (no aug.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
καλέ-ω 'call'	καλεσ-, κληθ-	καλέ-ω	ἐκάλεσ-α	κέκληκ-α	ἐκλήθ-ην
κάμν-ω 'toil'	καμ-	καμέ-ομαι	ἔκαμ-ον	κέκμηκ-α	
κεῖ-μαι 'lie, be placed'	κει-	κεῖσ-ομαι	ἐκεῖ-μην (impf.)		
κλαί-ω 'weep'	κλαυσ-	κλαύσ-ομαι	ἔκλαυσ-α	κέκλαυ(σ)-μαι (pass.)	ἐκλαύσθ-ην
κλέπτ-ω 'steal'	κλεψ-	κλέψ-ω	ἔκλεψ-α	κέκλοφ-α	ἐκλάπ-ην
κλίν-ω 'cause to lean' (pass. 'lean, lie')	κλιν- κλιθ-	κλινέ-ω	ἔκλιν-α	κέκλι-μαι	ἐκλίθ-ην } ἐκλίν-ην }
κόπτ-ω 'hit'	κοψ- κοπ-	κόψ-ω	ἔκοψ-α	κέκοφ-α	ἐκόπ-ην
κρίν-ω 'judge'	κριν(α)- κριθ-	κρινέ-ω	ἔκριν-α	κέκρικ-α	ἐκρίθ-ην
κτά-ομαι 'gain'	κτη-	κτήσ-ομαι	ἐκτησά-μην	κέκτη-μαι	ἐκτήθ-ην
κτείν-ω(ἀπο) 'kill'	(ἀπο)κτειν- κταν-	(ἀπο)κτενέ-ω	(ἀπ)έκτειν-α (ἀπ)έκταν-ον	(ἀπ)έκτον-α	
λαγχάν-ω 'obtain by lot'	λαχ-	λήξ-ομαι	ἔλαχ-ον	εἴληχ-α	ἐλήχθ-ην
λαμβάν-ω 'take'	λαβ-	λήψ-ομαι	ἔλαβ-ον	εἴληφ-α	ἐλήφθ-ην
λανθάν-ω 'escape notice of' (mid. 'forget')	λαθ-	λήσ-ω	ἔλαβ-ον	λέληθ-α	
λέγ-ω 'say'	λεξ- εἶπ- ἔρ-	λέξ-ω } ἔρέ-ω }	ἔλεξ-α } εἶπ-ον }	εἶρηκ-α	ἐλέχθ-ην
λείπ-ω 'leave'	λιπ-	λείψ-ω	ἔλιπ-ον	λέλοιπ-α	ἐλείφθ-ην 'I have left/have failed'
μανθάν-ω 'learn'	μαθ-	μαθήσ-ομαι	ἔμαθ-ον	μεμάθηκ-α	
μάχ-ομαι 'fight'	μαχεσ-	μαχέ(σ)-ομαι	ἔμαχεσ-άμην	μεμάχη-μαι	
μέλλ-ω 'intend'	μελλ(ησ)-	μελλήσ-ω	ἐμέλλησ-α		
μέλ-ει 'it concerns'	μελησ-	μελήσ-ει	ἐμέλησ-ε	μεμέλη-κε	
μέν-ω 'remain'	μειν-	μενέ-ω	ἔμειν-α	μεμένηκ-α	
μιμνήσκ-ω 'remind' (mid. 'remember')	μνησ(θ)-	μνήσ-ομαι	ἔμνησ-α	μέμνη-μαι (mid.)	ἐμνήσθ-ην (mid.)
νέμ-ω 'distribute'	νειμ-	νεμέ-ω	ἔνειμ-α	νενέμηκ-α	ἐνεμήθ-ην
νομίζ-ω 'think, consider'	νομισ-	νομιέ-ω	ἐνόμισ-α	νενόμικ-α	ἐνομίσθ-ην

Verb	Main stem (no aug.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
οἶδα 'know'	εἶδ-	εἶσ-ομαι	ἤδη (impf.)		
οἶ-ομαι 'think'	οἶη-	οἶήσ-ομαι	ᾤ-μην (impf.)		ὤηθ-ην 'I thought'
ὄλλυ-μι (ἀπ) 'destroy' (mid. 'perish')	ὄλεσ-/ὄλο-	ὀλέ-ω	ὄλεσ-α ὄλό-μην (mid.)	ὄλώλεκ-α ὄλωλ-α (mid.)	
ὄμνυ-μι 'swear'	ὄμοσ-	ὀμέ-ομαι	ὄμοσ-α	ὀμώμοκ-α	ὤμῶ(σ)θ-ην
ὄρά-ω 'see'	ἰδ-	ὄψ-ομαι	εἶδ-ον	εἶώρακ-α	ὤφθ-ην
ὄρну-μι 'raise' (mid. 'rise, rush')	ὄρσ-/ὄρμ-	ὄρσ-ω	ὄρσ-α ὄρό-μην (mid.)	ὄρωρ-α (mid.)	
ὀφείλ-ω 'owe'	ὀφε(ι)λ-	ὀφειλήσ-ω	ὀφείλησ-α ὀφελ-ον ('would that')		
ὀφλισκάν-ω 'incur charge of'	ὀφλ-	ὀφλήσ-ω	ὀφλ-ον	ὀφληκ-α	
πάσχ-ω 'experience, suffer'	παθ-	πέισ-ομαι	ἔπαθ-ον	πέπονθ-α	
πέμπ-ω 'send'	πεμψ-	πέμψ-ω	ἔπεμψ-α	πέπομφ-α	ἐπέμφθ-ην
πίν-ω 'drink'	πι-	πί-ομαι	ἔπι-ον	πέπωκ-α	ἐπόθ-ην
πίπτ-ω 'fall'	πεσ-	πεσέ-ομαι	ἔπεσ-ον	πέπτωκ-α	
πίμπλη-μι 'fill'	πλησ-	πλήσ-ω	ἔπλησ-α	πέπληκ-α	ἐπλήσθ-ην
πίμπρη-μι 'burn up'	πρησ-	πρήσ-ω	ἔπρησ-α	πέπρη-μαι (pass.)	ἐπρήσθ-ην
πλέ-ω 'sail'	πλευσ-	πλεύσ-ομαι	ἔπλευσ-α	πέπλευκ-α	ἐπλεύσθ-ην
πράττ-ω 'act, fare'	πραξ-/πραγ-	πράξ-ω	ἔπραξ-α	πέπραχ-α πέπραγ-α ('I have fared')	ἐπράχθ-ην
πυνθάν-ομαι 'hear, inquire'	πυθ-	πεύσ-ομαι	ἐπυθῶ-μην	πέπυσ-μαι	
πωλέ-ω 'sell'		πωλήσ-ω	ἄπεδό-μην	πέπρακ-α	ἐπράθ-ην
ῥήγνυ-μι 'break'	ῥηξ-	ῥήξ-ω	ἔρρηξ-α	ἔρρωγ-α 'I am broken'	ἔρράγ-ην
ρίπτ-ω 'throw'	ῥιψ-/ρίφ-	ρίψ-ω	ἔρριψ-α	ἔρριφ-α	ἔρριψ(θ)-ην
σκοπέ-ω (σκέπτ-ομαι) 'view'	σκεψ-	σκέψ-ομαι	ἔσκεψά-μην	ἔσκεμ-μαι	
σπένδ-ω 'pour a libation'	σπεισ-	σπείσ-ω	ἔσπεισ-α	ἔσπεισ-μαι	
στέλλ-ω 'send'	στειλ-	στελέ-ω	ἔστειλ-α	ἔσταλκ-α	ἔστάλ-ην

Verb	Main stem (no aug.)	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive
σώζ-ω 'save'	σωσ-	σώσ-ω	ἔσωσ-α	σέσωκ-α	ἑσώθ-ην
τέμν-ω 'cut'	τεμ-	τεμέ-ω	ἔτεμ-ον	τέτμηκ-α	ἐτμήθ-ην
τίθη-μι 'place, put, make'	τιθε- θε-	θήσ-ω	ἔθη-κα ἐθέ-μην (mid.)	τέθηκ-α	ἐτέθ-ην
τίκτ-ω 'bear'	τεκ-	τέξ-ω -ομαι	ἔτεκ-ον	τέτοκ-α	
τίν-ω 'pay'	τισ-ι τεισ-	τ(ε)ίσ-ω	ἔτ(ε)ισ-α	τέτ(ε)ικ-α	ἐτ(ε)ίσθ-ην
τιτρώσκ-ω 'wound'	τρωσ-	τρώσ-ω	ἔτρωσ-α	τέτρω-μαι (pass.)	ἐτρώθ-ην
τρέπ-ω 'turn'	τρεψ- τραπ-	τρέψ-ω	ἔτρεψ-α ἐτραπό-μην ('I was turned')	τέτροφ-α	ἐτρέφθ-ην } ἐτράπ-ην }
τρέφ-ω 'rear, nourish'	θρεψ-	θρεψ-ω	ἔθρεψ-α	τέτροφ-α	ἐθρέφθ-ην
τρέχ-ω 'run'	δραμ-	δραμέ-ομαι	ἔδραμ-ον	δεδράμηκ-α	
τυγχάν-ω 'happen, chance'	τυχ-	τεύξ-ομαι	ἔτυχ-ον	τετύχηκ-α } τέτευχ-α }	
τύπτ-ω 'strike'	τυπ-	τυπτήσ-ω	ἐτύπτησ-α		ἐτύπ-ην
ὑπισχνέ-ομαι 'promise'	ὑποσχ-	ὑποσχῆσ-ομαι	ὑπεσχό-μην	ὑπέσχη-μαι	
φαίν-ω 'reveal' (mid. 'appear, seem')	φαν-	φανέ-ω	ἔφην-α	πέφαγκ-α } πέφην-α (mid.) }	ἐφάν(θ)-ην
φέρ-ω 'bear, carry'	ἐνεγκ-	οἶσ-ω	ἤνεγκ-ον } ἤνεγκ-α }	ἐνήνοχ-α	ἤνέχθ-ην
φεύγ-ω 'flee, run off'	φυγ-	φεύξ-ομαι	ἔφυγ-ον	πέφευγ-α	
φημί 'say'	φα-	φήσ-ω	ἔφησ-α ἔφη-ν (impf.)		
φθάν-ω 'anticipate'	φθα(σ)-	φθήσ-ομαι	ἔφθασ-α } ἔφθη-ν }		
φθείρ-ω(δια) 'destroy, corrupt'	φθειρ- φθαρ-	φθερέ-ω	ἔφθειρ-α	ἔφθαρκ-α	ἐφθάρ-ην
φύ-ω 'produce' (mid. 'be, be naturally')	φυ-ιπεφυ(κ)-	φύσ-ω	ἔφυσ-α ἔφυσ-ν (mid.)	πέφυκ-α (mid.)	
χαίρ-ω 'rejoice, bid farewell'	χαρ-	χαιρήσ-ω		κεχάρηκ-α	ἐχάρ-ην 'I rejoiced'
χρά-ομαι 'use; consult oracle' (acc. 'give oracle')	χρησ(θ)-	χρήσ-ομαι	ἐχρησά-μην (ἐ)χρήν (impf.)	κέχρη-μαι	ἐχρήσθ-ην
χρή 'it is necessary'					
ἠνέ-ομαι 'buy'	ἠνε- πρια-	ἠνήσ-ομαι	ἐπριά-μην	ἑώνη-μαι 'I have bought I have been bought'	ἑωνήθ-ην

## ○ F. Prepositions

It is worth noting that prepositions were originally adverbs and so used in conjunction with verbs; e.g. *εἰς-φέρω*, *ἐκ-βάλλω*. The original meaning (where it is possible to determine it) is indicated in the first column. Observe how the original adverbial meaning is modified according to the case the preposition takes.

	<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Dative</i>
<i>ἀμφί</i> (‘around’)	‘about, near’ <i>ἀμφί δεῖλην</i> ‘about evening’ <i>οἱ ἀμφί Πλάτωνα</i> ‘those around Plato’, i.e. ‘followers of Plato’		
<i>ἀνά</i> (‘up’)	‘up, through, by’ <i>ἀνά τὸν ποταμὸν</i> ‘up the river’ <i>ἀνά τὸν πόλεμον</i> ‘through the war’ <i>ἀνά ἑκατόν</i> ‘by hundreds’		
<i>ἀντί</i> (‘against’)		‘instead of, for the sake of’ <i>ἀντί πολέμου</i> ‘instead of war’ <i>ἀντί ἀδελφοῦ</i> ‘for the sake of a brother’	
<i>ἀπό</i> (‘from’)		‘from’ <i>ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως</i> ‘from the city’	
<i>διά</i> (‘through’)	‘because of, through’ <i>διὰ τοῦτο</i> ‘because of this’	‘through’ (time, place) <i>διὰ νυκτός</i> ‘through the night’ <i>διὰ τῆς τραπέζης</i> ‘through the table’	
<i>εἰς/ές</i> (‘into’)	‘into, until, up to’ <i>εἰς Σικελίαν</i> ‘into Sicily’ <i>ές ἡῶ</i> ‘until dawn’ <i>εἰς ἑκατόν</i> ‘up to 100’	‘to the house of’ <i>εἰς Αἴδου</i> ‘to the house of Hades’	

	<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Dative</i>
ἐν (‘in’)		‘at the house of’ ἐν Κροίσου ‘In Croesus’ house’	‘in, in the power of’ ἐν Σπάρτῃ ‘in Sparta’ ἐν χειμῶνι ‘in winter’ ἐν ἐμοί ‘in my power’
ἐκ ἐξ (‘from out of’)		‘from’ ἐκ Σπάρτης ‘from Sparta’ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ‘from, with an eye on, present circumstances’	
ἐπί (‘at, on’)	‘at, against, over’  ἐπὶ βασιλέα ‘against, at the king’ ἐπὶ πέντε ἔτη ‘over five years’	‘on; in the time of; at’  ἐπὶ βωμοῦ ‘on the altar’ ἐπὶ ἐμοῦ ‘in my time’ ἐπὶ σχολῆς ‘at leisure’	‘on; for the purpose of, because of’ ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ ‘on the sea’ ἐπὶ δείπνῳ ‘for dinner’ ἐπὶ τούτοις ‘because of these things, on these conditions’
κατά (‘down’)	‘down, by; according to’ κατὰ τὸν πόταμον ‘down river’ κατὰ θάλατταν ‘by sea’ κατὰ τοὺς νόμους ‘according to the laws’	‘down from, beneath, against’ κατὰ τῆς πετρᾶς ‘down from the rock’ κατὰ χθονός ‘beneath the earth’ κατὰ ἐμοῦ ‘against me’	
μετά (‘among’)	‘for, after’ μετὰ χρύσον ‘for, after gold’ μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον ‘after the war’	‘with, in company with’ μετὰ τῶν φίλων ‘with his friends’	
παρά (‘alongside’)	‘to, throughout, against’ παρὰ τοὺς φίλους ‘to my friends’ (house) παρὰ τὸν ἐνιαύτου ‘throughout the year’ παρὰ τὸν νόμον ‘against the law’	‘from beside, from’ παρὰ τῶν νεῶν ‘from beside the ships’ παρὰ τῶν μαθητῶν ‘from the students’	‘with, near’ παρὰ ἡμῖν ‘with us, at our house’
περὶ (‘around, about’)	‘about, near’ περὶ τὸ τεῖχος ‘near the wall’ περὶ τούτου τὸν χρόνον ‘about this time’	‘concerning’ περὶ πατρός ‘concerning father’ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεῖσθαι ‘to value highly’	‘about, concerning’ δείσαντες περὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ ‘fearing for (concerning) the army’

	<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Dative</i>
<i>πρό</i> (‘before’)		‘in front of, before’ <i>πρό τῶν θυρῶν</i> ‘in front of the doors’ <i>πρό δείπνου</i> ‘before supper’	
<i>πρός</i> (‘to, at, by’)	‘towards; with a view to’ <i>πρός τὴν πόλιν</i> ‘towards the city’ <i>πρός τὰ παρόντα</i> ‘with a view to the present’	‘in name of; from; under the protection of; to the advantage of’ <i>πρός θεῶν</i> ‘in the name of the gods!’ <i>πρός Διός</i> ‘from Zeus’ or ‘under Zeus’ protection’ <i>πρός ἡμῶν</i> ‘to our advantage’	‘by, in addition to’  <i>πρός τῷ πυρί</i> ‘by the fire’ <i>πρός τούτῳ</i> ‘in addition to this’
<i>σύν</i> (‘with the help of’)			‘with the help of; in company with’ <i>σύν τοῖς θεοῖς</i> ‘with the help of the gods’ <i>σύν ἡμῖν</i> ‘with us’
<i>ὑπέρ</i> (‘over’)	‘over, exceeding’ <i>ὑπέρ τὴν θάλατταν</i> ‘over the sea’ <i>ὑπέρ δύναμιν</i> ‘beyond one’s power’	‘on behalf of; over’ <i>ὑπέρ τῆς πόλεως</i> ‘on behalf of the city’ <i>ὑπέρ τῆς κεφαλῆς</i> ‘over my head’	
<i>ὑπό</i> (‘under’)	‘up to and under, at’ <i>ὑπό τὰ τεῖχη</i> ‘under the walls’ <i>ὑπό νύκτα</i> ‘at night’	‘under, by’ <i>ὑπό τῆς γῆς</i> ‘under the earth’ <i>ὑπό τούτου τοῦ ἀνδρός</i> ‘by this man’	

## ○ G. Particles\*

### *General remarks*

1. Particles are short invariable words which
  - (i) connect an item of utterance to a preceding item, whether that item is uttered by the same speaker or by a different speaker (‘and’, ‘but’, ‘so . . .’ etc.)
  - (ii) qualify an item (‘even’, ‘also’, ‘anyway’, etc.)
  - (iii) ‘colour’ an item, expressing what is commonly expressed in spoken

\* This section was contributed by a member of the Advisory Panel (see *Reading Greek* (1981), p. xii).



English by volume and tone of voice ('he *told me!*', 'he told *me*', etc.) and in written by, e.g., italics, exclamation-marks, inverted commas, etc.

*ἄρα, ἦ, ἀλλά, καί*

2. Four particles – *ἄρα, ἦ, ἀλλά, καί* – normally come first in the sentence or part of the sentence to which they belong *ἄρα* and *ἦ* introduce questions, e.g.

*ἄρ' ἤκουσας;* 'Did you hear?'

*ἀλλὰ τίς σοι διηγείτο; ἦ αὐτὸς Σωκράτης;* 'But who told you? Socrates himself?'

3. *ἀλλά* 'but' and *καί* 'and' are widely used as in English, e.g.

*οὐχ ἡμεῖς ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι* 'not we, but they'

*ἀλλὰ τίς σοι διηγείτο;* 'but who told you?'

*ἡμεῖς καὶ ἐκεῖνοι* 'we and they'

*καὶ ταύτ' ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπήλθεν* 'and with that answer he went away'

4. *καί* may be repeated to give the sense 'both . . . and . . .', e.g.

*καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐζήτει καὶ ἐκεῖνους* 'he was looking both for us and for them'

5. *καί* is also used in the senses 'actually, also, even', etc., and where English raises the volume of the voice, e.g.

*ἐζήτουν καὶ ἐκεῖνον* 'I was looking for him too' (or ' . . . for him also', ' . . . also for him')

*ἐκεῖνον καὶ ἐζήτουν* 'I was (actually) *looking* for him'

*τί καὶ βούλεσθε;* 'What do you (actually) want?' (or, 'What is it that you *want?*)

*τὰ τοιαῦτα αἰσχρὸν καὶ λέγειν* 'it's disgraceful (even) to *speak* of things like that'

*οὐδὲν ἄν μοι μέλοι εἰ καὶ ἀποθάνοι* 'I wouldn't care (even) if he *did* die'

*δέ, γάρ, οὖν*

6. Most other particles are postpositives, i.e. they cannot come immediately after a pause, and usually come close after the word which does follow the pause. The three most important are *δέ, γάρ* and *οὖν*.

7. *δέ* is translatable by 'and', 'but', or not by anything, according to context; one might call it the 'basic connective' between sentences, e.g.

*τί δ' εἰ ἀποθάνοι;* 'But what if he were to die?'

*καθεύδει, ἐγὼ δ' ἀγρυπνῶ* 'he's asleep, and/but I'm awake'

*ἀκούσας δ' ἀπήλθεν* '(and) having heard it he went away'

8. When *δέ* is combined with a negative, the form *οὐδέ/μηδέ* is used if the preceding item is negative, but otherwise *οὐ/μή* follows *δέ*, e.g.

οὐ ταῦτ' εἶπον οὐδ' ἂν ἐπαινοίην 'that isn't what I said, nor would I commend it' (or '... and I wouldn't commend it')

ταῦτ' εἶπον, ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης οὐκ ἐπήνει 'that is what I said, but Socrates did not commend it'

9. οὐδέ/μηδέ is the opposite of καί in some of the senses of §5 above, e.g.

οὐδ' ἐκεῖνοι ἐζήτουν 'I wasn't looking for him either'

τί ἐρεῖς ἐὰν μηδ' ἀποκρίνηται; 'What will you say if he doesn't even answer?'

10. γάρ introduces the reason for the previous utterance ('for, because'), e.g.

ἔφευγεν' ἐδίωκον γάρ 'he ran away, for/because they were pursuing him'

11. In a response to a previous speaker γάρ is sometimes translatable as 'Why, ...', 'Yes, ...', 'No, ...', e.g.

τί γὰρ ἂν ποιοίη; 'Why, what would he do?'

πῶς γὰρ οὐ; 'Yes, of course' (or 'Yes, indeed'; lit., 'For how not?')

οὐ γὰρ μ' ἐῷσιν 'No, they don't let me'

12. οὖν is the converse of γάρ, introducing the consequence of the previous utterance ('therefore, so, then'), e.g.

ἐδίωκον ἔφευγεν οὖν 'they were pursuing him, so he ran away'

13. The consequential sense of οὖν is, however, sometimes very 'faded', so that it approximates to 'then' in the sense 'next', or to 'Well, ...' or 'So ...' in colloquial English narrative.

ἄρα, δῆτα, μὴν, τοίνυν

14. Other important particles with a connective sense are ἄρα, δῆτα, μὴν and τοίνυν.

15. ἄρα is often translatable as 'then' or 'so', especially (though not only) when the speaker perceives a conclusion to be drawn from a situation or preceding argument, or when he envisages a possibility, e.g.

οὐκ ἄρ' ἀγαθὸν ὁ πλοῦτος 'so wealth is not a blessing after all'

ἤκουσα αὐτῶν ὡς ἄρ' οὐδὲν ἔλαβεν 'I'm told by them that he didn't receive anything, it seems'

εἰ δ' ἄρα καὶ ἀδικεῖς ... 'but if by any chance you are in the wrong ...' (or '... if ... actually', 'if ... after all')

16. δῆτα is commonest in questions or negations responding to a previous speaker, e.g.

πῶς δῆτ' ἔπραξεν; 'So how did he manage?' (or, 'How did he manage, then?')

οὐ δῆτα 'No indeed!' (according to context, 'No, I won't!', 'No, he didn't!', etc.)

17. *μήν* is mostly found in combinations with other particles (see below), but note one independent usage with interrogatives and one with negatives, e.g.  
*(ἀλλά) τί μήν;* '(but) what, then(, if not that)?'

*οὔτε Καλλίας οὔτε Φιλίνος οὐ μήν οὐδέ Σωκράτης* 'neither Kallias nor Philinos nor, indeed, Socrates'

18. *τοίνυν* introduces an exposition or a stage in an exposition, like English 'Now, . . .', 'Well, now, . . .', 'Well, then, . . .'

## τε

19. *τε* is a peculiar particle in that it may either connect an item to what precedes or look forward to what follows (the former usage is not very common in prose), e.g.

*τέθνηκέ τε* 'and he is dead'

*ἐγώ τε καὶ σύ* '(both) I and you'

20. *οὔτε/μήτε* is used in pairs or series in the sense 'neither . . . nor . . .', 'not . . . or . . .', 'not . . ., nor . . ., nor . . .', e.g.

*οὔθ' ἡμᾶς εἶδες οὔτ' ἐκείνους* 'you didn't see us or them' (or 'you saw neither us nor them')

## γε, δῆ, μέν, τοι

21. The commonest particles of which the main function is to 'colour' the item with which they occur rather than to connect it with what precedes are *γε*, *δῆ*, *μέν* and *τοι*.

22. *γε* sometimes has a limiting sense, like 'anyway, at least, at any rate' in English, but is used in Greek far more than those expressions in English, e.g.

*ἐκεῖνόν γε ἐνίκησας* 'you defeated *him*' (implying 'even if you didn't defeat anyone else' or 'I don't know if you defeated anyone else')

23. *γε* is also common in responses to a previous speaker's utterance, especially to a question, e.g.

*τί σοι δοκεῖ ποιεῖν;* – 'What do you think he's doing?'

*μέμφεσθαί γε τῷ στρατηγῷ.* – 'Criticising the general.'

*ἔστι τις ἔνδον;* – 'Is anyone in?'

*οὔδεις γε.* – 'No, nobody.'

24. Thirdly, *γε* corresponds to an exclamation-mark with words which convey praise, blame or some other emotional reaction, e.g.

*ἄμαθής γ' εἶ* 'Why, you *are* stupid!'

*εὖ γε* 'Well done!'

25. *δῆ* is equivalent to an increased volume of voice on the preceding word, or to an emphatic gesture designed to sustain or revive the hearer's attention. It is used especially with quantitative words ('most', 'many', 'least', 'often', 'only',

etc.), with points of time (giving 'then' and 'now' a colouring of 'then at last' and 'just now'), and with expressions such as 'it is obvious' or 'now, consider . . .'. It is rarely translatable. There is one special usage in which it has the effect of showing that the word which it accompanies is quoted from someone else, or represents someone else's way of thinking, and this usually imparts a tone of scepticism or sarcasm.

26. *μέν* accompanies the first item of a pair, usually when there is a contrast, but when the word which it accompanies is repeated the effect may be cumulative rather than contrastive, e.g.

*οἱ μὲν Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἐπαινοῦσιν αὐτόν, τοῖς δὲ Θηβαίοις οὐκ ἀρέσκει*  
 'the Spartans praise him, but he doesn't please the Thebans'

*τὰ μὲν μάλ' ἀκριβῶς ἐργάζεται, τὰ δ' ἀμελεῖ* 'some things he produces  
 very carefully, but there are other respects in which he is careless'

*πολλοὶ μὲν ἀπέθανον, πολλοὶ δ' ἐζωγρήθησαν* 'many were killed and  
 many captured'

27. *τοι* expresses the speaker's feeling that the hearer's attitude or conduct ought to be affected by what is said: a threatening 'Let me tell you!', a firm but friendly 'do remember' or a gentle 'You *do* realise, don't you?' Sometimes, however, it conveys little more than 'Look, . . .', '. . ., you know, . . .', '. . ., you see, . . .' or 'after all' in English.

#### Particle combinations

28. A very large number of combinations of particles occur, and some of them are written as a single word: *γε + οὖν* as *γούν*, *καί + τοι* as *καίτοι* and *μέν + τοι* as *μέντοι*. *οὐ + τοι* is also written *οὔτοι*, and *οὐ + οὖν* as *οὔκουν* or *οὔκουν* (see §32 below).

29. *γούν* is an emphatic 'at least, at any rate'.

30. *καίτοι* is an emphatic 'and', sometimes implying 'and yet' (a contrast with what precedes) and sometimes 'and moreover' (the second premise of an argument from which a conclusion is going to be drawn).

31. *μέντοι* can function as a connective, meaning 'but, however', but also as emphasising a demonstrative or personal pronoun, e.g.

'*ἐγώ;*' – 'What, me?'

'*οὐ μέντοι.*' – 'Yes, you!'

32. When the sequence of letters *οικουν* occurs, the sense sometimes requires 'therefore . . . not' but sometimes 'therefore'. The latter sense can often be got by punctuating the utterance as a question, not as a statement (turning 'so he was not successful' into 'wasn't he successful, then?'), but ancient grammarians recognised a usage *οὔκουν* = *οὖν*, with *οὔκουν* (accented on the negative) = *οὐ + οὖν*.

33. In other combinations the second element is most commonly γάρ, γε, δῆ, μὴν or οὖν.

34. ἀλλά + γάρ may = ἀλλά, e.g.

βουλοίμην ἄν, ἀλλ' οὐ γὰρ οἶός τ' εἰμί 'I'd like to, but I can't'

35. In καί + γάρ, γάρ has its normal sense (§11) and καί as in §5.

36. καί + γε and δέ + γε, usually found in response to a previous speaker, correspond to 'Yes, and . . .' and 'Yes, but . . .' respectively.

37. γάρ δῆ and μὲν δῆ are not distinguishable in translation from γάρ and μὲν respectively, but καί δῆ imparts a lively tone, 'Look, . . .!', 'See, . . .!', sometimes 'And, what's more . . .'

38. καὶ μὴν is an emphatic 'and'; there is considerable overlap of meaning between καὶ δῆ and καὶ μὴν.

39. The combination μὲν οὖν, when it does not combine the usual senses of μὲν and οὖν (§§12f., 26) – as it very often does – has a special sense, in which the speaker corrects previous words of his own or of another speaker, e.g.

ὀψὲ λέγω; χθὲς μὲν οὖν καὶ πρόωην 'Did I say "lately"? Why, it was only the other day!' (lit., 'yesterday and the day before yesterday')  
(Demosthenes)

This correction often takes the form of suggesting that the previous speaker has not gone far enough, and thus expresses emphatic agreement, e.g.

'οὐ ταῦτά σοι δοκεῖ;' – 'Don't you think so?'  
'πάνυ μὲν οὖν.' – 'Very much so.' (or 'Yes, certainly!')

## ○ Η. ὡς (ὤς)

This word has a wide range of meanings, which are summarised here:

(i) = 'as, when, since, because' (+ind. or part.) e.g. ὡς ἀφίκετο, εἰσῆλθεν 'when he came, he entered'; ὡς ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ 'as it seems to me';

(ii) = 'how!' e.g. ὡς καλὰ τὰ δένδρα 'how fine are the trees!';

(iii) = 'that' e.g. ἔλεγεν ὡς 'he said that . . .' (cf. ὅτι);

(iv) = 'to, in order to' (+fut. part.), e.g. εἰσῆλθεν ὡς μαθησόμενος τὰ γένομενα 'he came in to learn what had happened';

(v) = 'to, in order to' (+subj./opt.), e.g. εἰσῆλθεν ὡς μάθοι τὰ γένομενα 'he came in to learn what had happened' (cf. ἵνα);

(vi) = 'as – as possible' (+superlatives), e.g. ὡς πλείστοι 'as many as possible';

(vii) = 'to' (+acc.), e.g. ἦλθεν ὡς Φιλόστρατον 'he came to Philostratos' (house)';

(viii) (as ὤς) = 'so, thus';

(ix) = 'so as to' (+inf.; see Reference Grammar J (iv)).

## ○ I. Participles

The main uses of the participle are as follows:

- (i) as an adjective, when it may best be translated by a relative clause, e.g.  
*ἀνὴρ καλῶς πεπαιδευμένος* 'a well-educated man', or 'a man who has been well educated'
- (ii) as a noun, when it is used with the definite article, e.g.  
*οἱ τρέχοντες* 'those who run, runners'
- (iii) to show the aspect of an action, e.g.  
*ταῦτ' ἐποίησε βασιλεύων* 'he did this *when he was basileus*'
- (iv) to denote cause, e.g.  
*ταῦτ' ἐποίησε βουλόμενος νικῆσαι* 'he did this *because he wished to win*'  
 (n.b. *ὡς* and *ἄτε* are often attached to these usages)
- (v) to denote purpose (usually + future participle), e.g.  
*ταῦτ' ἐποίησε (ὡς) νικήσων* 'he did this *to win*'
- (vi) conditionally, e.g.  
*νικήσας ἀπέφυγεν ἂν* 'winning (i.e. *if he had won*) he would have escaped'  
 (n.b. negative is *μή* when such participles are conditional)
- (vii) concessively, when they mean 'although', and are often used with *καίπερ*, e.g.  
*(καίπερ) δυνάμενοι φυγεῖν, ἐμείναμεν* 'being able (i.e. *although we were able*) to escape, we stayed'

### Note

In all the above cases, the participle and its noun go into the genitive when the clause which they form plays no other part in the sentence, e.g.

*τῶν πολεμίων ἀπελθόντων, οἱ στρατιῶται ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο* 'when the enemy departed, the soldiers pitched camp'

- (viii) Observe the following idioms:

*φθάσας* 'sooner' ('anticipating')

*λαθῶν* 'secretly' ('escaping notice')

*κλαίων* 'to one's regret' ('weeping')

*ἔχων, φέρων, ἄγων, λαβῶν, χρώμενος* 'with'

*τί παθῶν . . .*; 'what has one experienced to . . .? what has made one . . .?' (lit. 'suffering what?')

- (ix) A number of verbs take a participle to complete their meaning. Among these are:

*τυγχάνω* 'happen, chance, actually to'; e.g. *ἔτυχε φυγῶν* 'he actually did escape'

λανθάνω 'escape the notice of'; e.g. ἔλαθέ με φυγῶν 'I did not see him escaping'

φθάνω 'anticipate, do something first'; e.g. φθάνω σε φεύγων 'I escape before you'

φαίνομαι 'seem, appear'; e.g. φαίνονται φεύγοντες 'they seem to be in flight (and are)'

δηλός|φανερός εἶμι 'be obviously, openly'; e.g. δηλός ἐστι φεύγων 'he is obviously running away'

(x) In indirect speech; see Reference Grammar K (iii).

## ○ J. Infinitives

The main uses of the infinitive are as follows:

(i) to express the English 'to -' in certain contexts controlled by verbs, e.g.

ἀγαθόν ἐστι μάχεσθαι 'it is good to fight' (where 'fight' is the subject of the sentence)

βούλομαι μάχεσθαι 'I wish to fight' (where 'fight' is the object of 'wish')

κελεύομεν σε μένειν 'we order you to stay'

ἐκώλυεν αὐτοὺς ἐλθεῖν 'he prevented them from going'

οὐ πέφυκε δουλεύειν 'he is not born to be a slave'

ὦρα ἐστὶν ἀπιέναι 'it is time to depart'

δεῖ } ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν 'it is necessary for us to go'  
 χρῆ }

ἔξεστι μοι λέγειν 'it is permitted for me to speak'

δοκεῖ εἶναι σοφός 'he seems to be wise'

φαίνεται ἀγαθὸς εἶναι 'he appears to be good' (but isn't)

(ii) in certain constructions with adjectives, e.g.

δεινὸς λέγειν 'clever at speaking'

δυνατὸς ποιεῖν τούτο 'able to do this'

ἐπιστήμων λέγειν καὶ σιγᾶν 'knowing how to speak and be silent'

(iii) to limit the extent of application of a word, e.g.

λόγοι χρησιμοὶ ἀκοῦσαι 'words useful to hear'

πράγμα χαλεπὸν ποιεῖν 'an action difficult to do'

θαῦμα ἰδέσθαι 'a wonder to behold'

(iv) in certain parenthetical phrases (usually with ὡς|ὅσον), e.g.

ὡς εἰπεῖν 'so to speak'

ὡς ἀπεικάσαι 'to make a guess'

ὀλίγου δεῖν 'almost' (lit. 'to want a little')

(v) as an imperative, e.g.

μὴ ἥπιος εἶναι 'Don't be soft!'

(vi) with the definite article, standing as a noun, e.g.

τοῦτό ἐστι τὸ ἀδικεῖν 'this is injustice'

διὰ τὸ ξένος εἶναι 'because of his alienness'

τοῦ πιεῖν ἐπιθυμία 'desire for drink'

τῷ μάχεσθαι 'by fighting'

(vii) note the number of possibilities with verbs of prevention or hindrance:

εἴργει σε τοῦτο ποιεῖν

εἴργει σε τοῦ τοῦτο ποιεῖν

εἴργει σε μὴ τοῦτο ποιεῖν

εἴργει σε τοῦ μὴ τοῦτο ποιεῖν

'he prevents you from doing this'

(N.b. τὸ μὴ is quite common in expressions implying hindrance, prevention, denial.)

(viii) in indirect speech: see this Reference Grammar K (iii).

#### Note

The negative with an infinitive is nearly always μὴ.

#### Impersonal verbs

These verbs have only 3rd s. forms in finite tenses, an accusative s. n. participle, and a regular infinitive (e.g.

δεῖ, δεήσει, ἔδει, δεόν; δεῖν and ἔξεστι, ἔξεσται, ἐξήν; ἐξόν; ἐξεῖναι)

The subjects of such verbs appear in the accusative or dative; and the verb which follows the impersonal goes into the infinitive, e.g.

ἔξεστί μοι ἐλθεῖν 'it is possible for me to go'

δεόν με ἐλθεῖν 'it being necessary for me to go'

νομίζω ἐξεῖναι αὐτῷ ἐλθεῖν 'I think that he is permitted to go'

The most common impersonal verbs are:

δεῖ + acc. and inf. 'must, ought'

χρή " " 'must, ought'

ἔξεστι + dat. and inf. 'it is permitted, possible'

πρέπει " " 'it is proper'

προσῆκει " " 'it is appropriate'

δοκεῖ " " 'it seems best'

συμβαίνει " " 'it happens'

} these also appear in regular forms and  
are not restricted to impersonal use only

#### Result clauses

These express the idea 'so that' or 'so . . . that' and indicate the result of an action. The 'that' clause is expressed in Greek by ὥστε, which can take either an infinitive (change of subject in the accusative) or an indicative. The infinitive



usage is best translated 'as to', but the difference between the two is often marginal, e.g.

οὕτως ἀνόητός ἐστιν ὥστε ἐπιλανθάνεται τῶν βιβλίων  
 'he is so foolish that he forgets his books'

ὥστε ἐπιλανθάνεσθαι τῶν βιβλίων  
 'he is so foolish as to forget his books'.

These clauses are usually set up by οὕτως 'so', or by a word such as τοσοῦτος, τόσος ('so great', 'so many'), τοίος ('of such a kind').

## ○ K. Indirect speech

One can distinguish between three basic types of utterance – statements, questions, and commands (i.e. orders). These can be quoted directly (when, as a rule, inverted commas will be used; e.g. he said, 'What shall I do? I shall go . . .'), or indirectly (e.g. he wondered what to do, and decided that he would go . . .). In Greek, indirect questions and orders are expressed in largely the same way as English; so too are those indirect statements introduced by the Greek ὅτι 'that', but there are a number of verbs which use different methods of expressing indirect statements.

### (i) Verbs taking ὅτι (ὡς), and indirect questions

Verbs taking ὅτι, and indirect questions, quote what was originally said, only changing the person, e.g.

ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἀφίξεται 'he said that he would come'

The original statement was 'I shall come'. Changing the person only, Greek writes 'he said that *he shall come*'; this converts to the English form 'he said that he would come'.

ἤρετο ὅποι Σωκράτης βαίνει 'he asked where Socrates was going'

The original question was 'Where is Socrates going?' This becomes indirectly 'he asked where Socrates *is going*' (no need to change persons here); English changes this to 'he asked where Socrates was going'.

Note that, in *secondary* sequence, verbs in such clauses can be turned into the *optative* without affecting the meaning, e.g.

ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἀφίξοιτο } 'he said that he would come'  
 ἀφίξεται }

### (ii) Indirect orders

Indirect orders are expressed as in English, i.e. by the use of the infinitive, e.g.

κελεύω σε ἀπιέναι 'I order you to depart'

*Accusative + infinitive or participle*

More difficult are those cases in which a 'that' clause is expressed in Greek not by *ὅτι* 'that', but by putting the verb of the 'that' clause into an infinitive form (cf. Latin accusative and infinitive) or a participle form. There is an English parallel for the infinitive usage here; e.g. 'he knows that I am wise', or 'he knows *me to be* wise'. In these cases, the infinitive will show the time at which the action took place by its tense, e.g.

ἔφη με ἐλθεῖν 'he said that I had gone' (orig. 'you went')

ἔφη με ἰέναι 'he said that I was going' (orig. 'you are going')

ἔφη με ἀφίξεσθαι 'he said that I would come' (orig. 'you will come')

Some verbs take a participle in the 'that' clause rather than an infinitive, e.g.

οἶδα σε μῶρον ὄντα 'I know that you are stupid'

ἐπύθετο Νέαιραν ἀφιζομένην Ἀθήναζε 'he learnt that Neaira would come to Athens'

N.b. all the above examples have put the subject of the 'that' clause into the accusative. Where the subject of the 'that' clause is the *same* as that of the main verb, no subject in the 'that' clause will be stated; or if it is, it will be in the nominative, e.g.

ἔφη ἐλθεῖν 'he said he had gone' (both 'he's are the *same* person)

ἔφη αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν 'he said that he had gone' (the 'he's are *different* people)

Indirect speech is *very common* in Greek; and it is very likely suddenly to emerge in a quite unexpected context. WATCH OUT FOR THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE/PARTICIPLE CONSTRUCTION ALL THE TIME. When you come across it, begin your translation with the English 'that . . .' – this will remind you that you are in indirect speech.

*(iii) Verbs taking infinitives and participles*

The following verbs generally take the **infinitive** in indirect speech:

φημί 'say that . . .'

οἶμαι

νομίζω

ἠγέομαι

δοκέω

'believe, think that . . .'

ὑπισχνέομαι 'promise to'

ἐλπίζω 'hope to'

Cf. γιγνώσκω 'determine how to, recognise how to'

μανθάνω 'learn how to'

οἶδα

ἐπίσταμαι

'know how to'

The following generally take the participle:

- ἀκούω 'hear that ...'
- πυνθάνομαι 'ascertain that ...'
- αἰσθάνομαι 'perceive that ...'
- οἶδα 'know that ...'
- γινώσκω 'ascertain that ...'
- ἀγγέλλω 'announce that ...'
- μανθάνω 'learn that ...'

Note the distinction between φαίνομαι, δῆλος, φανερός + participle (which all mean 'it seems to be the case that', with the strong implication that it really *is* the case), and φαίνομαι, δῆλος, φανερός + infinitive (where the implication is that what seems to be the case is not really the case).

## ○ L. Temporal clauses

### *Definite temporal clauses*

'Definite' temporal clauses express the time at which an event took place; the verb goes into the indicative, e.g.

- ἕως ἔμενε, ἀπήλθομεν 'while he waited, we left'
- ἐπεὶ ἐδίωξαν, ἀπέφυγον οἱ πολέμοιοι 'when they pursued, the enemy fled'

ἐμείναμεν ἕως ἐκέλευε ἡμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν 'we waited until he told us to go'

πρὶν 'before' takes an infinitive (change of subject in the accusative), e.g.

- πρὶν ἀπελθεῖν, εὐξάτο 'before departing, he offered up a prayer'
- πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν, εὐξάτο 'before we departed, he offered up a prayer'

### *Indefinite temporal clauses*

'Indefinite' temporal clauses express the idea of generality (i.e. not 'when', but 'whenever'), or of uncertainty about the actual completion of the event, which is made to seem to lie in some indefinite future. In these cases, the verbs in the temporal clause go into the subjunctive + ἄν in primary sequence, or the optative in secondary sequence, e.g.

- ἐξίασιν ὅταν βούλωνται 'they go out whenever they wish'
- ἐξῆλθον ὅτε βούλοιντο 'they went out whenever they wished'
- ἐμείναμεν ἕως κελεύοι ἡμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν 'we waited until such time as he should tell us to leave'
- μὴ λέγε τοῦτο πρὶν ἂν μάθῃς τὰ γενόμενα 'do not say this before/until you learn what has happened'

Observe that the rules for 'definite' or 'indefinite' utterance apply equally to relative clauses, e.g.

ὅστις ἂν τοῦτο ποιῇ, ἀνόητός ἐστιν 'whoever does this is stupid'  
 ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν ἄγεσθαι ἰατρὸν ὃν βούλοιο 'he ordered him to bring a  
 doctor, whomsoever he wished/he ordered him to bring whichever  
 doctor he wanted'

#### Note

It must be said that Greek is, as usual, flexible in its usages on this point: sometimes one finds the subjunctive where one would expect the optative, and sometimes ἂν drops out.

## ○ M. Purpose clauses and verbs of fearing

### Purpose Clauses

A purpose clause indicates an intention in the mind of the speaker, and is often expressed by the English 'in order to', or simply 'to', e.g. 'he has come here *in order to insult us*', or 'To cross the railway, passengers are asked to use the bridge.'

Perhaps because an intention is expressed of which the fulfilment is quite uncertain Greek uses a quasi-indefinite construction in one instance, i.e. ἵνα + subjunctive in primary sequence (no ἂν) and optative in secondary, e.g.

ἀφικνείται ἵνα ἡμᾶς πείθῃ 'he is coming to persuade us'

ἀφίκετο ἵνα ἡμᾶς πείθοι 'he came to persuade us'

But Greek also expresses the idea of purpose in two other common ways, i.e.

(i) ὥς + future participle (lit. 'as intending to'), e.g.

ἀφικνείται ὥς ἡμᾶς πείσων 'he is coming to persuade us'

(ii) ὅς + future indicative (lit. 'who will/intends to -')

ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀφικνείται ὅς ἡμᾶς πείσει 'the man is coming to persuade us'

(lit. 'who will persuade us')

#### Notes

(i) ὅπως, ὥς can be used in place of ἵνα.

(ii) When ἵνα takes an indicative, it means 'where'.

### Verbs of fearing

Fearing in case something may happen *in the future* attracts the same sort of construction as purpose clauses, i.e. subjunctive in primary sequence, optative in secondary, e.g.

φοβοῦμαι μὴ Σωκράτης ἔλθῃ 'I am afraid that/lest Socrates may/will come'

ἐφοβήθην μὴ Σωκράτης ἔλθοι 'I was afraid that/lest Socrates might/would come'

But if the fear is expressed for something that has happened already, the simple indicative is used, e.g.

φοβοῦμεθα μὴ ἔπεισεν ἡμᾶς 'we are afraid that he persuaded us'

---

## ○ N. Polite (potential) ἄν

---

ἄν with the optative expresses a future action as dependent on circumstances or conditions, and is best translated by the English 'may, might, could, would, can, would like to', or 'possibly, perhaps'. But there are times when it is very difficult to differentiate between this 'potential' use and the straight future 'will, shall'; e.g.

λέγεις ἄν μοι 'can you tell me?/would you tell me?/tell me!/would you like to tell me?/will you tell me?'

δὲς ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ ἄν ἐμβαίης 'you could not/would not/cannot step twice into the same river'

---

## ○ O. Conditionals

---

Conditional sentences (i.e. sentences with an 'if' clause) should be translated by some form of English 'would' or 'should' when they show ἄν in the main clause, as follows:

(i) optatives in the 'if' clause (called the 'protasis') and the main clause (called 'apodosis', or 'pay-off'), with ἄν in the apodosis too, make the condition refer to the FUTURE, and should be translated 'if . . . were to, . . . would', e.g.

εἰ κελεύεις, πειθοίμην ἄν 'if you were to order, I would obey'

(ii) imperfects in the protasis and apodosis, with ἄν in the apodosis, should be translated 'if . . . were (now), . . . would' (as referring to the present), e.g.

εἷ με ἐκέλευες, ἐπειθόμην ἄν 'if you were (now) ordering me, I would obey'

(iii) aorists in the protasis and apodosis, with ἄν in the apodosis, should be translated 'if . . . had, . . . would have' (as referring to the past), e.g.

εἷ με ἐκέλευσας, ἐπιθόμην ἄν 'if you had ordered me, I would have obeyed'

## Notes

(i) These conditions can be mixed. Greek will then treat each clause on its merits. E.g.

εἴ με ἐκέλευσας, ἐπειθόμην ἄν. 'If you had ordered me, I would (now) be obeying.'

(ii) When there is no ἄν, translate normally without 'would/should', e.g.

εἰ ἁμαρτάνεις, μῶρος εἶ 'if you make a mistake, you are a fool'.

(iii) Observe that when a non-'would/should' refers to future time, Greek will treat the 'if' clause as an indefinite clause (since there can be little certainty about the outcome of a future conditional event) and use ἔάν with subjunctive, e.g.

ἔάν με πείθῃς, οὐκ ἄπειμι 'if you (will) persuade me, I shall not go away'.

## ○ P. Wishes

Wishes for the future in Greek are expressed by the optative (e.g. ἀπολοίμην 'may I perish!'), or by εἴθε/εἰ γάρ/εἰ + optative (e.g. εἰ γὰρ πείθοιμι τὸν ἄνδρα 'if only I could persuade the man!').

Unattained wishes for the present or past use the imperfect or aorist indicative (cf. unfulfilled conditions, which they closely resemble), e.g.

εἴθε τοῦτο ἐποίει 'if only he were doing this!'

εἰ γὰρ τοῦτο ἐποίησε 'if only he had done this!'

Alternatively, they can be expressed by using a form of ὄφελον + infinitive, e.g.

(εἴθε) ὄφελον ποιεῖν τοῦτο 'would that I were doing this!'

(εἰ γὰρ) ὄφελε ποιῆσαι τοῦτο 'would that I had done this!'

Observe the difference to the tense which the infinitive makes here.

N.b. ἄν is NEVER used with wishes.

## ○ Q. Commands (orders)

Greek uses one set of forms for 2nd person imperatives ('Do this!' 'Do that!') and another for 3rd person orders ('Let him/them do this!') and another for 1st person commands ('Let us do this!'). The 2nd and 3rd person forms appear under the imperative forms in the verb tables.

The distinction between orders using the aorist form and the present form is one of aspect – the aorist form suggests the order applies to a particular instance, the present to a continued or repeated occurrence (cf. 'Pick up that book!' and 'Pick up all the litter!'). But when the order is negative ('Don't do that!' 'Let him

not do that!') Greek uses μή + aorist *subjunctive* to express the *aorist aspect*, NOT μή + aorist imperative, e.g.

μή ποιήσης τοῦτο 'don't do this (once)'

μή ποίει τοῦτο 'don't do this (at all, ever)'

Observe also that the subjunctive is used after certain words to express an order or a quasi-order, e.g.

φέρε ποιήσω τοῦτο 'come, let me do this'

βούλει ποιήσω τοῦτο 'do you wish I should do this?'

ποιήσω here is aor. subj., NOT future.

The subjunctive is used to express the idea 'let us . . .', e.g.

ἴωμεν 'let us go'

## ○ R. Deliberatives

When a first-person question appears in the subjunctive, it carries the idea '(What) *am I to* . . .?', e.g.

ποῖ τράπωμαι; 'Where *am I to* turn?'

τί γένωμαι; 'What *is to* become of me?' (lit. 'What *am I to* become?')

If such a 'deliberation' occurs in past time, Greek uses ἔδει + infinitive, i.e. 'what ought I to have . . .?', e.g.

ποῖ ἔδει με τραπέσθαι; 'Where *was I to* turn?' (lit. 'Where ought I to have turned?')

If a deliberation in the subjunctive is reported, in *secondary* sequence, it will turn into the optative, e.g.

ἤρετο με ποῖ τράποιτο 'he asked me where he *was to* turn to'.

## C *Language surveys\**

---

### ○ Language Survey (1): a brief history of the Greek language

---

Greek belongs to the great family of Indo-European languages, which includes English and most modern European languages as well as Persian and the languages of north India. It has the longest recorded history of any of them, running from the fourteenth century down to the present day. Its apparent similarity to Latin is due, not to any specially close relationship, but to the fact that both languages are recorded at an early date; in some ways, Greek is also close to the ancient language of India, Sanskrit.

The earliest record of the Greek language is contained in the clay tablets written in the Linear B syllabic script in the Mycenaean palaces of Knossos and the mainland (fourteenth to thirteenth centuries). This represents an archaic form of the language, but demonstrates firmly that Greek had developed as a separate language well before this date. The alphabet was introduced from Phoenicia, probably in the early eighth century, and although the shape of the letters and the pronunciation has changed, this script has been in use ever since. The two great poems of Homer were probably composed during this century, but their written form is a modernisation of Hellenistic (third century) date. The earliest inscriptions are mostly brief records of names, but before the end of the eighth century someone had scratched on a vase at Athens a line and a bit of verse, given here in modernised spelling:

*ὅς νῦν ὀρχηστῶν πάντων ἀταλώτατα παίζει,  
τοῦ τόδε . . .*

\* These surveys were contributed by members of the Advisory Panel, as indicated in *Reading Greek (text)*, p. xii.



'Who now of all the dancers sports most delicately,  
this is his . . .'

The early inscriptions show that down to the end of the fourth century every Greek city had its own dialect and often its own peculiar form of alphabet. We can group the dialects into four main types:

(i) West Greek, or Doric, the type spoken by most of Athens' enemies in the Peloponnesian War; it was used in literature for choral lyric poetry

(ii) Arcadian and Cypriot, without any literary use

(iii) Aeolic, spoken in Thessaly, Boiotia and Lesbos; the personal lyric poetry of Sappho and Alkaios (c. 600) is in a form of Lesbian.

(iv) Ionic, spoken in the central and east Aegean, used by Homer and all epic poets, and also by Herodotus; together with Attic, the speech of Athens, which is the first dialect you will meet in learning Greek. The amount and quality of Attic Greek vastly outweighs the surviving Greek of other dialects.

Attic Greek was used in modified form by Thucydides and the tragedians, and in its purer form by Aristophanes, Plato and the orators. But in the third century it yielded to another slight modification, which became the standard language of Hellenistic Greece and most of the eastern part of the ancient world; this was called *ἡ κοινὴ διάλεκτος* 'the common speech'. Its grammar and syntax changed little for over a thousand years, though there was some development in vocabulary; but the pronunciation underwent major changes, while retaining the old spellings. Thus a knowledge of Attic will not only enable you to read Athenian literature; it supplies a key to the other dialects used in literature and to the whole of later Greek literature.

After the fall of Constantinople to the Turks in A.D. 1453, Greek was still maintained as the language of the Orthodox Church, and continued to be spoken widely. With the liberation of Greece in the early nineteenth century attempts were made to revive the old language for official purposes, and Greeks today still respect ancient forms as 'more correct' than those they use colloquially. Despite its many changes, modern Greek is much closer to ancient Greek than Italian is to Latin. The difference in pronunciation will prevent you from understanding the spoken language, but many public notices will be intelligible, and there is a real sense of continuity in the modern language.

For example, some of the signs to be seen on shops and offices in Greece today will be easily understood, such as *παιτοπωλεῖον* 'General store' (i.e. where everything is sold), or *Ἐθνικὴ Τράπεζα τῆς Ἑλλάδος* 'National Bank of Greece' (*τράπεζα* 'table' had already in antiquity acquired the sense of 'bank'). A notice sometimes to be seen in parks or woodland reads

ΑΓΑΠΗΤΕ ΤΑ ΔΕΝΔΡΑ 'Be kind to the trees'

Words found on Mycenaean documents (the earliest Greek we know, dateable

to c. 1400) but still in use today with only slight change of pronunciation include:

ἔχω 'I have'  
θεός 'god'  
μέλι 'honey'  
παλαιός 'old'

---

## ○ Language Survey (2): active, middle and passive

---

Grammarians traditionally use the term 'voice' to describe those verb-forms of which the basic function is to signal the relationship between the subject and the action denoted by the verb. Thus many languages, Greek included, have an *active* voice, used when the subject is doing the action (e.g. 'Dikaiopolis goes to the agora', 'Neaira hates Phrastor', 'Socrates deceived the young'); and a *passive* voice, used when the subject is having something done to it ('Phrastor was hated by Neaira', 'the young were deceived by Socrates').

In addition to these, Greek also has a so-called *middle* voice. It has a variety of meanings, but the most important is that of doing something *for oneself*. Thus *αἰρεῖν* means 'to take, capture'; its middle *αἰρεῖσθαι* means 'to take for oneself, to choose'. Again, *προσάγω* means 'to bring x up to y', but *προσάγεσθαι* means 'to bring x to oneself, to win x over to one's own side'. The act of engaging in a lawsuit is *δικάζειν* (active), seen from the point of view of the judges, but *δικάζεσθαι* (middle) from that of the litigants, who are in it for their own benefit. Consequently, the active forms mean 'give judgment', the middle forms mean 'go to law'.

The forms of the middle and passive are the same in the present, imperfect and perfect, but differ in the aorist and (usually) in the future. Many verbs occur only in the middle or only in the passive; others, such as *ἀκου-* 'hear', have an active form in the present (*ἀκούω* 'I hear'), but a middle form in the future (*ἀκούσομαι* 'I will hear'). Quite a number of middle verbs use the passive forms in the aorist (see 206).

---

## ○ Language Survey (3): aspect

---

The tenses of the Greek verb fall into four *systems*:

System (i): present, including imperfect

System (ii): future

System (iii): aorist

System (iv): perfect, including pluperfect and future perfect.

Each of these systems carries its own particular meaning and this applies to all moods in the system, including participle, imperative and infinitive.

Only one of these systems has an *exclusively* temporal force, and that is the future. Each of the three other systems *may* refer in time to either the present or the past. Observe that in Attic Greek, past time is normally marked by the presence of the augment, though this is optional in certain kinds of verse.

(i) *The present system*

This conveys what is known as the 'imperfective' aspect. This means that the system shows the action of the verb to be a continuing action, a process, e.g. *ποιεῖ* 'he is (in the process of) making'; or the process may consist of repetition, e.g. *ἤστραπτε* 'there were several flashes of lightning, it went on lightning for some time'.

(ii) *The aorist system*

The aorist system, by contrast, conveys that the action is regarded as an event or a fact, not a process, e.g. *ἐποίησε* 'he made' (often used on vases with the maker's signature); *ἤστραψε* 'there was (a flash of) lightning'.

(N.b. if the speaker so wishes, he is quite at liberty, of course, to regard any action as imperfective (i.e. continuing) or aoristic (i.e. happening as a fact or event). Thus some makers write on their vases *ἐποίηει* 'he was the maker'; and lists of Olympic victors can have *ἐνίκη* 'he was the victor'.)

It is often stated that the aorist participle has reference to past time, e.g. *ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀπῆλθε* can be translated 'having said this he went away'. But this arises naturally from the fact that one action must have preceded the other; it would be equally correct to translate 'saying this he went away; he said this and went away; with these words he went away'. That the aorist participle does not *have* to refer to past time is evident from the common phrase *ὑπολαβὼν ἔφη* 'he said in reply' (not 'having replied!').

(iii) *The perfect system*

The perfect is not a past but a present tense; past time is indicated by the pluperfect. The perfect indicates a present state resulting from a past action, e.g.

<i>ἀποθνήσκει</i>	(present)	'he is on his death-bed'
<i>ἀπέθανε</i>	(aorist)	'he died'
<i>τέθνηκε</i>	(perfect)	'he is (now) dead'
<i>ἔτεθνήκει</i>	(pluperfect)	'he was (at that time) dead'

This explains why some perfects are used with present meaning (see Language Survey (8)), e.g.

οἶδα 'I have perceived, (therefore) I know'

μέμνημαι 'I have called to mind, (therefore) I remember'

The first sentence of Thucydides' history is an excellent example of the aspectual systems at work:

Θουκυδίδης Ἀθηναῖος ξυνέγραψε τὸν πόλεμον τῶν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Ἀθηναίων, ὡς ἐπολέμησαν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ἀρξάμενος εὐθύς καθισταμένου καὶ ἐλπίσας μέγαν τε ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἀξιολογώτατον τῶν προγεγενημένων, τεκμαιρόμενος ὅτι ἀκμάζοντές τε ἦσαν ἐς αὐτὸν ἀμφοτέροι παρασκευῇ τῇ πάσῃ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο Ἑλληνικὸν ὄρων ξυνοιστάμενον πρὸς ἑκατέρους, τὸ μὲν εὐθύς, τὸ δὲ διανοοῦμενον.

'Thucydides of Athens wrote the history (*event*) of the war between the Peloponnesians and Athenians, how they fought (*event*) each other. He began (*event*) as soon as it started (*process*) and expected (*event*) it would be (*future*) important and more notable than any that had occurred previously (*perfect*), drawing conclusions (*process*) from the fact that they were undertaking (*process*) it at the height of their powers (*process*) in every department and seeing (*process*) that the rest of the Greek nation were inclining (*process*) to one side or the other, some at once, others having only the intention (*process*).'

## ○ Language Survey (4): optative

### (i) Forms

The distinguishing feature of the optative mood is the presence of *-ι-* preceding the personal endings (occasionally the *iota* will be written subscript, but it is always there). In the 3rd s. active forms there is usually no personal ending, so that the word ends with *-οι* or sometimes *-αι*. The full set of endings (other than duals) is as follows:

#### Active (also aorist passive)

1st s.	-μι	παύοιμι, παύσαιμι, εἴποιμι, παύσοιμι, ἴοιμι
	-ην	τιμῶην, φιλοίην, εἶην, τιθείην, θείην, παυσθείην
2nd s.	-ς	παύοις etc.
	-ας	παύσειας (this ending only in wk. aor. act.)
	-ης	τιμῶης etc.

3rd s.	παύοι εἰς.
	-ε(ν) παύσειε(ν) (this ending only in wk. aor. act.)
	-η τιμῶη εἰς.
1st pl.	-μεν παύοιμεν, παύσαιομεν, τιμῶμεν, τιθεῖμεν εἰς.
2nd pl.	-τε παύοιτε, παύσαιτε, τιμῶτε, τιθεῖτε εἰς.
3rd pl.	-εν παύοιεν, τιμῶεν, τιθεῖεν εἰς.
	-αν παύσειαν (this ending only in wk. aor. act.)

*Middle*

1st s.	-μην παυοίμην, παυσαίμην, λαβοίμην, μεθείμην εἰς.
2nd s.	-ο παύοιο εἰς.
3rd s.	-το παύοιτο εἰς.
1st pl.	-μεθα παυοίμεθα εἰς.
2nd pl.	-σθε παύοισθε εἰς.
3rd pl.	-ντο παύοιντο εἰς.

You will observe that these endings resemble the endings of the *past* indicative tenses (e.g. ἐπαυόμην, ἐπεπαύμην) – a fact which it may be helpful to connect with the use of the optative in ‘secondary sequence’ (167) governed by *past* main verbs.

(ii) Uses

In very broadest outline, the indicative is the mood for what is *factual*, the subjunctive for what is *prospective* (i.e. sometime in the future), the optative for contingencies which are *more remotely prospective*. This basic force of the optative surfaces in three ways:

(a) in subordinate clauses of various kinds, the optative replaces the subjunctive (sometimes the indicative) when the clause is in secondary sequence. See *Running Grammar* 167, 186–8, 194–5, 211.

(b) the optative is used to express a *wish for the future*, e.g.

ἀπολοίμην ‘may I perish! damn me!’

δοίη τις πέλεκυν ‘if only someone would give me an axe!’

γενοίμην αἴετος ‘would I were an eagle!’

(c) the optative with ἄν is used to characterise some event or situation as a *future possibility* (the so-called ‘potential’ use of the optative in which, with trifling exceptions, it is always in Classical Greek accompanied by ἄν). English usually employs for this purpose such words as ‘may’, ‘might’, ‘can’, ‘could’, ‘would’, ‘should’, (sometimes) ‘will’, e.g.

λέγοις ἄν ‘you might tell me’ (i.e. ‘please tell me’)

λέγοιμι ἄν ἤδη ‘I will tell you now’

εἰ ἐκεῖσε ἔλθοις, ἐγὼ ἄν σοι ἐποίμην 'if you were to go there, I would follow you'

ἀλλὰ εἴποι τις ἄν ὅτι . . . 'but someone may say that . . .'

Note that while a potential optative virtually always has ἄν accompanying it, the ἄν may very well not be adjacent to the verb. Note also that the optative usages of types (a) and (b) never have an ἄν, i.e. an optative accompanied by an ἄν is *always* potential.

## ○ Language Survey (5): subjunctive and optative usages

As remarked under the optative (Language Survey (4)), the subjunctive mood is appropriate to events and situations viewed not as actual but as *prospective*. In several constructions, accordingly, the dividing line between the subjunctive and the future indicative can be rather fine; on the whole, the difference is that the future indicative gives an impression of greater definiteness and certainty.

### *In independent sentences*

The subjunctive is used only

- (i) in first person exhortations (ἴωμεν 'let us go')
- (ii) in deliberative questions (τί εἶπω; 'what am I to say?')
- (iii) in prohibitions (aorist only) (μὴ με ἐπιτρέψῃς, ὦ Ἑρμῆ 'do not destroy me, O Hermes')

### *In subordinate clauses*

The subjunctive is found in many types of clause which have an indefinite or prospective sense, e.g.

- indefinite relative clauses with ἄν (175)
- indefinite clauses of time, place (etc.) with ἄν (175, 193)
- conditionals relating to the future (introduced by εἰάν, ἤν, ἄν) (176)
- 'fear' clauses relating to the future (182)
- 'purpose' clauses (sometimes with ἄν, though ἵνα 'in order that' never takes ἄν; ἵνα ἄν, if it occurs, will mean 'wherever') (186).

Observe that, where ἄν accompanies a subjunctive, the particle will almost always come directly after the conjunction or relative introducing the clause (often the two fuse together into one word, e.g. ὅταν, εἰάν, ἐπειδάν).

In secondary sequence (167), the subjunctive in all these subordinate usages is generally replaced by the optative; this use of the optative is NOT 'potential', and accordingly there is NO ἄν.

## ○ Language Survey (6): the uses of ἄν

The particle ἄν has two entirely different fields of usage, which fortunately need never be confused because in one field the verb associated with ἄν *will always be subjunctive*, while in the other field the verb *will never be subjunctive*. In a rather vague sense the two usages may be thought to have some elements in common, but it is better to treat them quite separately.

(a) Attached to a conjunction or relative (with the verb in the subjunctive)

ἄν has the effect of making the clause *indefinite* (like the English '-ever'), or *prospective* (referring to future contingencies rather than present facts), e.g.

(i) ἐπειδὴ εἰσήλθεν, ἐχαίρομεν 'when he came, we were glad'

(ii) ἐπειδὰν εἰσέλθῃ, χαιρήσομεν 'when he comes (whenever that will be) we will be glad'

(i) refers to a known time in the past; (ii) refers to an unknown time in the future.

(iii) ᾧ τρόπῳ ἐβούλοντο 'in the way they wanted'

(iv) ᾧ ἄν τρόπῳ βούλωνται 'in whatever way they want'

(iii) refers to a particular type of treatment that was applied; (iv) gives *carte blanche* to apply any kind of treatment.

(v) εἰ μὴ ἀπέδωκε, διώξομαι αὐτόν 'if he hasn't paid, I'll sue him'

(vi) εἰ ἄν μὴ ἀποδώ, διώξομαι αὐτόν 'if he doesn't pay, I'll sue him'

In (v), the debtor has already *in fact* either paid or defaulted, though the speaker does not know which; in (vi) it is still a matter of speculation whether he will pay or not. An alternative to (vi) is:

(vii) εἰ μὴ ἀποδώσει, διώξομαι αὐτόν 'if he is not going to pay, I'll sue him'

(vii) suggests, in contrast with (vi), that the speaker has already half-decided that the debtor will *not* pay voluntarily, so the process of law is all the more certain.

(b) Accompanying a verb in the optative (typically, though not always, in an independent clause)

ἄν signals that the optative is 'potential' (see Language Survey (4) (ii) (c)).

(c) Accompanying a verb in past tense (impf., aor., plup. INDICATIVE)

*ἄν* signals a hypothetical statement (or question) based on a condition contrary to fact ('unfulfilled'), e.g.

εἰ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ταῦτα ἐποιήσαν, εὐθύς ἂν καθειλκύσατε διακοσίας ναῦς 'if the Spartans had done that, you would have launched 200 ships at once'

εἰ ἄδικος ἦν, οὐκ ἂν ἐνθάδε νῦν ἠγωνιζόμην, ἀλλὰ ἐκὼν ἂν ἔφευγον 'if I were in the wrong, I would not now be standing trial here, but would be in voluntary exile.'

Observe that you will sometimes find *ἄν* accompanying an infinitive or participle. In such cases (usually in indirect speech), the force of *ἄν* will be potential or occasionally hypothetical (i.e. (b) or (c)); the verb of a clause containing an *ἄν* of type (a) must be *subjunctive*, otherwise the *ἄν* simply cannot stand.

Often in Homer you will find *κε* or *κεν* performing just the same functions as *ἄν*; but the strict principles laid down above for the use of *ἄν* and of the subjunctives and optatives do not apply in their entirety to Homer, where there is much more freedom in the use of moods.

## ○ Language Survey (7): verbs in -μι

We divide all Greek verbs into thematic or -ω verbs and athematic or -μι verbs. The two classes mainly differ in the present and imperfect (sometimes in the aorist too); also the conjugation of the -μι verbs is far less predictable than that of the -ω verbs.

In the pres. and impf. the -ω verbs (παύω, φέρω, τιμάω etc.) show an -ο- or -ε- vowel (the so-called thematic vowel) between the root and the personal endings, while the -μι verbs do not: contrast παύ-ο-μεν, παύ-ε-τε (παύω) or τιμῶμεν, τιμᾶτε which derive from τιμά-ο-μεν, τιμά-ε-τε (τιμάω) with τίθε-μεν, τίθε-τε (τίθη-μι), δείκνυ-μεν, δείκνυ-τε (δείκνυ-μι), φα-μέν, φα-τέ (φη-μί), ἔσ-μέν, ἔσ-τέ (εἶ-μί). The -μι verbs have different endings from the -ω verbs in the singular of the ind. pres. active: contrast παύω, παύεις, παύει with τίθη-μι, τίθη-ς, τίθη-σι or δείκνυ-μι, δείκνυ-ς, δείκνυ-σι (but notice the irregular patterns of εἶμι, εἶ, ἐστί 'I am . . .' and εἶμι, εἶ, εἶσι 'I shall go'). The 3rd pl. ind. pres. of the -μι verbs tends to end in -ασι(ν) (but εἶσι 'they are' is again irregular).

In the impf. and aorist active the -μι verbs have a 3rd pl. in -σαν: cf. ἐτίθε-σαν (impf.), ἔθε-σαν (aor.), ἐδίδο-σαν (impf.), ἔδο-σαν (aor.), ἐδείκνυ-σαν (impf. of δείκνυμι; the aorist ἔδειξαν is like ἔπαυσαν), ἦσαν 'they were', ἦσαν 'they were going'.



In the middle the -μι and -ω verbs have similar endings but in the -μι verbs the 2nd s. indicative ends in -σαι in the present (τίθε-σαι etc.) and in -σο in the imperfect (ἐτίθε-σο); it may be helpful to remember that the equivalent forms of the -ω verbs, παύη and ἐπαύου are contracted from παύεαι and ἐπαύεο.

In the -μι verbs the infinitive active pres. ends in -ναι (and not in -ειν as in the -ω verbs): τιθέναι, δίδοναι, δεικνύναι, εἶναι, ἰέναι etc. The middle inf. ends in -σθαι as in the -ω verbs: τίθεσθαι, κείσθαι etc.

Most -μι verbs preserve in the present and impf. active – some also in the aorist – a contrast in the vowel of the stem; the s. has a long vowel or diphthong and the dual and plural have a short vowel: cf. τί-θη-μι (1st s.) vs. τί-θε-μεν (1st pl.), δί-δω-μι (1st s.) vs. δί-δο-μεν (1st pl.), δείκνῦ-μι (1st s.) vs. δείκνῦ-μεν (1st pl.), φη-μί (1st s.) vs. φᾶ-μέν (1st pl.), εἶμι (1st s.) vs. ἴ-μεν (1st pl.) etc. The 'short' stem normally appears in the optative and in all the middle forms.

There is no 'regular' conjugation of the -μι verbs parallel to the conjugation of e.g. παύω. This is partly because most of the -μι verbs are archaic formations which have undergone a number of changes (remember how irregular is the inflection of 'I am' in English). The most 'regular' type is that of the -νυμι or -νυμι verbs (δείκνυμι, κεράννυμι etc.), which all inflect in a similar manner, differ from the -ω verbs only in the present and imperfect, and form the other tenses from the root without the -(ν)νυμι suffix (the aorist is mostly sigmatic: cf. δείκ-νυμι vs. ἔδειξα). These verbs have present optatives similar to those of the -ω verbs (cf. δεικνύοιμι, δεικνύοις, δεικνύοι etc., just like παύοιμι, παύοις, παύοι etc.). The other -μι verbs like τίθημι, δίδωμι etc. follow the type: 1st s. τιθείην, 2nd s. τιθείης, 3rd s. τιθείη, 1st pl. τιθεῖμεν, 2nd pl. τιθεῖτε, 3rd pl. τιθείεν (cf. δίδοίην, pl. δίδοῖμεν from δίδωμι; ἰσταίην, pl. ἰσταῖμεν from ἴστημι; εἶην, pl. εἶμεν from εἶμι). The opt. of εἶμι 'I shall go' follows the normal pattern of the -ω verbs (ἴοιμι, pl. ἴομεν etc.).

Among the -μι verbs which do not belong to the δείκνυμι type (and are not defective like εἶμι 'I am' and εἶμι 'I shall go') τίθημι, ἴστημι, δίδωμι and ἴημι are the most frequent and show very similar inflections. ἴστημι has a sigmatic aorist ἔστησα 'I set' with a transitive meaning and an aorist ἔστην 'I stood' used intransitively. τίθημι, δίδωμι, ἴημι, and only these three verbs, form aorists in -κα (ἔθηκα, ἔδωκα, ἦκα) where the -κ- appears in the singular only (ἔθηκας, ἔθηκε, pl. ἔθεμεν, ἔθετε, ἔθεσαν). It is important not to confuse these forms with the perfect which would have a reduplication (τέθηκα, δέδωκα, -εικα) rather than an augment and would keep the -κ- all through the inflection of the indicative.

## ○ Language Survey (8): verbs with perfect force

As you have seen (165) the earliest function of the perfect in Greek was to describe a situation in the present arising from some past event. The tendency as the language developed was to lay more emphasis on the past event, so that in Classical Greek the perfect is often to be translated 'I have -ed'; but there remain considerable relics of its older function. In addition to what was said at 165, note the following:

(a) the perfect passive is often to be rendered 'it is -ed', as against 'it has been -ed' e.g.

ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς Σόλωνος νόμοις γέγραπται 'this is written in the laws of Solon' (i.e. 'it has been written down and *can still be read*')

τέτρωται 'he is wounded' (i.e. 'he has received a wound and *still suffers from it*')

τὰ κρέα ἐξώπτηται 'the meat is cooked' (i.e. 'has been cooked and *is ready to serve*')

(b) a number of verbs which are perfect in form have virtually the sense of the simple present. You have already met ἔστηκα 'I stand', οἶδα 'I know'.

Some others are:

μέμνημαι 'I remember'

πέφυκα 'I am – by nature'

οἱ βάρβαροι ἐχθροὶ πεφύκασι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν 'The barbarians are natural enemies to the Greeks'

κέκραγα 'I shout'

γέγηθα 'I am glad'

δέδοικα 'I am afraid'

ἐγρήγορα 'I am awake'

εἶωθα 'I am accustomed to'

ἔοικα (i) 'I seem to –' (ii) 'I resemble' (+ dat.)

κέχηνα 'I gape'

(c) another relic of an earlier state of the language is seen in the use of active forms of the perfect of a few verbs in what seems like a middle or passive sense. Sometimes these active perfects actually parallel middle or passive present tenses, e.g.

γίγνομαι 'I become, come to be, come into existence'

γέγονα 'I am – by birth'

τί γέγονεν; 'What has happened?'

ἀλίσκομαι 'I get captured, I get convicted'  
 ἐάλωκα 'I have been captured/convicted'

Note also:

κατέαγε 'it is broken' (κατάγνυ-μι)  
 πέπηγε 'it is fixed' (πήγνυ-μι)

---

○ Language Survey (9):  
 the negatives οὐ and μή

---

Greek has two negative particles, οὐ and μή. They are both normally translatable as 'not', and the main difference between them is simply the contexts in which they are used. These may be summarised as follows, but note the qualifications and further points at the end of the summary:

- with the *indicative*, οὐ is used (except after εἰ, ἵνα)
- with the *imperative*, μή is always used
- with the *subjunctive*, μή is generally used
- with the *optative expressing a wish*, μή is always used
- with all forms of *potential*, οὐ is always used
- with all forms of the *infinitive*, μή is generally used.

*Notes*

(i) In accordance with the above, in conditional sentences μή is used in the 'if' clause, and οὐ with the statement based on it. e.g.

ἐὰν μή εισέλθῃ, οὐ λήψεται τὸ ἀργύριον 'if he doesn't come, he won't get the money'

(ii) The infinitive is usually negated by μή, except mainly in indirect speech, where the negative is the one used in the direct context.

(iii) A participle (and this is one of the few cases where the distinction between the two negatives matters for the understanding of the text), may be negated by either οὐ or μή. The difference here is that the use of μή gives the participle a conditional flavour, so that the sentence above could have an alternative form, i.e.

οὐ λήψεται τὸ ἀργύριον μή εισελθὼν 'he won't get the money unless he comes'

It is thus necessary to distinguish between, e.g.

τί δράσω, τοῦ πατρὸς οὐκ εὖ φρονούντος (= ἐπεὶ οὐκ εὖ φρονεῖ) 'What shall I do, seeing that my father is not in his right mind?'

τί δράσω τοῦ πατρὸς μή εὖ φρονούντος (= ἐὰν μή εὖ φρονῆ) 'What shall I do if my father is not in his right mind?'

(iv) Where the same negative is repeated in a clause, the negatives either reinforce each other or cancel one another (see 38).

But combinations of different negatives ( $\text{οὐ μή}$  or  $\text{μή οὐ}$ ) have special meanings:

(a)  $\text{μή οὐ}$  with an infinitive means the same as  $\text{μή}$  alone, e.g.

$\text{οὐ μισοῦμεν τὰς Ἀθήνας μή οὐ μεγάλας εἶναι}$  'We do not hate Athens (wishing) that it should not be great'

(b)  $\text{μή οὐ}$  with verbs of fearing:

$\text{φοβοῦμαι μή νικήσῃ}$  'I fear he may win'

$\text{φοβοῦμαι μή οὐ νικήσῃ}$  'I fear he may not win'

(c)  $\text{οὐ μή}$  with future indicative expresses a strong prohibition, e.g.

$\text{οὐ μή φλυαρήσεις}$  'Do stop talking nonsense!'

(d)  $\text{οὐ μή}$  with subjunctive expresses a strong denial, e.g.

$\text{οὐ μή ποτε ἄλῶ}$  'I shall certainly never be caught'

Observe that (c) and (d) are easily confused; but remember that in the second person (which is by far the most frequent), the meaning is always prohibitory (i.e. 'don't . . .', 'do stop . . .' as in (c)).

## ○ Language Survey (10): morphology of the cases

At first sight the Greek declensions give the impression of a bewildering variety of forms. In order to recognise the cases it is useful to concentrate on the similarities and to notice that some of the differences are due to later changes (contractions etc.).

### *Nom. and acc. s.*

In all declensions the nom. s. of m. and f. nouns and adjectives either ended in *-s* ( $\text{ναύτης}$ ,  $\text{νεανίας}$ ,  $\text{ἄνθρωπος}$ ,  $\text{πόλις}$ ,  $\text{πρέσβυς}$ ,  $\text{ὄφρῦς}$ ,  $\text{βασιλεὺς}$ ) or was equal to the stem, though mostly the last vowel was lengthened ( $\text{βοή}$ ,  $\text{λιμήν}$ ,  $\text{πατήρ}$ ). Accented words ending in consonants, end only in *-s*, *-v*, *-p* so that if any other consonant occurred in final position this was dropped; that is why we have nom. like  $\text{λέων}$  vs. the gen.  $\text{λέοντ-ος}$  or  $\text{ῶν}$  vs. the gen.  $\text{ῶντ-ος}$ .

In type 1 the nom. s. f. ends in  $\text{-ā}$ ,  $\text{-ā̄}$  or  $\text{-η}$ ; normally  $\text{-ā}$  appears after  $\text{-ε-}$ ,  $\text{-ι-}$ ,  $\text{-ρ-}$  ( $\text{κόρη}$  is an exception).

The acc. s. m. and f. ends in *-v* in types 1 and 2 (the preceding vowel is the same as in the nom.). In type 3 the ending tends to be *-v* after vowel, as in  $\text{πόλιν}$ , and *-a* after consonant, as in  $\text{λιμένα}$ . Forms like  $\text{τριήρη}$  and  $\text{βασιλέā}$  are due to contraction ( $\text{-εα} \rightarrow \text{-η}$ ) or to a switching round of the quantity of the vowels, the so-called quantitative metathesis ( $\text{-ηα} \rightarrow \text{-εā}$ ).

In type 2 the nom./acc. n. ends in *-ον* like the acc. m./f.; in type 3 it has no ending of its own and is like the stem (allowing for the dropping of final consonants different from *-s, -ν, -ρ*), cf. *πράγμα*, gen. *πράγματος*. Notice that words like *πλήθος, ἀμελής* do not break the rule by introducing an *-s* ending: the *-s* is part of the stem.

#### Gen. s.

The gen. s. ends in *-ον* in type 2 and in the m. of type 1; the other nouns of type 1 add *-s* to the final vowel of the stem (*-ᾱ-* or *-η-*, never *-ᾶ-*). Type 3 has an *-os* ending. The terminations *-ους* and *-εως* of e.g. *τριήρους, πλήθους* and *πόλεως, βασιλέως* are due to contraction (*-εος* → *-ους*) or to quantitative metathesis (*-ηος* → *-εως*). The accent of *πόλεως* is comprehensible if one thinks of the older form *πόληος*.

#### Dat. s.

The dat. s. always ends in *-ι*, which follows a long vowel in types 1 and 2 and is written subscript (*βοῦι, ἀνθρώπῳ*). Notice that in *πλήθει, τριήρει, πόλει, βασιλεί* etc. the *-ε-* is part of the stem (observe the contraction and metathesis in the gen.).

#### Nom. and acc. pl.

In the plural the nom. of the m. and f. ended in *-αι* or *-οι* in types 1 and 2 and in *-ες* in type 3. *-ες* sometimes contracted with a preceding vowel of the stem to yield *-ης* or *-εις* (*βασιλῆς* but *πόλεις, τριήρεις*).

The acc. pl. (m. and f.) always ends in *-s*; the endings are *-ᾶs* and *-ους* in types 1 and 2; in type 3 normally an acc. s. in *-α* calls for an acc. pl. in *-as*. Other types are either equal to the nom. (*πόλεις*) or have forms closely related to the acc. s. (*ὄφρῦς* vs. *ὄφρῦν, βασιλέᾶs* vs. *βασιλέᾶ*).

The nom.-acc. n. pl. ended in *-α* in all types. In forms like *πλήθη* and *ἄσθη* (3c and 3f) *-η* derives from a contraction of *-εα*.

#### Gen. pl.

The gen. pl. of all types ended in *-ων*; in type 1 this ending always carries a circumflex accent because it is contracted from *-ᾶων*.

#### Dat. pl.

For the dat. pl. we have endings in *-αιs* and *-οιs* in types 1 and 2 and in *-σι* in type 3; some *-σι* datives alter the shape of their stem mainly in order to avoid consonantal groups not admitted in Greek (e.g. *οὔσι* where we expect \**οὔσι-si*).

*Voc.*

The pl. vocative is always identical to the nominative; in the s. the vocative is either identical to the nom. (in all neuters, the f. of type 1 and in most nouns of type 3) or appears in a form which is identical to the stem (i.e. without the -s- of the nom. in the m. and f.) though the final vowel may change (cf. *ναύτᾱ, ἄνθρωπε, τριῆρες, πάτερ, βασιλεῦ* etc.).

*Dual forms*

The dual is not found very frequently but unlike the other dialects Attic preserved it up to Hellenistic times. It has only two forms for each noun-type, one for the nom./acc./voc. and one for the gen./dat. In type 1 these end in -α and -αιῶ (nom./voc./acc. *βοῦά, ναύτᾱ, gen./dat. βοαῖν, ναύταιῶ*), in type 2 in -ω and -οῶ both for m., f. and n., and in type 3 in -ε and -οῖῶ again in all genders. Normally the -ε- of the nom./voc./acc. contracts with a preceding vowel; hence forms like nom./voc./acc. dual *τριῆρει, πόλει* etc.

## ○ Language Survey (II): use of the cases

Greek has five cases: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive and dative. The last three may – though they need not – occur in close association with a preposition but the first two cannot.

*Vocative case*

The vocative may be treated separately from the other cases; its position is peculiar in that (a) often it is not morphologically distinguished from the nominative, and (b) need not occur in a sentence but can be used on its own in exclamations or when addressing a person or thing (*ὦ Ζεῦ, ὦ Δικαιοπόλι*). Even when it occurs in a sentence its link with it is tenuous; it could be removed without making the sentence ungrammatical. In Attic it is normally used after the particle *ὦ*; if *ὦ* is absent this denotes strong emotion or a desire to keep the person addressed at a distance.

*Nominative case*

As in Latin, the nom. indicates the subject of a sentence; syntactically this is defined by the fact that the verb agrees with it in number (an exception is the nom. pl. n. which can take a s. verb): cf. 8. The nom. is also the case of all nouns, adjectives, articles etc. which agree with the subject, either as appositions

or as attributes or complements. Finally, Greek may use the nom. as the citation case or as a title or heading: cf. the numerous inscriptions which start with the phrase *τύχη ἀγαθή*.

### *Accusative case*

The acc. is the case which most closely defines and specifies the meaning of the verb. It indicates the 'object' of the sentence and in English it corresponds to the noun which immediately follows the verb (without any intermediate preposition). Notice, however, that if we had to translate into Greek a sentence like 'He gave John the toy', we would use the acc. for 'toy' but not for 'John', which would go in the dative (the sentence is equivalent to 'He gave the toy to John' but not to \*'He gave John to the toy'). On the other hand Greek has some verbs which take a double accusative; *αἰτέω* 'I ask', *κρύπτω* 'I conceal', *διδάσκω* 'I teach' etc.; cf. *δίδασκέ με τὸν σὸν λόγον* 'teach me your argument'. In other instances, when we find a verb joined to two independent accusatives one of the two has predicative value: *ἑαυτὸν δεσπότην πέποιηκεν* 'he made himself master'.

The link with the verb is less close when the acc. is used (with transitive, intransitive or even passive verbs) to indicate extent of space or time or in adverbial function: *ἀπέχει . . . σταδίους ἑβδομήκοντα* 'it is seventy stades distant'; *ἑβασίλευσε πεντήκοντα ἔτη* 'he was king for fifty years'. It is often difficult to draw a line between these uses and those of the so-called acc. of respect: *πόδας ὠκὺς Ἀχιλλεύς* 'swift-footed Achilles', *δεινοὶ μάχην* 'terrible in battle' etc. Some accusatives used in adverbial function often became fossilised: cf. *ἀρχῆν* 'initially', *πρόφασιν* 'under the pretext of', *χάριν* 'for the sake of, on behalf of, on account of'; cf. also *τρόπον τινά* 'in some way' etc.

The acc. can also indicate movements towards or direction; in prose this usage calls for a preposition (*εἰς, ἐπί, πρὸς* etc.) or for a construction where the acc. is followed by the particle *-δε* (*Ἀθήναζε = Ἀθήνας + δε*).

[For the so-called acc. absolute, see 184.]

### *Genitive case*

Some uses of the gen. have been listed in 92. It is customary to distinguish first the so-called adnominal gen. which is used in close connection with a noun, just as phrases introduced by 'of' are in English; its meaning varies according to the meaning of the nouns in question, so that it can indicate possession, origin, part etc. (cf. 26 for the relative order of the gen. and the noun on which it depends).

We often find the gen. in close connection with the verb in the grammatical slot normally reserved for the acc. With verbs which mean 'to eat', 'to take' etc.

the gen. indicates that a part only of what the noun refers to is taken, eaten etc.: cf. *τῆς γῆς ἔτεμον* 'they ravaged (part of) the land' vs. *τὴν γῆν πᾶσαν ἔτεμον* 'they ravaged all the land' and compare the similar use of 'de', 'du' etc. in French ('j'ai mangé du pain'). In this partitive function we expect the gen. to alternate with all cases and not only with the acc.; this does in fact happen but less frequently in Attic than in e.g. Homer.

The gen. comes to be regularly associated with some verbs; in most instances this may be explained by its partitive function but we must also make allowance for the fact that the gen. can indicate origin, cause, movement from etc. (this is because it continues both an ancient gen. and an ancient ablative case which had these functions).

Some of the most frequent verbs which take the gen. belong to the following meaning-types:

to touch, to come in contact or to fail to do so; cf. *ἄπτομαι, ἔχομαι, ἀμαρτάνω* etc.

to share, to participate; cf. *μέτεστι, μετέχω, κοινωνέω* etc.

to aim at, to desire; cf. *ἐπιθυμέω, ἐράω* etc.

to reach, to obtain, cf. *ἐφικνέομαι, τυγχάνω* etc.

to start, to begin; cf. *ἄρχω, ἄρχομαι* etc.

to remember, to care for, to forget, to despise; cf. *μιμνήσκω, φροντίζω, μέλει, ἀμελέω, καταφρονέω* etc.

to admire, to be amazed at, to envy, to reproach, to be angry; cf. *θαυμάζω, ζηλόομαι, ὀργίζομαι, ὀνειδίζω* etc.

to hear, to perceive, to come to know; cf. *ἀκούω, αἰσθάνομαι, πυνθάνομαι* etc.

to order, to dominate; cf. *ἄρχω, κρατέομαι* etc.

to need, to lack; cf. *ἀπορέω, στερίσκω, δέω, δέομαι* etc.

Notice that the adjectives which have these or similar meanings also can take the gen.

Like the acc., the gen. can be used to indicate time or place (less frequently) normally with a partitive nuance; cf. *ἡμέρας* 'by day', *νυκτός* 'by night' and see 104 for the difference in meaning between dat., acc. and gen. in these constructions.

In more specialised contexts the gen. indicates price or value (especially with verbs which mean 'to buy', 'to sell' etc.), crime and penalty (with verbs which mean 'to convict', 'to punish', 'to bring to trial' etc.). cf. *πόσου*; 'how much?', *ἐργάζεσθαι μισθοῦ* 'to work for pay' etc., *ἀσεβείας γράφειν* 'to prosecute for impiety', *ἀσεβείας φεύγειν* 'to be tried for impiety'.

The gen. is regularly construed with comparatives and superlatives: cf. *μέλιτος γλυκίων* 'sweeter than honey', *σοφώτατος ἀνθρώπων* 'wisest among men'.



After prepositions the gen. is used in a number of functions, but whenever separation, or movement from, is indicated the preposition takes the gen. (cf. *ἐκ, ἀπό* etc.).

Finally we should notice the use of the gen. in the so-called genitive absolute constructions: see 139.

### Dative case

The dative case may indicate the indirect object of a verb, where English would normally have a phrase introduced by 'to' or 'for' (cf. 104): *ταῦτα δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς* 'he gives these things to them', *λέγει ταῦτα αὐτοῖς* 'he says these things to them'. Words which refer to things or persons or abstractions are put in the dative to indicate that something is done to their advantage or disadvantage: *ἦδε ἡ ἡμέρα τοῖς Ἕλλησι μεγάλων κακῶν ἄρξει* 'this day will be the start of great sorrows for the Greeks'. Related to this usage is that of the possessive dative with the verb 'to be' or related verbs. *ταῦτά μοι ἐστι/γίνεται/ὑπάρχει* 'I have these things'. Notice also the idioms *τί ταῦτ' ἐμοί, τί ἐμοὶ καὶ σοί*; literally 'what (are) these things to me?', 'what (is) there to me and you?', i.e. 'what have I to do with . . .?'

Since the Greek dative continues an ancient dative but also two other cases which have merged with it, the instrumental and the locative, we may expect to find traces of the functions of these two cases in its usage. In fact, the dat. may be used (as the ancient instrumental) to indicate the manner in which something is done, or means or tools used: *ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες* 'smiting them with swords' etc. To indicate accompaniment or association prose normally uses a preposition (*σύν*) with the dat. but a survival of the ancient usage is found in the constructions of *αὐτός* with the dat.: *τῶν κειῶν μία αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν* 'one of the ships with its men'.

In poetry the dative without a preposition was used (with its earlier locative value) to indicate place *at which* or time *when*, in prose this usage survives in a limited number of instances (it is more frequent with place names and time expressions), but the normal construction calls for *ἐν* and the dative: cf. *Σαλαμῖνι* 'in Salamis' but *ἐν Σπάρτῃ* 'in Sparta'; *τριτῷ μηνί* 'in the third month' but *ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι* 'in the winter'.

Some verbs are regularly construed with the dative where English would have a non-prepositional phrase in equivalent sentences. The most frequent meanings are:

to help, to please, to displease, to blame, to envy: cf. *βοηθῶ, ἀρέσκω, εὐνοῶ,*

*ὀργίζω, φθονέω* etc.

to obey, to serve, to trust, to advise. cf. *πειθομαι, δουλεύω, πιστεύω, αἰνέω*  
etc.

to meet: cf. ἀπαντάω, περιτυγχάνω etc.

to follow, to accompany: cf. ἔπομαι, ἀκολουθέω etc.

*Addenda.* In passive constructions the 'agent' is normally indicated by ὑπό with a genitive if the word refers to a person, or by a simple dative if it refers to a 'thing'; cf. the examples given in 138 πείθεται ὑπὸ ἐμοῦ 'he is being persuaded by me', ἐβαλλόμεν τoῖς λίθοις 'I was being pelted by/with stones'. However, sometimes the simple dative can indicate the personal agent, especially when the passive verb is perfect or pluperfect and is used impersonally: ἐμοὶ πέπρακται 'it has been done by me'.

---

## ○ Language Survey (12): use of the definite article

---

### *General features*

Greek has only one article, ὁ ἢ τό 'the'. When English uses 'a' Greek either has the simple noun without an article or (less often) makes use of the indefinite pronoun τις 'a, a certain, some'.

There is a certain amount of agreement in the Greek and English use of the definite article but the overlap is by no means complete. Here are some of the main differences:

(a) Greek can (but need not) use the article with personal names and place names: ὁ Σόλων 'Solon', ἡ Ἀσία 'Asia'.

(b) Greek can use the article with abstract nouns: ἡ ἀρετή 'courage', ἡ χάρις 'grace'.

(c) In general statements Greek may use the article where English would omit it: ὁ ἄνθρωπος 'man' (i.e. the class of all men).

(d) Greek uses the article before possessive adjectives: ὁ ἐμὸς υἱός 'my son'.

(e) Greek does not use the articles with nouns used as predicates: νύξ ἡ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο 'the day became night' (νύξ could not have the article).

### *The article as noun*

One of the main features of classical Greek is that the article can be used with almost any part of speech (adjectives, adverbs, participles, infinitives, whole phrases) to form noun phrases: ὁ σοφός 'the wise man', ὁ λέγων 'the man who is speaking', τὸ θανεῖν 'the fact of dying, death'. In this way Greek introduces the aspectual distinctions of verbs into nominal constructions and can distinguish for instance between ὁ θάνατος 'death' and τὸ θνήσκειν or τὸ

θανεῖν. An article may also be followed by an adverb, or a genitival or prepositional phrase: cf. οἱ ἐκεῖ 'the men there', οἱ περὶ Ἡράκλειτον 'those round Herakleitos' (i.e. 'Herakleitos and his school'), τὰ τῶν Ἀθηναίων, lit. 'the things of the Athenians' (the meaning of τὰ is determined by the context), τὰ ἐν Λακεδαίμονι 'the things/events in Sparta'. The article also allows a noun to be determined by an adverb: ὁ ὀρθῶς κυβερνήτης 'he who is really a pilot, a real pilot'.

Finally the neuter article may introduce phrases which though not nominal in origin are treated as such: τὸ λίαν ἤσσον ἐπαινῶ τοῦ μηδὲν ἄγαν 'I approve the "too much" less than the "nothing in excess"', i.e. 'I approve of excess less than of moderation'; θαυμαστὸν δέ μοι φαίνεται καὶ τὸ πεισθῆναί τινος 'I also find it amazing that some people may have been convinced.' This use of the article allowed an immense stylistic and semantic flexibility which Greek literature and philosophy exploited in full.

### *The position of the article*

Normally the article precedes the noun but notice that in a simple phrase of article, adjective, noun the article can take various positions even though the meaning does not change substantially: ὁ σοφὸς ἀνὴρ, ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός, ἀνὴρ ὁ σοφός (rare) all mean 'the wise man' (cf. 60). However in the phrases σοφός ὁ ἀνὴρ and ὁ ἀνὴρ σοφός, σοφός is used as a predicate and the meaning is 'the man is wise'.

Some adjectives (often of pronominal origin) – οὗτος, ὅδε, ἐκεῖνος, πᾶς – take the predicative position: οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ, ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος 'this man'. Notice, on the other hand, the contrast between ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ 'the same man' and ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτός, αὐτός ὁ ἀνὴρ 'the man himself'.

### *Demonstrative uses*

Attic preserves only a few traces of the original demonstrative value of the article: cf. ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ 'the one . . . the other' and also the expressions καὶ ὅς, ἡ δ' ὅς 'and he . . .', 'he said' (notice that in these phrases the nom. is ὅς and not ὁ though the form must not be confused with that of the relative pronoun).

## ○ Language Survey (13): vocabulary building

The following list of prefixes and suffixes attached to nouns, adjectives, adverbs and verbs will help you to determine the meaning of roots or stems which you

recognise but the shape of which may be slightly unfamiliar. Following this list of prefixes and suffixes a table of useful common roots/stems is given.

(i) *Formation of nouns*

The following suffixes will be frequently met:

(a) to denote *actions*:

-σις *f.* (3ε) παιδείσις 'training' (παιδεύω)

-σια *f.* (1b) ἐργασία 'work' (ἐργάτης)

-μός *m.* (2a) διωγμός 'pursuit' (διώκω)

(b) to denote the *result of an action*:

-μα (-ματος) *n.* (3b) πρᾶγμα 'thing (done)' (πράττω)

(c) to denote the *agent*:

-τήρ *m.* (3a) σωτήρ 'saviour' (σώζω)

-τωρ *m.* (3a) ῥήτωρ 'orator' (cf. ἐρώ)

-τής *m.* (1d) ποιητής 'maker, poet' (ποιέω)

(d) to denote *means or instrument*:

-τρον *n.* (2b) ἄροτρον 'plough' (ἀρόω)

(e) to denote *profession or class of a person*:

-εύς *m.* (3h) ἱερεύς 'priest' (ἱερός)

-της *m.* (1d) πολίτης 'citizen' (πόλις)

(f) to denote *quality*:

-της (-τητος) *f.* (3a) ἰσότης 'equality' (ἴσος)

-σύνη *f.* (1a) σωφροσύνη 'moderation' (σώφρων)

-ία *f.* (1b) σοφία 'wisdom' (σοφός)

(g) to denote *place where an activity occurs*:

-τήριον *n.* (2b) δικαστήριον 'law-court' (δικάζω)

-εῖον *n.* (2b) κουρείον 'barber's shop' (κουρεύς)

(h) to denote a *small example* (familiar or contemptuous):

-ιον *n.* (2b) παιδίον 'child' (παῖς)

-ίδιον *n.* (2b) οἰκίδιον 'small house' (οἶκος)

-ίσκος *m.* (2a) νεανίσκος 'youth' (νεανίας)

-ίσκη *f.* (1a) παιδίσκη 'young girl' (παῖς)

(i) to denote '*son of*' (often used as a person name, cf. English names in '-son')

-άδης *m.* (1d) Βορεάδης 'son of Boreas' (Βορέας)

-ίδης *m.* (1d) Πριάμίδης 'son of Priam' (Πρίαμος)

(j) to denote the *feminine form*:

-ις (-ιδος) *f.* (3a) νεάνις 'young girl' (νεανίας)

(ii) *Formation of adjectives*

Adjectives are formed either by derivation (i.e. the addition of suf-

fixes), or by composition (in which two elements are compounded, or juxtaposed) and the meaning is deduced from the sense of the two elements. These elements may come from nouns or verbs or prepositions. If the first element is a *noun* or *adjective*, it has either the bare stem (e.g. *εὐρύ-πορος*, from *εὐρύς* 'broad'), or a vowel *-o-* inserted (e.g. *ψυχ-ο-πομπός* 'escorting souls' from *ψυχ-ή*). If the first element is a *verb*, the form sometimes ends in *-ε* or *-σι*, e.g.

*φέρει-νικος* 'bringing victory'

*έλκεσί-πεπλος* 'trailing robes'

The prepositions are very commonly used in compounds and sometimes have special meanings (see below under 'Formation of verbs').

Note especially:

(i) the frequent adjective formation with *εὖ-* 'good'

*εὐδαίμων* 'having good deities, happy'

(ii) the prefix *ἀ-* or *ἀν-* which carries a negative force, e.g.

*ἀγαμος* 'unmarried'

*ἀνώνυμος* 'unnamed'

But beware of the small number of words where *ἀ-* means 'together with', e.g.

*ἄλοχος* 'wife' (lit. 'bedfellow').

Some of the more common adjectival suffixes are listed here:

(a) to denote a *general relationship*:

*-ιος*: *πολέμιος* 'enemy' (*πόλεμος*)

*-ικός*, *φυσικός* 'natural' (*φύσις*)

(b) to denote *material*:

*-ινος*: *λίθινος* 'of stone' (*λίθος*)

*-εος*: *-ους*: *χρυσούς* 'golden' (*χρυσός*)

(c) to denote *inclination*, or *tendency*:

*-μων*: *μνήμων* 'mindful' (cf. *μέ-μνη-μαι*)

(d) to denote *aptitude*:

*-ιμος*: *χρήσιμος* 'useful' (*χράομαι*)

(e) to denote *passive force* or *capability*:

*-τος*: *σχιστός* 'divided' (*σχίζω*)

*όρατός* 'visible' (*όράω*)

(f) to denote *obligation*:

*-τεος*: *τιμητέος* 'that is to be honoured' (*τιμάω*)

(iii) *Formation of adverbs*

Most adjectives form adverbs by adding *-ως* e.g. *κακός* – *κακώς*, *ἀληθής* – *ἀληθῶς*. Those in *-υς* add *-εως*, e.g. *ἡδύς* – *ἡδέως*. The neuter accusative may be used adverbially as well, e.g.

πολύ 'much'  
 μεγάλα 'greatly'  
 μόνον 'alone'

There are also many adverbs that do not fall into a regular pattern, e.g.

τάχα 'quickly'  
 εὐθύς 'at once'  
 παντάπασι 'in every respect'

Special types are:

-δόν, -αδόν, -ηδόν κυνηδόν 'like a dog'  
 ὁμοθυμαδόν 'unanimously'  
 -δῆν, -αδῆν κρυβδῆν 'secretly' (cf. κρύπτω 'hide')

#### (iv) Formation of verbs

Verbs are formed from nouns (or adjectives) by such suffixes as these:

-άω	τιμάω	'honour'	(τιμή)
-έω	πονέω	'work'	(πόνος)
-όω	δουλόω	'enslave'	(δούλος)
-εύω	βασιλεύω	'reign'	(βασιλεύς)
-ζω	ἀγοράζω	'buy'	(ἀγορά)
-ίζω	πλουτίζω	'enrich'	(πλούτος)
-ύνω	ἡδύνω	'sweeten'	(ἡδύς)

To denote a wish:

-ιάω στρατηγιάω 'to want to be a general' (στρατηγός)  
 -σείω γελασείω 'to want to laugh' (γελάω)

Verbs are frequently compounded with prepositions, the sense of which is sometimes subtle and difficult to render. Apart from their normal senses, note the following *special* senses of prepositions as compounded to form both verbs and adjectives:

ἀνα-	withdrawal	ἀναχωρέω	'retreat'
	repetition	ἀναβιόω	'come to life again'
ἀντι-	exchange	ἀντιδίδωμι	'give in return'
	equality	ἀντίθεος	'god-like'
	against	ἀντίδικος	'opponent at law'
ἀπο-	return	ἀποδίδωμι	'give back'
	completion	ἀπεργάζομαι	'finish off'
	for the defendant	ἀπολογέομαι	'defend oneself'
δια-	separation	διαλύω	'break up'
	disagreement	διαφωνέω	'disagree'
	succession	διαδέχομαι	'take the place of'
	completion	διαπράττω	'accomplish'

ἐπι-	opposition addition superiority	ἐπιστρατεύω ἐπιμανθάνω ἐπιβιόω	'march against' 'learn besides' 'survive'
κατα-	thoroughness to destruction	καταμανθάνω καταλύω	'learn thoroughly' 'destroy utterly'
μετα-	change share	μεταγινώσκω μέτεστι	'change one's mind, repent' 'share in'
παρα-	deviation	παραβαίνω	'overstep, transgress'
περι-	intensity	περικαλλής	'very beautiful'
προ-	abandonment anteriority	προδίδωμι προοράω	'betray' 'foresee'
ὑπερ-	excess	ὑπερβάλλω	'overshoot, exceed'
ὑπο-	subjection moderation stealth	ὑπήκοος ὑπόλευκος ὑποσπάω	'subject' 'whitish' 'withdraw secretly'

(v) Changes in root syllables

You will have noticed that the root syllables of Greek words are sometimes modified, especially in their vowels. This is familiar in English, where we have such patterns as 'sing', 'sung', 'sang' or 'foot', 'feet'. The details in Greek are very complicated, but it is worth noting the pattern which replaces -ε- by -ο- or by zero, i.e. this vowel disappears completely. However, the zero vowel is in some contexts, especially where λ, μ, ν, or ρ are involved, replaced by α. The following table gives a few examples:

ε	ο	zero
πέτομαι 'fly'	ποτάομαι 'hover'	πτερόν 'wing'
λείπω 'leave'	λέλοιπα (perf.)	ἔλιπον (aor.)
φεύγω 'run away'		ἔφυγον (aor.) φυγή 'flight'
φέρω 'bring'	-φορος '-bringing'	
πατέρα (acc.) 'father'		πατρός (gen.) πατράσι (dat. pl.)
βέλος 'missile'	βόλος 'cast'	βάλλω 'throw'
τέμνω 'cut'	τόμος 'slice'	ἔταμον (aor.)
πένθος 'grief'	πέπονθα 'suffer' (perf.)	ἔπαθον (aor.)
θείνω 'kill'	φόνος 'murder'	ἔπεφνον (aor.)

The last example shows another strange feature, the replacement of θ by φ. Similarly we find τ replaced by π, e.g.

τίς 'who?'	πού 'where?'
τίνω 'pay'	ποινή 'penalty'
πέντε 'five'	πέμπτος 'fifth'

*(vi) Latin transcriptions*

The Greek words that have been borrowed into English have normally come by way of Latin; only a few (e.g. 'kudos') are taken directly from the Greek form. Similarly, the proper names of Greek are frequently given a Latin form in English, which is occasionally different from the Greek (e.g. Achilles for Ἀχιλλεύς), but usually follows a regular rule of transcription. Most equivalents are obvious, but note the following:

θ = th  
 φ = ph  
 χ = ch  
 κ = c  
 υ = y  
 ου = u

Thus, for example, Θουκυδίδης appears as 'Thucydides'.

Vowel-length is not shown and the corresponding English vowels are often different. Thus Ὀμηρος becomes 'Hōmērus', English 'Hōmer'. Cf. also Σόλων becomes English Sōlōn. For transcriptions in this course, see p. 260.

*(vii) Useful stems*

Here is a list of useful stems from which many words can be guessed:

ἀγγελ-	announce, proclaim, report	ἀπολογ-	defend
ἀ-	(prefix) no, not	ἀπορ-	want; ignorance, doubt
ἀγορ-	gather, frequent; talk	ἀποστα-	revolt, part from, stand away
ἀγρ-	country, field, hunt, savage	ἀρπ-	seize, plunder
ἀγων-	contest, fight	ἀρχ-	rule; office; begin
αἰσθ-	feel, apprehend, notice	ἀσθεν-	weak, ill
αἰτι-	cause, accuse, blame	ἀστ-	city; clever
ἀκο(υ)-	hear	βα βη-	go, walk, stand
άλ-	be captured	βαλ βολ-	throw, strike
ἀληθ-	true	βαρ-	heavy, serious
ἀμαρτ-	miss, err, fail, do wrong	βια-	force, violence
ἀναγκ-	compel, force, necessity	βιο-	life, livelihood
ἀνδρ-	man, manliness, bravery	βοα βοη-	shout, demand, roar
ἀπατ-	deceive, trick	βοηθ-	cry for help, help, assist
ἀποκρι-	reply, answer; separate	βουλ(ε)(υ)-	plan, advise, resolve
		βουλ-	wish
		γαμ-	marry



γεν-	become, be, be born	ἡγε-	lead; think
γνο γνω-	perceive, be aware, decide	ἡδ-	sweet, pleasant, pleased
γραφ-	write, propose; lawsuit	ἡσυχ-	calm, rest, silence
γυναικ-	woman, female	θαν- θν-	die, death
δεικ δειξ-	show, reveal, demonstrate	θαυμ-	wonder, amazement
δημ-	people, live, inhabit	θεα-	see, wonder
διατριβ-	spend time, waste time	θεραπ-	cure, look after, serve
διαφθερ-	destroy, corrupt	θνητ-	mortal, death
διδασκ διδασξ-	teach	θυ-	sacrifice
δικ-	justice; law; penalty; court	θυμ-	heart, anger, enthusiasm, courage, purpose, will
δο-	give	ιατρ-	cure, medicine, doctor
δρα-	do, act	ιδ-	see
δυνα-	be able, possible	ιερ-	holy, sacred, priest, temple
δυσ-	bad, poor, evil	κακο-	evil, wicked, bad, corrupt
ειδ-	see; know; shape, figure	κατηγορ-	accuse, charge, prove
εικ-	reasonable; yield; twenty	κελευ-	order
ειπ-	say, speak	κηρυγ κηρυξ-	announce, herald, proclaim
ελεγχ-	disprove, examine, test	κινδυν-	danger, risk
ελευθ-	free	κλεπ- κλοπ-	steal
Ελλ-	Greece	κλη-	call, summon
ελπ-	hope	κοιν-	common, shared, united
εξεταξ-	question, search	κρατ-	power, sway, control
εοικ-	be like; be reasonable	κριν κρισ-	judge; reply, discern
επαιν-	praise	κτ-	kill, gain
εργ-	do, work	λαβ-	take
εταιρ-	friend, companion	λαθ-	secret
ευ-	well, good	λεγ λογ-	speak; words; reason
ευρ-	find, discover, broad	λιπ'λοιπ-	leave, abandon
ευχ-	pray	μαθ-	learn
εχθρ-	hostile, enemy	μαρτυ(ρ)-	witness, evidence
ζα ζω-	live	μαχ-	fight
ζημ-	fine, penalise	μεγ(αλ)-	large, size
ζητ-	seek, search		

μελ-	care, concern	σιγ-	silence
μηχαν-	device, contrive	σκεπ σκοπ-	see, review, consider
μνη(μ)-	remember, mention	σκευ-	prepare; gear, furniture
μισ-	hate	σοφ-	wise, intelligent
ναυ-	ship, nautical	σπενδ σπονδ-	libation, pour
νικ-	conquer	σπενδ σπουδ-	hurry; enthusiasm; serious
νο(ε) νοι-	notice; plan; intend; mind	στρατ-	army, march, camp
νομ-	custom; law; think, be used to	σω-	safe, sound
νοσ-	disease, illness	ταχ-	speed, hurry
ξεν-	stranger; guest; alien	τεκμαιρ-	witness, evidence
οικ-	live, house, inhabit, serve	τελ(ευτ)-	end, finish, death
ὀλ-	destroy	τεχν-	art, skill, means, trade
ὀμ-	swear, take an oath	τιμ(α)-	honour; value; punish, penalty
ὀμο-	at one with	τιμωρ(ε)-	vengeance
ὀργ-	anger, passion	τρεφ τροφ-	rear, nurture
ὀψ-	sight, vision	τυχ-	chance, happen
παθ-	experience, suffering	ὕβρ-	violence
παι(δ) παιζ-	child; educate; play	φασ'φαν-	appear, seem
παν-	all, every	φιλ-	love, respect
πειθ-	persuade	φοβ-	fear
πειρ-	try, experience, test	φρην φρον(τ)-	mind; worry; thought
πεμπ πομπ-	send	φυγ-	flight
πεσ-	fall	φυλακ-	guard, protect
πιστ-	faithful, trust	φυ-	nature, naturally
πλε(υ) πλοι-	sail, voyage	φων-	voice, speech
ποιε ποιη-	make, do	χαρ-	please; charm; welcome
πολεμ-	war, enemy	χρη-	use; useful; ought
πραγ πραξ-	act, do, accomplish	χωρ-	go, place
πρεσβ-	old, embassy	ψευδ-	false
πυθ-	learn, inquire	ψηφ-	vote, decree
σαφ-	clear	ψυχ-	soul, life
σημ-	sign, show, signify		

## D. A total vocabulary of all words to be learnt

---

### Finding the lexicon form of a verb

---

The essence is to isolate the present stem, since it is most often this form which will be shown in the lexicon.

(i) Look at the front of the word, and remove any augment, or reduplication.

η could be the augmented form of α, ε, η

η	„	„	αι, ει
ηυ	„	„	αυ, ευ
ω	„	„	ο
ω	„	„	οι
ι, υ	„	„	ι, υ
ει	„	„	ε, ει

Bear in mind that the augment might be hidden by a prefix such as κατά, ἐκ, πρό, εἰς, ἐν, so check the prefix as well.

προὔβαλον = προ-έ-βαλον

ἐξέβαλον = ἐκ-έ-βαλον

ἐνέβαλον from ἐμβάλλω

Here is a list of common prefixes, with their various forms:

ἀνά ἀν'

ἀπό ἀπ' ἀφ'

διά δι'

ἐκ ἐξ

ἐν ἐμ- ἐγ-

ἐπί ἐπ' ἐφ'

κατά κατ' καθ'

μετά μετ' μεθ'

παρά παρ'

πρό προε- πρου-

σύν συμ- συγ-

ὑπό ὑπ' ὑφ'

(ii) Having made an adjustment for augment/reduplication and prefix, examine the stem and the ending. Remove any personal endings.

(iii) If the remaining stem ends in σ, ξ, ψ, especially if an α follows, it is probably an aorist. Try dropping the σα (e.g. ἔ-λυ-σα = λύω) or converting σ to ζ

(ἐ-νόμισ-α=νομίζω). Try restoring a terminal ξ→κ or →ττ (ἐ-πραξ-α=πράττω), and a terminal ψ to π (ἐ-πεμψ-α=πέμπω).

If the stem ends in some form of θη, remember that χ may hide ττ or κ (ἐπράχθην=πράττω), φ may hide π or β (ἐπέμφθην=πέμπω).

(iv) If there is no augment, check the endings for some sign of σ (ξ, ψ) or ε-contract in the stem, when it may be future. Check also endings for signs of participle, infinitive, etc. and remember that the stem you so isolate may be present or aorist or perfect or future (see Reference Grammar E.2).

(v) If you are still stumped, isolate the stem and look that up in the vocabulary or the stem list (Language Survey (13) (vii)). Highly irregular stems have been placed there for your peace of mind.

## Total Vocabulary

† for Principal Parts see Reference Grammar E.4 (pp. 284ff.)  
 †† these forms only appear with the prefix as shown, but should still be looked up without the prefix in E.4.

\* see appropriate sections of Reference Grammar or Language Survey.

### A

ἀγαγ- aor. stem of ἄγω  
 ἀγαθός ἢ ὄν good; noble; courageous  
 ἀγαλμα (ἀγαλματ-), τό image, statue (3b)  
 †ἀγγέλλω (ἀγγελι-) report, announce  
 ἄγγελος, ὁ messenger (2a)  
 ἄγε come! (s.)  
 ἄγομαι bring for oneself; lead; marry  
 ἀγορά, ἡ gathering (-place); market-place; agora (1b)  
 ἀγορεύω speak (in assembly); proclaim  
 ἄγρη, ἡ hunt (1a)  
 ἀγροικος ον from the country; boorish  
 ἀγρός, ὁ field; country (side) (2a)

†ἄγω (ἀγαγ-) lead, bring; live in, be at  
 εἰρήνην ἄγω live in/be at peace  
 ἀγών (ἀγων-), ὁ contest; trial (3a)  
 ἀγωνίζομαι contest, go to law  
 ἀδελφός, ὁ brother (2a)  
 ἀδικέω be unjust; commit a crime; wrong  
 ἀδίκημα (ἀδικηματ-), τό crime, wrong (3b)  
 ἀδικος ον unjust  
 ἀδύνατος ον impossible  
 †ἄδω = ἀείδω  
 ἀεί always  
 †ἀείδω sing  
 ἀέκων = ἄκων  
 ἀθάνατος ον immortal  
 Ἄθηναζε to Athens  
 Ἄθηναι, αἱ Athens (1a)  
 Ἄθηναῖος, ὁ Athenian (2a)  
 Ἄθηνησι at Athens  
 ἀθλιος α ον pathetic, miserable, wretched  
 ἀθροίζω gather, collect  
 ἀθυμέω be downhearted, gloomy, disheartened  
 ἀθυμία, ἡ lack of spirit, depression (1b)

αἰδώς, ἡ respect for others, shame (acc. αἰδῶ; gen. αἰδοῦς; dat. αἰδοῖ)  
 αἰεῖ = ἀεῖ  
 αἰρέομαι (ἐλ-) choose  
 †αἰρέω (ἐλ-) take, capture; convict  
 †αἰσθάνομαι (αἰσθ-) perceive, notice (+acc. or gen.)  
 αἰσχρός ἢ ὄν ugly (of people); base, shameful (comp.)  
 αἰσχύων; sup. αἰσχιστος  
 †αἰσχύνομαι be ashamed, feel shame (before)  
 αἰτέω ask (for)  
 αἰτία, ἡ reason, cause; responsibility (1b)  
 αἷτιος α ον responsible (for), guilty (of) (+gen.)  
 αἶχμή, ἡ spear-point (1a)  
 ἀκήκοα perf. ind. of ἀκούω  
 ἀκηκοώς υἱά ὅς (-στ-) perf. part. of ἀκούω  
 ἀκοή, ἡ hearing (1a)  
 ἀκολουθεῖω follow, accompany (+dat.)  
 ἀκόσμητος ον unprovided for  
 †ἀκούω hear, listen (to) (+gen. of person, gen. or

- acc. of thing) (fut. ἀκούσομαι)
- ἀκριβῶς accurately, closely
- ἀκρόπολις, ἡ Acropolis, citadel (3e)
- ἄκυρος ον invalid
- ἄκων ἄκουσα ἄκων (ἄκοντ-) unwilling(ly)
- ἀλ- aor. stem of ἀλίσκομαι
- ἀλήθεια, ἡ truth (1b)
- ἀληθῆ, τά the truth
- ἀλίσκομαι (ἀλ-) be convicted; be caught
- ἀλλ' οὖν well anyway; however that may be
- ἀλλά but
- ἀλλήλους each other, one another (2a)
- ἄλλος η ο other, the rest of
- ἄλλος . . . ἄλλον one . . . another
- ἄλλοτριος α ον someone else's; alien
- ἄλλως otherwise; in vain
- ἄλογος ον speechless; without reason
- ἅμα at the same time
- ἄμαθής ἐς ignorant
- ἄμαρτάνω (ἄμαρτ-) err; do wrong; make a mistake; miss (+gen.)
- ἄμαρτε 3rd s. (str.) aor of ἄμαρτάνω (no augment)
- ἀμείβομαι answer, reply to (+acc.)
- ἀμείνων ἄμεινον (ἄμεινον-) better
- ἀμελής ἐς uncaring
- ἀμήχανος ον impossible, impracticable
- ἀμύνω keep off, withstand
- ἀμφέρομαι (ἀμφηλυθ-) surround (+acc.)
- ἀμφίπολος, ἡ handmaiden (2a)
- ἀμφότερος α ον both
- \*ἄν (+ind.) conditional (+opt.) potential; (+subj.) indefinite
- ἀναβαίνω (ἀναβα-) go up, come up
- ἀναβάς (ἀναβαιντ-) aor. part of ἀναβαίνω
- ἀναγκάζω force, compel
- ἀναγκαῖος α ον necessary
- ἀνάγκη, ἡ necessity (1a)
- ἀνάγκη ἐστί it is obligatory (for x (acc. or dat.) το - (inf.))
- ἀναιρέω (ἀνελ-) pick up
- ἀναιτίος ον innocent
- ἀναλαμβάνω (ἀναλαβ-) take back, up
- ἀναλίσκω (ἀναλωσ-) spend, use, kill
- ἀναμένω (ἀναμειν-) wait, hold on
- ἄναξ (ἀνακτ-), ὁ lord, prince, king (3a)
- ἀναπείθω persuade over to one's side
- ἄνασσα, ἡ princess (1c)
- ἀναχωρέω retreat
- ἀνδρείος α ον brave, manly
- ἄνεμος, ὁ wind (2a)
- ἀνέστην I stood up (aor. of ἀνίσταμαι)
- ἀνέστηκα I am standing (perf. of ἀνίσταμαι)
- ἀνεστῶς ὡσα ὅς (ἀνεστωτ-) standing (perf. part. of ἀνίσταμαι)
- ἄνευ (+gen.) without
- ἄνέχομαι put up with (+gen.)
- ἄνθρωπος, ὁ man (3a)
- ἄνθρωπος, ὁ man, fellow (2a)
- ἀνίσταμαι (ἀναστα-) get up, stand up, emigrate
- ἀνόητος ον foolish
- ἀνομία, ἡ lawlessness (1b)
- ἀντί (+gen.) instead of, for
- ἀντιδικός, ὁ contestant in lawsuit (2a)
- ἄνω above
- ἄξιος α ον worth, worthy of (+gen.)
- ἄοπλος ον unarmed
- ἀπαγγέλλω (ἀπαγγειλ-) announce, report
- ἀπαγορεύω (ἀπειπ-) forbid
- ἄπαγω (ἀπαγαγ-) lead, take away
- ἄπαις (ἀπαιδ-) childless
- ἀπαιτέω demand (x (acc.) from γ (acc.))
- ἀπάνευθε(ν) afar off
- ἄπασ ἀπασα ἄπαν (ἀπαντ-) all, the whole of
- ἀπέβην aor. of ἀποβαίνω
- ἀπέδωκα aor. of ἀποδίδωμι
- ἀπέθανον aor. of ἀποθνήσκω
- ἄπειμι be absent
- ἄπειρος ον inexperienced in (+gen.)
- ἀπελεύθερος, ὁ, ἡ freedman, freedwoman (2a)
- ἀπελθ- aor. stem of ἀπέρχομαι
- ἀπέρχομαι (ἀπελθ-) go away, depart
- ἀπέχομαι (ἀποσχ-) refrain, keep away from (+gen.)
- ἀπήλθον aor. of ἀπέρχομαι
- ἀπιέναι inf. of ἀπέρχομαι/ἄπειμι
- ἄπιθι imper. of ἀπέρχομαι/ἄπειμι
- ἀπικνέομαι = ἀφικνέομαι
- ἀπιών οὔσα ὄν part. of ἀπέρχομαι/ἄπειμι
- ἀπό (+gen.) from, away from
- ἀποβαίνω (ἀποβα-) leave, depart
- ἀποβλέπω look steadfastly at (and away from everything else)
- ἀποδίδωμι (ἀποδο-) give back, return
- ἀποδο- aor. stem of ἀποδίδωμι
- ἀποδραμ- aor. stem of ἀποτρέχω

- ἀποδώσειν fut. inf. of ἀποδίδωμι  
ἀποθαν- aor. stem of ἀποθνήσκω  
†ἀποθνήσκω (ἀποθαν-) die  
ἀποκρίνομαι (ἀποκριν-) answer  
ἀπόκρισις, ἡ reply, answer (3c)  
ἀποκτείνω (ἀποκτείν-) kill  
ἀπολαβ- aor. stem of ἀπολαμβάνω  
ἀπολεσ- aor. stem of ἀπόλλυμι  
†ἀπόλλυμι (ἀπολεσ-) kill, ruin, destroy: mid./pass. be killed (aor. ἀπωλόμην); perf. mid. I have been killed, I am done for (ἀπόλωλα)  
ἀπολογέομαι make a speech in defence, defend oneself  
ἀπολογία, ἡ speech in one's defence (1b)  
ἀπολ- aor. stem of ἀπόλλυμαι  
ἀπολύω acquit, release  
ἀπόλωλα perf. of ἀπόλλυμαι  
ἀποπέμπω send away, divorce  
ἀπορέω have no resources, be at a loss  
ἀπορία, ἡ lack of provisions, perplexity (1b)  
ἀποτρέχω (ἀποδραμ-) run away, run off  
ἀποφαίνω reveal, show  
ἀποφέρω (ἀπενεγκ-) carry back  
ἀποφεύγω (ἀποφυγ-) escape, run off  
ἀποχωρέω go away, depart  
ἀποψηφίζομαι vote against; reject; acquit (+gen.)  
ἄπτομαι touch (+gen.)  
†ἄπτω light, fasten, fix  
ἀπώλεσα aor. of ἀπόλλυμι  
\*ἄρα then, consequently (marking an inference); straightaway  
\*ἄρα ? (direct q.)  
ἄργύριον, τό silver, money (2b)  
†ἄρέσκω please (+dat.)  
ἀρετή, ἡ courage, excellence, quality (1a)  
ἀριστος ἦ ον best, very good  
†ἄρπάζω seize, plunder, snatch  
ἄρτι just now, recently  
ἀρχή, ἡ beginning; rule, office, position; board of magistrates (1a)  
ἄρχομαι (mid.) begin (+gen./inf./part.); (pass.) be ruled over  
†ἄρχω rule (+gen.); begin (+gen.)  
ἄρχων (ἄρχοντ-), ὁ archon (3a)  
ἀσέβεια, ἡ irreverence to the gods (1b)  
ἀσεβέω (εἰς) commit sacrilege upon  
ἀσεβής ἐς impious, unholy  
ἀσθένεια, ἡ illness, weakness (1b)  
ἀσθενέω be ill, fall ill  
ἀσθενής ἐς weak, ill  
ἀσπάζομαι greet, welcome  
ἀστή, ἡ female citizen (1a)  
ἀστός, ὁ male citizen (2a)  
ἄστυ, τό city (3f)  
ἀσφαλής ἐς safe, secure  
ἀτάρ but  
ἄτε since, seeing that (+part.)  
ἀτιμάζω hold in dishonour, dishonour  
ἀτιμία, ἡ loss of citizen rights (1b)  
ἄτιμος ον deprived of citizen rights  
αὐ again, moreover  
αὐδάω speak, say  
αὐθις again  
αὐλή, ἡ courtyard (1a)  
αὐριον tomorrow  
αὐτάρ but, then  
αὐτίκα at once  
αὐτόν ἦν ὁ him, her, it, them  
αὐτός ἦ ὁ self  
ὁ αὐτός the same  
ἀφαιρέομαι (ἀφελ-) take x (acc.) from y (acc.), claim  
ἀφειλόμην aor. of ἀφαιρέομαι  
ἀφείναι aor. inf. of ἀφίημι  
††ἀφέλκω (ἀφελκυσ-) drag off  
ἀφελ- aor. stem of ἀφαιρέομαι  
††ἀφίημι (ἀφε-) release, let go  
†ἀφικνέομαι (ἀφικ-) arrive, come  
ἀφικόμην aor. of ἀφικνέομαι  
ἀφίσταμαι relinquish claim to (+gen.), revolt from (+gen.)
- B**  
βαδίζω walk, go (fut. βαδιούμαι)  
βαθύς εἶα ὕ deep  
†βαίνω (βα-) go, come, walk  
†βάλλω (βαλ-) hit, throw  
βάλλ' εἰς κόρακας go to hell!  
βάρβαρος, ὁ barbarian, foreigner (2a)  
βάρος, τό weight, burden (3c)  
βαρύς εἶα ὕ heavy, weighty  
βαρέως φέρω take badly, find hard to bear  
βασιλεύς, ὁ king, king archon (3g)  
βασιλεύω be king, be king archon, be queen  
βέβαιος (α) ον secure  
βέλτιστος ἦ ον best  
βελτίων βέλτιον (βελτιον-) better  
βιάζομαι use force  
βίος, ὁ life; means, livelihood (2a)  
βλέπω look (2c)

βληθείς εἶσα ἐν (βληθεῖτ-) aor. part. pass. of βάλλω	γεωργός, ὁ farmer (2a)	δέκα ten
βοάω shout (for)	γῆ, ἡ land, earth (1a)	δέμνια, τά bed, bedding (2b)
βοή, ἡ shout (1a)	γῆμ- aor. stem of γαμέω	δένδρον, τό tree (2b)
βοήθεια, ἡ help, rescue operation (1b)	†*γίγνομαι (γεν-) become, be born, happen, arise	δεξιὰ, ἡ right hand (1b)
βοηθέω run to help (+dat.)	†γιγνώσκω (γνο-) know, think, resolve	δεξιός ἄ ὄν right, clever
βουλευόμαι discuss, take advice	γίνομαι=γίγνομαι	†δέομαι need, ask, beg (+gen.)
βουλευτής, ὁ member of council (1d)	γλαυκώπις (γλαυκωπιδ-), ἡ grey-eyed	δέον it being necessary
βουλή, ἡ council (1a)	γλυκὺς εἶα ὕ sweet	δέρμα (δερματ-), τό skin (3b)
†βούλομαι wish, want	γνήσιος α ὄν legitimate, genuine	δεσμός, ὁ bond (2a)
βραδέως slowly	γνοῦς γνοῦσα γνόν (γνοστ-) aor. part. of γιγνώσκω	δέσποινα, ἡ mistress (1c)
βραχύς εἶα ὕ short, brief	γνώμη, ἡ judgment, mind, purpose, plan (1a)	δεσπότης, ὁ master (1d)
βροτός, ὁ mortal, man (2a)	*γούν at any rate	δεῦρο here, over here
βωμός, ὁ altar (2a)	γούνα, τά knees (2b) (sometimes γούνατα (3b))	†δέχομαι receive
Γ	γραῦς (γρα-), ἡ old woman (3a; but acc. s. γραῦν; acc. pl. γραῦς)	*δῆ then, indeed
ἄγαθέ=ἀγαθέ	γραφῆ, ἡ indictment, charge, case (1a)	δῆλος ἡ ὄν clear, obvious
γαῖα (1c)=γῆ, ἡ (1a)	γραφῆν γράφομαι indict x (acc.) on charge of γ (gen.)	δηλόω show, reveal
†γαμέω (γῆμ-) marry	γράφομαι indict, charge	δημιουργικός ἡ ὄν technical, of a workman
γάμος, ὁ marriage (2a)	†γράφω propose (a decree); write	δημιουργός, ὁ craftsman, workman, expert, (2a)
*γάρ for	γυνή (γυναικ-), ἡ woman, wife (3a)	δῆμος, ὁ people; deme (2a)
γάρ δῆ really, I assure you	Δ	δήπου of course, surely
*γε at least (denotes some sort of reservation)	δαίμων (δαιμον-), ὁ god, demon (3a)	*δῆτα then
γεγένημαι perf. of γίγνομαι	†δάκνω (δακ-) bite, worry	*διά (+acc.) because of (+gen.) through
γεγενημένα, τά events, occurrences (2b) (perf. part. of γίγνομαι)	δάκρυον, τό tear (2b)	διὰ τί; why?
γέγονα perf. of γίγνομαι (part. γεγονώς or γεγώς)	δακρύω weep	διαβαίνω (διαβα-) cross
γείτων (γειτον-), ὁ neighbour (3a)	*δέ and, but	διαβάλλω (διαβαλ-) slander
†γελάω (γελασ-) laugh	δεήσει fut of δεῖ	διαβολή, ἡ slander (1a)
γεν- aor. stem of γίγνομαι	†δεῖ it is necessary for x (acc.) to - (inf.)	διάκειμαι be in x (adv.) state, mood
γένεσις, ἡ birth (3c)	†δείκνυμι (δειξ-) show	διακρίνω (διακριν-) judge between, decide
γενναῖος α ὄν noble, fine	δεινός ἡ ὄν terrible, dire, astounding, clever; clever at (+inf.)	διακωλύω prevent
γεννήτης, ὁ member of a γένος (1d)		διαλέγομαι converse
γένος, τό γένος; race, kind (3c)		διαλείπω (διαλιπ-) leave
γέρων (γεροντ-), ὁ old man (3a)		διανοέομαι intend, plan
γεῦμα (γευματ-), τό taste, sample (3b)		διάνοια, ἡ intention, plan (1b)
γεύομαι taste		διαπράττομαι (διαπραξ-) do, perform, act
		διατίθημι (διαθε-) dispose, put x (acc.) in γ (adv.) state
		διατριβή, ἡ delay, pastime, discussion, way of life (1a)
		διατριβῶ pass time, waste time
		διαφέρω differ from (gen.):



make a difference; be superior to (gen.)  
 διαφεύγω (διαφυγ-) get away, flee  
 †διαφθείρω (διαφθειρ-) corrupt; destroy; kill  
 διαφυγή, ἡ means of escape, flight (1a)  
 διδάσκαλος, ὁ teacher (2a)  
 †διδάσκω teach  
 †δίδωμι (δο-) give, grant  
 δίκην δίδωμι be punished, pay the penalty  
 διεξέρχομαι (διεξελθ-) go through, relate (fut. διέξειμι)  
 διέρχομαι (διελθ-) go through, relate  
 διεφθάρμην plup. pass. of διαφθείρω  
 διηγέομαι explain, relate, go through  
 δικάζω be a juror; make a judgment  
 δίκαιος α ον just  
 δικαιοσύνη, ἡ justice (1a)  
 δικανικός ἡ ὄν judicial  
 δικαστήριον, τό law-court (2b)  
 δικαστής, ὁ juror, dikast (1d)  
 δίκη, ἡ lawsuit; justice; penalty (1a)  
 δίκην δίδωμι be punished, pay the penalty  
 δίκην λαμβάνω punish, exact one's due from (παρά + gen.)  
 διοικέω administer, run  
 δῖος α ον godlike  
 διότι because  
 διώκω pursue, prosecute  
 δο- aor. stem of δίδωμι  
 δοκεῖ it seems a good idea to x (dat.) to do y (inf.); x (dat.) decides to - (inf.)  
 δοκέω seem, consider (self) to be  
 δόμοι, οἱ house, home (2a)

δόξα, ἡ reputation, opinion (1c)  
 δούλος, ὁ slave (2a)  
 δούς δοῦσα δόν (δοντ-) aor part. of δίδωμι  
 δράμα (δραματ-), τό play, drama (3b)  
 δραχμή, ἡ drachma (coin) (pay for two days' attendance at ekklesia) (1a)  
 †δράω (δρασ-) do, act  
 †δύναμαι be able  
 δύναμις, ἡ power, ability, faculty (3c)  
 δυνατός ἡ ὄν able, possible  
 δύο two  
 δυστυχής ἐς unlucky  
 δῶκαν 3rd pl. aor. of δίδωμι  
 δωρέω bestow, give as a gift  
 δῶρον, τό gift, bribe (2b)

## E

ἐ- augment (remove this and try again under stem of verb)  
 \*ἐάν (+subj.) if (ever)  
 ἐαυτόν ἢ ὄν himself/herself/itself  
 ἔαω allow  
 ἐγγράφω enrol, enlist, register  
 ἐγγυάω engage, promise  
 ἐγγύς (+gen.) near, nearby  
 ἐγκλείω shut in, lock in  
 ἐγνων aor. of γινώσκω  
 ἐγώ I  
 ἐγωγε I at least, for my part  
 ἐδόθην aor. pass. of δίδωμι  
 ἔδομαι fut. of ἐσθίω  
 ἔδωκα aor. of δίδωμι  
 †ἐθέλω (ἐθελσ-) wish, want  
 ἔθεσαν 3rd pl. aor. of τίθημι  
 ἔθηκα aor. of τίθημι  
 ἔθος, τό manner, habit (3c)  
 \*εἰ ἢ  
 εἶ 2nd s. of εἶμι  
 εἶασ- aor. stem of εἶμι  
 εἰδείην opt. of οἶδα  
 εἰδέναι inf. of οἶδα  
 εἶδον aor. of ὁράω  
 εἰδώς εἶδνία εἰδός (εἶδοτ-) knowing (part. of οἶδα)  
 εἶεν very well then!  
 \*εἴθε (+opt.) I wish that! would that! if only!  
 εἰκός probable, reasonable, fair  
 εἴκοσι(ν) twenty  
 εἰκότως reasonably, rightly  
 εἴληφα perf. of λαμβάνω  
 εἰλόμην aor. of αἰρέομαι  
 εἰμαρμένος ἡ ον allotted, appointed  
 εἶματα, τά clothes (3b)  
 †\*εἶμι be  
 †\*εἶμι I shall go (inf. εἶναι: impf. ἦα I went)  
 εἶναι to be (inf. of εἶμι)  
 εἶπ- aor. stem of λέγω  
 εἶπέ speak! tell me!  
 εἶπον aor. of λέγω  
 εἶρηκα I have said (perf. act. of λέγω)  
 εἶρημαι I have been said (perf. pass. of λέγω)  
 εἰρήνη, ἡ peace (1a)  
 εἰρήνητε ἄγω live in, be at peace  
 \*εἰς (+acc.) to, into, onto  
 εἰς μία ἐν (ἐν-) one  
 εἰσαγγελία, ἡ impeachment (1b)  
 εἰσαγγέλλω (εἰσαγγελ-) impeach  
 εἰσάγω (εἰσαγαγ-) introduce  
 εἰσεληλυθώς via ὅς (-οτ-) perf. part. of εἰσέρχομαι  
 εἰσελθ- aor. stem of εἰσέρχομαι  
 εἰσέρχομαι (εἰσελθ-) enter  
 εἰσήγαγον aor. of εἰσάγω  
 εἰσῆα impf. of εἰσέρχομαι εἰσειμι  
 εἰσηλθον aor. of εἰσέρχομαι  
 εἰσιδ- aor. stem of εἰσοράω

εἰσιέναι inf. of

εἰσέρχομαι/εἴσειμι

εἰσῶν οὔσα ὄν (-οντ-) part.

of εἰσέρχομαι/εἴσειμι

εἶσομαι fut. of οἶδα

εἰσοράω (εἰσιδ-) behold,

look at

εἰσπεο- aor. stem of εἰσπίπτω

εἰσπίπτω (εἰσπεο-) fall into,

on

εἰσφέρω (εἰσενεγκ-) bring,

carry in

εἴτα then, next

εἴτε ... εἴτε whether ... or

εἶχοι imperf. of ἔχω

ἐκ (+gen.) out of

ἐκαστος η ὄν each

ἐκάτερος α ὄν each (of two)

ἐκβαλ- aor. stem of ἐκβάλλω

ἐκβάλλω (ἐκβαλ-) throw

out, divorce; break down,

break open

ἐκβληθεῖς εἶσα ἐν (-εντ-) aor.

part. pass. of ἐκβάλλω

ἐκδέχομαι receive in turn

ἐκδίδωμι (ἐκδο-) give in

marriage

ἐκδο- aor. stem of ἐκδίδωμι

ἐκδύομαι undress

ἐκεῖ there

ἐκεῖνος η ὄ that. (s)he

ἐκεῖνοσί that there (pointing)

ἐκεῖσε there, (to) there

ἐκκλησία, ἡ assembly,

ekklesia (1b)

ἐκπέμπω send out, divorce

ἐκπεο- aor. stem of ἐκπίπτω

ἐκπίπτω (ἐκπεο-) be thrown

out, divorced

ἐκπορίζω supply, provide

††ἐκτίνω (ἐκτεισ-) pay

ἐκτρέχω (ἐκδραμ-) run out

ἐκφέρω (ἐξενεγκ-) carry out;

(often: carry out for burial)

ἐκφεύγω (ἐκφυγ-) escape

ἐκφορέω carry off

ἐκφυγ- aor. stem of ἐκφεύγω

ἐκῶν οὔσα ὄν

(ἐκοντ-) willing(ly)

ἐλαβον aor. of λαμβάνω

ἐλαθον aor. of λανθάνω

ἐλάττων ἐλαττον (ἐλαττον-)

smaller; fewer; less

ἐλαχον aor. of λαγχάνω

ἐλεγχος, ὁ examination,

refutation (2a)

ἐλέγχω refute, argue against

ἐλ- aor. stem of αἰρέω/ομαι

ἐλευθερία, ἡ freedom (1b)

ἐλεύθερος α ὄν free

ἐλευθερώω set free

ἐλήλυθα perf. of ἔρχομαι

ἐλήφθην aor. pass. of λαμβάνω

ἐλθέ come! (s.)

ἐλθ- aor. stem of ἔρχομαι

ἐλιπον aor. of λείπω

Ἑλλας (Ἑλλαδ-), ἡ Greece

(3a)

Ἑλλην (Ἑλλην-), ὁ Greek

(3a)

†ἐλπίζω hope, expect (+fut.

inf.)

ἐλπίς (ἐλπίδ-), ἡ hope,

expectation (3a)

ἐμαθον aor. of μαθάνω

ἐμαυτόν ἡν myself

ἐμβαίνω (ἐμβα-) embark

ἐμείνα aor. of μένω

ἐμεινωτόν=ἐμαυτόν

ἐμμεναι=εἶναι

ἐμός ἡ ὄν my, mine

ἐμπειρος ὄν skilled,

experienced

ἐμπεο- aor. stem of ἐμπίπτω

ἐμπίπτω (ἐμπεο-) (ἐν)

(εἰς) fall into, on, upon

ἐμφανής ἐς open, obvious

\*ἐν (+gen.) in the house of

(+dat) in, on, among

ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile

ἐν- stem of εἰς one

ἐναντίον (+gen.) opposite, in

front of

ἐνδον inside

ἐνεγκ- aor. stem of φέρω

ἐνεμι be in

ἐνεκα (+gen.) because, for  
the sake of (usually follows  
its noun)

ἐνέπεσον aor. of ἐμπίπτω

ἐνέχυρον, τό security, pledge  
(2b)

ἐνθα there, where

ἐνθάδε here

ἐνθυμέομαι take to heart, be  
angry at

ἐνί=ἐν

ἐνταῦθα here, at this point

ἐντεῦθεν from then, from

there

ἐντίθημι (ἐνθε-) place in, put  
in

ἐντυγχάνω (ἐντυχ-) meet  
with, come upon (+dat.)

ἐξ=ἐκ

ἐξάγω (ἐξαγαγ-) lead, bring  
out

ἐξαίφνης suddenly

ἐξαπατάω deceive, trick

ἐξέβαλον aor. of ἐκβάλλω

ἐξεδόθη aor. pass. of ἐκδίδωμι

ἐξέδωκα aor. act. of ἐκδίδωμι

ἐξελέγχω convict, refute,  
expose

ἐξελθ- aor. stem of ἐξέρχομαι

ἐξέρχομαι (ἐξελθ-) go out,

come out

ἐξεστί it is possible for x (dat.)

το - (inf.)

ἐξετάζω question closely

ἐξευρ- aor. stem of ἐξευρίσκω

ἐξευρίσκω (ἐξευρ-) find out

ἐξήλθον aor. of ἐξέρχομαι

ἐξήνεγκα wk. aor. of ἐκφέρω

ἐξιέναι inf. of

ἐξέρχομαι/εἴσειμι

ἐξόν it being permitted,

possible

ἐξω (+gen.) outside

ἔοικα seem; resemble (+dat.)

ἔοικε it seems, is reasonable; it

is right for (+dat.)

ἐπαγγέλλω

(ἐπαγγειλ-) order

- ἔπαθον aor. of πάσχω  
 † ἔπαινέω (ἐπαινεσ-) praise, agree  
 ἐπανελθ- aor. stem of ἐπανερχομαι  
 ἐπανερχομαι (ἐπανελθ-) return  
 ἐπανήλθον aor. of ἐπανερχομαι  
 ἐπεὶ since, when  
 \*ἐπειδάν (+subj.) when(ever)  
 ἐπειδὴ when, since, because  
 ἐπεισεύρομαι (ἐπεισελθ-) attack  
 ἔπειτα then, next  
 ἐπεῖτε when, since  
 ἐπέρχομαι (ἐπελθ-) go against, attack  
 ἐπέσχον aor. of ἐπέχω  
 ἐπέχω (ἐπισχ-) hold on, restrain, check  
 \*ἐπί (+acc.) against, at, to (+gen.) on; in the time of (+dat.) at, near; for the purpose of  
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ἐπιδειξ-) prove, show, demonstrate  
 ἐπιδημέω come to town, be in town  
 ἐπιεικὴς ἐς reasonable, moderate, fair  
 ἐπιθόμην aor. of πείθομαι  
 ἐπιθυμέω desire, yearn for (+gen.)  
 ἐπικαλέομαι call upon (to witness)  
 ἐπιλανθάνομαι (ἐπιλαθ-) forget (+gen.)  
 ἐπιμέλεια, ἡ concern, care (1b)  
 ἐπιμελέομαι care for (+gen.)  
 ἐπιμελής ἐς careful  
 ἐπισκοπέομαι (ἐπισκεψ-) review  
 † ἐπίσταμαι know how to (+inf.); understand  
 ἐπισχ- aor. stem of ἐπέχω  
 ἐπιτηδύειος α ον suitable, useful for  
 ἐπιχειρέω undertake, set to work  
 † ἔπομαι (σπ-) follow (+dat.)  
 ἔπος, τό word (3c) (uncontr. pl. ἔπεα)  
 ἐρ- see ἐρωτάω οἱ ἐρέω  
 † ἐργάζομαι work, perform ἔργον, τό task, job (2b)  
 ἐρέω fut. of λέγω  
 ἐρήμος ον empty, deserted, devoid of  
 † ἔρχομαι (ἐλθ-) go, come  
 † ἐρωτάω (ἐρ-) ask  
 ἐς=εἰς  
 ἐσθῆς (ἐσθητ-), ἡ clothing (3a)  
 † ἐσθίω (φαγ-) eat  
 ἐσθλός ἢ ὄν fine, noble, good  
 ἔσομαι fut. of εἰμί (be) (3rd s. ἔσται)  
 ἐσπόμην aor. of ἔπομαι  
 ἔσσι=εἶ you (s.) are  
 ἔσται 3rd s. fut. of εἰμί (be)  
 ἔσταν they stopped (3rd p. aor. of ἵσταμαι)  
 ἐστερημένος η ον perf. part. pass. of στερέω  
 ἐστηκώς νία ὄς (-στ-) standing (perf. part. of ἵσταμαι)  
 ἔσχατος η ον worst, furthest, last  
 ἔσχον aor. of ἔχω  
 ἑταίρα, ἡ prostitute, courtesan (1b)  
 ἑταῖρος, ὁ male companion (2a)  
 ἕτερος α ον one (or the other) of two  
 ἕτερος . . ἕτερον one . . . another  
 ἔτι still, yet  
 ἔτι καὶ νῦν even now, still now  
 ἐτοίμος η ον ready (to) (+inf.)  
 ἔτος, τό year (3c)  
 ἔτραπόμην aor. of τρέπομαι  
 ἔτυχον aor. of τυγχάνω  
 εὖ well  
 εὖ ποιέω treat well, do good to  
 εὖ πράττω fare well, be prosperous  
 εὐδαίμων εὐδαμων (εὐδαιμον-) happy, rich, blessed by the gods  
 εὐθύς at once, straightaway (+gen.) straight towards  
 εὐνοία, ἡ good will (1b)  
 εὖνους ουν well-disposed  
 εὐπλόκαμος ον with pretty hair  
 εὐπορία, ἡ abundance, means (1b)  
 εὐπρεπὴς ἐς nicely, proper, becoming  
 εὕρ- aor. stem of εὕρισκω  
 εὕρηκα perf. of εὕρισκω  
 † εὕρισκω (εὕρ-) find, come upon  
 εὐρύς εἰα ὕ broad, wide  
 εὐσεβέω act righteously  
 εὐτυχὴς ἐς fortunate, lucky  
 εὐχή, ἡ prayer (1a)  
 εὐχομαι pray  
 ἐφ' = ἐπί  
 ἐφάνην aor. of φαίνομαι  
 ἔφην impf. of φημί  
 ἐφοπλίζω equip, get ready  
 ἔφυν be naturally (aor. of φύομαι)  
 ἔχθρα, ἡ enmity, hostility (1b)  
 ἐχθρός, ὁ enemy (2a)  
 ἐχθρός ἂ ὄν hostile, enemy  
 † ἔχω (σχ-) have, hold (+adv.) be (in x (adv.) condition)  
 ἐν νῷ ἔχω have in mind, intend  
 εἶών=ἰών being  
 εἶωρα 3rd s. impf. of ὁράω

ἔως, ἡ dawn  
 \*ἔως (+ἀν +subj) until  
 (+opt.) until  
 (+ind.) while; until  
 ἑωυτόν = ἑαυτόν

## Z

Ζεὺς (Δι-), ὁ Zeus (3a)  
 ζημία, ἡ fine (1b)  
 ζημιόω fine, penalise, punish  
 ζητέω look for, seek  
 ζῶον, τό animal, creature,  
 living thing (2b)

## H

ἡ- augment (if not under ἡ- look  
 under ἄ- or ἔ-)  
 ἢ or; than  
 ἦ 1st s. impf. of εἶμι (be)  
 ἦ or  
 ἦ δ' ὅς he said  
 ἦα impf. of ἔρχομαι/εἶμι  
 ἡγεμών (ἡγεμον-), ὁ leader  
 (3a)  
 ἡγέομαι lead (+dat.); think,  
 consider  
 ἡδέ and  
 ἦδει 3rd s. past of οἶδα  
 ἦδεσαν 3rd pl. past of οἶδα  
 ἡδέως with pleasure, sweetly  
 ἦδη by now, now, already  
 ἦδη past of οἶδα  
 †ἡδομαι enjoy, be pleased  
 with (+dat.)  
 ἡδονή, ἡ pleasure (1a)  
 ἡδύς εἶα ὕ sweet, pleasant  
 (sup. ἡδιστος)  
 ἡκιστα least of all, no, not  
 ἦκω come  
 ἦλθον aor. of ἔρχομαι/εἶμι  
 ἡλιος, ὁ sun (2a)  
 ἡμαρ (ἡματ-), τό day (3b)  
 ἡμεῖς we  
 ἦμιν 1st pl. impf. of εἶμι  
 ἡμέρα, ἡ day (1b)  
 ἡμέτερος α ον our  
 ἡμίονος, ὁ mule (2a)  
 ἦν 3rd s. impf. of εἶμι

ἦν δ' ἐγώ I said  
 ἦνεγκον aor. of φέρω  
 ἠπιστάμην impf. of  
 ἐπίσταμαι  
 Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ Herakles (3d  
 uncontr.)  
 ἠρόμην aor. of ἐρωτάω  
 ἦσαν 3rd pl. impf. of εἶμι  
 ἦσθα 2nd s. impf. of εἶμι  
 ἠσθόμην aor. of αἰσθάνομαι  
 ἠσυχάζω be quiet, keep quiet  
 ἠσυχία, ἡ quiet, peace (1b)  
 ἠσυχος η ον quiet, peaceful  
 ἦτε 2nd pl. impf. of εἶμι or  
 2nd pl. subj. of εἶμι  
 ἦττων ἦττον (ἦττον-) lesser,  
 weaker  
 ἠύρον aor. of εὐρίσκω  
 ἠώς, ἡ (=ἔως, ἡ) dawn (acc.  
 ἠῶ; gen. ἠοῦς; dat. ἠοῖ)

## Θ

θάλαμος, ὁ bedchamber (2a)  
 θάλαττα, ἡ sea (1a)  
 θαν- aor. stem of θνήσκω  
 θάνατος, ὁ death (2a)  
 θαυμάζω wonder at  
 θε- aor. stem of τίθημι  
 θεά, ἡ goddess (1b)  
 θεάομαι watch, gaze at  
 θεατής, ὁ spectator. (pl.)  
 audience (1d)  
 θεῖος α ον divine  
 θεῖτο 3rd s. aor. opt. of  
 τίθεμαι  
 θέμενος η ον aor. part of  
 τίθεμαι  
 θεός ὁ γι god (2a)  
 θεραπαινά, ἡ maidservant  
 (1c)  
 θεραπεύω look after, tend  
 θεραπῶν (θεραποντ-), ὁ  
 servant (3a)  
 θές place! set! put! (aor.  
 imper. (s.) of τίθημι)  
 θέσθαι aor. inf. of τίθεμαι  
 θέω run

θήκε(ν) 3rd s. aor. of τίθημι  
 (no augment)  
 θηρίον, τό beast (2b)  
 θήσεσθε 2nd pl. fut. of  
 τίθεμαι  
 †θνήσκω (θαι-) die  
 θνητός ἡ ὄν mortal  
 θορυβέω make a disturbance,  
 din  
 θόρυβος, ὁ noise, din,  
 clamour, hustle and bustle  
 (2a)  
 θυγάτηρ (θυγατ(ε)ρ-), ἡ  
 daughter (3a)  
 θυμός, ὁ heart; anger (2a)  
 θύρα, ἡ door (1b)  
 θυσία, ἡ sacrifice (1b)  
 θύω sacrifice  
 θώμεθα 1st pl. aor. subj. of  
 τίθεμαι

## I

ιατρικός ἡ ὄν medical, of  
 healing  
 ἱατρός, ὁ doctor (2a)  
 ἰδ- aor. stem of ὀράω  
 ἰδιώτης, ὁ layman, private  
 citizen (1d)  
 ἰδον 1st s. aor. of ὀράω (no  
 augment)  
 ἰδοὺ look! here! hey!  
 ἰέναι inf. of ἔρχομαι/εἶμι  
 ἱερά, τά rites, sacrifices (2b)  
 ἱερόν, τό sanctuary (2b)  
 ἴθι imper. s. of ἔρχομαι/εἶμι  
 ἱκανός ἡ ὄν sufficient; able to  
 (+inf.); capable of (+inf.)  
 ἱκάνω come, come to/upon  
 (+acc.)  
 ἱκετεύω beg, supplicate  
 ἱκέτης, ὁ suppliant (1d)  
 ἴκνέομαι (ικ-) come to,  
 arrive at  
 ἰκόμην aor. of ἱκνέομαι  
 ἱμάτιον, τό cloak (2b)  
 \*ἴνα (+subj./opt.) in order  
 to/that; (+indic.) where  
 ἵππος, ὁ horse (2a)

ἴσασι(ν) 3rd pl. of οἶδα  
 ἴσμεν 1st pl. of οἶδα  
 ἴστε 2nd pl. of οἶδα  
 ἴστημι (στησ-) set up, raise  
 ἴσταμαι (στα-) stand  
 ἰσχυρός ἄ ὄν strong, powerful  
 ἴσως perhaps  
 ἴω subj. of ἔρχομαι/εἶμι  
 ἰών ἰούσα ἰόν (ἰοντ-) part. of  
 ἔρχομαι/εἶμι

## Κ

κάδ=κατά  
 καθαίρω (καθηρ-) cleanse,  
 purify  
 καθέστηκα I have been put  
 (perf. of καθίσταμαι)  
 καθεστώς ὡσα ὅς  
 (καθεστωτ-) having been  
 made (perf. part. of  
 καθίσταμαι)  
 καθεύδω sleep  
 †κᾶθημαι be seated  
 καθίζομαι sit down  
 καθίζω sit down  
 καθίσταμαι (καστα-) be  
 placed, put, made  
 καθίστημι (καστησ-) set  
 up, make, place, put x (acc.)  
 in (εἰς) γ  
 καθοράω (κατιδ-) see, look  
 down on  
 \*καί 2nd, also, even  
 \*τε . . . καί both A and B  
 \*καί γάρ in fact; yes, certainly  
 \*καί δή and really; as a matter  
 of fact; look! let us suppose  
 \*καί δή καί moreover  
 \*καί μὴν what's more; look!;  
 yes, and; and anyway  
 καίπερ although (+ part.)  
 \*καίτοι and yet  
 κακοδαίμων κακόδαιμον  
 (κακοδαιμον-) unlucky,  
 dogged by an evil daimon  
 κακός ἢ ὄν bad, evil,  
 cowardly, mean, lowly

κακὰ (κακῶς) ποιέω treat  
 badly, do harm to  
 καλεσ- aor. stem of καλέω  
 †καλέω (καλεσ-) call,  
 summon  
 κάλλιστος ἢ ὄν most (very)  
 fine, good, beautiful  
 καλός ἢ ὄν beautiful, good  
 κάρη (καρητ-), τό head (Attic  
 κάρα (κρατ-), το (3b))  
 \*κατά (+acc.) in, on, by,  
 according to; down,  
 throughout, in relation to  
 (+gen.) below, down from,  
 against  
 καταβαίνω (καταβα-) go  
 down, come down  
 καταδικάζω condemn;  
 convict x (gen.) of γ (acc.)  
 καταδίκη, ἡ fine (1a)  
 καταθε- aor. stem of  
 κατατίθημι  
 καταθνήσκω (καταθαν-) die  
 away  
 κατακλίνομαι lie down  
 καταλαβ- aor. stem of  
 καταλαμβάνω  
 καταλαμβάνω  
 (καταλαβ-) overtake,  
 come across, seize  
 καταλέγω (κατειπ-) recite,  
 list  
 καταλείπω (καταλιπ-) leave  
 behind, bequeath  
 καταλήψομαι fut. of  
 καταλαμβάνω  
 καταλύω bring to an end,  
 finish  
 καταμαρτυρέω give evidence  
 against (gen.)  
 καταστάς ἄσα ἄν  
 (κασταταντ-) being  
 placed, put (aor. part. of  
 καθίσταμαι)  
 καταστήναι to be put (aor.  
 inf. of καθίσταμαι)  
 καταστήσομαι fut. of  
 καθίσταμαι

κατατίθημι (καταθε-) put  
 down, pay, perform  
 καταφέρω (κατενεγκ-) carry  
 down  
 καταφρονέω despise, look  
 down on (+gen.)  
 κατεγγυάω demand securities  
 from (+acc.)  
 κατέλαβον aor. of  
 καταλαμβάνω  
 κατέλιπον aor. of καταλείπω  
 κατέστην I was put (aor. of  
 καθίσταμαι)  
 κατέστησα I put (aor. of  
 καθίστημι)  
 κατηγορέω prosecute x (gen.)  
 on charge of γ (acc.)  
 κατηγορία, ἡ speech for the  
 prosecution (1b)  
 κατήγορος, ὁ prosecutor (2a)  
 καταθάνων aor. part. of  
 καταθνήσκω  
 κατιδ- aor. stem of καθοράω  
 κάτω below  
 κε (κεν)=άν (enclitic)  
 †κείμαι lie, be placed, be  
 made  
 κείνος ἢ ο=ἐκείνος  
 κέλευσαν 3rd pl. aor. of  
 κελεύω (no argument)  
 κέλευσε 3rd s. aor. of  
 κελεύω (no argument)  
 κελουστής, ὁ boatswain (1d)  
 κελεύω order  
 κεν=κε  
 κεφαλή, ἡ head (1a)  
 κήρυξ (κηρυκ-), ὁ herald (3a)  
 κηρύττω announce, proclaim  
 κινδυνεύω be in danger, run a  
 risk; be likely to (+inf.)  
 κίνδυνος, ὁ danger (2a)  
 κλαίω (κλαυσ-) weep  
 κλείω close, shut  
 κλέπτης, ὁ thief (1d)  
 \*κλέπτω steal  
 κληθείς εἶσα ἐν  
 (κληθεντ-) aor. part. pass.  
 of καλέω

κλοπή, ἡ theft (1a)  
 κλύον 3rd pl. aor. of κλύω (no  
 augment)  
 κλύτε 2nd pl. imper. of κλύω  
 κλύω hear  
 κοινός ἢ ὄν common, shared  
 κοῖος = ποῖος  
 κολάζω punish  
 κομίζομαι collect  
 †κόπτω knock on; cut  
 κόραξ (κορακ-), ὁ crow (3a)  
 βάλλ' εἰς κόρακας go to hell!  
 κόρη, ἡ maiden, girl,  
 daughter (1a)  
 κόσμος, ὁ decoration,  
 ornament; order; universe  
 (2a)  
 κοτε = ποτε  
 κου = που  
 κούρη, ἡ = κόρη, ἡ girl,  
 daughter (1a)  
 κρατέω hold sway, power  
 over (+gen.)  
 κρείττων κρείττον (κρειττον-)  
 stronger, greater  
 †κρίνω (κριν-) judge, decide  
 κρίσις, ἡ judgment, decision;  
 dispute; trial (3e)  
 †κτάομαι acquire, get, gain  
 †κτείνω (κτειν-) kill  
 κτήμα (κτηματ-), τό  
 possession (3b)  
 κυβερνήτης, ὁ captain,  
 helmsman (1d)  
 κύριος α ὄν able, with power,  
 sovereign, by right  
 κύων (κυν-), ὁ dog (3a)  
 κωλύω prevent, stop  
 κως = πως

## Λ

λαβ- aor. stem of λαμβάνω  
 †λαγχάνω (λαχ-) obtain by  
 lot; run as a candidate for  
 office  
 δίκη λαγχάνω bring suit  
 against

λαβ- aor. stem of λαμβάνω  
 Λακεδαιμόνιος, ὁ Spartan (2a)  
 λαμβάνομαι (λαβ-) take hold  
 of (+gen.)  
 †λαμβάνω (λαβ-) take,  
 capture  
 δίκη λαμβάνω punish, exact  
 one's due from  
 (παρά + gen.)  
 λαμπάς (λαμπαδ-), ἡ torch  
 (3a)  
 †λανθάνω (λαθ-) escape  
 notice of x (acc.) -ing  
 (nom. part.)  
 λαός, ὁ people, inhabitant (2a)  
 λαχ- aor. stem of λαγχάνω  
 †λέγω (εἶπ-) speak, say, tell,  
 mean  
 †λείπω (λιπ-) leave, abandon  
 λέληθε 3rd s. perf. of λαμβάνω  
 ληφθ- aor. pass. stem of  
 λαμβάνω  
 λήψομαι fut. of λαμβάνω  
 λίθος, ὁ stone (2a)  
 λιμήν (λιμεν-), ὁ harbour (3a)  
 λίσσομαι beseech  
 λογίζομαι calculate, reckon,  
 consider  
 λογισμός, ὁ calculation (2a)  
 λόγος, ὁ speech, tale, word,  
 reason, argument (2a)  
 λοιπός ἢ ὄν left, remaining  
 λούω wash (mid. wash  
 oneself)  
 λύω release

## Μ

μά by! (+acc.)  
 μαθ- aor. stem of μαθάνω  
 μαθήσομαι fut. of μαθάνω  
 μαθητής, ὁ student (1d)  
 μακρός ἢ ὄν large, big, long  
 μάλα very, quite, virtually  
 μάλιστα (μάλα) especially,  
 particularly; yes  
 μᾶλλον (μάλα) . . . ἢ more,  
 rather than  
 †μανθάνω (μαθ-) learn,

understand  
 μαρτυρέω give evidence, bear  
 witness  
 μαρτυρία, ἡ evidence,  
 testimony (1b)  
 μαρτύρομαι invoke, call to  
 witness  
 μάρτυς (μαρτυρ-), ὁ witness  
 (3a)  
 μάχη, ἡ fight, battle (1a)  
 †μάχομαι (μαχεσ-) fight  
 μέγαλοιο gen. s. m. of μέγας  
 μέγας μεγάλη μέγα  
 (μεγαλ-) great, big  
 μέγεθος, τό size (3c)  
 μέγιστος ἢ ὄν greatest (sup. of  
 μέγας)  
 μέθεσ 2nd s. aor. imper. of  
 μεθίημι  
 μεθίημι (μεθε-) allow, let go  
 μείζων μείζον (μειζον-)  
 greater (comp. of μέγας)  
 μέλας αἶνα αν (μελαν-) black  
 †μέλει x (dat.) is concerned  
 about (+gen.)  
 †μέλλω be about to (+fut.  
 inf.); hesitate; intend  
 (+pres. inf.)  
 μέμφομαι blame, criticise,  
 find fault with (+acc. or  
 dat.)  
 \*μέν . . . δέ on one  
 hand . . . on the other  
 \*μέντοι however, but  
 †μένω (μειν-) remain, wait  
 for  
 μέρος, τό share, part (3c)  
 \*μετά (+acc.) after  
 (+gen.) with  
 (+dat.) among, in  
 company with  
 μεταυδάω speak to  
 μετελθ- aor. stem of  
 μετέρχομαι  
 μετέρχομαι (μετελθ-) send  
 for, chase after; go among  
 (+dat.); attack (+dat. or  
 μετά + acc.)

μετέχω share in (+ gen.)

μετίημι = μεθίημι

μέτριος α ον moderate,  
reasonable, fair

\*μή not

(+imper.) don't!

(+aor. subj.) don't!

μηδαμῶς not at all, in no way

\*μηδέ . . . μηδέ neither . . . nor  
μηδείς μηδεμία μηδέν

(μηδεν-) no, no one

μηκέτι no longer

\*μήτε . . . μήτε neither . . . nor  
μήτηρ (μητ(ε)ρ-), ἡ mother  
(3a)

μηχανάομαι devise, contrive

μηχανή, ἡ device, plan (1a)

μισρός ἄ όν foul, polluted

μικρός ἄ όν small, short, little

ἄμνησκομαι (μνησθ-)

remember, mention

μιν him, her (acc.) (enclitic)

μισέω hate

μισθός, ό pay (2a)

μίσος, τό hatred (3c)

μῖνα, ἡ mina (100 drachmas)  
(1b)

μνεία, ἡ mention (1b)

μνημονεύω remember

μνησθ- aor. stem of

μνησκομαι

μόνος η ον alone

μόνον only, merely

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλά καί not  
only . . . but also

μῦθος, ό word, story (2a)

μῶν surely not?

μῶρος α ον stupid, foolish

## Ν

ναί yes

ναυμαχία, ἡ naval battle (1b)

ναῦς, ἡ ship (3 irr.)

ναύτης, ό sailor (1d)

ναυτικός ἡ όν naval

νεανίας, ό young man (1d)

νεανίσκος, ό young man (2a)

νεηνίης, ό = νεανίας, ό

νειμ- aor. stem of νέμω

νεκρός, ό corpse (2a)

ἄνέμω (νειμ-) distribute,  
allot, assign

νέος α ον young

νή by! (+acc.)

νήσος, ἡ island (2a)

ἄνθρωπε = ἄνθρωπε

νικάω win, defeat

νίκη, ἡ victory, conquest (1a)

νοέω plan, devise; think,  
mean, intend, notice

νομή, ἡ distribution (1a)

νομίζομαι be accustomed

ἄνομίζω acknowledge, think  
x (acc.) to be y (acc. or  
acc. + inf.)

νόμος, ό law, convention (2a)

νοσέω be sick

νόσος, ἡ illness, plague,  
disease (2a)

νοῦς, ό (νόος) mind, sense  
(2a)

έν νῶ ἔχω have in mind,  
intend

νυ = νυν

νυν now, then (enclitic)

νῦν now

νύξ (νυκτ-), ἡ night (3a)

## Ξ

ξείνος = ξένος

ξένη, ἡ foreign woman (1a)

ξένος, ό foreigner, guest, host  
(2a)

## Ο

ό ἡ τό the: in Ionic = he, she, it

ό αὐτός the same

ό δέ and/but he

ό μέν . . . ό δέ one . . . another

ό τι; what? (sometimes in reply  
to τί;)

όδε ἡδε τόδε this

όδί this here (pointing)

όδοιπόρος, ό traveller (2a)

όδός, ἡ road, way (2a)

όθεν from where

οί = αὐτῶ to him, her (dat.)  
(Ionic)

οί (to) where

† οἶδα know

χάριν οἶδα be grateful to  
(+dat.)

οἶκαδε homewards

οἶκε = εἶκε resemble, be like  
(+dat.)

οἶκεῖος, ό relative (2a)

οἶκεῖος α ον related, domestic,  
family

οἰκέτης, ό house-slave (1d)

οἰκέω dwell (in), live

οἶκημα (οἰκηματ-), τό  
dwelling (3b)

οἶκησις, ἡ dwelling (3c)

οἶκία, ἡ house (1b)

οἶκία, τά palace (2b)

οἰκίδιον, τό small house (2b)

οἶκοι at home

οἰκόνδε home, homewards

οἶκος, ό household, house (2a)

οἶκός = εἰκός reasonable

οἰκτίρω (οἰκτιρ-) pity

ἄομαι think

οἶμοι alas! oh dear!

οἶος α ον what a! what sort of  
a!

οἶός τ' εἶμί be able to (+inf.)

οἶχομαι be off, depart

όκόθεν = όπόθεν

όλ- aor. stem of όλλυμαι

όλεσ- aor. stem of όλλυμι

όλίγος η ον small, few

όλίγωρος ον contemptuous

όλλυμαι (aor. ώλόμην) be  
killed, die, perish

ἄλλυμι (όλεσ-) destroy, kill

όλος η ον whole of

όλοφύρομαι lament

ἄμνυμι (όμοσ-) swear

όμοιος α ον like, similar to  
(+dat.)

όμολογέω agree

όμόνοια, ἡ agreement,  
harmony (1b)

ὅμως nevertheless, however  
 ὄνειρος, ὁ dream (2a)  
 ὄνομα (ὀνοματ-), τό name  
 (3b)  
 ὄξύς εἶα ὕ sharp, bitter, shrill  
 ὄπλα, τά weapons, arms (2b)  
 ὀπόθεν from where  
 ὀποῖος α ον of what kind  
 ὀπόσος η ον how many, how  
 great  
 \*ὀπότεν whenever (+subj.)  
 \*ὀπότε when; whenever  
 (+opt.)  
 ὀπου where? where  
 \*ὀπως how (answer to πῶς;);  
 how (indir q.)  
 , +fut. ind.) see to it that  
 (+subj. or opt.)=ἵνα in  
 order to/that  
 †ὀράω (ιδ-) see  
 ὀργή, ἡ anger (1a)  
 ὀργίζομαι grow angry with  
 (+dat.)  
 ὀρεος=ὀρους gen. of ὄρος, τό  
 ὀρθός ἡ ὄν straight, correct,  
 right  
 ὀρκος, ὁ oath (2a)  
 ὀρμάομαι charge, set off  
 ὄρος, τό mountain (3c)  
 ὅς ἢ ὅ who, what, which  
 ὅσος η ον how great! as  
 much/many as  
 ὅσπερ ἢ περ ὅπερ who/which  
 indeed  
 ὅστις ἢ τις ὅτι who(ever),  
 which(ever)  
 \*ὅταν (+subj.) whenever  
 ὅτε when  
 ὅτι that; because  
 \*οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ) no, not  
 οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλά καί not  
 only . . . but also  
 οὐδαμῶς in no way, not at all  
 οὐδέ and not  
 οὐδεὶς οὐδεμία οὐδέν  
 (οὐδεν-) no, no one,  
 nothing  
 οὐδέποτε never

οὐδέπω not yet  
 οὐκ=οὐ no, not  
 οὐκέτι no longer  
 \*οὐκοῦν therefore  
 \*οὐκουν not . . . therefore  
 \*οὐν therefore  
 οὐνομα=ὄνομα, τό  
 οὐπερ where  
 οὐποτε never  
 οὐπω not yet  
 οὐρανός, ὁ sky, heavens (2a)  
 οὐσία, ἡ property, wealth  
 (1b)  
 \*οὔτε . . . οὔτε neither . . . no  
 οὔτις (οὔτιν-) no one  
 οὔτος αὐτῆ τοῦτο this; (s)he  
 οὔτος hey there! you there!  
 οὔτοσί this here (pointing)  
 οὔτως/οὔτω thus, so; in this  
 way  
 οὐχ=οὐ  
 †ὀφείλω owe  
 ὀφθαλμός, ὁ eye (2a)  
 ὀφρα (+subj./opt.)=ἵνα  
 (+ind./subj./opt.) while,  
 until  
 ὀψις, ἡ vision, sight (3e)

## Π

παθ- aor. stem of πάσχω  
 πάθος, τό suffering,  
 experience (3c)  
 παιδίον, τό child, slave (2b)  
 παιδοποιέομαι beget, have  
 children  
 παίζω play, joke at  
 (πρός +acc.)  
 παῖς (παιδ-), ὁ, ἡ child; slave  
 (3a)  
 πάλαι long ago  
 παλαιός ἁ ὄν ancient, of old,  
 old  
 πάλιν back, again  
 πανταχοῦ everywhere  
 παντελῶς completely,  
 outright  
 \*πάνυ very (much); at all

\*πάνυ μὲν οὖν certainly, of  
 course  
 πανύστατος η ον for the very  
 last time  
 πάρ=παρά  
 \*παρά (+acc.) along, beside;  
 against, to; compared with;  
 except  
 (+gen.) from  
 (+dat.) with, beside, in the  
 presence of  
 πάρα=πάρεστι it is possible  
 for (+dat.)  
 παραγίγνομαι (παράγεν-) be  
 present, turn up at (+dat.)  
 παραδίδωμι (παραδο-) hand  
 over  
 παραδώσειν fut. inf. of  
 παραδίδωμι  
 παραιτέομαι beg  
 παράκειμαι lie, be placed  
 beside (+dat.)  
 παραλαβ- aor. stem of  
 παραλαμβάνω  
 παραλαμβάνω  
 (παραλαβ-) take, receive  
 from; undertake  
 παρασκευάζω prepare, equip  
 παρασκευή, ἡ preparation,  
 equipping; force (1a)  
 παρασχ- aor. stem of παρέχω  
 παρεγενόμην aor. of  
 παραγίγνομαι  
 πάρεμι be at hand, be present  
 (+dat.)  
 παρέλαβον aor. of  
 παραλαμβάνω  
 παρελθ- aor. stem of  
 παρέρχομαι  
 παρέρχομαι (παρελθ-) pass,  
 go by, come forward  
 πάρεστι it is possible for  
 (+dat.)  
 παρέχω (παρασχ-) give to,  
 provide  
 πράγματα παρέχω cause  
 trouble (to)  
 παρθένος, ἡ maiden (2a)



- πάριτε* 2nd pl. impri. of  
*παρέρχομαι/πάρειμι*  
*παριών οὔσα ὄν (-οντ-)* part.  
 of *παρέρχομαι*  
*παροράω (παριδ-)* notice  
*παρών οὔσα ὄν*  
 (*παροντ-*) part. of *πάρειμι*  
*πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-)* all  
*ὁ πᾶς* the whole of  
*†πάσχω (παθ-)* suffer,  
 experience  
*πατήρ (πατ(ε)ρ-), ὁ* father  
 (3a)  
*πατρίς (πατριδ-), ἡ* fatherland  
 (3a)  
*πατρῶος α ον* ancestral, of  
 one's father  
*παύομαι* stop (+ part.); cease  
 from (+ gen.)  
*παύω* stop x (acc.) from y  
 (ἐκ + gen.); stop x (acc.)  
 doing y (acc. part.)  
*πείθομαι (πιθ-)* believe, trust,  
 obey (+ dat.)  
*πείθω* persuade  
*πειράομαι (πειρασ-)* test, try  
*πέισομαι* fut. of *πάσχω* or  
*πείθομαι*  
*†πέμπω* send  
*πένης (πενητ-)* poor man  
 (3a); (adj.) poor  
*πενία, ἡ* poverty (1b)  
*πεντήκοντα* fifty  
 \**περί (+acc.)* about,  
 concerning  
 (+ gen.) about, around  
 (+ dat.) in, on, about  
*περιφανής ἐς* very clear,  
 obvious  
*πεσ-* aor. stem of *πίπτω*  
*πέφυκα* tend naturally to  
 (perf. of *φύομαι*)  
*πηδάω* leap, jump  
*πιθ-* aor. stem of *πείθομαι*  
*†πίνω (πι-)* drink  
*†πίπτω (πεσ-)* fall, die  
*πιστεύω* trust (+ dat.)  
*πιστός ἡ ὄν* reliable,  
 trustworthy, faithful  
*πλεῖστος ἡ ον* very much,  
 most (sup. of *πολύς*)  
*πλέον* more (adv.) (comp of  
*πολύς*)  
*†πλέω (πλευσ-)* sail  
*πλέως α ων* full of (+ gen.)  
*πλήθος, τό* number, crowd;  
 the people (3c)  
*πλήν (+ gen.)* except  
*πλησίον* nearby  
*πλησίος α ον* near, close to  
 (+ gen.)  
*πλοῖον, τό* vessel, ship (2b)  
*πλούσιος α ον* rich, wealthy  
*πλύνω* wash  
*πόθεν;* from where?  
*ποῖ;* where to?  
*ποιέομαι* make  
*ποιέω* make, do  
*κακά (κακῶς) ποιέω* treat  
 badly, harm  
*ποιητής, ὁ* poet (1d)  
*ποιμήν (ποιμεν-), ὁ* shepherd  
 (3a)  
*ποιός α ον;* what sort of?  
*πολεμέω* make war  
*πολεμικός ἡ ὄν* of war,  
 military, martial  
*πολέμιοι, οἱ* the enemy (2a)  
*πολέμιος α ον* hostile, enemy  
*πόλεμος, ὁ* war (2a)  
*πόλις, ἡ* city, city-state (3c)  
*πολιτεία, ἡ* state, constitution  
 (1b)  
*πολιτεύομαι* be a citizen  
*πολίτης, ὁ* citizen (1d)  
*πολιτικός ἡ ὄν* political  
*πολίτις (πολιτιδ-), ἡ* female  
 citizen (3a)  
*πολλά* many things  
*πολλάκις* many times, often  
*πολύς πολλή πολύ*  
 (*πολλ-*) much, many  
*πολύ (adv.)* much  
*πονηρός ἂ ὄν* wicked,  
 wretched  
*πόντος, ὁ* sea (2a)  
*πορεύομαι* march, journey,  
 go  
*πορίζω* provide, offer  
*πόρνη, ἡ* prostitute (1a)  
*πόρρω* far, afar off  
*Ποσειδῶν (Ποσειδων-), ὁ*  
 Poseidon, god of sea (3a)  
 (voc. *Πόσειδον*; acc.  
*Ποσειδῶ*)  
*πόσις, ὁ* husband, spouse (3e)  
*ποταμοῖο* gen. s. of *ποταμός*  
*ποταμός, ὁ* river (2a)  
*ποτε* once, ever (enclitic)  
*πότερον . . . ἢ* whether . . . or  
*πότερος α ον;* which (of two)?  
*που* somewhere, anywhere  
 (enclitic)  
*πού;* where?  
*πούς (ποδ-), ὁ* foot (3a)  
*πράγμα (πραγματ-), τό* thing,  
 matter, affair (3b)  
*πράγματα παρέχω* cause  
 trouble  
*πράξις, ἡ* fact, action (3e)  
*†πράττω* do, perform, fare  
*εὖ πράττω* fare well, be  
 prosperous  
*πρέσβεις, οἱ* ambassadors (3e)  
*πρεσβευτής, ὁ* ambassador  
 (1d)  
*πρεσβύτερος α ον* older,  
 rather old  
 \**πρὶν (+inf.)* before  
*πρὶν ἂν (+subj.)* until  
*πρὶν (+opt.)* until  
*πρό (+gen.)* before, in front  
 of  
*προάγω* lead on  
*πρόβατον, τό* sheep (2b)  
*πρόγονος, ὁ* forebear,  
 ancestor (2a)  
*προδίδωμι (προδο-)* betray  
*προδο-* aor. stem of  
*προδίδωμι*  
*προθυμέομαι* be ready, eager  
*πρόθυμος ον* ready, eager,  
 willing  
*προίξ (προικ-), ἡ* dowry (3a)

- \*πρός (+acc.) to, towards  
(+gen.) in the name/under  
the protection of  
(+dat.) in addition to, near  
προσαγορεύω address, speak  
to  
προσάπτω give, attach to  
(+dat.)  
προσδραμ- aor. stem of  
προστρέχω  
προσεῖπον I spoke x (acc.) to y  
(acc.) (προσεῖπον Ionic)  
προσελθ- aor. stem of  
προσέρχομαι  
προσέρχομαι  
(προσελθ-) go/come  
towards, advance  
προσέχω bring near, apply to  
προσέχω τὸν νοῦν pay  
attention to (+dat.)  
προσῆκει it is fitting for x  
(dat.) to - (+mf.)  
προσηλθον aor. of  
προσέρχομαι  
πρόσθεν previously; before  
(+gen.)  
προσιών οὔσα ὄν  
(προσιοντ-) part. of  
προσέρχομαι/πρόσειμι  
προσκαλέω summon, call  
προσλέγω (προσεῖπ-) address  
προσπίτνω fall upon,  
embrace  
προστάττω (προσταξ-) order  
(+dat.)  
προστρέχω (προσδραμ-) run  
towards  
προτείνω stretch out  
προτεραίος αὐτῶν of the  
previous day  
πρότερον formerly,  
previously  
πρότερος αὐτῶν first (of two);  
previous  
προτρέπω urge on, impel  
πρύτανις, ὁ prytanis (3c)  
πρώτον first, at first  
πρώτος ἡ ὄν first
- πυθ- aor. stem of πυθάνομαι  
πύλη, ἡ gate (1a)  
†πυθάνομαι (πυθ-) learn,  
hear, get to know  
πῦρ (πυρ-), τό fire (3b)  
πυρά, τά fire-signal (2b)  
πυρά, ἡ funeral pyre (1b)  
πύργος, ὁ tower (2a)  
πῶ yet (enclitic)  
†πωλέω sell  
πῶς somehow (enclitic)  
πῶς; how?  
\*πῶς γὰρ οὐ; of course
- P  
ῥάδιος αὐτῶν easy  
ῥαδίως easily  
ῥάστος ἡ ὄν very easy  
ῥαψωδός, ὁ rhapsode (2a)  
ῥήτωρ (ῥητορ-), ὁ orator,  
politician (3a)  
ῥίπτω throw
- Σ  
σαφῶς clearly  
σεαυτὸν yourself (s.)  
σελήνη, ἡ moon (1a)  
σέο=σοῦ of you  
σεῦ=σοῦ of you  
σημαίνω (σημην-) tell, signal  
σημεῖον, τό sign, signal (2b)  
σιγάω be quiet  
σιδηρέος ἡ ὄν of iron, metal  
σίτος, ὁ food (2a) (pl. σῖτα, τά  
(2b))  
σιωπάω be silent  
†σκεπτομαι examine, look  
carefully at  
σκεύη, τά gear, furniture;  
ship's gear (3c)  
σκοπέομαι look at, consider  
†σκοπέω consider, examine  
σμικρός ἄ ὄν small, short,  
little  
σός σή σόν your (s.)  
σοφία, ἡ wisdom (1b)  
σοφιστής, ὁ sophist, thinker  
(1d)
- σοφός ἡ ὄν wise, clever  
†σπένδω pour a libation  
σπεύδω hurry  
σπονδαί, αἱ treaty, truce (1a)  
σποιδή, ἡ libation (1a)  
σπουδάζω be concerned; do  
seriously  
σπουδαῖος αὐτῶν serious,  
important  
σπουδή, ἡ zeal, haste,  
seriousness (1a)  
στάς στάσιν σταν  
(σταντ-) standing (aor.  
part. of ἵσταμαι)  
στείχω go, come  
στένω groan  
στερέω deprive of  
στή=ἔστη he/she stood (aor.  
of ἵσταμαι) (no augment)  
στήθ' = στήθε  
στήτε stand! (2nd pl. imper.  
aor. of ἵσταμαι)  
στόμα (στοματ-), τό mouth  
(3b)  
στρατηγός, ὁ general (2a)  
στρατιά, ἡ army (1b)  
στρωμνή, ἡ bed (1a)  
σύ you (s.)  
συγγεγένημαι perf. of  
συγγίνομαι  
συγγένεια, ἡ kinship (1b)  
συγγενής, ὁ relation (3d)  
συγγίνομαι (συγγεν-) be  
with, have intercourse.  
dealings with (+dat.)  
συγγνώμη, ἡ pardon,  
forgiveness (1a)  
συγγνώμην ἔχω forgive,  
pardon  
συγκόπτω beat up, strike  
(aor. pass. συνεκόπην).  
συγχωρέω agree with, to;  
yield to (+dat.)  
συλλέγω collect, gather  
συμβουλευόμεαι discuss with  
(+dat.)  
συμβουλή, ἡ discussion,  
recommendation (1a)

συμμαχός, ὁ ally (2a)  
 συμπέμπω send with (+dat.)  
 συμπροθυμέομαι share  
 enthusiasm of (+dat.)  
 συμφορά, ἡ disaster, mishap,  
 occurrence (1b)  
 συμφορῆ=συμφορά  
 \*σύν (+dat.) with the help of,  
 together with  
 συνέρχομαι (συνελθ-) come  
 together  
 συνήλθον aor. of συνέρχομαι  
 συνοικέω live with, together  
 (+dat.)  
 συντυγχάνω (συντυχ-) meet  
 with (+dat.)  
 σφείς they (Attic σφᾶς σφῶν  
 σφίσι) (Ionic σφεῖς σφέας  
 σφέων σφι)  
 σφι to them (dat. of σφείς)  
 σφόδρα very much,  
 exceedingly  
 σχ- aor. stem of ἔχω/έχομαι  
 σχεδόν near, nearly, almost  
 σχολή, ἡ leisure (1a)  
 ἰσώζω save, keep safe  
 Σωκράτης, ὁ Socrates (3d)  
 σῶμα (σωματ-), τό body,  
 person (3b)  
 σῶος a on safe  
 σωτήρ (σωτηρ-), ὁ saviour  
 (3a)  
 σωτηρία, ἡ safety (1b)  
 σωφροσύνη, ἡ good sense,  
 moderation (1a)  
 σώφρων (σωφρον-) sensible,  
 temperate, modest, chaste,  
 discreet, prudent,  
 law-abiding, disciplined

## Τ

τάλαι αἰνα an wretched,  
 unhappy  
 τᾶν my dear chap  
 (condescending)  
 τάξις, ἡ order, rank,  
 battle-array (3c)  
 ταχέως quickly

τάχος, τό speed (3c)  
 τε . . . καί both . . . and  
 τεῖχος, τό wall (of a city) (3c)  
 τεκμαίρομαι conclude, infer;  
 assign, ordain  
 τεκμήριον, τό evidence, proof  
 (2b)  
 τέκνον, τό child (2b)  
 τελευτάω die, end, finish  
 τέλος in the end, finally  
 τευ=τινος  
 τέχνη, ἡ skill, art, expertise  
 (1a)  
 τήμερον today  
 τι a. something (enclitic)  
 τί; what? why?  
 †τίθῃμι (θε-) put, place  
 †τίκτω (τεκ-) bear, give  
 birth to  
 τιμάω honour, value, reckon;  
 (+dat.) fine  
 τίμη, ἡ privilege, honour (1a)  
 τίμημα (τιμηματ-), τό fine  
 (3b)  
 τιμωρέομαι take revenge on  
 τιμωρία, ἡ revenge,  
 vengeance (1b)  
 τις τι (τιν-) a certain,  
 someone (enclitic)  
 τίς τί (τίν-); who? what?  
 which?  
 τίτθη, ἡ nurse (1a)  
 \*τοί then (inference)  
 τοί=σοι  
 τοί=οἱ (relative)  
 \*τοῖνυ well then (resuming  
 argument)  
 τοιοῦδε ἤδε ὄνδε of this kind  
 τοιούτος αὐτῆ οὗτο of this  
 kind, of such a kind  
 τοῖσι=τοῖς  
 τόλμα, ἡ daring (1c)  
 τολμάω dare, be daring,  
 undertake  
 τοσοῦτος αὐτῆ οὗτο so great  
 τότε then  
 τούτῳ dat. of οὗτος  
 ἐν τούτῳ meanwhile, during

this

τράπεζα, ἡ bank (1c)  
 τραπ- aor. stem of τρέπομαι  
 τρεῖς τρία three  
 τρέπομαι (τραπ-) turn (self),  
 turn in flight  
 †τρέπω cause to turn, put to  
 flight  
 †τρέφω (θρεψ-) rear, raise,  
 feed, nourish  
 †τρέχω (δραμ-) run  
 τριηραρχέω serve as a  
 trierarch  
 τριηραρχος, ὁ trierarch (2a)  
 τριήρης, ἡ trireme (3d)  
 τρόπος, ὁ way, manner (2a)  
 τροφή, ἡ food, nourishment  
 (1a)  
 †τυγχάνω (τυχ-) chance,  
 happen (to be -ing + nom.  
 part.) be actually -ing  
 (+nom. part.)  
 (+gen.) hit, chance/happen  
 on, be subject to  
 †τύπτω strike, hit  
 τυχ- aor. stem of τυγχάνω  
 τύχη, ἡ chance, good/bad  
 fortune (1a)

## Υ

ὑβρίζω treat violently,  
 disgracefully; humiliate  
 ὕβρις, ἡ aggression, violence,  
 insult, humiliation (3c)  
 ὕβριστής, ὁ violent, criminal  
 person (1d)  
 ὕδωρ (ύδατ-), τό water (3b)  
 υἱός, ὁ son (2a or, except for  
 acc. s., like m. forms of  
 γλυκύς)  
 ὑμεῖς you (pl.)  
 ὑμέτερος a on your (pl.)  
 ὑπακούω reply, answer; obey  
 (+dat.)  
 ὑπάρχω be, be sufficient;  
 begin (+gen.)  
 \*ὑπέρ (+gen.) for, on behalf  
 of

ὑπηρέτης, ὁ servant, slave  
(1d)

†ὑπισχνέομαι  
(ὑποσχ-) promise (to)  
(+ fut. inf.)

ὑπνος, ὁ sleep (2a)

\*ὑπό (+ acc.) under, along  
under, up under  
(+ gen.) by, at the hand of  
(+ dat.) under, beneath

ὑποδέχομαι welcome,  
entertain

ὑπόλοιπος ον remaining

ὑς, ὁ boar (3h)

ὑστεραίος α ον of the next day

ὑστερον later, further

ὑστερος α ον later, last (of  
two)

ὑφ' = ὑπό

ὑφαιρέομαι (ὑφελ-) steal, take  
for oneself by stealth

## Φ

φαίνομαι (φαν-) appear, seem  
(to be) (+ nom. part.), seem  
to be but not really to be  
(+ inf.)

†φαίνω (φην-) reveal,  
declare, indict

φάμενος η ον aor. part. mid.  
of φημί (ἐφάμην)

οὐ φάμενος saying . . . not,  
refusing

φάμαι inf. of φημί

φανερὸς ἄ ὄν clear, obvious

φάνη 3rd s. aor. of φαίνομαι  
(no augment)

φάσθ' you say (2nd pl. mid. of  
φημί)

φάσκω allege, claim, assert

φάτο he spoke (3rd s. aor.  
mid. of φημί)

φέρε come!

†φέρω (ένεγκ-) bear, endure;  
lead; carry

χαλεπῶς φέρω be angry,  
displeased at

†φεύγω (φυγ-) run off, flee;

be a defendant, be on trial

φεύξομαι fut. of φεύγω

†φημί say

φής you say

φήσω fut. of φημί

φήσειεν 3rd s. aor. opt. of  
φημί

†φθάνω (φθασ-) anticipate x  
(acc.) by/in -ing (nom.  
part.)

φιλέω love, kiss; be used to  
(+ inf.)

φιλία, ἡ friendship (1b)

φίλος, ὁ friend (2a)

φίλος η ον dear; one's own

φιλοσοφία, ἡ philosophy (1b)

φιλόσοφος, ὁ philosopher (2a)

φίλτατος η ον most dear (sup.  
of φίλος)

φοβέομαι fear, be afraid of,  
respect

φοβέομαι μή

(+ subj./opt.) fear that, lest

φοβερός ἄ ὄν terrible,  
frightening

φόβος, ὁ fear (2a)

φόνος, ὁ murder (2a)

φράζω utter, mention, talk

φράτηρ (φρατερ-), ὁ member  
of phratry (3a)

φρήν (φρεν-), ἡ heart, mind  
(3a)

φρονέω think, consider

φροντίζω think, worry

φροντίς (φροντιδ-), ἡ  
thought, care, concern (3a)

φυγή, ἡ flight (1a)

φύγον 1st s. aor. of φεύγω (no  
augment)

φυλακή, ἡ guard (1a)

φύλαξ (φυλακ-), ὁ guard (3a)

φυλάττω guard (Ionic  
φυλάσσω)

φύσις, ἡ nature, character,  
temperament (3c)

†φύω bear

(aor. mid.) ἔφυν be naturally

(perf.) πέφυκα be inclined

by nature

φωνέω speak, utter

φωνή, ἡ voice, language,  
speech (1a)

φῶς (φωτ-), τό light (3b)

φῶς (φωτ-), ὁ man, mortal  
(3a)

## Χ

χαίρε greetings! hello!  
farewell!

†χαίρω (χαρ-) rejoice

χαλεπὸς ἡ ὄν difficult, hard

χαλεπῶς φέρω be angry,  
displeased at

χαλκοῦς ἡ οὖν of bronze

χαρίζομαι oblige, please; be  
dear to (+ dat.)

χάρις (χαριτ-), ἡ thanks,  
grace (3a)

χάριν οἶδα be grateful to  
(+ dat.)

χειμών (χειμων-), ὁ winter,  
storm (3a)

χείρ (χειρ-), ἡ hand (3a)

χείρων χειρον

(χειρον-) worse (comp. of  
κακός)

χθές yesterday

χίλιοι α ι a thousand

χορός, ὁ dance; chorus (2a)

†χράομαι use, employ  
(+ dat.)

χρέα, τά debts (3c uncontr.)

†χρή it is necessary for x  
(acc.) to - (infin.)

χρήμα (χρηματ-), τό thing  
(3b)

χρήματα, τά money (3b)

χρηματίζω do business

χρησθαι pres. inf. of χράομαι

χρήσιμος η ον profitable,  
useful

χρηστός ἡ ὄν good, fine,  
serviceable

χρήται 3rd s. pres. of χράομαι

χρόα acc. of χρώς

χροί dat. of χρώς

χρόνος, ὁ time (2a)	ψευδῶς falsely	ῥῆμην impf. of οἶμαι
χροός gen. of χρώς	ψηφίζομαι vote	ῶμος, ὁ shoulder (2a)
χρυσέος ἡ ον golden	ψηφισμα (ψηφισματ-), τό decree (3b)	ῶν οὔσα ὄν (ὄντ-) part. of εἶμι
χρώς (χρωτ-), ὁ flesh, skin, body (3a) (Ionic acc. χροά; gen. χροός; dat. χροί)	ψηφός, ἡ vote, voting-pebble (2a)	ῶν = οἶν
χωρέω go, come	ψυχή, ἡ soul, life (1a)	ῥώνεομαι (πρια-) buy
χώρη, ἡ land (1a) (Attic χώρα, ἡ (1b))	Ω	*ὡς how! as; that (+acc.) towards, to the house of
χωρίον, τό place; space; region; farm (2b)	ὦ- augment (if not under ὦ- look under ὀ-)	(+fut. part.) in order to (+sup.) as - as possible (+subj./opt.) = ἵνα in order to/that
χωρίς apart, separately (from) (+gen.)	ὦ what . . ! (+gen.)	ὡς thus, so
Ψ	ὦ O (+voc./nom.) (addressing someone)	ὡσπερ like, as
ψευδής ἐς false, lying	ῶδε thus, as follows	*ὡστε so that, with the result that, consequently (+inf./indic.)
ψεύδομαι lie, tell lies	ῶθέω push, shove	
	ῶλόμην aor. of ὄλλυμαι	

---

## List of proper names

---

Most names of people(s) and all names of places will be found in the running vocabularies where they occur. The names which recur several times and are not repeated in the running vocabularies are listed here for convenience of reference.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| * <i>Ἄδμητ-ος, ὁ</i> Admetos (2a)<br>(husband of Alkestis)  | * <i>Ἀπολλόδωρ-ος, ὁ</i> Apollodoros (2a)<br>(prosecutor of Neaira and<br>Stephanos; friend of Aristarkhos)   |
| * <i>Ἄδρηστ-ος, ὁ</i> Adrastos (2a)<br>(‘Unable to escape’; member of the<br>Phrygian royal family and<br>suppliant of Croesus) | * <i>Ἀπόλλων</i> (* <i>Ἀπολλων-</i> ), ὁ Apollo<br>(3a: but voc. usu. * <i>Ἀπολλον</i> ; acc.<br>* <i>Ἀπόλλω</i> ) (god of prophecy, with<br>oracular shrine at Delphi) |
| * <i>Ἀθήν-η -ᾶ, ἡ</i> Athene (1a/b)<br>(goddess of craftsmanship and<br>protectress of Odysseus)                                | * <i>Ἀρίσταρχ-ος, ὁ</i> Aristarkhos (2a)<br>(friend of Apollodoros, narrator of<br>his legal troubles at the hands of<br>Theophemos and Euergos)                        |
| * <i>Ἀλκίνο-ος, ὁ</i> Alkinoos (2a) (king of<br>the Phaiakians and father of<br>Nausikaa)                                       | * <i>Ἀφροδίτ-η, ἡ</i> Aphrodite (1a)<br>(goddess of love; used often as<br>synonym for sexual pleasure)   |
| * <i>Ἀμφί-θε-ος, ὁ</i> Amphitheos (2a)<br>(‘God on both sides’; goes to Sparta<br>to get Dikaiopolis’ private<br>peace-treaty)  | <i>Βδελυκλέων</i> ( <i>Βδελυκλεων-</i> ),<br>ὁ Bdelykleon (3a)  |

- (‘Loathe-Kleon’; son of Philokleon)
- Δικαιοπόλις, ὁ Dikaiopolis (3e) (‘Just citizen’; Attic farmer in search of peace)
- Διονυσόδωρ-ος, ὁ Dionysodoros (2a) (sophist, brother of Euthydemos)
- Ἐπιμηθ-εύς, ὁ Epimetheus (3g) (‘Aftersight’; brother of Prometheus)
- Ἑρμ-ῆς, ὁ Hermes (1d) (Zeus’ messenger)
- Εὐεργίδ-ης, ὁ Euergides (1d) (experienced dikast)
- Εὐεργ-ος, ὁ Euergos (2a) (brother of Theophemos and his helper in seizing Aristarkhos’ goods)
- Εὐθύδημ-ος, ὁ Euthydemos (2a) (sophist, brother of Dionysodoros)
- Θεογέν-ης, ὁ Theogenes (3d) (*basileus archon* and for a short time husband of Phano)
- Θεόφημ-ος, ὁ Theophemos (2a) (enemy of Aristarkhos and responsible for the seizure of his goods)
- Ἴλισ-ός, ὁ river Ilisos (2a) (see map, *Text*, p. 19)
- Κινησί-ας, ὁ Kinesias (1d) (‘Sexually active’; husband of Myrrhine)
- Κλεινί-ας, ὁ Kleinias (1d) (a young friend of Socrates)
- Κλεονίκ-η, ἡ Kleonike (1a) (friend and fellow-conspirator of Lysistrata)
- Κροῖσ-ος, ὁ Croesus (2a) (king of Lydia) (see map, *Text*, p. 157)
- Κωμί-ας, ὁ Komias (1d) (experienced dikast)
- Λάβης (Λαβητ-), ὁ Labes (3a) (‘Grabber’; dog indicted on a charge of stealing cheese)
- Λυδ-οί, οἱ Lydians (2a) (Croesus’ people) (see map, *Text*, p. 157)
- Λυσί-ας, ὁ Lysias (1d) (the famous orator, lover of Metaneira)
- Λυσιστράτ-η, ἡ Lysistrata (1a) (‘Destroyer of the army’; prime-mover of the women’s sex-strike)
- Μετάνειρ-α, ἡ Metaneira (1b) (a slave and prostitute in Nikarete’s brothel, loved by Lysias)
- Μυρρίν-η, ἡ Myrrhine (1a) (friend of Lysistrata and wife of Kinesias)
- Μυσ-οί, οἱ Mysians (2a) (see map, *Text*, p. 157)
- Ναυσικά-α, ἡ Nausikaa (1b) (unmarried daughter of Alkmoos, king of the Phaiakians)
- Νέαιρ-α, ἡ Neaira (1b) (‘wife’ of Stephanos; indicted by Apollodoros for living with Stephanos as his wife and pretending that her children were citizens)
- Νικαρέτ-η, ἡ Nikarete (1a) (brothel-keeper; former owner of Neaira)
- Ξανθί-ας, ὁ Xanthias (1d) (slave of Bdelykleon)
- Ὀδυ(σ)σ-εύς, ὁ Odysseus (3g) (cunning Greek hero, who wandered for ten years after the Trojan War before finally returning to Ithaka, his kingdom)
- Ὅμηρ-ος, ὁ Homer (2a) (epic poet, author of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*)

- Πεισ-έταιρ-ος, ὁ* Peisetairos (2a)  
 ('Persuade-friend'; friend of  
 Dikaiopolis; plans to leave Athens  
 with Euelpides)
- Περικλ-ῆς, ὁ* Pericles (3d: uncontr.)  
 (political leader in Athens during  
 the mid-fifth century)
- Προμηθ-εύς, ὁ* Prometheus (3g)  
 ('Foresight'; brother of  
 Epimetheus)
- Πῶλ-ος, ὁ* Polos (2a) (a rower on  
 board a trireme)
- Στέφαν-ος, ὁ* Stephanos (2a)  
 ('husband' of Neaira; indicted by  
 Apollodoros for living with a  
 foreigner as his wife and trying to  
 pass off her children as citizens)
- Στρεψιάδ-ης, ὁ* Strepsiades (1d)  
 ('Twist and turn'; debt-ridden  
 farmer, father of Pheidippides)
- Στρυμόδωρ-ος, ὁ* Strymodoros (2a)  
 (inexperienced dikast)
- Σωσί-ας, ὁ* Sosias (1d) (slave of  
 Bdelykleon)
- Φαίηκ-ες, οἱ* Phaiakians (3a)  
 (Alkinoos' people)
- Φαν-ώ, ἡ* Phano (acc. *Φαν-ώ*; gen.  
*Φαν-οῦς*; dat. *Φαν-οῦ*) (daughter of  
 Neaira; married to Phrastor, then  
 Theogenes)
- Φειδιππίδ-ης, ὁ* Pheidippides (1d)  
 ('Son of Pheidon and horse';  
 chariot-racing, horse-mad son of  
 Strepsiades)
- Φιλοκλέων (Φιλοκλεων-),*  
*ὁ* Philokleon (3a) ('Love-Kleon';  
 jury-service-loving father of  
 Bdelykleon)
- Φράστωρ (Φραστορ-), ὁ* Phrastor  
 (3a) (for a time husband of Phano)
- Φρυνίων (Φρυνιων-), ὁ* Phrynion  
 (3a) (former lover of Neaira, from  
 whom Stephanos rescued her)
- Χαιρεφῶν (Χαιρεφωντ-),*  
*ὁ* Khairephon (3a) (good friend  
 of Socrates)

# E English–Greek vocabulary

---

## Notes

---

(a) This vocabulary has been compiled from all the words needed to complete successfully all the English–Greek Exercises in Book One. If you find difficulty with a particular phrase, look in this vocabulary under the main word in the phrase. You will normally find some helpful suggestions as to how to tackle it. Remember that you may often have to rethink the English phrasing, particularly in the prose passages.

Please note that this vocabulary is for use with the Exercises in this book. It may be misleading to apply it to other prose exercises.

(b) Remember, especially if you try the prose passages, that Greek uses many more connecting and other particles than English. For this reason you will not find many particles given in this vocabulary. But they are important to the composition of good Greek. So try to use at least μέν . . . δέ, δέ, ἀλλά, γάρ, δή and οὖν in your writing, all of which you will meet very often in your reading. See further Reference Grammar G.

a (certain) τις τι (τιν-)	afraid that, be φοβέ-ομαι μή + subj./opt.	at all πάνυ or omit
able, be able δύναμαι (+inf.)	afraid that . . . not μή . . . οὐ	allow εἶω (ἔασ-)
about περί (+acc./gen.)	after μετά (+acc.)	already ἤδη
according to κατά (+acc.)	afterwards, not long οὐ διά πολλοῦ	although καίπερ + part., or plain part.
account, on x's ὑπέρ (+gen.)	against one's will ἄκων	always αἰεί
accurately ἀκριβῶς	ἀκουσα ἄκων (ἀκοντ-)	amazed, be θαυμάζω
acquit ἀπολύω	agree ὁμολογέω	Amazon Ἄμαζών (Ἄμαζον-), ἡ (3a)
actually indicating definite statement. use indicative verb	all πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-)	ambassador πρεσβευτής, ὁ (1d)
advocate ἀντιδικός, ὁ (2a)	all sorts of use πᾶς	and καί
afraid of, be φοβέ-ομαι (+acc.)		



- and yet *καίτοι*  
angry, be made *ὀργίζομαι*  
(αογ. *ὠργίσθην*)  
announce, make an  
announcement *κηρύττω*  
another *ἄλλος* η ο  
answer *ἀποκρίνομαι*  
(ἀποκριν-)  
anyone *in negative* *οὐδείς οὐδέμια οὐδέν*  
(*οὐδεν-*); *if no neg.*, *use τις*  
any such thing *τι τοιοῦτο*  
Apollodoros *Ἀπολλόδιωρος*,  
ὁ (2a)  
appear *φαίν-ομαι*; *δοκέω*  
archon *ἄρχων* (ἄρχοντ-), ὁ  
(3a)  
argument *λόγος*, ὁ (2a)  
arrive *ἀφικνέομαι* (ἀφικ-)  
as *use ὡν οὐσα ὄν* (ὄντ-); *ὡς*  
+ind.; *ὡς* +noun  
as - as possible *ὡς* +sup.  
adv./adj.  
ask *ἔρωτάω* (ἔρ-)  
ask for *αἰτέω*  
assembly *ἐκκλησία*, ἡ (1b)  
astounded at, be *θαυμάζω*  
(+acc.)  
at *εἰς* (+acc.)  
at once *εὐθύς*  
at the hands of *ὑπό* (+gen.)  
Athenian *Ἀθηναῖ-ος*, ὁ (2a)  
attention, pay *use αογ. of*  
*ἀκούω*; *προσέχω τὸν νοῦν*  
(+dat.)  
bad *κακός* ἡ ὄν  
bank *τράπεζα*, ἡ (1c)  
Bdelykleon *Βδελυκλέων*  
(-εων-), ὁ (3a)  
be *εἰμί*  
bear *φέρω*  
find hard to bear *βαρέωσ*  
*φέρω* (fut. *οἴσω*)  
because *διότι*  
because of *διά* (+acc.)  
become *γίγν-ομαι* (γεν-)  
before *πρίν* (+inf.)
- do x before y *φθάνω* γ (acc.)  
doing x (nom. part.)  
begin *ἄρχομαι* (+gen. or  
part.); *ὑπάρχω* (+gen.)  
behalf of, on *ὑπέρ* (+gen.)  
beloved *use pass. of φιλέω*  
best *ἄριστος* η ον  
better, feel *συλλέγω ἑμαυτόν*  
(1st pl. *ἡμᾶς αὐτούς*)  
big *μέγας* *μεγάλη* *μέγα*  
(*μεγαλ-*)  
boat *πλοῖον*, τό (2b)  
body *νεκρός*, ὁ (2a)  
boy *παῖς* (*παιδ-*), ὁ (3a)  
bribe *δῶρον*, τό (2b)  
bring *ἄγω* (ἀγαγ-)  
bring out *ἐκφέρω* (ἐξενεγκ-)  
bring to an end *καταλύω*  
bumpkin *ἄγροικος* ον  
business, move *χρηματίζω*  
(fut. *χρηματιῶ*: *έω* contr.)  
but *ἀλλά* (*first word*); *δέ*  
(*second word*)  
by *κατά* (+acc.)  
by land *κατὰ γῆν*  
by! (oath) *νῆ* (+acc.)  
by (agent) *ὑπό* (+gen.)
- call upon *ἐπικαλέομαι*  
captain *κυβερνήτης*, ὁ (1d)  
capture *αἰρέω* (ἐλ-) (fut.  
*αἰρήσω*); *καταλαμβάνω*  
(-λαβ-) (fut. -λήψομαι)  
carefully *ἀκριβῶσ*  
carry out *ἐκφορέω*  
cast (a vote) *τίθεμαι* (θε-)  
caught, be *ἄλίσκομαι* (άλ-)  
charge, make a *γραφὴν*  
*γράφομαι* (γραψ-)  
chase *διώκω*  
child *παιδίον*, τό (2b)  
childless *ἄπαις* (ἄπαιδ-), ὁ  
(3a)  
citizen *ἀστός*, ὁ (2a)  
city *πόλις*, ἡ (3c)  
claim *φάσκω* (fut. *φίσω*)  
clear *δῆλος* η ον  
it is clear that *δῆλός ἐστιν ὅτι*
- clearly, be *δῆλός ἐστι*  
(+nom part.); *οἱ use δῆλόν*  
*ἐστιν ὅτι*  
clever *σοφός* ἡ ὄν  
closely *πλησίον*  
collect *λαμβάνω* (λαβ-)  
come *ἔρχομαι* (ἐλθ-)  
have come *ἦκω*  
come! *ἔλθέ*  
come across *καταλαμβάνω*  
(*καταλαβ-*)  
come forward *προσέρχομαι*  
(*προσελθ-*)  
(to address  
assembly) *παρέρχομαι*  
(*παρελθ-*)  
come in(to) *εἰσέρχομαι*  
(*εἰσελθ-*)  
come on! *ἄγε*  
come upon *εὐρίσκω* (εὐρ-)  
conceive *διανοέομαι*  
condemn κ (person) to γ  
(punishment) *καταδικάζω*  
x (gen.) to γ (acc.)  
consequently *ὥστε*  
consider *σκοπέω*  
contest *ἀγωνίζομαι*  
converse (with) *διαλέγομαι*  
(*πρός* +acc.)  
corpse *νεκρός*, ὁ (2a)  
corrupt *διαφθείρω*  
council *βουλή*, ἡ (1a)  
countryside *ἀγροί*, οἱ (2a)  
court (room) *δικαστήριον*, τό  
(2b)  
creditor *χρήστης*, ὁ (1d)  
cross *διαβαίνω*
- danger *κίνδυνος*, ὁ (2a)  
danger (of), be in *κινδυνεύω*  
(*περι* +acc.)  
daughter *θυγάτηρ*  
(*θυγατ(ε)ρ-*), ἡ (3a)  
dear *φίλος* η ον  
death *θάνατος*, ὁ (2a)  
debt *χρέα*, τὰ (3c uncontr.)  
deceive *ἐξαπατάω*  
decree *ψήφισμα*, τό (3b)

- deed ἔργον, τό (2b); or use n.  
 pl. adjectives  
 defeat νικάω (νικησ-)  
 defence speech ἀπολογία, ἡ  
 (1b)  
 make a defence  
 speech ἀπολογέομαι  
 defendant φεύγω  
 (φευγοντ-), ὁ (3a)  
 demand κελεύω  
 depart ἀπέρχομαι (ἀπελθ-)  
 deposited, be κείμαι  
 despair ἀπορία, ἡ (1b)  
 be in despair ἀπορέω  
 destroy διαφθείρω; ἀπόλλυμι  
 die ἀποθνήσκω (ἀποθαι-)  
 difficult χαλεπός ἡ ὄν  
 Dikaiopolis Δικαιοπόλις, ὁ  
 (3c)  
 dikast δικαστής, ὁ (1d)  
 dip θόρυβος, ὁ (2a)  
 Dionysodotos Διονυσόδωρος,  
 ὁ (2a)  
 discover (ἐξ)ευρίσκω  
 ((ἐξ)ευρ-)  
 disdainful ὀλίγωρος ον  
 disease νόσος, ἡ (2a)  
 dishonour ἀτιμάζω  
 divorce ἐκβάλλω (ἐκβαλ-);  
 ἐκπέμπω  
 do ποιέω; δράω (δρασ-);  
 πράττω  
 dog κύων (κυν-), ὁ (3a)  
 don't μή+imperative;  
 μή+ aor. subj.  
 door θύρα, ἡ (1b)  
 downhearted, be ἀθυμέω  
 (ἀθυμησ-)  
 draft γράφω  
 drag away ἀφέλκω  
 duty translate 'must'  
 easy ῥάδιος α ον  
 most easy ῥάστος η ον  
 end, bring to an καταλύω  
 enemies πολέμοι, οἱ (2a)  
 enmity ἔχθρα, ἡ (1b)  
 enough . . . to οὕτω . . . ὥστε  
 + inf.  
 enter εἰσέρχομαι (εἰσελθ-)  
 (εἰς+acc.)  
 equip παρασκευάζω  
 equipment σκεύη, τά (3c); or  
 use τά+gen. (of what it  
 belongs to)  
 escape ἀποφεύγω (ἀποφυγ-)  
 Euelpides Εὐελπίδης, ὁ (1d)  
 ever ποτε (enclitic)  
 in indef. sentences add ἄν to  
 conjunction and use subj. verb  
 everything translate 'all  
 (things)'  
 evidence τεκμήριον, τό (2b)  
 evil κακός ἡ ὄν  
 except πλὴν (+gen.)  
 expect ἐλπίζω (+fut. inf.)  
 experience πάθος, τό (3c)  
 experienced (in) ἔμπειρος ον  
 (περί+acc.)  
 face the prospect of μέλλω  
 (+fut. inf.)  
 fall πίπτω  
 fall ill ἀσθενέω  
 family οἰκείοι, οἱ (2a)  
 farmer γεωργός, ὁ (2a)  
 father πατήρ (πατρ-) ον,  
 ὁ (3a)  
 feel better συλλέγω ἑμαυτόν  
 (1st pl. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς)  
 fetch out ἐκφέρω (fuit.  
 ἐξοίσω)  
 few ὀλίγοι α ι α  
 fifty πενήκοντα  
 fight μάχομαι  
 (μαχεσ-) (with,  
 against) πρὸς (+acc.)  
 finally τέλος  
 find εὐρίσκω (εὐρ-)  
 find out πυνθάνομαι (πυθ-)  
 fine τίμημα (τιμηματ-), τό  
 (3b)  
 fine (adj.) καλός ἡ ὄν  
 fire πῦρ (πυρ-), τό (3b)  
 flatter θωπεύω  
 follow ἔπομαι (σπ-)  
 (=accompany) ἀκολουθέω  
 (+dat.)  
 fool(ish) μῶρος α ον  
 for γάρ (second word)  
 for (prep.) ὑπέρ (+gen.)  
 force ἀναγκάζω (ἀναγκασ-)  
 forefather πρόγονος, ὁ (2a)  
 fortunate εὐδαίμων εὐδαιμον  
 (εὐδαιμον-)  
 free ἐλεύθερος α ον  
 freedom ἐλευθερία, ἡ (1b)  
 friend φίλος, ὁ (2a); φίλη, ἡ  
 (1a)  
 furniture σκεύη, τά (3c)  
 gaze out (into) ἀποβλέπω  
 (εἰς+acc.)  
 gear σκεύη, τὰ (3c)  
 general στρατηγός, ὁ (2a)  
 get λαμβάνω (λαβ-)  
 get back κομίζομαι  
 get hold of λαμβάνομαι  
 (+gen.)  
 get into καθίσταμαι  
 (καταστα-) (εἰς+acc.)  
 get up ἀναβαίνω (ἀναβα-)  
 give δίδωμι (δο-)  
 glance βλέπω (aorist aspect)  
 go ἔρχομαι (ἐλθ-) (fut. εἶμι;  
 subj. ἴω; perf. ἐλήλυθα)  
 go away (off) ἀπέρχομαι  
 (ἀπελθ-)  
 going to, be μέλλω (+fut.  
 inf.)  
 go up to προσέρχομαι (-ελθ-)  
 (προς+acc.)  
 god θεός, ὁ (2a)  
 good καλός ἡ ὄν; χρηστός ἡ  
 ὄν; ἀγαθός ἡ ὄν or translate as  
 advrb. 'well'  
 grab λαμβάνομαι (λαβ-)  
 (+gen.)  
 great μέγας μεγάλη μέγα  
 (μεγαλ-)  
 govern πολιτεύομαι  
 grievously μεγάλη  
 guard φυλάττω

- guard φύλαξ (φυλακ-), ὁ ἢ (3a)
- hand χεῖρ (χειρ-), ἡ (3a)  
at the hands of ὑπό (+gen.)
- hand over παραδίδωμι (παραδο-)
- happen (to be) τυγχάνω (τυχ-) (+nom. part.)
- happen, occur γίγνομαι (γεν-) (perf. γεγένημαι)
- harbour λιμὴν (λιμεν-), ὁ (3a)
- hard, find hard to bear βαρέως φέρω (fut. οἶσω)
- hate μισέω
- hated by the gods κακοδαίμων κακόδαιμον (κακοδαιμον-)
- have ἔχω (σχ-): ἐστί (+dat.)
- have in mind ἐν νῶ ἔχω
- have to δεῖ x (acc.) το y (inf.)
- hear ἀκούω (ἀκουσ-)
- here ἐνθάδε
- home(wards) οἶκαδε
- hope ἐλπίζω (+fut. inf.)
- horse ἵππος, ὁ (2a)
- house οἰκία, ἡ (1b)
- how? πῶς;
- how (indir. q.) πῶς, ὅπως
- how big ὅσος ἦ ον; ὅπόσος ἦ ον
- hullo! χαῖρε
- husband ἀνὴρ (ἀνδρ-), ὁ (3a)
- I ἐγώ (or just 1st s. of verb)
- idea γνώμη, ἡ (1a)  
it seems a good idea to δοκεῖ to x (dat.) to do y (inf.)  
if εἰ  
if (fut. time) εἰάν (+subj.)  
if... were -, ...  
would - εἰ + opt., opt. + ἄν  
if... were -ing, ... would be -ing εἰ + impf., impf. + ἄν  
if... had -ed, ... would have -ed εἰ + aor., aor. + ἄν  
if not εἰ μὴ  
if only εἴθε, εἰ γάρ (+opt.)
- ignoramus ἀμαθής ἐς  
ill, be ill ἀσθενέω  
impious, be ἀσεβέω  
in ἐν (+dat.); ἐνδον (adv.)  
be in, present πάρειμι  
inclined to, be naturally πέφυκα (+inf.)  
inhabit οἰκέω  
intend μέλλω (+fut. inf.)  
intending to ὡς + fut. part.  
into εἰς (+acc.)  
itself (reflexive) ἐαυτόν ἐαυτήν ἐαυτό
- job ἔργον, τό (2b)
- judge δικάζω  
give, pass judgment δικάζω  
juror δικαστής, ὁ (1d)
- just δίκαιος α ον
- justly δικαίως
- Khairedemos Χαιρέδημος, ὁ (2a)
- kill ἀποκτείνω (ἀποκτειν-)
- king (king archon) βασιλεύς, ὁ (3g)
- knock (on) κόπτω (+acc.)  
gave a knock use aorist
- know γινώσκω; οἶδα (part. εἰδώς; inf. εἰδέναι)
- lady γυνή (γυναικ-), ἡ (3a)
- Lampito Λαμπιτώ, ἡ (voc. Λαμπιτοῖ)
- land γῆ, ἡ (1a)  
by land κατὰ γῆν
- large μέγας μεγάλη μέγα (μεγαλ-)
- last, at last τέλος
- laugh γελάω (γελασ-)
- law νόμος, ὁ (2a)
- law-court δικαστήριον, τό (2b)
- learn μανθάνω (μαθ-)
- leave ἀπέρχομαι (ἀπελθ-) (ἀπό + gen.)
- legal translate 'of the court'
- legitimate γνήσιος α ον
- let εἰώ (έασ-); or use 3rd person imper. or 1st pl. subj.
- life ψυχή, ἡ (1a)
- like φιλέω (φιλησ-)
- liking, be to one's ἀρέσκει (+dat.)
- listen (to) ἀκούω (+gen./acc. of thing)
- live (in) οἰκέω (+acc.)
- live together συνοικέω
- live with συνοικέω (+dat.)
- lock in ἐγκλείω (ἐν + dat.)
- long after, not οὐ διὰ πολλοῦ
- look (at) βλέπω (εἰς/πρός + acc.)
- look! ἰδοῦ (s.)
- look after θεραπεύω
- look for ζητέω
- lot, a use πολλά  
a lot of πολὺς πολλή πολύ (πολλ-)
- loud μέγας  
very loud μέγιστος ἦ ον
- love φιλέω
- love of wisdom φιλοσοφία, ἡ (1b)
- maidservant θεραπαινά, ἡ (1c)
- make ποιέομαι
- man ἄνθρωπος, ὁ (2a); ἀνὴρ (ἀνδρ-), ὁ (3a)
- managed to (x) use aorist of (x)
- many πολλοί αἰ ἄ
- marry γαμέω (γημ-)
- matter πράγμα (πραγματ-), τό (3b)
- messenger ἄγγελος, ὁ (2a)
- mind, have in ἐν νῶ ἔχω
- mistreat κακά (κακῶς) ποιέω (+acc.)
- mock (at) παίζω (πρός + acc.)
- money χρήματα, τά (3b)
- mother μήτηρ (μητ(ε)ρ-), ἡ (3a)
- move business χρηματίζω (fut. χρηματιῶ: -έω contr.)

- much *πολύς πολλή πολύ*  
(πολλ-)
- mule *ἡμίονος, ὁ* (2a)
- must *δεῖ* x (acc.) to do y (inf.)
- my *ἐμός ἢ ὄν*
- myself *use αὐτός*
- name *ὄνομα (ὀνοματ-), τό*  
(3b)
- naturally inclined, to  
be *πέφουκα (+ inf.)*
- Neaira *Νέαιρα, ἡ* (1b)
- necessary, it is *δεῖ* (past. *ἔδει*)  
for x (acc.) to y (inf.)
- neighbour *γείτων (γειτον-),*  
*ὁ* (3a)
- neither *if it means 'and not' use*  
*οὐδέ (phrased so that another*  
*οὐ precedes it)*
- neither . . . nor *οὔτε . . . οὔτε*
- never *οὐδέποτε*
- new *use ἄλλος ἢ ο*
- news ('the news') *omit in*  
*translating*
- next day *τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ*
- not *οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ (accented οὐ*  
*at end of sentence)*  
(with infinitives) *μή, excerpt*  
*in indirect speech*
- notice *use οὐ λαθάνω (λαθ-)*  
(‘x (nom.) does not escape  
the notice of y (acc.) doing z  
(nom. part.)’)
- notice of, take *προσέχω τὸν*  
*νοῦν (+ dat.)*
- number *πλήθος, τό* (3c)
- oath *ὄρκος, ὁ* (2a)
- obediently *use part. of*  
*πείθομαι*
- obey *πείθομαι (+ dat.)*
- obliged *use δέον (acc. absol.)*  
(‘x (acc.) is obliged to y  
(inf.)’)
- be obliged, compelled  
to *ἀνάγκη ἐστί* for x (acc.)  
to y (inf.)
- obviously *δηλόν ἐστιν ὅτι*
- old man *γέρων (γεροντ-), ὁ*  
(3a)
- old woman *γραῦς (γρα-), ἡ*  
(3a irr.)
- on *may indicate aorist aspect*  
(e.g. ‘on seeing him’)
- on (preposition) *κατά*  
(+ acc.)
- once, once and for all *may*  
*indicate aorist aspect (e.g.*  
*‘stop that once and for all!’)*  
*aorist aspect; or, use γίγνομαι*  
(γεν-) (e.g. ‘once friends’);  
*or use a gen. absolute (e.g.*  
*‘once this had*  
*happened, . . .’)*
- once, at *see at once*
- only *μόνον*
- or *ἢ*
- order, give orders *κελεύω*  
(κελευσ-)
- our *ἡμέτερος α ον*
- out of *ἐκ (+ gen.)*
- out with it! *use aor. imper. of*  
*λέγω*
- owe *ὀφείλω*
- peace *εἰρήνη, ἡ* (1a)
- Peisetairos *Πεισέταιρος, ὁ*  
(2a)
- people *δῆμος, ὁ* (2a); *πλήθος,*  
*τό* (3c)
- perform *διαπράττομαι*
- perplexed, be *ἀπορέω*  
(ἀπορησ-)
- Persian *Πέρσης, ὁ* (1d)
- persuade *πείθω (πεισ-)*
- persuasion *use the verb*
- Phano *Φανώ, ἡ (acc. Φανώ;*  
*gen. Φανοῦς)*
- Philokleon *Φιλοκλέων*  
(-εων-), ὁ (3a)
- Philoxenos *Φιλόξενος, ὁ* (2a)
- Phrastor *Φράστωρ*  
(Φραστορ-), ὁ (3a)
- Phrygion *Φρυγίων*  
(Φρυγιων-), ὁ (3a)
- pick up *ἀναιρέω (ἀνελ-);*  
*ἐκδέχομαι (ἐκδεξ-)*
- rious, be *εὐσεβέω*
- Piraeus *Πειραιεύς, ὁ* (3g)
- place *χωρίον, τό* (2b)
- plague *νόσος, ἡ* (2a)
- plan *γνώμη, ἡ* (1a); *μηχανή, ἡ*  
(1a)
- plan, make a *μηχανήν*  
*ποιέομαι*
- pleasure, with *ἡδέως*
- poet *ποιητής, ὁ* (1d)
- politician *ρήτωρ (ῥητορ-), ὁ*  
(3a)
- poor condition *πονηρῶς*
- position *turn qualifying adj.*  
*into noun*
- possession *κτῆμα (κτηματ-),*  
*τό* (3b)
- possible for, it is *ἔξεστι* for x  
(dat.) to y (inf.)  
since it is possible *ἔξον*
- praise *ἐπαινέω (ἐπαινεσ-)*
- promise in marriage *ἐγγυάω*
- property *use τά + gen. of*  
*person who owns it*
- prosecute *κατηγορέω*
- prosecution *κατηγορία, ἡ*  
(1b)
- prosecutor *κατήγορος, ὁ* (2a);  
*διώκων (διωκοντ-), ὁ* (3a)
- prospect of, face the *μέλλω*  
(+ fut. inf.)
- prostitute *ἑταῖρα, ἡ* (1b)
- prove *δηλόω*
- prytaneis *πρυτάνεις, οἱ* (3c)
- punish *κολάζω*
- pursue *διώκω*
- pursuer *διώκων (διωκοντ-), ὁ*  
(3a)
- put down *κατατίθημι*  
(καταθε-)
- put in(to) *καθίστημι*  
(καταστησ-) x (acc.) in(to)  
y (εἰς + acc.)
- be put into *καθίσταμαι*  
(καταστα-)
- put x into such a y state,

- condition διατίθημι  
(διαθε-) x (acc.) οὕτω γ  
(adv.)
- question . . . closely ἐξετάζω  
quickly ταχέως  
quiet, keep ἤσυχάζω
- reason, for what διὰ τί; τί  
βουλόμενος;  
for x (gen.) reason ἔνεκα  
(prep. after noun)
- receive δέχομαι (δεξ-)  
recover ἀνίσταμαι  
refrain ἀπέχομαι (fut.  
ἀφέξομαι)  
(from) (+gen.)
- relate διέρχομαι (διελθ-)  
remember μνημονεύω  
rescue-force βοήθεια, ἡ (1b)  
responsible (for) αἰτίος α ον  
(+gen.)
- retreat ἀναχωρέω  
return ἐπανέρχομαι (-ελθ-)  
rhapsode ῥαψωδός, ὁ (2a)  
rich εὐδαίμων εὐδαιμον  
(εὐδαιμον-)
- risk κινδυνεύω (+inf.)  
river ποταμός, ὁ (2a)  
rogue ὑβριστής, ὁ (1d)  
rule ἄρχω  
run τρέχω  
run away φεύγω  
run off φεύγω  
run out ἐκτρέχω (ἐκδραμ-)  
run towards προστρέχω  
(-δραμ-) (πρός + acc.)
- sacrifice θύω  
make sacrifices θυσίας θύω  
safe σώος α ον  
sail πλέω  
sailor ναύτης, ὁ (1d)  
same ὁ αὐτός ἢ αὐτή τό αὐτό  
say (that) λέγω (εἶπ-) + ὅτι:  
φημί + acc./nom. + inf.  
I said ἦν δ' ἐγώ  
Scythian Σκύθης, ὁ (1d)
- sea θάλαττα, ἡ (1c)  
by sea κατὰ θάλατταν  
sea-battle ναυμαχία, ἡ (1b)  
see ὁράω (ἰδ-)  
don't you see? use λανθάνω  
(e.g. 'doing γ (nom. part.)  
does he avoid your  
notice?' – translating 'your  
notice' as 'γou' (acc.)
- seem δοκέω  
seem a good idea δοκεῖ to x  
(d.it.) to γ (inf.)
- seize λαμβάνω (λαβ-)  
sell πωλέω  
serious βερός εἶα ὕ  
set up ποιέομαι  
share μέρος, τό (3c)  
sheep πρόβατον, τό (2b)  
ship πλοῖον, τό (2b); ναύς, ἡ  
(3a irr.)  
short (of time) ὀλίγος η ον  
should use ἄν + opt.  
shout βοάω  
gave a shout use αοριστ  
shout, shouting βοή, ἡ (1a)  
show δηλώω; ἀποφαίνω  
shut in ἐγκλείω (ἐγκλεισ-)  
since use ὢν οὔσα ὄν (ὄντ-) or  
participle
- sit (down) καθίζω; καθίζομαι  
slander διαβάλλω  
slave δούλος, ὁ (2a); δούλη, ἡ  
(1a); ὑπηρέτης, ὁ (1d); παῖς  
(παιδ-), ὁ (3a)  
sleep καθεύδω  
slowly βραδέως  
so οὖν (second word)  
so that  
(intent) ἵνα + subj./opt.  
someone τις (τιν-)  
son υἱός, ὁ (2a)  
soon as possible, as ὥς  
τάχιστα  
sophist σοφιστής, ὁ (1d)  
space χωρίον, τό (2b)  
Spartan Λακεδαιμόνιος, ὁ (2a)  
speak λέγω  
speak in assembly ἀγορεύω
- speak up! use aor. imper.  
spectator θεατής, ὁ (1d)  
steal ὑφαιρέομαι (ὑφελ-)  
Stephanos Στέφανος, ὁ (2a)  
stop (doing) παύομαι  
(+part.)  
stop (someone doing) παύω  
(acc. + part.)  
(put a stop to) παύω (+acc.)  
stranger ξένος, ὁ (2a)  
strike τύπτω  
student μαθητής, ὁ (1d)  
stupid μώρος α ον  
such/so . . . that οὕτω . . . ὥστε  
+ inf./ind.  
suffer πάσχω (παθ-)  
suit δίκη, ἡ (1a); γραφή, ἡ  
(1a); ἄγών (ἄγων-), ὁ (3a)  
sun ἥλιος, ὁ (2a)  
suppliant ἰκέτης, ὁ (1d)  
sure βέβαιος ον  
sway, hold κρατέω  
swear ὀμνυμι (ὄμοσ-)  
sweetly ἠδέως
- take λαμβάνω (λαβ-)  
take back ἀναλαμβάνω  
(ἀναλαβ-) (fut.  
ἀναλήψομαι)  
take off ἄγω  
take up ἐκδέχομαι  
talk διαλέγομαι  
teach διδάσκω (διδασ-)  
teacher διδάσκαλος, ὁ (2a)  
tell λέγω (εἶπ-)  
tell me! εἶπέ (s.)  
terrible δεινός ἢ ὄν  
than ἢ  
that (conj.) ὅτι  
that (adj.) ἐκείνος η ο  
so that  
(result) ὥστε + inf./ind.  
their (belonging to  
subject) ἐαυτῶν  
them αὐτοὺς αὐτάς  
themselves αὐτοὶ αὐταί  
(reflexive) ἐαυτοὺς

- then δὴ (*emphasising previous word*)  
 then, from then on ἐντεῦθεν  
 Theogenes Θεογένης, ὁ (3d)  
 Theophemos Θεόφημος, ὁ (2a)  
 there, over there ἐκεῖ  
 therefore οὖν (*second word*)  
 they ἐκείνοι/οὗτοι  
 thief κλέπτης, ὁ (1d)  
 thing πράγμα (*πραγματ-*), τό (3b); *or use n. of adj. or pronoun*  
 this οὗτος αὐτῆ τοῦτο  
 though *use ὧν οὐσα ὄν (ὄντ-)* *or καίπερ + part.*  
 throw out ἐκβάλλω (*ἐκβαλ-*)  
 time χρόνος, ὁ (2a)  
 to (*intention*) ὡς + fut. part: ἵνα + subj./opt.  
 to, towards πρὸς (+acc.): εἰς (+acc.) (*of persons*) ὡς (+acc.)  
 tolerable μέτριος α ον  
 too καί  
 torch λαμπάς (*λαμπαδ-*), ἡ (3a)  
 towards πρὸς (+acc.)  
 town, be in ἐπιδημέω  
 travel πορεύομαι  
 trial ἀγών (*ἀγων-*), ὁ (3a)  
 trierarch τριήραρχος, ὁ (2a)  
 trireme τριήρης, ἡ (3d)  
 trouble *use κίνδυνος, ὁ (2a)*  
 truce σπονδαί, αἱ (1a)  
 truth ἀληθῆ, τά: ἀλήθεια, ἡ (1b)  
 try πειράομαι (*πειρασ-*) + inf.  
 uncaring ἀμελής ἐς  
 unhappy κακοδαίμων κακόδαιμον (*κακοδαιμον-*)  
 unjust ἄδικος ον  
 unlucky κακοδαίμων κακόδαιμον (*κακοδαιμον-*)  
 until ἕως ἄν + subj. (*primary*); ἕως + opt. (*past*); ἕως + ind. (*definite*) = before πρὶν ἄν + subj. (*primary*); πρὶν + opt. (*past*)  
 urge on προτρέπω  
 use χράομαι (+dat.)  
 used to *use imperfect*  
 useful χρήσιμος η ον  
 vengeance ον, take τιμωρέομαι (+acc.)  
 very ('this very thing') αὐτὸ τοῦτο  
 victorious, be νικάω  
 virtue ἀρετή, ἡ (1a)  
 vote ψήφος, ἡ (2a)  
 wait μένω (*fut. μενώ: ἔω contr.*)  
 wall τεῖχος, τό (3c)  
 want (to) βούλομαι (+inf.); ἐθέλω (*ἐθειλω-*)  
 war πόλεμος, ὁ (2a)  
 way τρόπος, ὁ (2a)  
 we ἡμεῖς (*or just 1st pl. of verb*)  
 well εὖ  
 well-disposed (to) εὖνους ον (+dat.)  
 what? ὅ τι; (*reply to question τί;*)  
 what (indir. q.) ὅστις ἤτις ὁ τι  
 what sort of ὁποῖος α ον  
 whatever ὅστις ἄν, ἤτις ἄν, ὁ τι ἄν  
 when ὅτε, ἐπειδὴ, ἐπεὶ, ὁπότε  
 when(ever) (indef.) ἐπειδᾶν, ὅταν, ὁπότεν  
 where? ποῦ;  
 where (indir. q.) ποῦ, ὅπου  
 where(ever) (indef.) ὅπου ἄν + subj. (*primary*); ὅπου + opt. (*past*)  
 where to? ποῖ;  
 whether . . . or πότερον . . . ἢ  
 which *use ὧν οὐσα ὄν (ὄντ-)* *or ὅς ἢ ὁ (relative)*  
 while *use μέν . . . δέ* ('on the one hand (*μέν*) x is happening, while (*δέ*) y . . .'); *or use gen. abs.*  
 while, a ὀλίγον χρόνον  
 who? τίς; τί; (*τιν-*)  
 who *use ὧν οὐσα ὄν (ὄντ-)*; *or ὅς ἢ ὁ (relative)*  
 why? διὰ τί; τί; τί παθών; τί βουλόμενος;  
 wicked πονηρός α ὄν  
 wife γυνή (*γυναικ-*), ἡ (3a)  
 will, against one's ἄκων ἄκουσα ἄκον (*ἄκοντ-*)  
 win νικάω (*νικησ-*)  
 wisdom σοφία, ἡ (1b)  
 wise σοφός ἢ ὄν  
 wish βούλομαι  
 with (=by means of) *use dative case*  
 without being seen by *use λανθάνω + acc. + nom. part.*  
 woman γυνή (*γυναικ-*), ἡ (3a)  
 word λόγος, ὁ (2a)  
 worry φροντίζω  
 worth ἄξιος α ον (+gen.)  
 would *use imperfect or ἄν + opt.*  
 wrong ἀδικέω (*ἀδικησ-*)  
 yes ναί; *or just repeat question as statement*  
 yet, and yet καίτοι  
 yokel ἄγροικος ον  
 you (s.) σύ (*or just 2nd s. of verb*)  
 (pl.) ὑμεῖς (*or just 2nd pl. of verb*)  
 young νέος α ον  
 young man νεανίας, ὁ (1d); νεανίσκος, ὁ (2a)  
 your (s.) σός σή σόν (pl.) ὑμέτερος α ον  
 zeal σπουδή, ἡ (1a)  
 Zeus Ζεός (*Δι-*), ὁ (3a)

# F Grammar Index

Numbers in bold type refer to the running grammar; references by capital letter refer to the Reference Grammar (pp. 259-307); references prefixed by *Surv.* refer to the Language Surveys (pp. 308-34).

The Reference Grammar and Language Surveys give the general picture; the running grammar picks up points as they arise.

- abstract nouns 20; *see also* nouns  
accent 46-7, 134(ii), A.2(v), A.3  
accusative 7, 8, 43(iv), 73, 104, 146-9, 156, 164, 183-4, 223, A.1(ii), B, C, F, K, *Surv.*(10), (11)  
accusative absolutes 184  
active *Surv.*(2)  
adjectives 12, 20, 31-6, 44-7, 56, 60, 76, 85-9, 93-4, 116, 133, 141, C.1-3, *Surv.*13(ii)  
adverbs 13, 103, 140, A.4, D, *Surv.* (13)(iii)  
agreement 9-12, 15(iv), 54  
alphabet A.2, *Surv.*1  
antecedent 135  
aorist indicative 68-9, 71-2, 143, 162, E  
aspect 59(v), 69(v), 79, 109, 111, 129 (note), 164 (note), A.1(i), *Surv.*3  
Attic dialect *Surv.*1  
attraction of relative 135  
attributive adjectives 60, *Surv.*(12)  
augment 59, 69(i), A.2  
breathing A.2(iv)  
case 7-8, *Surv.*(10), (11); *see also* accusative; dative; genitive; nominative; vocative  
comparison 76, 92(v), 93-4, C.2  
complement 19(ii)-(iii)  
compounds *Surv.*(13), p. 335  
conditions 151-2, 162, ( ), *Surv.*(4), (6), (9)(iii)  
conjugation 4; *see also* verbs  
consonants 143(iv), 228, A.2(i), (iii)  
contraction 5, 6, 22, 23, 58-9, 62(iii), 69(iii), 74, 96, B(note), C.1(note), E.2(ii)  
correlatives 210  
crasis 57, 178  
dative 8, 103-4, 169(iii), 183, B, C, F, *Surv.*(10), (11)  
declension *see* adjectives; nouns  
definite article 9-10, 27, 53, 60, 163-4, 213, G, *Surv.*(12)  
deliberative questions *see* questions  
dialect *Surv.*(1); *see also* Herodotus' dialect; Homeric dialect  
digamma 226(ii), A.2  
dual 213, *Surv.*(10)  
elision 57, 178  
enclitics 66, A.3(5)  
Epic dialect *see* Homeric dialect  
euphony A.2  
fearing 182, 194, M, *Surv.*(9)

- formation of words *Surv.*(13)  
 future indicative 61-2, 154, 157, E  
 future perfect 177, E  
  
 gender 9, 24, 29, 39  
 genitive 8, 25-26, 91-2, 104, 139, B. C. F.  
     *Surv.*(10), (11)  
 genitive absolutes 139  
 Greek language (ancient and modern)  
     *Surv.*(1)  
  
 Herodotus' dialect 214-22  
 hexameters 226  
 hiatus A.2(viii)  
 Homeric dialect 225, A.4  
  
 iambic trimeter 179  
 imperative 6, 23, 110, 117-20, 181, 192, 204,  
     E. Q  
 imperfect indicative 58-9, 137-8, 152, E, O;  
     *see also aspect*  
 impersonals 74, 114, 139, 183-4, J  
 indefinites 66, 175-6, 187, 193, 195, 197-8, L,  
     *Surv.*(4), (5), (6)  
 indirect speech 81, 146-9, 156, 167-8, 188,  
     224, K  
 infinitives 74-5, 108-9, 114-5, 121-2, 125,  
     146-9, 158, 161, 163-4, 170, 200-2, E, J  
 interrogatives *see questions*  
 Ionic *see Herodotus' dialect*  
 irregular verbs E.3, E.4  
  
 Latin transcriptions *Surv.*13(vi)  
 lexicon form of words p. 335  
  
 metre *see verse*  
 -mi verbs 124, 131, 143(v), 144-5, 150,  
     165(iv), 174, 196, 204, *Surv.*(7)  
 middles 23, 65, 69, 72, 169, 170, 172, 206, E  
     1, E.2, *Surv.*(2)  
 mixed declensions 48(i), 78, 133, 170(i)  
  
 negatives 6, 38, 181, 224, A.2(viii), *Surv.*(9)  
 nominative 7, 8, 19, *Surv.*(10), (11)  
 nouns 14, 15, 20, 24, 29-30, 39-43, 55, 67,  
     70, 102, 163-4, A.4, B. C.3, J, *Surv.*(10), (11),  
     (12), (13)(i)  
 numerals 203  
  
 optatives 95-7, 105, 129-30, 151, 153, 155,  
     166-8, 186-8, 190, 194-5, 198, 211, E, K, O,  
     P, *Surv.*(4), (5), (6)  
  
 participles 48-54, 78-9, 82-4, 100, 139, 156,  
     159-60, 170, 184, 212, C.1, E, I  
 particles 3, 17, 21, A.4, G  
 passive 137-8, 143, 157, 166, 169, 172, 204,  
     206, E, *Surv.*(2)  
 perfects 165, 169-71, 190, E, *Surv.*(8)  
 pluperfects 180, E  
 potentials (polite) 97, N, *Surv.*(4), (6)  
 prepositions 16, 28, F, *Surv.*(13)(iv); *see also*  
     accusative; dative; genitive  
 present indicative 4-5, 22-3, 137-8, E  
 primary sequence *see sequence*  
 principal parts E.4  
 pronouns 31-4, 46-7, 85-9, A.4, B, C.1  
 pronunciation A.2  
 punctuation A.2(iv)  
 purpose 160, 186, M  
  
 quantity 228, A.2(ii)  
 questions 66, 73, 207, 211, R  
  
 reduplication 165  
 reflexives 87  
 relatives 66, 134-6, 175, 210  
 result 200-2, J  
 root aorists 126, 132, 191  
  
 scansion 179, 226, 228  
 sequence 167(note), 194, A.1(iii)  
 stems E.4, *Surv.*(13)(vii)  
 strong aorists 71-2, E.2(Notes)  
 subject 8-9, A.1(ii)  
 subjunctive 172-4, 181-2, 186, 192-3, 198,  
     207-8, E, L, M, P, Q, R, *Surv.*(5), (6), (9)  
 superlative 76, 93-4, 185, C.2  
  
 temporal clauses L  
 time phrases 104  
 tmesis 178(iii)  
 two-termination adjectives 141  
  
 verbs A.4, E.1-4, *Surv.*(13)(iv)  
 verse 179, 226, 228  
 vocative 8, 15(iv), 67(ii), B, *Surv.*(10), (11)  
 voice *Surv.*(2)  
  
 wishes 130, 153, P  
 word-formation *see formation of*  
     words  
 writing 227, A.2(vii), (ix)



# Grammar Index (Greek)

All nouns/adjectives and verbs are also summarised in the Reference Grammar *ad. loc*

- αίρέω 123  
ἀκούω 128  
ἀλίσκομαι 191  
ἄν 97, 151-2, 162, 175-6, 193, 198(notc), L.  
N, O. Surv.(6)  
ἀνίσταμαι 98, 144-5  
ἀπόλλυμι 95 130  
ἄτε 212  
αὐτός 85-9  
ἀφήμι 196  
  
βαίνω 126, 204  
  
γιγνώσκω 132, 174, 204  
  
δεῖ 75, 184  
δείκνυμι 150(iv), 165(iv)  
διατίθημι 199  
δίδωμι 131, 143(v), 165(iv), 174  
δοκέω 75  
δύναμαι 90, 105  
δίω 203(ii)  
  
ἐγώ 34  
εἰμί 18, 59(vi), 64, 112, 120(πῖ), 173, 213, E.3  
εἶμι 64, 77, 101, 112, 120(iii), 173, E.3  
εἰς 203(iii)  
ἐκείνος 33  
ἐξεσσι 114, 184  
ἐπίσταμαι 125  
ἐρχομαι 171  
  
ἐρωτάω 106  
ἔως 193, 195, 197, L  
  
Ζεὺς 30  
  
ἵνα 186  
ἴσθημι (καθ-) 144-5, 165(i), 171, 204  
  
κεῖμαι 150(iii), 199  
  
λανθάνω 107  
λέγω 166, 171  
  
μέγας 36  
μέν . . δέ 17  
μή, οὐ 6, 38, 181, 182, 224, Q. Surv.(9)  
  
ναῦς 30  
νυ A.2(viii)  
  
οἶδα 19, 80, 112, 120(iii)  
ὅπως 154, 186  
ὅσπερ 136  
ὅστις 136  
οὐδεὶς 47  
οὗτος 31-2  
  
πᾶς 116  
πάσχω 100, 127, 171  
πολυς 35  
τρίν 161, 198, L

ρει 12, 24, 62(iii)

σύ 34

τε . . . καί 21

-τεος 183

τέτταρες 203(ii)

τίθημι 124, 150, 165(iv)

τίς; τις 46-7, 100

τρεις 203(ii)

υἱός 133(iii)

φέρω 113, 171

φημί 81, 142, 204, 224, E.3

χράομαι 209

ὥς H

ὥστε 200-2, J